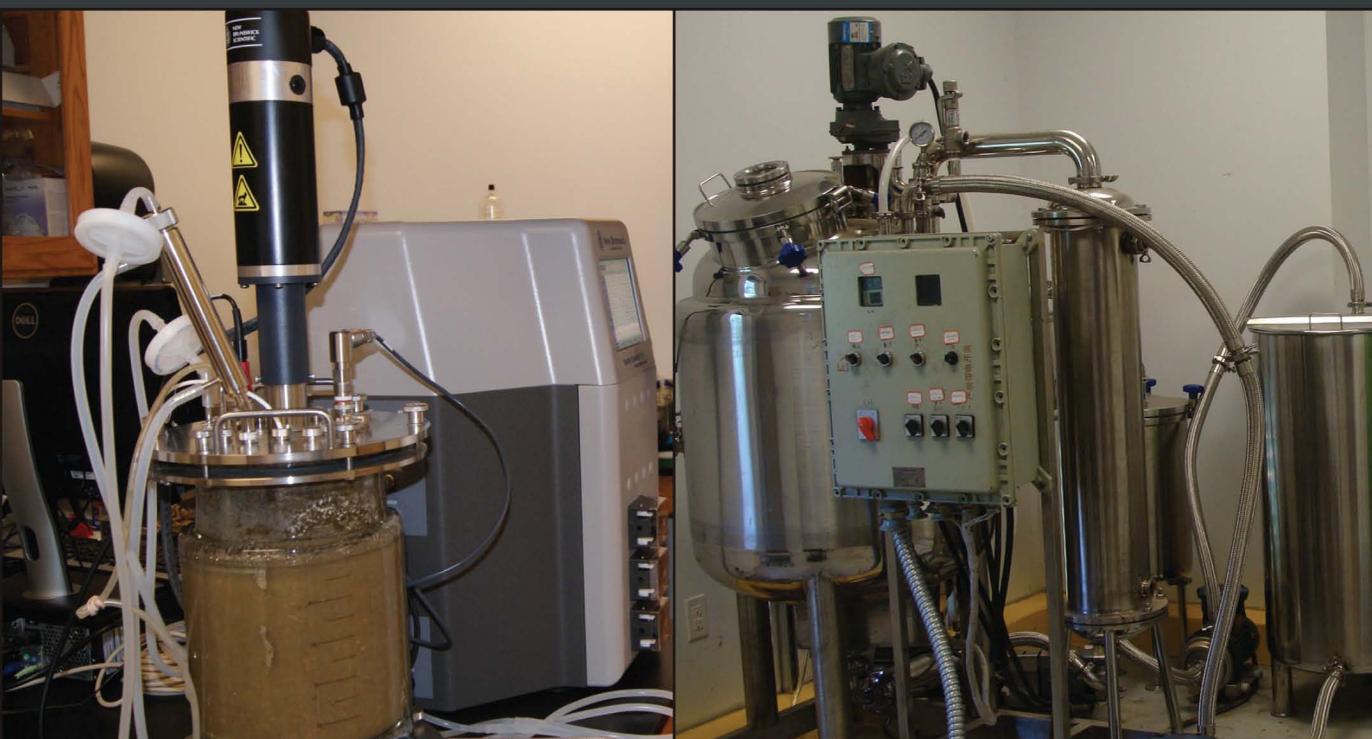


# Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

Second Edition

Nduka Okafor  
Benedict C. Okeke



CRC Press  
Taylor & Francis Group

A SCIENCE PUBLISHERS BOOK



Modern Industrial  
Microbiology and Biotechnology  
SECOND EDITION



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

SECOND EDITION

**Nduka Okafor**

*Department of Biological Sciences  
Clemson University, Clemson  
South Carolina, USA*

**Benedict C. Okeke**

*Bioprocessing and Biofuel Research Lab  
Department of Biology  
Auburn University at Montgomery  
Alabama, USA*



**CRC Press**

Taylor & Francis Group  
Boca Raton London New York

---

CRC Press is an imprint of the  
Taylor & Francis Group, an **informa** business  
A SCIENCE PUBLISHERS BOOK

### Cover Credit

A laboratory scale fermentor (left); and a pilot scale bioreactor with distillation system (right) at the Bioprocessing and Biofuel Research Lab, Auburn University at Montgomery, AL USA. Images provided by Benedict Okeke.

CRC Press

Taylor & Francis Group  
6000 Broken Sound Parkway NW, Suite 300  
Boca Raton, FL 33487-2742

© 2018 by Taylor & Francis Group, LLC

CRC Press is an imprint of Taylor & Francis Group, an Informa business

No claim to original U.S. Government works

Printed on acid-free paper

Version Date: 20170912

International Standard Book Number-13: 978-1-1385-5018-6 (Hardback)

This book contains information obtained from authentic and highly regarded sources. Reasonable efforts have been made to publish reliable data and information, but the author and publisher cannot assume responsibility for the validity of all materials or the consequences of their use. The authors and publishers have attempted to trace the copyright holders of all material reproduced in this publication and apologize to copyright holders if permission to publish in this form has not been obtained. If any copyright material has not been acknowledged please write and let us know so we may rectify in any future reprint.

Except as permitted under U.S. Copyright Law, no part of this book may be reprinted, reproduced, transmitted, or utilized in any form by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying, microfilming, and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without written permission from the publishers.

For permission to photocopy or use material electronically from this work, please access [www.copyright.com](http://www.copyright.com) (<http://www.copyright.com/>) or contact the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. (CCC), 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, 978-750-8400. CCC is a not-for-profit organization that provides licenses and registration for a variety of users. For organizations that have been granted a photocopy license by the CCC, a separate system of payment has been arranged.

**Trademark Notice:** Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

---

### Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

---

Names: Okafor, Nduka, author. | Okeke, Benedict C., author.

Title: Modern industrial microbiology and biotechnology / Nduka Okafor,  
Department of Biological Sciences, Clemson University, Clemson, South  
Carolina, USA, Benedict C. Okeke, Bioprocessing and Biofuel Research Lab,  
Department of Biology, Auburn University at Montgomery, Alabama, USA.

Description: Second edition. | Boca Raton, FL : CRC Press, 2017. | "A science  
publishers book." | Includes bibliographical references and index.

Identifiers: LCCN 2017028404 | ISBN 9781138550186 (hardback : alk. paper)

Subjects: LCSH: Industrial microbiology--Textbooks. |  
Microbiology--Textbooks. | Biotechnology--Textbooks. | Chemical  
engineering--Textbooks.

Classification: LCC QR53 .O355 2017 | DDC 579.078--dc23

LC record available at <https://lccn.loc.gov/2017028404>

---

Visit the Taylor & Francis Web site at

<http://www.taylorandfrancis.com>

and the CRC Press Web site at

<http://www.crcpress.com>

### **Dedication**

This book is dedicated to all those who contributed to developments and discoveries in microbiology and biotechnology.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

---

# Preface

---

The field of industrial microbiology has been undergoing rapid changes in recent years. First, what has been described as the 'cook book' approach has been largely abandoned for the rational manipulation of microorganisms on account of our increased knowledge of their physiology. Second, powerful new tools and technologies, especially genetic engineering, genomics, proteomics, bioinformatics and similar new areas promise exciting horizons for man's continued exploitation of microorganisms. Third, new approaches have become available for the utilization of some traditional microbial products such as immobilized enzymes and cells, site-directed mutation, and metabolic engineering. Simultaneously, microbiology has addressed itself to some current problems such as the fight against cancer by the production of anti-tumor antibiotics; it has changed the traditional practice in a number of areas: for example, the deep sea has now joined the soil as the medium for the search for new bioactive chemicals such as antibiotics. Even the search for organisms producing new products has now been broadened to include unculturable organisms which are isolated mainly on genes isolated from the environment. Finally, greater consciousness of the effect of fossil fuels on the environment has increased the call in some quarters for the use of more environmentally friendly and renewable sources of energy, has led to a search for alternate fermentation substrates, exemplified in cellulose, and a return to fermentation production of ethanol and other bulk chemicals. Due to our increased knowledge and changed approach, even our definitions of familiar words, such as antibiotic and species seem to be changing. This book was written to reflect these changes within the context of current practice.

This book is directed towards undergraduates and beginning graduate students in microbiology, biotechnology, food science, biosystems engineering and chemical engineering. Those studying pharmacy, biochemistry, and general biology will find it of interest. The section on waste disposal will be of interest to civil engineering and public health students and practitioners. For the benefit of those students who may be unfamiliar with the basic biological assumptions underlying industrial microbiology, such as students of chemical and civil engineering, elements of biology and microbiology are introduced. The new elements which have necessitated the shift in paradigm in industrial microbiology such as bioinformatics, genomics, proteomics, site-directed mutation, metabolic engineering, the human genome project, and others are also introduced and their relevance to industrial microbiology and biotechnology indicated. As many references as space will permit are included.

The various applications of industrial microbiology are covered broadly, and the chapters are grouped to reflect these applications. The emphasis throughout, however, is on the physiological and genomic principles behind these applications.

We would like to thank Professors Tom Hughes and Hap Wheeler of the Department of Biological Sciences at Clemson University for their help and encouragement, and Prof. Jeremy Tzeng of Clemson University who read portions of the script. The authors are grateful to their families for their patience during the preparation of the manuscript. Thanks to Chinyelu Okafor for her constant and great support.

Clemson, South Carolina  
Montgomery, Alabama

**Nduka Okafor**  
**Benedict C. Okeke**

---

# Contents

---

*Dedication* v

*Preface* vii

## SECTION A INTRODUCTION

<b>1. Introduction to Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1 Definition of Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology	3
1.2 Characteristics of Industrial Microbiology	3
1.2.1 <i>Industrial vs. Medical Microbiology</i>	4
1.2.2 <i>Multi-disciplinary Nature of Industrial Microbiology</i>	4
1.2.3 <i>Obsolescence in Industrial Microbiology</i>	4
1.2.4 <i>Communication of Procedures in Industrial Microbiology</i>	5
1.3 Patents and Intellectual Property Rights in Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology	5
1.4 The Word 'Fermentation' in Industrial Microbiology	8
1.5 Organizational Set-up in an Industrial Microbiology Establishment	8
<i>End of Chapter Questions</i>	11
<i>Suggested Readings</i>	11

## SECTION B BIOLOGICAL BASIS OF PRODUCTIVITY IN INDUSTRIAL MICROBIOLOGY AND BIOTECHNOLOGY

<b>2. Microorganisms in Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology</b>	<b>15</b>
2.1 Nature of Cells of Living Systems	15
2.2 Classification of Living Organisms into three Domains	16
2.3 Taxonomic Grouping of Industrial Microorganisms	17
2.3.1 <i>Bacteria</i>	19
2.3.2 <i>Eukarya: Fungi</i>	23
2.4 Important Characteristics of Industrial Microbes	24
<i>End of Chapter Questions</i>	25
<i>Suggested Readings</i>	25

x Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

<b>3. Molecular Biology and Bioinformatics in Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology</b>	<b>27</b>
3.1 Protein Synthesis	27
3.2 The Polymerase Chain Reaction	31
3.2.1 PCR in Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology	32
3.3 Microarrays	33
3.3.1 Applications of Microarray Technology	35
3.4 Sequencing of DNA	35
3.4.1 Sequencing of Short DNA Fragments	35
3.4.2 Sequencing of Genomes or Large DNA Fragments	36
3.5 Identification of Genes in DNA Sequences	37
3.6 Metagenomics	39
3.7 Nature of Bioinformatics	39
3.7.1 Contributions of Bioinformatics to Biotechnology	40
End of Chapter Questions	41
Suggested Readings	42
<b>4. Nutrient Media for Cultivation of Industrial Microorganisms and Generation of Microbial Products</b>	<b>43</b>
4.1 The Basic Nutrient Requirements of Industrial Media	43
4.2 Criteria for Raw Materials in Industrial Media	45
4.3 Raw Materials Used in Compounding Industrial Media	46
4.4 Growth Factors	50
4.5 Water	50
4.6 Sources of Components of Industrial Media	50
4.6.1 Carbohydrate Sources	50
4.6.2 Protein Sources	52
4.7 Plant Waste Materials in Industrial Microbiology Media:	53
Saccharification of Polysaccharides	
4.7.1 Starch	53
4.7.2 Cellulose, Hemi-celluloses and Lignin in Plant Materials	57
End of Chapter Questions	59
Suggested Readings	60
<b>5. Biosynthetic Pathways for Metabolic Products of Microorganisms</b>	<b>61</b>
5.1 The Nature of Metabolic Pathways	61
5.2 Industrial Microbiological Products as Primary and Secondary Metabolites	62
5.2.1 Products of Primary Metabolism	62
5.2.2 Products of Secondary Metabolism	63
5.3 Trophophase-Idiophase Relationships in the Production of Secondary Products	64
5.4 Role of Secondary Metabolites in the Physiology of Organisms Producing Them	65

5.5 Pathways for the Synthesis of Primary and Secondary Metabolites of Industrial Importance	66
5.5.1 <i>Catabolism of Carbohydrates</i>	66
5.5.2 <i>The Catabolism of Hydrocarbons</i>	69
5.6 Carbon Pathways for the Formation of Industrial Products Derived from Primary Metabolism	70
5.6.1 <i>Catabolic Products</i>	70
5.6.2 <i>Anabolic Products</i>	70
5.7 Carbon Pathways for the Formation of Products of Microbial Secondary Metabolism of Industrial Importance	70
<i>End of Chapter Questions</i>	72
<i>Suggested Readings</i>	73
<b>6. Processes for Overproduction of Microbial Metabolites for Industrial Applications</b>	<b>74</b>
6.1 Mechanisms Enabling Microorganisms to Avoid Overproduction of Primary Metabolic Products Through Enzyme Regulation	75
6.1.1 <i>Substrate Induction</i>	75
6.1.2 <i>Catabolite Regulation</i>	77
6.1.3 <i>Feedback Regulation</i>	79
6.1.4 <i>Amino Acid Regulation of RNA Synthesis</i>	81
6.1.5 <i>Energy Charge Regulation</i>	81
6.1.6 <i>Permeability Control</i>	82
6.2 Derangement or Bypassing of Regulatory Mechanisms for the Overproduction of Primary Metabolites	83
6.2.1 <i>Metabolic Control</i>	83
6.2.2 <i>Permeability</i>	87
6.3 Regulation of Overproduction in Secondary Metabolites	88
6.3.1 <i>Induction</i>	88
6.3.2 <i>Catabolite Regulation</i>	89
6.3.3 <i>Feedback Regulation</i>	90
6.3.4 <i>ATP or Energy Charge Regulation of Secondary Metabolites</i>	90
6.4 Empirical Methods Employed to Disorganize Regulatory Mechanisms in Secondary Metabolite Production	93
<i>End of Chapter Questions</i>	93
<i>Suggested Readings</i>	94
<b>7. Selection and Improvement of Industrial Organisms for Biotechnological Applications</b>	<b>95</b>
7.1 Sources of Microorganisms Used in Biotechnology	95
7.1.1 <i>Literature Search and Culture Collection Supply</i>	95
7.1.2 <i>Isolation de novo of Organisms Producing Metabolites of Economic Importance</i>	95
7.2 Strain Improvement	98
7.2.1 <i>Selection from Naturally Occurring Variants</i>	98
7.2.2 <i>Manipulation of the Genome of Industrial Organisms in Strain Improvement</i>	99

## xii Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

*End of Chapter Questions* 135

*Suggested Readings* 135

### **8. Culture Collections and Methods of Preservation of the Gene Pool of Industrial Organisms 137**

8.1 The Importance of Culture Collections in Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology 137

8.2 Types of Culture Collections 138

8.3 Handling Culture Collections 139

8.4 Methods of Preserving Microorganisms 139

8.4.1 *Microbial Preservation Methods Based on the Reduction of the Growth Temperature* 140

8.4.2 *Microbial Preservation Methods Based on Dehydration* 142

8.4.3 *Microbial Preservation Methods Based on the Reduction of Nutrients* 144

8.4.4 *Determination of the Most Appropriate Method of Preserving an Organism* 144

*End of Chapter Questions* 144

*Suggested Readings* 144

## **SECTION C BASIC OPERATIONS IN INDUSTRIAL FERMENTATIONS**

### **9. Fermentors and Operation of Fermentation Equipment 149**

9.1 Definition of a Fermentor 149

9.2 The Aerated Stirred-Tank Batch Fermentor 149

9.2.1 *Construction Materials for Fermentors* 151

9.2.2 *Aeration and Agitation in a Fermentor* 151

9.2.3 *Temperature Control in a Fermentor* 153

9.2.4 *Foam Production and Control* 154

9.2.5 *Process Control in a Fermentor* 157

9.3 Anaerobic Batch Fermentors 159

9.4 Fermentor Configurations 160

9.4.1 *Continuous Fermentations* 162

9.5 Fed-batch Cultivation 166

9.6 Design of New Fermentors Based on the Physiology of the Organisms: Air Lift Fermentors 166

9.7 Microbial Experimentation in the Fermentation Industry: The Place of the Pilot Plant 167

9.8 Inoculum Preparation 168

9.9 Surface or Solid State (Substrate) Fermentors 169

*End of Chapter Questions* 170

*Suggested Readings* 170

<b>10. Downstream Processing: Extraction of Fermentation Products</b>	<b>171</b>
10.1 Solids (Insolubles) Removal	172
10.1.1 Filtration	172
10.1.2 Centrifugation	173
10.1.3 Coagulation and Flocculation	173
10.1.4 Foam Fractionation	174
10.1.5 Whole Broth Treatment	174
10.2 Primary Product Isolation	174
10.2.1 Cell Disruption	175
10.2.2 Liquid Extraction	176
10.2.3 Dissociation Extraction	178
10.2.4 Ion-Exchange Adsorption	178
10.2.5 Precipitation	179
10.3 Purification	179
10.3.1 Chromatography	179
10.3.2 Carbon Decolorization	180
10.3.3 Crystallization	180
10.4 Product Isolation	180
10.4.1 Crystalline Processing	181
10.4.2 Drying	181
End of Chapter Questions	182
Suggested Readings	182
<b>11. Significance and Processes of Sterility in Industrial Microbiology</b>	<b>184</b>
11.1 The Basis of Loss by Contaminants	184
11.2 Methods of Achieving Sterility	185
11.2.1 Physical Methods	185
11.2.2 Chemical Methods	189
11.3 Aspects of Sterilization in Industry	191
11.3.1 The Sterilization of the Fermenter and its Accessories	191
11.3.2 Media Sterilization	191
11.4 Viruses (Phages) in Industrial Microbiology	192
11.4.1 Morphological Grouping of Bacteriophages	192
11.4.2 Lysis of Hosts by Phages	192
11.4.3 Prevention of Phage Contamination	193
11.4.4 Use of Phage-Resistant Mutants	194
11.4.5 Chemical Inhibition of Phage Multiplication	194
11.4.6 Use of Adequate Media Conditions and Other Practices	194
End of Chapter Questions	194
Suggested Readings	195

**SECTION D PRODUCTION OF METABOLITES AS BULK CHEMICALS  
OR AS INPUTS IN OTHER PROCESSES**

<b>12. Biocatalysts, Immobilized Enzymes and Immobilized Cells</b>	<b>199</b>
12.1 Enzymes Produced by Microorganisms	199
12.2 Classification of Enzymes	200
12.3 Uses of Enzymes in Industry	201
12.4 Production of Enzymes	205
12.4.1 Fermentation for Enzyme Production	205
12.4.2 Enzyme Extraction	207
12.4.3 Packaging and Finishing	207
12.4.4 Toxicity Testing and Standardization	207
12.5 Immobilized Biocatalysts: Enzymes and Cells	207
12.5.1 General Advantages of Immobilized Biocatalysts	208
12.5.2 Methods of Immobilizing Enzymes	208
12.5.3 Methods for the Immobilization of Cells	211
12.6 Bioreactor Designs Used in Biocatalysis	213
12.7 Practical Application of Immobilized Biological Catalyst Systems	213
12.8 Manipulation of Microorganisms for Higher Yield of Enzymes	213
12.8.1 Biological Aspects of Extracellular Enzyme Production	215
End of Chapter Questions	217
Suggested Readings	217
<b>13. Production of Biofuel and Industrial Alcohol</b>	<b>219</b>
13.1 Biofuel	219
13.1.1 Types of Biofuel and Feedstocks for Production of Biofuel	219
13.1.2 Thermochemical Biofuel Processes	221
13.2 Industrial Alcohol Production	221
13.2.1 Properties of Ethanol	221
13.2.2 Uses of Ethanol	222
13.2.3 Denatured Alcohol	222
13.2.4 Manufacture of Ethanol	223
13.2.5 Developments in Alcohol Production	225
End of Chapter Questions	226
Suggested Readings	226
<b>14. Production of Organic Acids</b>	<b>228</b>
14.1 Organic Acids	228
14.1.1 Production of Citric Acid	228
14.1.2 Uses of Citric Acid	228
14.1.3 Biochemical Basis of the Production of Citric Acid	229
14.1.4 Fermentation for Citric Acid Production	231
14.1.5 Extraction	231
14.1.6 Lactic Acid	232

*End of Chapter Questions* 235

*Suggested Readings* 235

## **15. Production of Amino Acids by Fermentation 236**

15.1 Uses of Amino Acids 236

15.2 Methods for Amino Acid Production 239

15.2.1 *Semi-Fermentation* 240

15.2.2 *Enzymatic Process* 240

15.2.3 *Production of Amino Acids by Direct Fermentation* 240

15.3 Production of Glutamic Acid by Wild Type Bacteria 241

15.4 Production of Amino Acids by Mutants 243

15.4.1 *Production of Amino Acids by Auxotrophic Mutants* 244

15.4.2 *Production of Amino Acids by Regulatory Mutants* 244

15.5 Improvements in the Production of Amino Acids Using Metabolically Engineered Organisms 244

15.5.1 *Strategies to Modify the Terminal Pathways* 245

15.5.2 *Strategies for Increasing Precursor Availability* 247

15.5.3 *Metabolic Engineering to Improve Transport of Amino Acids Outside the Cell* 247

15.6 Fermentor Production of Amino Acid 247

15.6.1 *Fermentor Procedure* 247

15.6.2 *Raw Materials* 248

15.6.3 *Production Strains* 248

15.6.4 *Downstream Processing* 249

*End of Chapter Questions* 249

*Suggested Readings* 250

## **16. Mining Microbiology: Bioleaching by Microorganisms 251**

16.1 Bioleaching 251

16.2 Commercial Leaching Methods 252

16.2.1 *Irrigation-Type Processes* 252

16.2.2 *Stirred Tank Processes* 253

16.3 Microbiology of the Leaching Process 253

16.4 Leaching of Some Metal Sulfides 254

16.5 Environmental Conditions Affecting Bacterial Leaching 255

*End of Chapter Questions* 255

*Suggested Readings* 255

## **SECTION E USE OF WHOLE CELLS FOR FOOD RELATED PURPOSES**

## **17. Single Cell Protein Production 259**

17.1 Substrates for Single Cell Protein Production 260

17.1.1 *Hydrocarbons* 260

**xvi** Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

17.1.2	Alcohols	261	
17.1.3	Waste Products	262	
17.2	Microorganisms Used in SCP Production		264
17.3	Use of Autotrophic Microorganisms in SCP Production		264
17.4	Safety of Single Cell Protein		266
17.4.1	Nucleic Acids and their Removal from SCP	267	
17.5	Nutritional Value of Single Cell Protein		268
	End of Chapter Questions	268	
	Suggested Readings	268	
<b>18.</b>	<b>Yeast Production</b>		<b>269</b>
18.1	Production of Baker's Yeast		270
18.1.1	Yeast Strain Used	270	
18.1.2	Culture Maintenance	271	
18.1.3	Factory Production	271	
18.2	Food Yeasts		273
18.2.1	Production of Food Yeast	274	
18.3	Feed Yeasts		275
18.4	Alcohol Yeasts		275
18.5	Yeast Products		276
	End of Chapter Questions	276	
	Suggested Readings	276	
<b>19.</b>	<b>Production of Microbial Insecticides</b>		<b>277</b>
19.1	Alternatives to Chemical Insecticides		277
19.2	Biological Control of Insects		277
19.2.1	Desirable Properties in Organisms to be Used for Biological Control	278	
19.2.2	Candidates Considered as Biological Control Agents	278	
19.2.3	<i>Bacillus thuringiensis</i> —Insecticidal Toxin	281	
19.3	Production of Biological Insecticides		282
19.3.1	Submerged Fermentations	282	
19.3.2	Surface Culture	283	
19.3.3	<i>In vivo</i> Culture	283	
19.4	Bioassay of Biological Insecticides		283
19.5	Formulation and Use of Bioinsecticides		284
19.5.1	Dusts	284	
19.5.2	Liquid Formulation	284	
19.6	Safety Testing of Bioinsecticides		285
19.7	Search and Development of New Bioinsecticides		285
	End of Chapter Questions	285	
	Suggested Readings	286	

<b>20. Production of <i>Rhizobium</i> Biofertilizer</b>	<b>287</b>
20.1 Biology of <i>Rhizobium</i>	288
20.1.1 General Properties	288
20.1.2 Cross-Inoculation with Groups of <i>Rhizobia</i>	288
20.1.3 Desirable Properties in Strains to be Selected for Use as <i>Rhizobium</i> Inoculants	289
20.1.4 Selection of Strains for Use as <i>Rhizobial</i> Inoculants	289
20.2 Fermentation for <i>Rhizobia</i>	290
20.3 Inoculant Packaging for Use	291
20.3.1 Seed Inoculants	291
20.3.2 Soil Inoculants	292
20.4 Quality Control	292
End of Chapter Questions	293
Suggested Readings	293
<b>21. Production of Fermented Foods</b>	<b>294</b>
21.1 Introduction	294
21.2 Fermented Food from Wheat: Bread	295
21.2.1 Ingredients for Modern Bread-making	295
21.2.2 Systems of Bread-making	298
21.2.3 Role of Yeasts in Bread-making	300
21.3 Fermented Foods Made from Milk	302
21.3.1 Composition of Milk	302
21.3.2 Cheese	303
21.3.3 Yogurt (Yoghurt) and Fermented Milk Foods	306
21.4 Fermented Foods from Corn	306
21.4.1 Ogi, Koko, Mahewu	307
21.5 Fermented Foods from Cassava: Garri, Foo-Foo, Chikwuange, Kokonte, Bikedi, and Cinguada	308
21.5.1 Garri	308
21.5.2 Foo-foo, Chikwuangue, Lafun, Kokonte, Bikedi, and Cinguada	310
21.6 Fermented Vegetables	310
21.6.1 Sauerkraut	310
21.6.2 Cucumbers (pickling)	311
21.7 Fermentations for the Production of the Stimulant Beverages: Coffee, and Cocoa	311
21.7.1 Coffee Fermentation	311
21.7.2 Cocoa Fermentation	312
21.8 Fermented Foods Derived from Legumes and Oil Seeds	312
21.8.1 Fermented Foods from Soybeans	312
21.8.2 Fermented Foods from Beans: Idli	315
21.8.3 Fermented Foods from Protein-rich Oil-seeds	315
21.8.4 Food Condiments Made from Fish	315
End of Chapter Questions	316
Suggested Readings	316

## SECTION F ALCOHOL-BASED FERMENTATION INDUSTRIES

<b>22. Production of Beer: Raw Materials and Brewing Processes</b>	<b>321</b>
22.1 Barley Beers	321
22.1.1 <i>Types of Barley Beers</i>	321
22.1.2 <i>Raw Materials for Brewing</i>	323
22.1.3 <i>Brewery Processes</i>	326
22.1.4 <i>Beer Defects</i>	335
22.1.5 <i>Developments in Beer Brewing</i>	337
22.2 Sorghum Beers	338
22.2.1 <i>Kaffir and Other Traditional Sorghum Beers</i>	338
<i>End of Chapter Questions</i>	340
<i>Suggested Readings</i>	340
<b>23. Production of Wines and Spirits</b>	<b>342</b>
23.1 Grape Wines	342
23.1.1 <i>Processes in Wine Making</i>	342
23.1.2 <i>Fermentation</i>	343
23.1.3 <i>Ageing and Storage</i>	343
23.1.4 <i>Clarification</i>	344
23.1.5 <i>Packaging</i>	345
23.1.6 <i>Wine Defects</i>	345
23.1.7 <i>Wine Preservation</i>	345
23.1.8 <i>Classification of Wines</i>	345
23.2 Palm Wine	349
23.3 The Distilled Alcoholic (or Spirit) Beverages	352
23.3.1 <i>Measurement of the Alcoholic Strength of Distilled Beverages</i>	352
23.3.2 <i>General Principles in the Production of Spirit Beverages</i>	353
23.3.3 <i>The Spirit Beverages</i>	354
<i>End of Chapter Questions</i>	356
<i>Suggested Readings</i>	357
<b>24. Production of Vinegar</b>	<b>358</b>
24.1 Uses	358
24.2 Measurement of Acetic Acid in Vinegar	359
24.3 Types of Vinegar	359
24.4 Organisms Involved	360
24.5 Manufacture of Vinegar	361
24.5.1 <i>The Orleans (or Slow) Method</i>	361
24.5.2 <i>The Trickling Generators (Quick) Method</i>	362
24.5.3 <i>Submerged Generators</i>	363
24.6 Processing of Vinegar	365
<i>End of Chapter Questions</i>	365
<i>Suggested Readings</i>	366

**SECTION G PRODUCTION OF COMMODITIES OF MEDICAL IMPORTANCE**

<b>25. Production of Antibiotics and Anti-Tumor Agents</b>	<b>369</b>
25.1 Classification and Nomenclature of Antibiotics	369
25.2 Beta-Lactam Antibiotics	370
25.2.1 Penicillins	371
25.2.2 Cephalosporins	375
25.2.3 Other Beta-Lactam Antibiotics	376
25.3 The Search for New Antibiotics	377
25.3.1 The Need for New Antibiotics	378
25.3.2 The Classical Method for Searching for Antibiotics: Random Search in the Soil	379
25.4 Combating Resistance and Expanding the Effectiveness of Existing Antibiotics	382
25.4.1 Refinements in the Procedures for the Random Search for New Antibiotics in the Soil	382
25.4.2 Newer Approaches to the Search for Antibiotics	383
25.4.3 Chemically Modifying Existing Antibiotic: The Production of Semi-synthetic Antibiotics	384
25.4.4 Modifying an Existing Antibiotic Through Synthesis by Mutant Organisms: Mutasynthesis	385
25.5 Antitumor Antibiotics	385
25.5.1 Nature of Tumors	385
25.5.2 Mode of Action of Antitumor Antibiotics	386
25.5.3 Search for New Antitumor Antibiotics	386
25.6 Newer Methods for the Search for Antibiotic and Antitumor Drugs	389
End of Chapter Questions	389
Suggested Readings	390
<b>26. Production of Ergot Alkaloids</b>	<b>391</b>
26.1 Nature of Ergot Alkaloids	391
26.2 Uses of Ergot Alkaloids and their Derivatives	394
26.3 Production of Ergot Alkaloids	394
26.4 Physiology of Alkaloid Production	396
End of Chapter Questions	397
Suggested Readings	398
<b>27. Microbial Transformation of Steroids and Sterols</b>	<b>399</b>
27.1 Nature and Use of Steroids and Sterols	399
27.2 Uses of Steroids and Sterols	401
27.2.1 Sex Hormones	401
27.2.2 Corticosteroids	401
27.2.3 Saponins	402
27.2.4 Heterocyclic Steroids	402

## xx Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

27.3	Manufacture of Steroids	402
27.3.1	<i>Types of Microbial Transformations in Steroids and Sterols</i>	404
27.3.2	<i>Fermentation Conditions Used in Steroid Transformation</i>	405
27.4	Screening for Microorganisms	405
	<i>End of Chapter Questions</i>	406
	<i>Suggested Readings</i>	406

## 28. Vaccines 407

28.1	Nature and Importance of Vaccines	407
28.2	Body Defenses against Communicable Diseases	407
28.2.1	<i>Innate or Non-specific Immunity</i>	410
28.2.2	<i>Acquired or Specific Immunity</i>	410
28.3	Traditional and Modern Methods of Vaccine Production	413
28.3.1	<i>Traditional Vaccines</i>	413
28.3.2	<i>Newer Approaches in Vaccinology</i>	414
28.4	Production of Vaccines	417
28.4.1	<i>Production of Virus Vaccines</i>	417
28.4.2	<i>Production of Bacterial Toxoids</i>	419
28.4.3	<i>Production of Killed Bacterial Vaccines</i>	420
28.5	Control of Vaccines	420
28.6	Vaccine Production versus Other Aspects of Industrial Microbiology	421
	<i>End of Chapter Questions</i>	421
	<i>Suggested Readings</i>	422

## 29. Drug Discovery in Microbial Metabolites: The Search for Microbial Products with Bioactive Properties 423

29.1	Conventional Processes of Drug Discovery	423
29.1.1	<i>Cell-based Assays</i>	423
29.1.2	<i>Receptor Binding Assays</i>	425
29.1.3	<i>Enzyme Assays</i>	426
29.2	Newer Methods of Drug Discovery	427
29.2.1	<i>Computer Aided Drug Design</i>	427
29.2.2	<i>Combinatorial Chemistry</i>	427
29.2.3	<i>Genomic Methods in the Search for New Drugs, Including Antibiotics</i>	428
29.2.4	<i>Search for Drugs among Unculturable Microorganisms</i>	429
29.3	Approval of New Antibiotic and Other Drugs by the Regulating Agency	431
29.3.1	<i>Pre-Submission Work by the Pharmaceutical Firm</i>	431
29.3.2	<i>Submission of the New Drug to the FDA</i>	432
29.3.3	<i>Approval</i>	434
29.3.4	<i>Post Approval Research</i>	434
	<i>End of Chapter Questions</i>	434
	<i>Suggested Readings</i>	435

**SECTION H WASTE DISPOSAL**

<b>30. Treatment of Wastes in Industry</b>	<b>439</b>
30.1 Methods for the Determination of Organic Matter Content in Wastewaters	439
30.1.1 <i>Dissolved Oxygen</i>	440
30.1.2 <i>The Biological or Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD) Tests</i>	440
30.1.3 <i>Permanganate Value (PV) Test</i>	440
30.1.4 <i>Chemical Oxygen Demand (COD)</i>	440
30.1.5 <i>Total Organic Carbon (TOC)</i>	441
30.1.6 <i>Total Suspended Solids (TSS)</i>	441
30.1.7 <i>Volatile Suspended Solids (VSS)</i>	441
30.2 Wastes from Major Industries	441
30.3 Systems for the Treatment of Wastes	443
30.3.1 <i>Aerobic Breakdown of Raw Wastewaters</i>	443
30.4 Treatment of the Sludge: Anaerobic Breakdown of Sludge	448
30.5 Wastewater Disposal in the Pharmaceutical Industry	449
<i>End of Chapter Questions</i>	450
<i>Suggested Readings</i>	451
<b><i>Glossary</i></b>	<b>453</b>
<b><i>Index</i></b>	<b>457</b>
<b><i>About the Authors</i></b>	<b>465</b>



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# Section A

## Introduction



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

---

# Introduction to Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

---

## 1.1 DEFINITION OF INDUSTRIAL MICROBIOLOGY AND BIOTECHNOLOGY

Industrial microbiology may be defined as the study of the large-scale and profit-motivated production of microorganisms or their products for direct use or as inputs in the manufacture of other goods. Thus, yeasts may be produced for direct consumption as food for humans, as animal feed, or for use in bread-making; their product ethanol may also be consumed in the form of alcoholic beverages or used in the manufacture of perfumes, pharmaceuticals, etc. Industrial microbiology is clearly a branch of biotechnology and includes the traditional and nucleic acid aspects.

The 1992 United Nations Conference on Biological Diversity (the *Earth Summit*) in Brazil defined biotechnology as “any technological application that uses biological systems, living organisms, or derivatives thereof, to make or modify products or processes for specific use.” The use of microorganisms to produce the antibiotic penicillin, the dairy product yogurt, amino acids and enzymes are examples of biotechnology.

Developments in molecular biology in the last two decades or so have vastly increased our understanding of nucleic acids in genetic processes. This has led to applications of biological manipulation at the molecular level in such technologies as genetic engineering. All aspects of biological manipulations now have molecular biology dimensions and it appears convenient to divide biotechnology into *traditional biotechnology* which does not directly involve nucleic acid or molecular manipulations and *nucleic acid biotechnology* which involves manipulation of nucleic acids and its products.

## 1.2 CHARACTERISTICS OF INDUSTRIAL MICROBIOLOGY

The discipline of microbiology is often divided into sub-disciplines such as medical microbiology, environmental microbiology, food microbiology, and industrial microbiology. The boundaries between these subdivisions are often blurred and are made only for convenience.

## 4 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

### 1.2.1 Industrial vs. Medical Microbiology

The sub-disciplines of industrial microbiology and medical microbiology differ in at least three different ways.

First is the immediate motivation: in industrial microbiology, the immediate motivation is profit and the generation of wealth. In medical microbiology, the immediate concern of the microbiologist or laboratory worker is to offer expert opinion to the doctor about, for example, the spectrum of antibiotic susceptibility of the microorganisms isolated from a diseased condition so as to restore the patient back to good health.

The second difference is that the microorganisms *per se* involved in routine medical microbiology have little or no direct economic value. In industrial microbiology, the microorganisms involved or their products are very valuable and the *raison d'être* for the existence of the industrial microbiology establishment.

The third difference between the two sub-disciplines is the scale at which the microorganisms are handled. In industrial microbiology, the scale is large and the organisms may be cultivated in fermentors as large as 50,000 liters or more. In routine medical microbiology, the scale at which the pathogen is handled is limited to a loopful or a few milliliters. If a pathogen were to be handled on the large scale used in industrial microbiology, it would most probably be to prepare a vaccine against the pathogen. Under that condition, the pathogen would then acquire an economic value; the operation would properly be termed industrial microbiology.

### 1.2.2 Multi-disciplinary Nature of Industrial Microbiology

The microbiologist in an industrial establishment constantly interacts with different functionaries. In a modern industrial microbiology organization, these may include chemical or production engineers, biochemists, economists, lawyers, marketing experts, and other high-level functionaries. They all cooperate to achieve the purpose of the firm, which is the generation of profit or wealth.

Despite the necessity for team work emphasized above, the microbiologist has a central and key role in his organization. Some of the functions of the microbiologist include:

- a. the selection of the organism to be used in the processes;
- b. the choice of the medium of growth of the organism;
- c. the determination of the environmental conditions for the organism's optimum productivity, i.e. pH, temperature, aeration, etc.
- d. during the actual production the microbiologist must monitor the process for the absence of contaminants, and participate in quality control to ensure uniformity of quality in the products;
- e. the proper custody of the organisms usually in a culture collection, so that their desirable properties are retained;
- f. the improvement of the performance of the microorganisms by genetic manipulation or by medium reconstitution.

### 1.2.3 Obsolescence in Industrial Microbiology

Since profit is the motivating factor in the pursuit of industrial microbiology, less efficient methods are discarded as better ones are discovered. Indeed, a microbiological method

may be discarded entirely in favor of a cheaper chemical method. This was the case with ethanol, which up till about 1930 was produced by fermentation. When cheaper chemical methods using petroleum as the substrate became available in about 1930, fermentation ethanol was virtually abandoned. From the mid-1970s, the price of petroleum has climbed steeply. It has once again become profitable to produce ethanol by fermentation for fuel and blending into gasoline as gasohol.

#### **1.2.4 Communication of Procedures in Industrial Microbiology**

Many procedures employed in industrial microbiology do not become public property for a long time because the companies which discover them either keep them secret or else patent them. The reason for the secrecy is obvious and designed to keep the owner of the secret one step ahead of potential competitors.

### **1.3 PATENTS AND INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS IN INDUSTRIAL MICROBIOLOGY AND BIOTECHNOLOGY**

Patent or intellectual property laws have two goals: they intend to induce an inventor to disclose something of his/her invention, and patents ensure that an invention is not exploited without some reward to the inventor for his/her innovation.

The prerequisite for the patentability of inventions all over the world are that the claimed invention must be new, useful, and unobvious from what is already known in 'the prior art' or in the 'state of the art'. For most patent laws, an invention is patentable:

- a. if it is new, results from inventive activity and is capable of industrial application, or
- b. if it constitutes an improvement upon a patented invention and is capable of industrial application.

For the purposes of the above:

- a. an invention is new if it does not form part of the state of the art (i.e. it is not part of the existing body of knowledge);
- b. an invention results from inventive activity if it does not obviously follow from the state of the art, either as to the method, the application, the combination of methods, the product or as to the industrial result it produces, and
- c. an invention is capable of industrial application if it can be manufactured or used in any kind of industry, including agriculture.

In the above, 'the art' means the art or field of knowledge to which an invention relates and 'the state of the art' means everything concerning that art or field of knowledge which has been made available to the public anywhere and at any time, by means of a written or oral description, or in any other way, before the date of the filing of the patent application.

Patents cannot be validly obtained in respect of:

- a. plant or animal varieties, or biological processes essential for the production of plants or animals (other than microbiological processes and their products), or
- b. inventions, the publication or exploitation of which would be contrary to public order or morality (it being understood for the purposes of this paragraph that the exploitation of an invention is not contrary to public order or morality merely because its exploitation is prohibited by law).

## 6 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

Principles and discoveries of a scientific nature are not necessarily inventions for the purposes of patent laws.

The exact wording may vary but the general ideas regarding patentability are the same around the world. The current Patent Law in the United States is the United States Code Title 35—Patents (Revised 3 August, 2005), and is administered by the Patents and Trademarks Office while the equivalent UK Patent Law is the Patent Act 1977.

International laws have helped to bridge some of the differences among the patent practices of various countries. The Paris Convention for the protection of Industrial Property states that each country guarantees to the citizens of other countries the same rights in patent matters as their own citizens. The treaty also provides for the right of priority in case of dispute. Another international treaty signed in Washington, DC came into effect on June 1st, 1968. This latter treaty, the Patent Cooperation Treaty, facilitates the filing of patent applications in different countries by providing standard formats among other things.

A wide range of microbiological inventions are generally recognized as patentable. Such items include vaccines, bacterial insecticides, and mycoherbicides. However, microorganisms *per se* are not patentable except when they are used as part of a 'useful' process.

On June 16th, 1980, a case of immense importance to the course of industrial microbiology was decided in the United States Court of Customs and Patent Appeals. In brief, the court ruled that "a live human-made microorganism is patentable". Dr. Ananda Chakrabarty, then an employee of General Electric Company, had introduced two plasmids into a bacterium of the genus *Pseudomonas* which enabled the new bacterium to degrade multiple components of crude oil. This single bacterium rather than a mixture of several would then be used for cleaning up oil spills. Claims to the invention were on three grounds.

- a. process claims for the method of producing the bacteria,
- b. claims for an inoculum comprising an inert carrier and the bacterium, and
- c. claims to the bacteria themselves.

The first two were easily accepted by the lower court but the third was not accepted on the grounds that (i) the organisms are products of nature and (ii) that as living organisms they are not patentable.

A study of the transcript of the decision of the Appeals Court and other patents highlights a number of points about the patentability of microorganisms:

- 1) Microorganisms by themselves are not patentable, being 'products of nature' and 'living things'. However, they are patentable as part of a useful 'process', i.e. when they are included along with a chemical or an inert material with which jointly they fulfill a useful purpose. An example is a US patent dealing with a bacterium which kills mosquito larva granted to Dr. L.J. Goldberg in 1979:

What is claimed is:

A bacterial larvicide active against mosquito-like larvae comprising of:

- a. an effective larva-killing concentration of spores of the pure biological strain of *Bacillus thuringiensis* var. WHO/CCBC 1897 as an active agent; and
- b. a carrier....

It is the combination of the bacterial larvicide and the carrier which produced a unique patentable material, not the larvicide by itself.

- 2) A new organism produced by genetic engineering constitutes a 'manufacture' or 'composition of matter'. The Appeals Court made it quite clear that such an organism is different from a newly discovered mineral and from Einstein's or Newton's laws which are not patentable since they already existed in nature. Today, most countries accept that the following are patentable: the creation of new plasmid vectors, isolation of new DNA restriction enzymes, isolation of new DNA-joining enzymes or ligases, creation of new recombinant DNA, creation of new genetically modified cells, means of introducing recombinant DNA into a host cell, creation of new transformed host cells containing recombinant DNA, a process for preparing new or known useful products with the aid of transformed cells, and novel cloning processes. Patents resulting from the above were in general regarded as process, not substance, patents. The current US law specifically defines biotechnological inventions and their patentability as follows:

"For purposes of (this) paragraph .... the term 'biotechnological process' means:

- (A) a process of genetically altering or otherwise inducing a single- or multi-celled organism to
    - (i) express an exogenous nucleotide sequence,
    - (ii) inhibit, eliminate, augment, or alter expression of an endogenous nucleotide sequence, or
    - (iii) express a specific physiological characteristic not naturally associated with said organism;
  - (B) cell fusion procedures yielding a cell line that expresses a specific protein, such as a monoclonal antibody, and
  - (C) a method of using a product produced by a process defined by subparagraph (A) or (B), or a combination of subparagraphs (A) and (B)."
- 3) The patenting of a microbiological process places on the patentee the obligation of depositing the culture in a recognized culture collection. The rationale for the deposition of culture in a recognized culture collection is to provide permanence of the pure culture and ready availability to users of the patent.

The deposition of cultures solves the problems of satisfying patent laws created by the nature of microbiology. In chemical patents, the chemicals have to be described fully and no need exists to provide the actual chemical. In microbiological patents, it is not very helpful to describe on paper how to isolate an organism or how the organism looks. More importantly, it is difficult to readily and accurately recognize a particular organism based on patent descriptions alone. Finally, since the organism is a part of the input of microbiological processes it must be available to a user of the patent information.

- 4) Where a microbiologist-inventor is an employee, the patent is usually assigned to the employer, unless some agreement is reached between them to the contrary. The patent for the oil-consuming *Pseudomonas* discussed earlier went to General Electric Company, not to its employee.
- 5) In certain circumstances, it may be advantageous not to patent the invention at all but to maintain the discovery as a trade secret. In some cases, even if the nature of the compound produced by the microorganisms were not disclosed, it may be possible to discover its composition during the processes of certification which it

## 8 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

must undergo in the hands of government analysts. It is for this reason that some patents sometimes leave out minor but vital details.

In conclusion, when all necessary considerations have been taken into account and it is decided to patent an invention, the decision must be pursued with vigor and with an adequate degree of secrecy because as one patent law states:

“... The right to patent in respect of an invention is vested in the statutory inventor, that is to say that person who whether or not he is the true inventor, is the first to file...(the) patent application.”

### 1.4 THE WORD ‘FERMENTATION’ IN INDUSTRIAL MICROBIOLOGY

The word fermentation comes from the Latin verb *fevere* which means to boil. It originates from the fact that early at the start of wine fermentation, gas bubbles are released continuously to the surface giving the impression of boiling.

The first meaning of fermentation relates to microbial physiology. In strict physiological terms, fermentation is defined in microbiology as the type of metabolism of a carbon source in which energy is generated by substrate level phosphorylation and in which organic molecules function as the final electron acceptor (or as acceptors of the reducing equivalents) generated during the breakdown of carbon-containing compounds or catabolism. When the final acceptor is an inorganic compound the process is called respiration. Respiration is referred to as aerobic if the final acceptor is oxygen and anaerobic when it is some other inorganic compound outside oxygen, e.g. sulfate or nitrate.

The second usage of the word is in industrial microbiology where the term ‘fermentation’ is any process in which microorganisms are grown on a large scale, even if the final electron acceptor is not an organic compound (i.e. even if the growth is carried out under aerobic conditions). Thus, the production of penicillin, the growth of yeast cells which are both highly aerobic, and the production of ethanol or alcoholic beverages which are fermentations in the physiological sense are all referred to as fermentations.

The third usage concerns food. A food is considered fermented if microorganisms play a major part in the processing of this food. Foods such as cheese, bread, and yogurt are fermented foods.

### 1.5 ORGANIZATIONAL SET-UP IN AN INDUSTRIAL MICROBIOLOGY ESTABLISHMENT

The organization of a fermentation industrial establishment will vary from one firm to another and will depend on what is being produced. Nevertheless, the diagram in [Fig. 1.1](#) represents in general terms the set-up in a fermentation industry.

The culture usually comes from the firm’s culture collection or a public culture. It may have been isolated *ab initio* by the firm from soil, the air, the sea, or some other natural body. The nutrients which go into the medium are compounded from various raw materials, sometimes after appropriate preparation or modification. An inoculum is first prepared usually from a lyophilized vial whose purity must be checked on an agar plate. The organism is then grown in shake flasks of increasing volumes until about 10% of the volume of the pilot fermenter is attained. It is then introduced into pilot fermenter(s) before final transfer into the production fermenter(s) ([Fig. 1.2](#)).

The extraction of the material depends on what the end product is. The methods are obviously different depending on whether the organism itself or its metabolic product is the desired commodity. If the product is the required material, the procedure will be dictated by its chemical nature. Quality control must be carried out regularly to ensure that the right material is being produced. Sterility is important in industrial microbiology

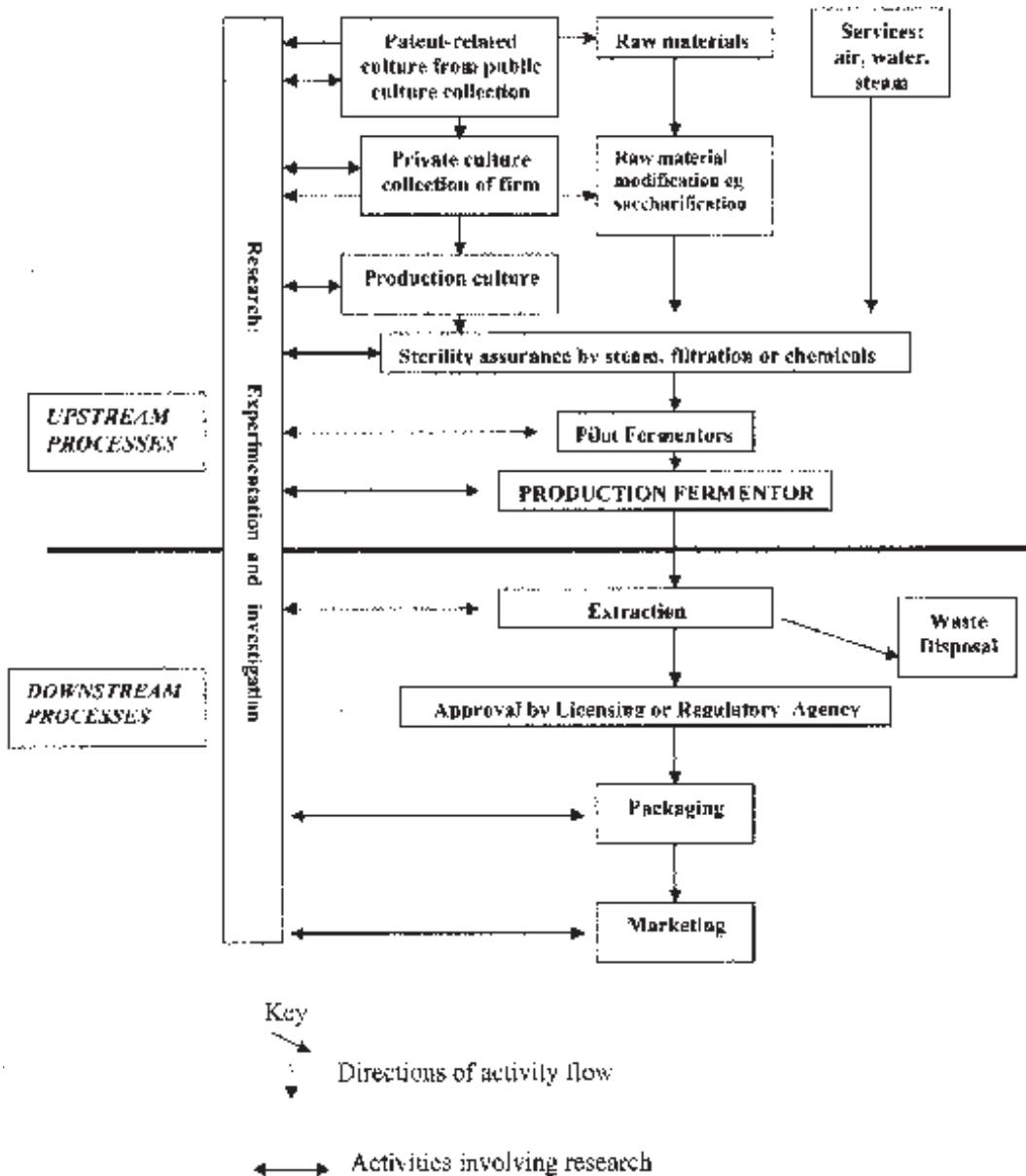


Fig. 1.1 Set-up in an Industrial Microbiology Establishment

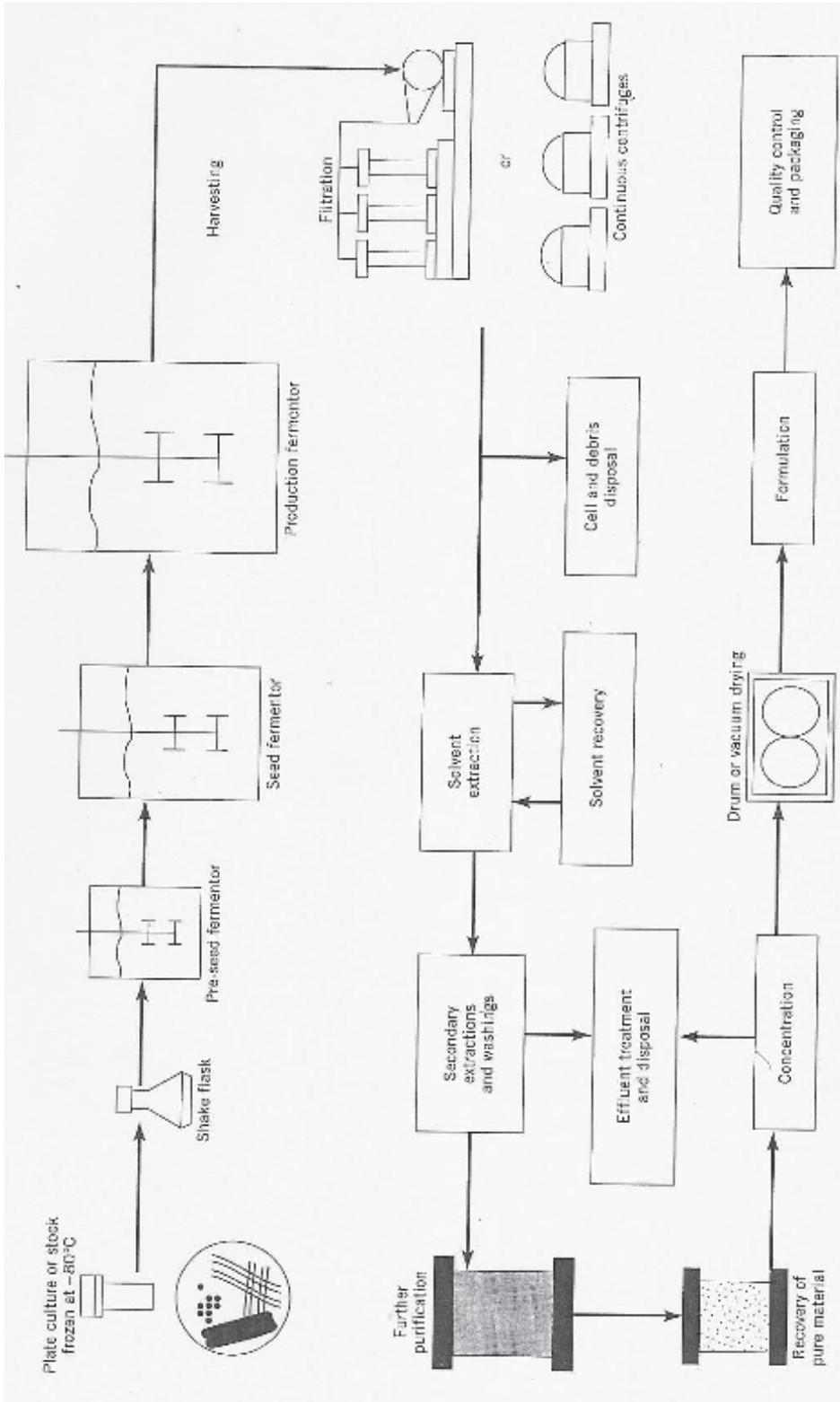


Fig. 1.2 Flowchart of the Production Process in a Typical Industrial Microbiology Establishment

processes and is maintained by various means including the use of steam, filtration, or by chemicals. The wastes generated in the industrial processes must also be disposed of. Packaging and sales are very important because they are the points of contact with the consumer for whose satisfaction all the trouble was taken in the first place.

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Define Industrial Microbiology in relation to Biotechnology.
2. Itemize potential roles of an industrial microbiologist in an industrial setting.
3. List five categories of microbial products and give three examples for each category.
4. Itemize career opportunities for an industrial microbiologist.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Anon. 1979. General Information Concerning Patents. United States Government Printing Office. Washington, USA.
- Anon. 1979. U.S. Patent 4,166,112 Goldberg, L.J., Mosquito Larvae Control using a Bacterial Larvicide, Aug. 28, 1979.
- Anon. 1980. Supreme Court of the United States. Diamond (Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks) v. Chakrabarty 447 US 303, 310, 206 USPQ 193, 197.
- Anon. 1985. United States Patent Number 4,535,061 granted on August 13 1985 to Chakrabarty et al. Bacteria capable of Dissimilation of Environmentally Persistent Chemical Compounds. Washington, DC, USA.
- Birch, R.G. 1997. Plant Transformation: Problems and Strategies for Practical Application. Annual Review of Plant Physiology and Plant Molecular Biology. 48, 297–326.
- Bull, A.T., Ward, A.C., Goodfellow, M. 2000. Search and Discovery Strategies for Biotechnology. The Paradigm Shift. Microbiology and Molecular Biology Reviews. 64, 573–548.
- Dahod, S.K. 1999. Raw Materials Selection and Medium Development for Industrial Fermentation Processes. *In: Manual of Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology*. A.L. Demain, J.E. Davies (eds.) 2nd ed. American Society for Microbiology Press.
- Doll, J.J. 1998. The Patenting of DNA. Science. 280, 689–690.
- Gordon, J. 1999. Intellectual Property. *In: Manual of Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology*. A.L. Demain, J.E. Davies (eds.) 2nd ed. American Society for Microbiology Press.
- Kimpel, J.A. 1999. Freedom to Operate: Intellectual Property Protection in Plant Biology and its Implications for the Conduct of Research. Annual Review of Phytopathology. 37, 29–51.
- Moran, K., King, S.R., Carlson, T.J. 2001. Biodiversity Prospecting: Lessons and Prospects. Annual Review of Anthropology. 30, 505–526.
- Neijseel, M.O., Tempest, D.W. 1979. *In: Microbial Technology: Current State, Future Prospects*. A.T. Bull, D.C. Ellwood, C. Rattledge (eds.) Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK. pp. 53–82.



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# **Section** B

## Biological Basis of Productivity in Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# Microorganisms in Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

## 2.1 NATURE OF CELLS OF LIVING SYSTEMS

All living systems are composed of cells. There are two basic types, the prokaryotic cell and the eukaryotic cell (Fig. 2.1). The parts of the cell are:

*Cell wall:* Prokaryotic cell walls contain glycopeptides; these are absent in eukaryotic cells. Cell walls of eukaryotic cells contain chitin, cellulose, and other sugar polymers. These provide rigidity where cell walls are present.

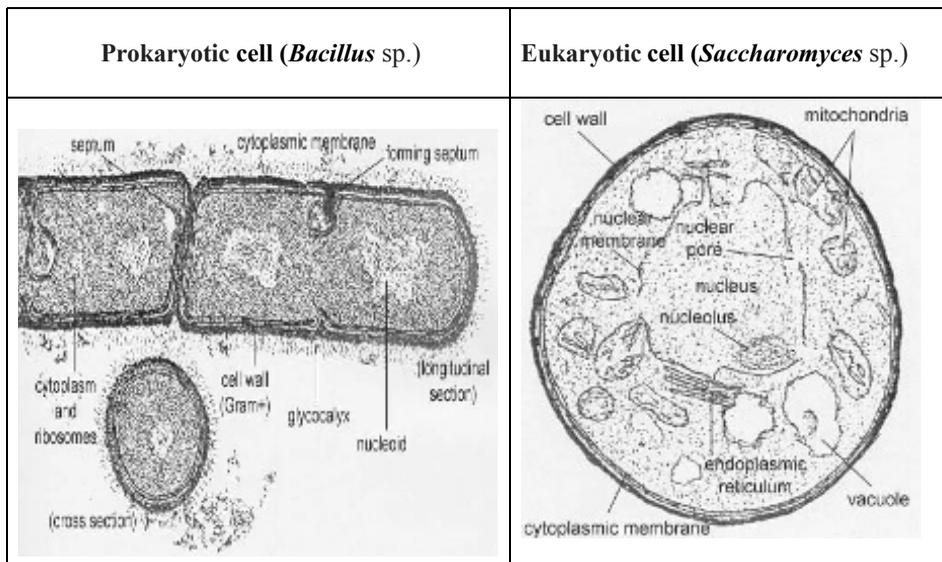


Fig. 2.1 Eukaryotic Cell (Yeast) and Prokaryotic Cell (*Bacillus*)

## 16 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

*Cell membrane:* Composed of a double layer of phospholipids, the cell membrane completely surrounds the cell. It is not a passive barrier but enables the cell to actively select the metabolites it wants to accumulate and to excrete waste products.

*Ribosomes* are the sites of protein synthesis. They consist of two subunits. Prokaryotic ribosomes are 70S and have two subunits: a 30S (small) and a 50S (large) subunit. Eukaryotic ribosomes are 80S and have subunits of 40S (small) and 60S (large). The unit S means Svedberg units, a measure of the rate of sedimentation of a particle in an ultracentrifuge where the sedimentation rate is proportional to the size of the particle. Svedberg units are not additive—two subunits combined can have Svedberg values that do not add up to that of the entire ribosome. The prokaryotic 30S sub-unit is constructed from a 16S RNA molecule and 21 polypeptide chains, while the 50S sub-unit is constructed from two RNA molecules, 5S and 23S respectively, and 34 polypeptide chains.

*Mitochondria* are membrane-enclosed structures where in aerobic eukaryotic cells, the processes of respiration and oxidative phosphorylation occur in energy release. Prokaryotic cells lack mitochondria and the processes of energy release take place in the cell membrane.

The *Nuclear membrane* surrounds the nucleus in eukaryotic cells, but is absent in prokaryotic cells. In prokaryotic cells only, one single circular macromolecule of DNA constitutes the hereditary apparatus or genome. In eukaryotic cells, the DNA is located in several chromosomes.

The *Nucleolus* is a structure within the eukaryotic nucleus for the synthesis of ribosomal RNA. Ribosomal proteins synthesized in the cytoplasm are transported into the nucleolus and combine with the ribosomal RNA to form the small and large subunits of the eukaryotic ribosome. They are then exported into the cytoplasm where they unite to form the intact ribosome.

### 2.2 CLASSIFICATION OF LIVING ORGANISMS INTO THREE DOMAINS

The earliest classification placed living organisms into two simple categories, plants and animals. When the microscope was discovered in about the middle of the 16th century, it enabled the observation of microorganisms for the first time. Living organisms were then divided into plants, animals, and protista (microorganisms). From the 1960s and the 1970s, Whittaker's division of living organisms into five groups was the accepted grouping. The classification was based on cell-type: prokaryotic or eukaryotic, organizational level: single-celled or multi-cellular, and nutritional type: heterotrophy and autotrophy. On the basis of these characteristics, living organisms were divided into five groups: Monera (bacteria), Protista (algae and protozoa), Plants, Fungi, and Animals.

The current classification of living organisms is based on the work of Carl R. Woese of the University of Illinois (Fig. 2.2). Greater knowledge of molecular basis of cell function led to today's classification based on the sequence of ribosomal RNA (rRNA) in the 16S of the small subunit (SSU) of the prokaryotic ribosome, and the 18S ribosomal unit of eukaryotes. The rRNA sequence is used for the following reasons:

- (i) 16S (or 18S) rRNA is essential to the ribosome, and found in all living things;
- (ii) its function is identical in all ribosomes;

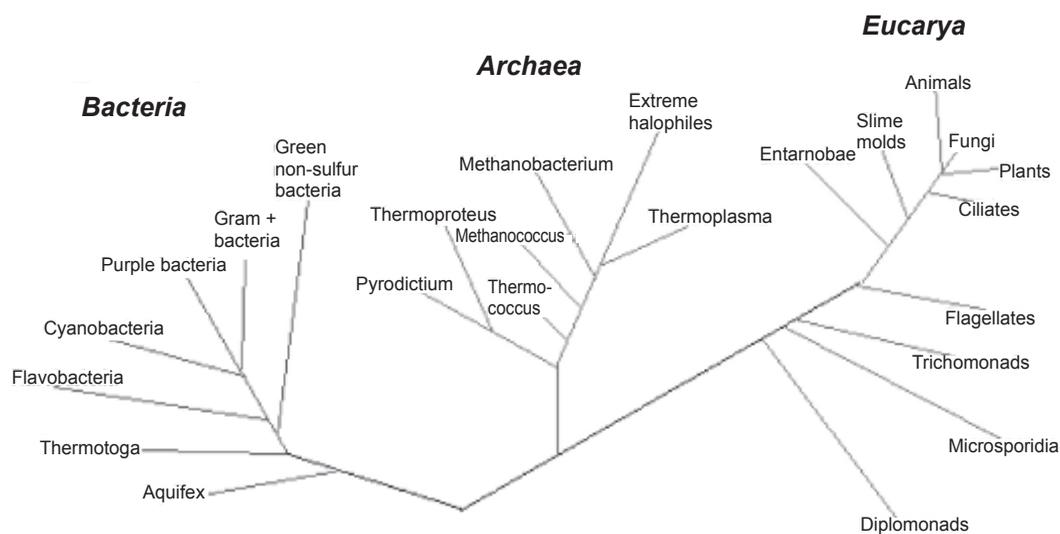


Fig. 2.2 The Three Domains of Living Things Based on Woese's Work

- (iii) its sequence changes very slowly with evolutionary time, and it contains variable and stable sequences which enable the comparison of closely related as well as distantly related species.

The classification is evolutionary and attempts to link all living organisms with evolution from a common ancestor. For this approach, an evolutionary time-keeper must be available to or used by components of the system and yet be able to reflect differences and changes with time in other regions appropriate to the assigned evolutionary distances. The 16S ribosomal RNAs meet these criteria, as ribosomes are involved in protein synthesis in all living organisms.

According to the currently accepted classification living things are placed into three groups: Archaea, Bacteria, and Eukarya. Archaea and Bacteria are prokaryotic, while Eukarya are eukaryotic.

### 2.3 TAXONOMIC GROUPING OF INDUSTRIAL MICROORGANISMS

The microorganisms *currently* used in industrial microbiology and biotechnology are found mainly among the bacteria and eukarya. However, the processes used in industrial microbiology and biotechnology are dynamic. Consequently, outdated procedures are discarded, as new and more efficient ones are discovered. At present, organisms from Archaea are not used for industrial processes but that may change in future.

One of the criteria supporting the use of a microorganism for industrial purposes is the possession of properties which will enable the organism to survive and be productive in the face of competition from contaminants. Many organisms in Archaea are able to grow under extreme conditions of temperature or salinity. These conditions may be exploited in industrial processes where such physiological properties may put a member of the Archaea at an advantage over contaminants.

## 18 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

**Table 2.1** Summary of differences among the three domains of living things (from Madigan and Martinko 2006)

<i>Characteristics</i>		<i>Bacteria</i>	<i>Archaea</i>	<i>Eukarya</i>
<b>Morphology and Genetics</b>				
1	Prokaryotic cell structure	+	+	-
2	DNA present in closed circular form	+	+	-
3	<sup>1</sup> Histone proteins present	-	+	+
4	Nuclear membrane	-	-	+
5	Muramic acid in cell wall	+	-	-
6	Membrane lipids: Fatty acids or Branched hydrocarbons	Fatty acids	Branched hydrocarbons	Fatty acids
7	Ribosome size	70S	70S	80S
8	Initiator tRNA	Formyl- methionine	Methionine	Methionine
9	<sup>2</sup> Introns in most genes	-	-	+
10	<sup>3</sup> Operons	+	+	-
11	Plasmids	+	+	Rare
12	Ribosome sensitive to diphtheria toxin	-	+	+
13	Sensitivity to streptomycin, chloramphenicol, and kanamycin	+	-	-
14	<sup>4</sup> Transcription factors required	-	+	+
<b>Physiological/Special Structures</b>				
15	Methanogenesis	+	-	-
16	Nitrification	+	-?	-
17	Denitrification	+	+	-
18	Nitrogen fixation	+	+	-
19	Chlorophyll based photosynthesis	+	-	+ (plants)
20	Gas vesicles	+	+	-
21	Chemolithotrophy	+	+	-
22	Storage granules of poly- $\beta$ - hydroxyalkanoates	+	+	-
23	Growth above 80°C	+	+	-
24	Growth above 100°C	-	+	-

<sup>1</sup>Histone proteins are present in eukaryotic chromosomes; histones and DNA give structure to chromosomes in eukaryotes. <sup>2</sup>Non-coding sequences within genes; <sup>3</sup>Operons: Typically present in prokaryotes, these are clusters of genes controlled by a single operator; <sup>4</sup>Transcription factor is a protein that binds DNA at a specific promoter or enhancer region or site, where it regulates transcription.

Plants and animals as well as their cell cultures are also used in biotechnology. Microorganisms have the following advantages over plants or animals as inputs in biotechnology:

- i. Microorganisms grow rapidly in comparison with plants and animals. The generation time (the time for an organism to mature and reproduce) is about 12 years in man, about 24 months in cattle, 18 months in pigs, 6 months in chicken, but only 15 minutes in the bacterium, *E. coli*. The consequence is that biotechnological products which can be obtained from microorganisms in a matter of days may take many months in animals or plants.
- ii. The space requirement for growth microorganisms is small. A 100,000 liter fermenter can be housed in about 100 square yards of space, whereas the plants or animals needed to generate the equivalent of products in the 100,000 fermenter would require many acres of land.
- iii. Microorganisms are not subject to the problems of the changes of weather which may affect agricultural production especially among plants.
- iv. Microorganisms are not affected by diseases of plants and animals, although they do have their peculiar scourges in the form of phages and contaminants, but there are procedures to contain them.

### 2.3.1 Bacteria

Bacteria are described in two compendia, *Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology* and *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology*. The first manual (on *Determinative Bacteriology*) is designed to facilitate the identification of a bacterium whose identity is unknown. It was first published in 1923. The companion volume (on *Systematic Bacteriology*) records the accepted published descriptions of bacteria and classifies them into taxonomic groups. The bacterial classification in the latest (second) edition of *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology* is based on 16S RNA sequences following the work of Carl Woese and organizes the domain Bacteria into 18 groups (or *phyla*; singular, *phylum*). The bacterial phyla used in industrial microbiology and biotechnology are found in the Proteobacteria, the Firmicutes and the Actinobacteria.

#### 2.3.1.1 The Proteobacteria

The Proteobacteria are a major group of bacteria named after Proteus, the Greek god, who could change his shape. Proteobacteria include a wide variety of pathogens, such as *Escherichia*, *Salmonella*, *Vibrio* and *Helicobacter* spp. as well as free-living bacteria some of which can fix nitrogen. The group also includes the purple bacteria, so-called because of their reddish pigmentation and which use energy from sun light in photosynthesis.

All Proteobacteria are Gram-negative with an outer membrane mainly composed of lipopolysaccharides. Many move about using flagella, but some are non-motile or rely on bacterial gliding. Most members are facultatively or obligately anaerobic and heterotrophic but there are numerous exceptions.

Proteobacteria are divided into five groups:  $\alpha$  (alpha),  $\beta$  (beta),  $\gamma$  (gamma),  $\delta$  (delta), and  $\epsilon$  (epsilon). The only organisms of current industrial importance in the Proteobacteria

## 20 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

are *Acetobacter* and *Gluconobacter*, which are acetic acid bacteria and belong to the Alphaproteobacteria. An organism also belonging to the Alphaproteobacteria and which has the potential to become important industrially is *Zymomonas* which produces copious amounts of alcohol.

### 2.3.1.1.1 The Acetic Acid Bacteria

The acetic acid bacteria are *Acetobacter* (peritrichously flagellated) and *Gluconobacter* (polarly flagellated). They have the following properties:

- i. They carry out incomplete oxidation of alcohol leading to the production of acetic acid, and are used in the manufacture of vinegar.
- ii. *Gluconobacter* lacks the complete citric acid cycle and cannot oxidize acetic acid; *Acetobacter* on the other hand, has all the citric acid enzymes and can oxidize acetic acid further to CO<sub>2</sub>.
- iii. They can tolerate acid conditions of pH 5.0 or lower.
- iv. Their property of 'under-oxidizing' sugars is exploited in the following:
  - a. The production of glucuronic acid from glucose, galactonic acid from galactose and arabonic acid from arabinose;
  - b. The production of sorbose from sorbitol by acetic acid bacteria, an important stage in the manufacture of ascorbic acid (also known as Vitamin C).
- v. Acetic acid bacteria are able to produce pure cellulose when grown in an unshaken culture.

### 2.3.1.2 The Firmicutes

The Firmicutes are a division of Gram-positive bacteria. The mycoplasmas lack cell walls altogether and do not respond to Gram staining. They do lack the second membrane found in other Gram-negative forms; consequently, they are regarded as Gram-positive.

Originally, the Firmicutes group included all Gram-positive bacteria, but more recently, they tend to be restricted to a core group of related forms called the low G+C group in contrast to the Actinobacteria which have high G+C ratios. The G+C ratio is an important taxonomic characteristic used in classifying bacteria. It is the ratio of Guanine and Cytosine to Guanine, Cytosine, Adenine, and Thymine in the cell. Thus, the GC ratio = G+C divided by G+C+A+T × 100. Gram-positive bacteria (i.e. those with G+C less than 50%) are placed in the Firmicutes, while those with 50% or more are in Actinobacteria. Firmicutes contain many bacteria of industrial importance and are divided into three major groups: (i) spore-forming, (ii) non-spore forming, and (iii) wall-less (this group contains pathogens and no industrial organisms).

#### 2.3.1.2.1 Spore-forming firmicutes

Spore-forming Firmicutes form internal spores, unlike the Actinobacteria where the spore-forming members produce external ones. The group is divided into the aerobic *Bacillus* spp. and the anaerobic *Clostridium* spp. *Bacillus* spp. are sometimes used in enzyme production. *Bacillus papilliae* infects and kills the larvae of the beetles in the family *Scarabaeidae* while

*B. thuringiensis* is used against mosquitoes. *Clostridia* on the other hand are mainly pathogens of humans and animals.

#### 2.3.1.2.2 Non-spore forming firmicutes

**The Lactic Acid Bacteria:** The non-spore forming low G+C members of the firmicutes group are very important in industry as they contain the lactic acid bacteria.

The lactic acid bacteria are rods or cocci placed in the following genera: *Enterococcus*, *Lactobacillus*, *Lactococcus*, *Leuconostoc*, *Pediococcus*, and *Streptococcus*. They are among some of the most widely studied bacteria because of their importance in the production of several foods, industrial, and pharmaceutical products. They lack porphyrins and cytochromes, do not carry out electron transport phosphorylation, and hence obtain energy by substrate level phosphorylation. They grow anaerobically but are not killed by oxygen; they will grow with or without oxygen. They obtain their energy from sugars and are found in environments where sugar is present. They have limited synthetic ability, and for successful cultivation, they require the addition of amino acids, vitamins, and nucleotides.

Lactic acid bacteria are divided into two major groups: The homofermentative group, which produce lactic acid as the sole product of the fermentation of sugars, and the heterofermentative which besides lactic acid also produce ethanol as well as CO<sub>2</sub>. The difference between the two results from the absence of the enzyme aldolase in the heterofermenters. Aldolase is a key enzyme in the E-M-P pathway. Homofermentative lactic acid bacteria convert the D- glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate to lactic acid. Heterofermentative lactic acid bacteria receive five-carbon xylulose 5 phosphate from the Pentose pathway. The five carbon xylulose is split into glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (3-carbon), which leads to lactic acid, and the two- carbon acetyl phosphate which leads to ethanol.

#### *Use of Lactic Acid Bacteria for Industrial Purposes:*

The desirable characteristics of lactic acid bacteria as industrial microorganisms include

- a. their ability to rapidly and completely ferment cheap raw materials,
- b. their minimal requirement of nitrogenous substances,
- c. their production of high yields of the much preferred stereo specific lactic acid,
- d. ability to grow under conditions of low pH and high temperature, and
- e. ability to produce low amounts of cell mass and negligible amounts of other byproducts.

The choice of a particular lactic acid bacterium for production primarily depends on the carbohydrate to be fermented. *Lactobacillus delbrueckii* subspecies *delbrueckii* is able to ferment sucrose. *Lactobacillus delbrueckii* subspecies *bulgaricus* is able to use lactose while *Lactobacillus helveticus* is able to use both lactose and galactose. *Lactobacillus amylophilus* and *Lactobacillus amylovorus* are able to ferment starch. *Lactobacillus lactis* can ferment glucose, sucrose, and galactose, and *Lactobacillus pentosus* has been used to ferment sulfite waste liquor.

#### 2.3.1.3 The Actinobacteria

The Actinobacteria are the Firmicutes with G+C content of 50% or higher. They derive their name from the fact that many members of the group have the tendency to form filaments

## 22 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

**Table 2.2** Characteristics of the lactic acid bacteria

<i>Group</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Habitat</i>	<i>Importance</i>
1	<i>Streptococcus</i> Cocci in pairs or short chains	Some in respiratory tract, mouth, intestine; others found in fermenting vegetable and silage	Some cause sore throat; non-pathogenic strains used in yoghurt manufacture
2	<i>Enterococcus</i> Cocco-bacilli usually in pairs; previously classified <i>Streptococcus</i> Lancefield Group D	Found as commensals in the human alimentary canal; sometimes cause urinary tract infections	Can be used to monitor water quality (like <i>E. coli</i> )
3	<i>Lactococcus</i> Cocci, usually occurring in pairs; hardly form chains	Plant material and alimentary canals of animals	Used as starter in yoghurt manufacture; Used as probiotic for intestinal health; Produces copious amounts of lactic acid.
4	<i>Pediococcus</i> Growth in tetrads	Found on plant materials	Spoils beer; but required in special beers such as lambic beer drunk in parts of Belgium
5	<i>Leuconostoc</i> Cocco-bacilli	Associated with plant materials	Tolerates high concentrations of salt and sugar and involved in the pickling of vegetables; produce dextrans from sucrose

**Table 2.3** Distinguishing characteristics of lactic acid bacteria

<i>Character</i>	<i>Lactobacillus</i>	<i>Enterococcus</i>	<i>Lactococcus</i>	<i>Leuconostoc</i>	<i>Pediococcus</i>	<i>Streptococcus</i>
Tetrad formation	–	–	–	–	+	–
CO <sub>2</sub> from glucose	±	–	–	+	–	–
Growth at 10°C	±	+	+	+	±	–
Growth at 45°C	±	+	–	–	±	±
Growth at 6.5% NaCl	±	+	–	±	±	–
Growth at pH 4.4	±	+	±	±	+	–
Growth at pH 9.6	–	+	–	–	–	–
Lactic acid (optical orientation)	D, L, DL	L	L	D	L, DL	L

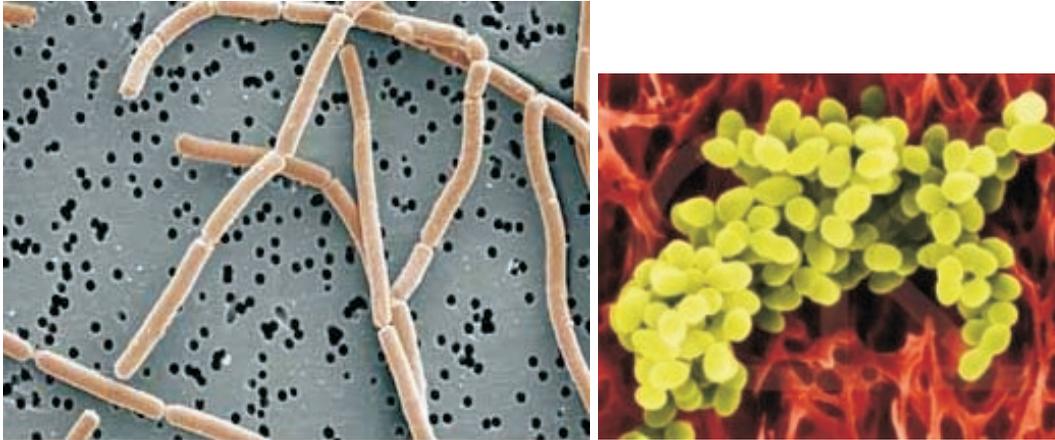
*Lactobacillus bulgaricus**Lactococcus lactis*

Fig. 2.3 Photomicrographs of Lactic Acid Bacteria

or hyphae (*actinis*, Greek for ray or beam). The industrially important members of the group are the Actinomycetes and *Corynebacterium*. *Corynebacterium* spp. are important industrially as secreters of amino acids (Chapter 21). The rest of this section will be devoted to Actinomycetes.

#### 2.3.1.3.1 The Actinomycetes

They have branching filamentous hyphae which resemble the mycelia of fungi. They are unrelated to fungi and regarded as bacteria for the following reasons: first, they have peptidoglycan in their cell walls, and second, they are about 1.0  $\mu$  in diameter, whereas fungi are at least twice that size in diameter.

As a group, the actinomycetes are unsurpassed in their ability to produce secondary metabolites of industrial importance, especially as pharmaceuticals. The best known genus is *Streptomyces*, from which many antibiotics as well as non-anti-microbial drugs have been obtained. The actinomycetes are primarily soil dwellers triggering the search for bioactive microbial metabolite from soil organisms.

### 2.3.2 Eukarya: Fungi

Fungi are members of the Eukarya which are commonly used in industrial production. The fungi are traditionally classified into four groups, namely Phycomycetes, Ascomycetes, Fungi Imperfecti, and Basidiomycetes. The following are currently used in industrial microbiology.

*Phycomycetes* (*Zygomycetes*)

*Rhizopus* and *Mucor* are used for producing various enzymes.

**Table 2.4** Description of the various groups of fungi

<i>Group</i>	<i>Ordinary Name</i>	<i>Septation of hyphae</i>	<i>Sexual Spores</i>	<i>Representative</i>
Zygomycetes (Phycomycetes)	Bread molds	Non-septate	Zygosporangium	<i>Rhizopus, Mucor</i>
Ascomycetes	Sac fungi	Septate	Ascospore (in Perithecia)	<i>Neurospora,</i> <i>Saccharomyces</i> (Yeasts)
Basidiomycetes	Mushrooms	Septate	Basidiomycetes (Mushrooms)	<i>Agaricus</i>
Deuteromycetes	Fungi imperfecti	Septate	None	<i>Penicillium, Aspergillus</i>

*Ascomycetes*

**Yeasts** are used for the production of ethanol and alcoholic beverages.

*Claviceps purpurea* is used for the production of the ergot alkaloids.

*Fungi Imperfecti*

*Aspergillus* is important because it produces the food toxin aflatoxin while *Penicillium* is well-known for the antibiotic penicillin which it produces.

*Basidiomycetes*

*Agaricus* produces the edible fruiting body or mushroom.

## 2.4 IMPORTANT CHARACTERISTICS OF INDUSTRIAL MICROBES

Microorganisms used for industrial production must meet certain requirements including those discussed below. It is important to keep these characteristics in mind when considering the candidacy of any microorganism as an input in an industrial process.

- i. The organism must be able to grow in a simple medium and should preferably not require growth factors (i.e. pre-formed vitamins, nucleotides, and acids) outside those which may be present in the industrial medium in which it is grown. It is obvious that extraneous additional growth factors may increase the cost of the fermentation and hence that of the finished product.
- ii. The organism should be able to grow vigorously and rapidly in the medium in use. A slow growing organism, regardless of its efficiency in terms of the production of the target material, could be a liability. In the first place, the slow rate of growth exposes it to a greater risk of contamination in comparison to other equally effective producers which are faster growers. Second, the rate of the turnover of the production of the desired material is lower in a slower growing organism, and hence capital and personnel are tied up for longer periods with consequently lower profits.
- iii. Not only should the organism grow rapidly, but it should also produce the desired materials, whether they be cells or metabolic products, in as short a time as possible for reasons given above.
- iv. Its end products should not include toxic and other undesirable materials, especially if these end products are for internal consumption.

- v. The organism should have a reasonable genetic and physiological stability. An organism which mutates easily is an expensive risk. It could produce undesired products if a mutation occurred unobserved. The result could be reduced yield of the expected material, production of an entirely different product, or even a toxic material. None of these situations is a help towards achieving the goal of the industry, which is the maximization of profits through the production of goods with predictable properties to which the consumer is accustomed to.
- vi. The organism should lend itself to a suitable method of product harvest at the end of the fermentation. If, for example, a yeast and a bacterium were equally suitable for manufacturing a certain product, it would be better to use the yeast if the most appropriate recovery method was centrifugation. This is due to the bacterial diameter of approximately 1  $\mu\text{m}$ , while yeasts are approximately 5  $\mu\text{m}$ . Assuming their densities are the same, yeasts would sediment 25 times more rapidly than bacteria. The faster sedimentation would result in less expenditure in terms of power, personnel supervision, etc. which could translate to higher profit.
- vii. Wherever possible, organisms which have physiological requirements which protect them against competition from contaminants should be used. An organism with optimum productivity at high temperatures, low pH values or which is able to elaborate agents inhibitory to competitors has a decided advantage over others. Thus, a thermophilic efficient producer would be preferred to a mesophilic one.
- viii. The organism should be reasonably resistant to predators such as *Bdellovibrio* spp. or bacteriophages. It should therefore be part of the fundamental research of an industrial establishment using a phage-susceptible organism to attempt to produce phage-resistant, yet high yielding, strains of the organism.
- ix. Where practicable, the organism should not demand large amounts of oxygen as aeration (through greater power demand for agitation of the fermenter impellers, forced air injection, etc.) contributes about 20% of the cost of the finished product.
- x. Lastly, the organism should be fairly easily amenable to genetic manipulation to enable the establishment of strains with more acceptable properties.

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells are factories for production of various economically important metabolites; itemize the various parts of microbial cells stating their functions.
2. Give reasons why microorganisms are industrially important.
3. A product was labeled "produced with generally recognized as safe (GRAS) microorganisms". Explain the meaning of this. List two examples of yeast, mold, and bacteria that are GRAS.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

Asai, T. 1968. The Acetic Acid Bacteria. Tokyo: The University of Tokyo Press and Baltimore: University Park Press.

## 26 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

- Axelsson, L., Ahrne, S. 2000. Lactic Acid Bacteria. *In*: Applied Microbial Systematics. F.G. Priest, M. Goodfellow (eds.) A.H. Dordrecht, the Netherlands. pp. 367–388.
- Barnett, J.A., Payne, R.W., Yarrow, D. 2000. Yeasts: Characterization and Identification. 3rd Edition. Cambridge University Press. Cambridge, UK.
- Garrity, G.M. 2001–2006. Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology. 2nd ed. Springer, New York, USA.
- Goodfellow, M., Mordaraski, M., Williams, S.T. 1984. The Biology of the Actinomycetes. Academic Press, London, UK.
- Madigan, M., Martinko, J.M. 2006. Brock Biology of Microorganisms. Upper Saddle River: Pearson Prentice Hall. 11th Edition.
- Major, A. 1975. Mushrooms Toadstools and Fungi: Arco New York, USA.
- Narayanan, N., Pradip, K., Roychoudhury, P.K., Srivastava, A. 2004. L (+) Lactic Acid Fermentation and its Product Polymerization. Electronic Journal of Biotechnology 7, Electronic Journal of Biotechnology [online]. 15 August 2004, 7, (3) [cited 23 March 2006]. Available from: <http://www.ejbiotechnology.info/content/vol2/issue3/full/3/index.html>. ISSN 0717-3458.
- Samson, R., Pitt, J.I. 1989. Modern Concepts in Penicillium and Aspergillus Classification. Plenum Press New York and London.
- Woese, C.R. 2002. On the Evolution of Cells Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America. 99, 8742–8747.

## CHAPTER 3

---

# Molecular Biology and Bioinformatics in Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

---

Our knowledge of the molecular basis of many biological phenomena has greatly increased due to new techniques such as the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and DNA sequencing. Projects involving many countries such as the human genome project have taken place. New approaches anchored on developments in molecular biology have been followed in many industrial microbiology processes and products such as vaccines, the search for new antibiotics, and the physiology of microorganisms. This chapter will discuss selected aspects of molecular biology in order to provide a background for understanding some of the newer directions of industrial microbiology and biotechnology.

### 3.1 PROTEIN SYNTHESIS

Proteins are very important in the metabolism of living organisms. They are found in hormones for transporting messages around the body; they are stored as nutrients in the eggs of birds and reptiles and in seeds; they transport oxygen in the form of hemoglobin; they are involved in contractile arrangements which enable movement of various body parts, in contractile proteins in muscles; they protect the animal body in the form of antibodies; they are in membranes where they act as receptors, participate in membrane transport and antigens, and they form toxins such as diphtheria and botulism. The most important function is to form the basis of enzymes which catalyze the entire metabolic activities of living organisms.

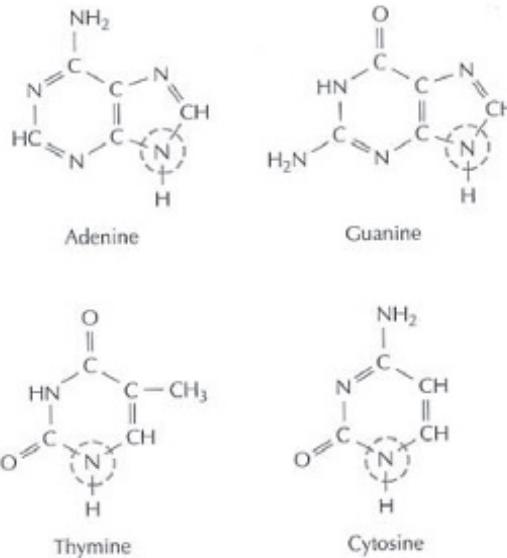
In spite of the incredible diversity of living organisms varying from bacteria to humans, the same 20 amino acids are found in all of them and the principles affecting proteins and their structure and synthesis are the same.

The genetic macromolecules are deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) and ribonucleic acid (RNA). The genetic information which determines the potential properties of a living thing is carried in the DNA present in the nucleus, except in some viruses where it is carried in

RNA. DNA is also present in the organelles mitochondria and chloroplasts. Interestingly, eggs destroy the mitochondria of the sperm that fertilize them; therefore the mitochondrial DNA of an individual comes exclusively from the mother. Due to the unique matrilineal transmission of mitochondrial DNA, data from mitochondrial DNA sequences is used in the study of genealogy and sometimes for forensic purposes.

DNA consists of four nucleotides, adenine, cytosine, guanine and thymine. RNA is very similar except that uracil replaces thymine (Fig. 3.1). RNA occurs in the nucleus and in the cytoplasm as well as in the ribosomes.

In protein synthesis, information flow is from DNA to RNA via the process of transcription, and then to protein via translation. Transcription is the making of an RNA molecule from a DNA template. Translation is the construction of a polypeptide from an amino acid sequence from an RNA molecule. The only exception to this is in retroviruses



### The Nucleotides of DNA

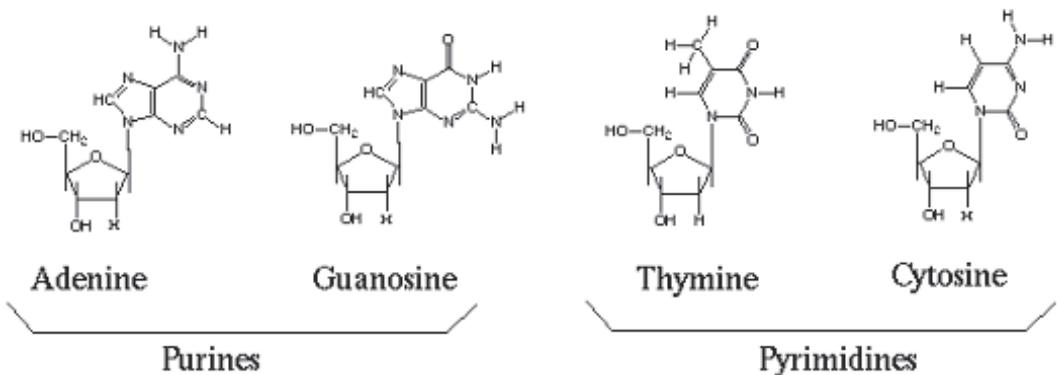


Fig. 3.1 The Nucleic Acid Bases

where reverse transcription occurs and where a single-stranded DNA is transcribed from a single-stranded RNA (the reverse of transcription). This method is used by retroviruses, which includes the HIV/AIDS virus, as well as in biotechnology.

### Transcription

An enzyme, RNA polymerase, opens the part of the DNA to be transcribed. Only one strand of DNA, the template or sense strand, is transcribed into RNA. The other strand, the anti-sense strand, is not transcribed. The RNA transcribed from the DNA is the messenger or mRNA (Fig. 3.2). In the analogy of a building, messenger RNA (mRNA) is the blueprint or plan for construction of a protein (building); ribosomal RNA (rRNA), the construction site (plot of land) where the protein is made, while transfer RNA (tRNA) is the vehicle delivering the proper amino acid (building blocks) to the building site at the right time.

In eukaryotes, after formation, mRNA leaves the nucleus and moves to the ribosomes. In prokaryotes, there is no nucleus!.

### Translation

In all cells, ribosomes are the organelles where proteins are synthesized. They consist of two-thirds of rRNA, and one-third protein. Ribosomes consist of two sub-units, a smaller sub-unit and a larger sub-unit. In prokaryotes, typified by *E. coli*, the smaller unit is 30S and larger 50S. S is Svedberg units determined from ultra-centrifugation. The 30S unit has 16S rRNA and 21 different proteins. The 50S sub-unit consists of 5S and 23S rRNA and 34 different proteins. The smaller sub-unit has a binding site for the mRNA. The larger sub-unit has two binding sites for tRNA.

The mRNA is transcribed from one strand of the DNA of the gene; it is translated at the ribosome into a polypeptide sequence. Translation is the synthesis of protein from amino acids on a template of messenger RNA in association with a ribosome. The bases

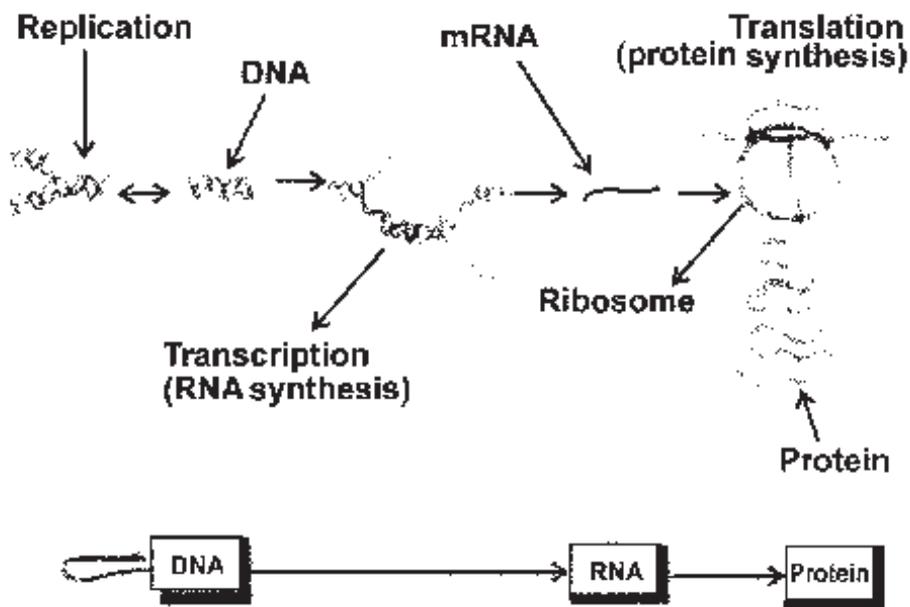


Fig. 3.2 Summary of Protein Synthesis Activities

### 30 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

on mRNA code for amino acids in triplets or codons; that is three bases code for an amino acid. Sometimes, different triplet bases may code for the same amino acid. Thus, the amino acid glycine is coded for by four different codons: GGU, GGC, GGA, and GGG. There are 64 different codons; three of these UAA, UAG, and UGA are stop codons and end the process of translation. The remaining 61 codons code for the amino acids in proteins (Table 3.1). Translation of the message generally begins at AUG, which also codes for methionine. For AUG to act as a start codon, it must be preceded by a ribosome binding site. If that is not the case, it simply codes for methionine.

Promoters are sequences of DNA that are the start signals for the transcription of mRNA. Terminators are the stop signals. Generally, mRNA molecules can be 500–10,000 nucleotides long.

Ribosomes are the sites of translation. The ribosomes move along the mRNA and bring together the amino acids for joining into proteins by enzymes.

Transfer RNAs (tRNAs) carry amino acids to mRNA for linking and elongation into proteins. There are 61 different tRNAs, each having a different binding site for the amino acid and a different anticodon. For the codon UUU, the complementary anticodon is AAA. Amino acid linkage to the proper tRNA is controlled by the aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase. Energy for binding the amino acid to tRNA comes from ATP conversion to adenosine monophosphate (AMP).

**Table 3.1** The genetic code – codons

	U	C	A	G	
U	UUU = Phe	UCU = Ser	UAU = Tyr	UGU = Cys	U
	UUC = Phe	UCC = Ser	UAC = Tyr	UGC = Cys	C
	UUA = Leu	UCA = Ser	UAA = Stop	UAG = Stop	A
	UUG = Leu	UCG = Ser	UGA = Stop	UGG = Trp	G
C	CUU = Leu	CCU = Pro	CAU = His	CGU = Arg	U
	CUC = Leu	CCC = Pro	CAC = His	CGC = Arg	C
	CUA = Leu	CCA = Pro	CAA = Gln	CGA = Arg	A
	CUG = Leu	CCG = Pro	CAG = Gln	CGG = Arg	G
A	AUU = Ile	ACU = Thr	AAU = Asn	AGU = Ser	U
	AUC = Ile	ACC = Thr	AAC = Asn	AGC = Ser	C
	AUA = Ile	ACA = Thr	AAA = Lys	AGA = Arg	A
	AUG = Met	ACG = Thr	AAG = Lys	AGG = Arg	G
G	GUU = Val	GCU = Ala	GAU = Asp	GGU = Gly	U
	GUC = Val	GCC = Ala	GAC = Asp	GCG = Gly	C
	GUA = Val	GCA = Ala	GAA = Glu	GGA = Gly	A
	GUG = Val	GCG = Ala	GAG = Glu	GGG = Gly	G

AUG = start codon

UAA, UAG, and UGA = stop (nonsense) codons

#### Amino Acids

Phe = phenylalanine	Ser = serine	His = histidine	Glu = glutamic acid
Leu = leucine	Pro = proline	Gln = glutamine	Cys = cysteine
Ile = isoleucine	Thr = threonine	Asn = asparagine	Trp = tryptophan
Met = methionine	Ala = alanine	Lys = lysine	Arg = arginine
Val = valine	Tyr = tyrosine	Asp = aspartic acid	Gly = glycine

Elongation terminates when the ribosome reaches a stop codon, which does not code for an amino acid and hence is not recognized by tRNA.

After protein has been synthesized, secondary, tertiary and quadruple folding of the primary protein chain occurs. The folding exposes chemical groups which confer their peculiar properties to the protein.

Protein folding (to give a three-dimensional structure) is the process by which a protein assumes its functional shape or conformation. All protein molecules are simple unbranched chains of amino acids, but it is by coiling into a specific three-dimensional shape that they are able to perform their biological function. The three-dimensional shape (3D) conformation of a protein is of utmost importance in determining the properties and functions of the protein. Depending on how a protein is folded, different functional groups may be exposed, and these exposed groups influence its properties.

The reverse of the folding process is protein denaturation, whereby a native protein is caused to lose its functional conformation and become an amorphous and non-functional amino acid chain. Denatured proteins may lose their solubility and precipitate, becoming insoluble solids. In some cases, denaturation is reversible, and proteins may refold. In many other cases, however, denaturation is irreversible. Denaturation occurs when a protein is subjected to unfavorable conditions, such as unfavorable temperature or pH. Many proteins fold spontaneously during or after their synthesis inside cells, but the folding depends on the characteristics of their surrounding solution, including the identity of the primary solvent (either water or lipid inside the cells), the concentration of salts, the temperature, and molecular chaperones. Incorrect folding sometimes occurs and is responsible for prion related illness such as Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, Bovine spongiform encephalopathy (mad cow disease), and amyloid related illnesses such as Alzheimer's Disease. When enzyme molecules are misfolded, they will not function.

### 3.2 THE POLYMERASE CHAIN REACTION

The Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR) is a technology used to amplify small amounts of DNA. The PCR technique was invented in 1985 by Kary B. Mullis while working as a chemist at the Cetus Corporation, a biotechnology firm in Emeryville, California. This technology is so useful that Mullis won the Nobel Prize for its discovery in 1993, eight years later. It has found extensive use in a wide range of situations, from the medical diagnosis to microbial systematics and from courts of law to the study of animal behavior.

The requirements for PCR are:

- a. The DNA or RNA to be amplified
- b. Two primers
- c. The four nucleotides found in the nucleic acid
- d. A heat stable (thermostable) DNA polymerase derived from the thermophilic bacterium, *Thermus aquaticus*, *Taq* polymerase

*The Primer:* A primer is a short segment of nucleotides which is complementary (Fig. 3.3) to a section of the DNA which is to be amplified in the PCR reaction.

Primers anneal to the denatured DNA template to provide an initiation site for the elongation of the new DNA molecule. For PCR, primers must be duplicates of nucleotide sequences on either side of the piece of DNA of interest. This means that the exact order of the primers' nucleotides must already be known.

## 32 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology



Fig. 3.3 Primer-Template Annealing

*The Procedure:* There are three major steps in a PCR, which are repeated for 30 or 40 cycles. This is done on an automated cycler, which can heat and cool the tubes with the reaction mixture at specific intervals.

### a. Denaturation at 94°C

The unknown DNA is heated to about 94°C, which causes the DNA to denature and the paired strands to separate.

### b. Annealing at 54°C

A large excess of primers relative to the amount of DNA being amplified is added and the reaction mixture cooled to allow double-strands to anneal. Because of the large excess of primers, the DNA single strands will bind more to the primers instead of with each other.

### c. Extension at 72°C

This is the ideal working temperature for the polymerase. Primers that are on positions with no exact match, detach again (because of the higher temperature) and do not produce an extension of the fragment. The bases (complementary to the template) are coupled to the primer on the 3' side (the polymerase adds dNTP's from 5' to 3', reading the template from 3' to 5' side, bases are added complementary to the template).

d. **The Amplification:** The process of the amplification is shown in [Fig. 3.4](#).

## 3.2.1 PCR in Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

PCR is extremely efficient and simple to perform. It is useful in biotechnology in the following areas:

- to generate large amounts of DNA for genetic engineering or for sequencing;
- to determine with great certainty the identity of an organism to be used in a biotechnological production, as may be the case when a group of organisms may include some members which are undesirable;
- PCR can be used to determine rapidly which organism is the cause of contamination in a production process so as to eliminate its cause, provided the primers appropriate to the contaminant are available.

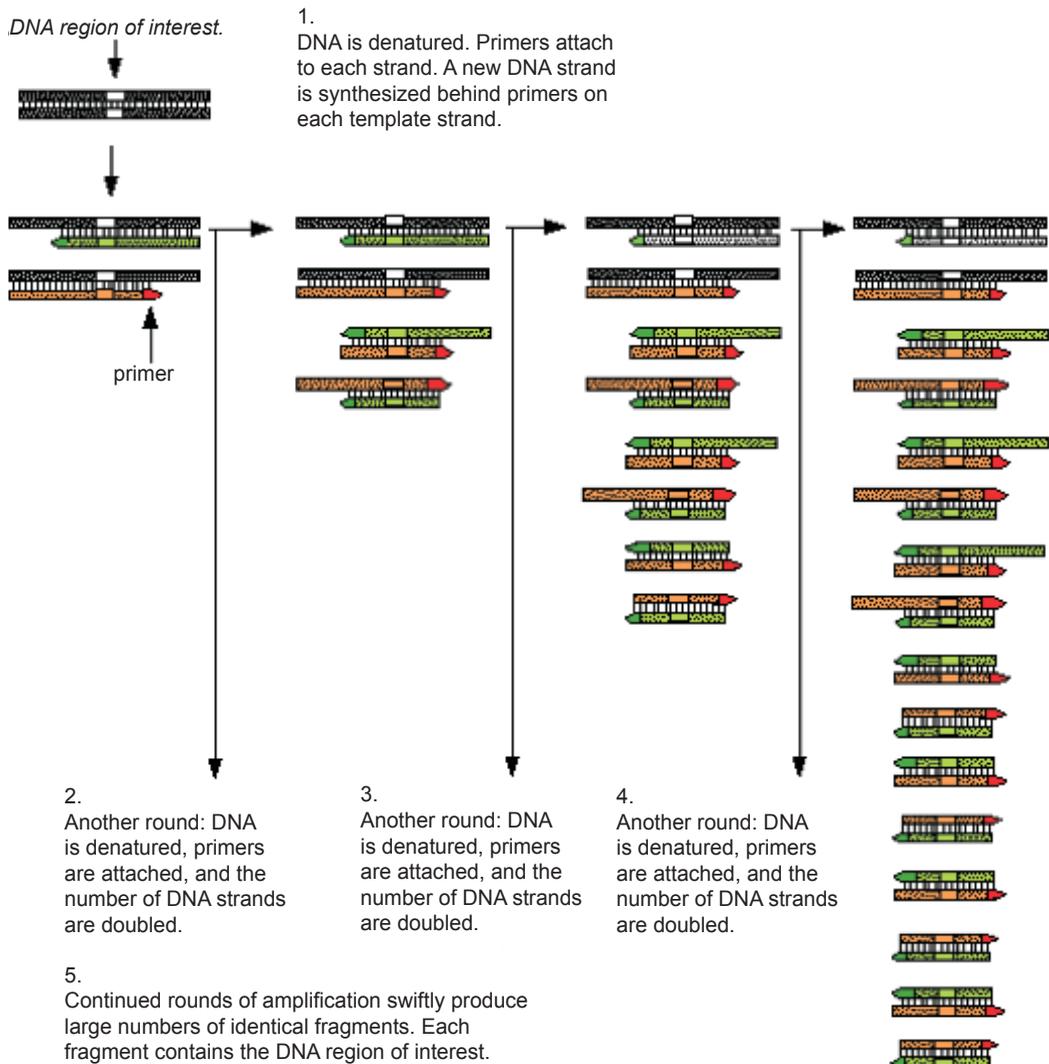


Fig. 3.4 Diagrammatic Representation of PCR

### 3.3 MICROARRAYS

The availability of complete genomes from many organisms is a major achievement of biology. Aside from the human genome, the complete genomes of many microorganisms have been completed. The major challenge is now to decipher the biological function and regulation of the sequenced genes. One technology important in studying functional microbial genomics is the use of DNA Microarrays.

Microarrays are microscopic arrays of large sets of DNA sequences that have been attached to a solid substrate using automated equipment. These arrays are also referred to as microchips, biochips, DNA chips, and gene chips.

34 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

DNA microarrays are small, solid supports onto which the sequences from thousands of different genes are immobilized at fixed locations. The supports themselves are usually glass microscope slides, silicon chips, or nylon membranes. The DNA is printed, spotted, or actually directly synthesized onto the support mechanically at fixed locations or addresses. The spots themselves can be DNA, cDNA, or oligonucleotides.

The process is based on hybridization probing (Fig. 3.5). Single-stranded sequences on the microarray are labeled with a fluorescent tag or fluorescein and are in fixed locations on

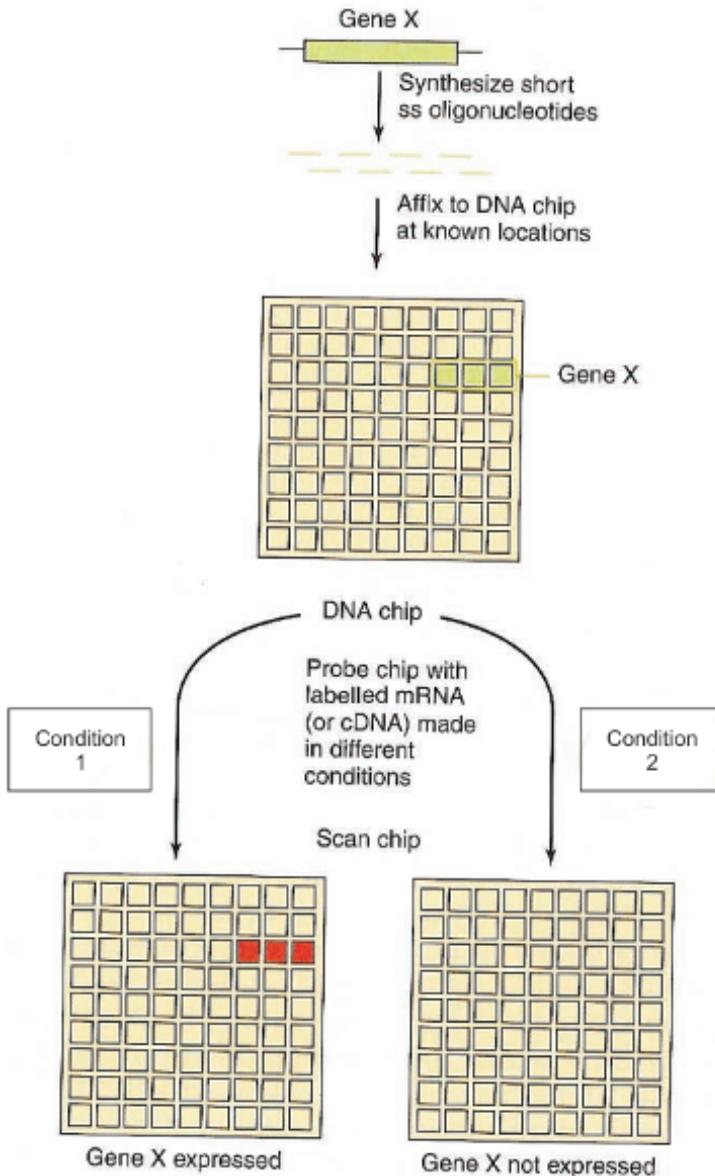


Fig. 3.5 Representation of the Microarray Procedure (after Madigan and Martinko 2006)

the support. In microarray assays, an unknown sample is hybridized to an ordered array of immobilized DNA molecules of known sequence to produce a specific hybridization pattern that can be analyzed and compared to a given standard. The labeled DNA strand in solution is generally called the target, while the DNA immobilized on the microarray is the probe, a terminology opposite the one used in Southern blot. Microarrays have the following advantages over other nucleic acid based approaches:

- a. High through-put: thousands of array elements can be deposited on a very small surface area enabling gene expression to be monitored at the genomic level. Also many components of a microbial community can be monitored simultaneously in a single experiment.
- b. High sensitivity: small amounts of the target and probe are restricted to a small area ensuring high concentrations and very rapid reactions.
- c. Differential display: different target samples can be labeled with different fluorescent tags and then hybridized to the same microarray, allowing the simultaneous analysis of two or more biological samples.
- d. Low background interference: non-specific binding to the solid surface is very low resulting in easy removal of organic and fluorescent compounds that attach to microarrays during fabrication.
- e. Automation: microarray technology is amenable to automation making it ultimately cost-effective when compared with other nucleic acid technologies.

### **3.3.1 Applications of Microarray Technology**

Microarray technology has found use in a some areas which have importance in microbiology in general as well as in industrial microbiology and biotechnology, including disease diagnosis, drug discovery, and toxicological research.

Microarrays are particularly useful in studying gene function. A microarray works by exploiting the ability of a given mRNA molecule to bind specifically to, or hybridize to, the DNA template from which it originated. By using an array containing many DNA samples, it is possible to determine in a single experiment the expression levels of hundreds or thousands of genes within a cell by measuring the amount of mRNA bound to each site on the array. With the aid of a computer, the amount of mRNA bound to the spots on the microarray is precisely measured, generating a profile of gene expression in the cell. It is thus possible to determine the bioactive potential of a particular microbial metabolite as a beneficial material in the form of a drug or its deleterious effect.

## **3.4 SEQUENCING OF DNA**

### **3.4.1 Sequencing of Short DNA Fragments**

DNA sequencing is the determination of the precise sequence of nucleotides in a sample of DNA. Two methods developed in the mid-1970s are available: the Maxim and Gilbert method and the Sanger method. Both methods produce DNA fragments which are studied with gel electrophoresis. The Sanger method is also called the dideoxy method, or the enzymatic method. The dideoxy method gets its name from the critical role played by synthetic analogues of nucleotides that lack the -OH at the 3' carbon position. When

deoxynucleotide triphosphates (dNTP) are used the DNA strand continues to grow, but when the dideoxynucleotide (ddNTP) analogue is incorporated, chain elongation stops because there is no 3' -OH for the next nucleotide to be attached to. For this reason, the dideoxy method is also called the chain termination method.

For Sanger sequencing, a single strand of the DNA to be sequenced is mixed with a primer, DNA polymerase I, an excess of normal nucleotide triphosphates and a limiting (about 5%) of the ddNTP labeled with a fluorescent dye. Each ddNTP is labeled with a different fluorescent dye color. This primer will determine the starting point of the sequence being read and the direction of the sequencing reaction. DNA synthesis begins with the primer and terminates in a DNA chain when ddNTP is incorporated in place of normal dNTP. As all four normal nucleotides are present, chain elongation proceeds normally, until by chance, DNA polymerase inserts a dideoxy nucleotide instead of the normal deoxy nucleotide. The result is a series of fragments of varying lengths. Each of the four nucleotides is run separately with the appropriate ddNTP. The mix with the ddCTP produces fragments with C (cytosine) terminal; that with ddTTP (thymine) produces fragments with T terminals, etc. The fluorescent strands are separated from the DNA template and electrophoresed on a polyacrylamide gel to separate them according their lengths. If the gel is read manually, four lanes are prepared, one for each of the four reaction mixes. In an automated system, all four are mixed in one reaction and electrophoresed together. As the ddNTPs are of different colors, a scanner can scan the gel and record each color (nucleotide) separately. The Sanger method is used for relatively short fragments of DNA, about 700–800 nucleotides.

### 3.4.2 Sequencing of Genomes or Large DNA Fragments

The best example of the sequencing of a genome is perhaps that of the human genome. During the sequencing of the human genome, two approaches were followed: the use of bacterial artificial chromosomes (BACs) and the shotgun sequencing approach.

#### 3.4.2.1 Use of bacterial artificial chromosomes (BACs)

The publicly-funded Human Genome Project, the National Institutes of Health and the National Science Foundation have funded the creation of 'libraries' of BAC clones. Each BAC carries a large piece of human genomic DNA of the order of 100–300 kb. All of these BACs overlap randomly, so that any one gene is probably on several different overlapping BACs. Those BACs can be replicated as many times as necessary, so there is a virtually endless supply of the large human DNA fragment. The BACs are subjected to shotgun sequencing to figure out their sequence. By sequencing all the BACs, we know enough of the sequence in overlapping segments to reconstruct how the original chromosome sequence looks.

#### 3.4.2.2 Use of the shot-gun approach

An innovative approach to sequencing the human genome was pioneered by a privately-funded sequencing project, Celera Genomics. The founders of this company realized that it might be possible to skip the entire step of making libraries of BAC clones. Instead, they blast apart the entire human genome into fragments of 2–10 kb and sequenced them. The challenge was to assemble those fragments of sequence into the whole genome sequence. It

was like having hundreds of 500-piece puzzles, each being assembled by a team of puzzle experts using puzzle-solving computers. Those puzzles were like BACs: smaller puzzles that make a big genome manageable. Celera threw all those puzzles together and used powerful computers to fit the pieces together.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION OF GENES IN DNA SEQUENCES

Regions of DNA that encode proteins are first transcribed into messenger RNA and then translated into protein. By examining the DNA sequence alone, we can determine the putative sequence of amino acids that will appear in the final protein. During translation, codons of three nucleotides determine which amino acid will be added next in the growing protein chain. On mRNA start codon is usually AUG, while the stop codons are UAA, UAG, and UGA. The open reading frame (ORF) is that portion of a DNA segment which will putatively code for a protein; it begins with a start codon and ends with a stop codon.

Once a gene has been sequenced, it is important to determine the correct open reading frame. Every region of DNA has six possible reading frames, three in each direction because a codon consists of three nucleotides. The reading frame that is used determines which amino acids will be encoded by a gene. Typically, only one reading frame is used in translating a gene (in eukaryotes), and this is often the longest open reading frame. Once the open reading frame is known, the DNA sequence can be translated into its corresponding amino acid sequence.

For example, the sequence of DNA in Fig. 3.6 can be read in six reading frames: three in the forward and three in the reverse direction. The three reading frames in the forward direction are shown with the translated amino acids below each DNA sequence. Frame 1 starts with the 'a', Frame 2 with the 't' and Frame 3 with the 'g'. Stop codons are indicated by an '\*' in the protein sequence. The longest ORF is in Frame 1.

Genes can be identified in a number of ways, which are discussed below.

#### i. Using computer programs

The open reading frame (ORF) is deduced from the start and stop codons. In prokaryotic cells which do not have many exons (intervening non-coding regions of the chromosome), the ORF will in most cases indicate a gene. However, it is tedious to manually determine ORFs and many computer programs now exist which will scan the base sequences of a genome and identify putative genes (Table 3.2). In scanning a genome or DNA sequence for genes (that is, in searching for functional ORFs), the following are taken into account in the computer programs:

- a. usually, functional ORFs are fairly long and do not usually contain less than 100 codons;
- b. if the types of codons found in the ORF being studied are also found in known functional ORFs, then the ORF being studied is likely to be functional;
- c. the ORF is also likely to be functional if its sequences are similar to functional sequences in genomes of other organisms;
- d. in prokaryotes, the ribosomal translation does not start at the first possible (earliest 5') codon. Instead, it starts at the codon immediately downstream of the Shine-Dalgarno binding site sequences. The Shine-Dalgarno sequence is a short sequence of nucleotides upstream of the translational start site that binds to ribosomal RNA

### 38 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

```

5'                                     3'
atgccccaaagctgaatagcggtagaggggcttttcctcactttgagggaacgatgtataa

1 atg ccc aag ctg aat agc gta gag ggg ttt tca tca tct gag gac gat gta
   M P K L N S V E G F S S F E D D V
   taa
   A
2 tgc cca agc tga ata ggc tag agg ggt ttc cat cat ctg agg aag atg tat
   C P S * I A * R G F H H L R T M Y
3 ggc cca gct gaa tag cgt aga ggg gtc ttc atc att tga gga cga tgc

```

**Fig. 3.6** Sequence from a Hypothetical DNA Fragment

**Table 3.2** Some Internet tools for the gene discovery in DNA sequence bases (modified from Fickett (1996))

Category	Services	Organism(s)	Web address
Database search	BLAST; search sequence bases	Any	<a href="mailto:blast@ncbi.nlm.nih.gov">blast@ncbi.nlm.nih.gov</a>
	FASTA; search sequence bases	Any	<a href="mailto:fasta@ebi.ac.uk">fasta@ebi.ac.uk</a>
	BLOCKS; search for functional motifs	Any	<a href="mailto:blocks@howard.flicr.org">blocks@howard.flicr.org</a>
	Profilescan	Any	<a href="http://ulrec3.unil.ch">http://ulrec3.unil.ch</a>
	MotifFinder	Any	<a href="mailto:motif@genome.ad.jp">motif@genome.ad.jp</a>
Gene Identification	FGENEH; integrated gene identification	Human	<a href="mailto:service@theory.bchs.uh.edu">service@theory.bchs.uh.edu</a>
	GeneID; integrated gene identification	Vetebrate	<a href="mailto:geneid@bircebd.uwf.edu">geneid@bircebd.uwf.edu</a>
	GRAIL; integrated gene identification	Human	<a href="mailto:grail@ornl.gov">grail@ornl.gov</a>
	EcoParse; integrated gene identification	<i>Escherichia coli</i>	

and thereby brings the ribosome to the initiation codon on the mRNA. The computer program searches for a Shine-Dalgarno sequence and finding it helps to indicate not only which start codon is used, but also that the ORF is likely to be functional.

- e. if the ORF is preceded by a typical promoter (if consensus promoter sequences for the given organism are known, check for the presence of a similar upstream region).
- f. if the ORF has a typical GC content, codon frequency, or oligonucleotide composition of known protein-coding genes from the same organism, then it is likely to be a functional ORF.

#### ii. Comparison with Existing Genes

It may be possible to deduce not only the functionality of a gene (i.e. a functional ORF) or the lack thereof, but also the function of a gene. This can be done by comparing an unknown sequence with the sequence of a known gene available in databases.

### 3.6 METAGENOMICS

Metagenomics is the genomic analysis of the collective genome of an assemblage of organisms or 'metagenome.' Metagenomics describes the functional and sequence-based analysis of the collective microbial genomes contained in an environmental sample.

Many environments have been the focus of metagenomics, including soil, the oral cavity, feces, aquatic habitats as well as the hospital metagenome, a term intended to encompass the genetic potential of organisms in hospitals that contribute to public health concerns such as antibiotic resistance and nosocomial infections.

Uncultured microorganisms comprise the majority of the planet earth's biological diversity. In many environments, up to 99% of the microorganisms cannot be cultured by standard techniques. Therefore, culture-independent methods are essential to understand the genetic diversity, population structure, and ecological roles of the majority of microorganisms in a given environmental situation. Metagenomics, or the culture-independent genomic analysis of an assemblage of microorganisms, has potential to answer fundamental questions in microbial ecology. It can also be applied to determining organisms which may be important in a new industrial process still under study. Several markers have been used in metagenomics, including 16S mRNA, and the genes encoding DNA polymerases, because these are highly conserved. The marker most commonly used is the sequence of the 16S mRNA.

Its potential application in biotechnology and industrial microbiology is that it can facilitate the identification of uncultured organisms whose role in a multi-organism environment such as sewage or the degradation of a recalcitrant chemical in soil may be hampered because of the inability to culture the organism. Indeed, a method has been patented for isolating organisms of pharmaceutical importance from uncultured organisms in the environment.

### 3.7 NATURE OF BIOINFORMATICS

Bioinformatics is a new and evolving science and may be defined as the use of computers to store, compare, retrieve, analyze, predict, or simulate the composition or the structure of the genetic macromolecules, DNA and RNA and their major product, proteins. Important research efforts in bioinformatics include sequence alignment, gene finding, genome assembly, protein structure alignment, protein structure prediction, prediction of gene expression and protein-protein interactions, and the modeling of evolution. Bioinformatics uses mathematical tools to extract useful information from a variety of data produced by high-throughput biological techniques. Examples of successful extraction of orderly information from a 'forest' of seemingly chaotic information include the assembly of high-quality DNA sequences from fragmentary 'shotgun' DNA sequencing and the prediction of gene regulation with data from mRNA microarrays or mass spectrometry.

The increased role of bioinformatics in biotechnology is due to a vast increase in computation speed and memory storage capability making it possible to undertake problems unthinkable without the aid of computers. Such problems include large-scale sequencing of genomes and management of large integrated databases over the Internet. This improved computational capability integrated with large-scale miniaturization of biochemical techniques such as PCR, BAC, gel electrophoresis, and microarray chips has delivered enormous amount of genomic and proteomic data to the researchers. The result is an explosion of data on genome and proteome analysis leading to many new discoveries

## 40 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

and tools that are not possible in wet-laboratory experiments. Thus, hundreds of microbial genomes and many eukaryotic genomes including a cleaner draft of human genome have been sequenced raising the expectation of better control of microorganisms. Bioinformatics has been used in the following four areas:

- a. *genomics*—sequencing and comparative study of genomes to identify gene and genome functionality,
- b. *proteomics*—identification and characterization of protein related properties and reconstruction of metabolic and regulatory pathways,
- c. cell visualization and simulation to study and model cell behavior, and
- d. application to the development of drugs and anti-microbial agents.

The potential gains, especially following the sequencing of the human genome and many microorganisms, are greater understanding of the genetics of microorganisms and their subsequent improved control leading to better diagnosis of the diseases through the use of protein biomarkers, protection against diseases using cost effective vaccines, rational drug design, and improvement in agricultural quality and quantity.

### 3.7.1 Contributions of Bioinformatics to Biotechnology

Some contributions made by bioinformatics to biotechnology include the following.

#### i. Automatic genome sequencing

The major contribution of the bioinformatics in genome sequencing has been in the: (i) development of automated sequencing techniques that integrate the PCR or BAC based amplification, 2D gel electrophoresis, and automated reading of nucleotides, (ii) joining the sequences of smaller fragments (contigs) together to form a complete genome sequence, and (iii) the prediction of promoters and protein coding regions of the genome.

PCR (Polymerase Chain Reaction) or BAC (Bacterial Artificial Chromosome)-based amplification techniques derive limited size fragments of a genome. The available fragment sequences suffer from nucleotide reading errors, repeats (very small and very similar fragments that fit in two or more parts of a genome), and chimera (two different parts of the genome or artifacts caused by contamination that join end-to-end giving an artifactual fragment). Generating multiple copies of the fragments, aligning the fragments, and using the majority voting at the same nucleotide positions solve the nucleotide reading error problem. Multiple experimental copies are needed to establish repeats and chimeras. Chimeras and repeats are removed before the final assembly of the genome-fragments. Using mathematical models, the fragments are joined. To join contigs, the fragments with larger nucleotide sequence overlap are joined first.

#### ii. Automated identification of genes

After the contigs are joined, the next issue is to identify the protein coding regions or ORFs (open reading frames) in the genomes. The identification of ORFs is based on the principles described earlier. The two programs which are used are GLIMMER and GenBank.

#### iii. Identifying gene function: searching and alignment

After identifying the ORFs, the next step is to annotate the genes with proper structure and function. The function of the gene has been identified using popular sequence search

and pair-wise gene alignment techniques. The four most popular algorithms used for functional annotation of the genes are BLAST, BLOSUM, ClustalX, and SMART.

#### iv. Three-dimensional (3D) structure modeling

A protein may exist under one or more conformational states depending upon its interaction with other proteins. Under a stable conformational state, certain regions of the protein are exposed for protein-protein or protein-DNA interactions. Since the function is also dependent upon exposed active sites, protein function can be predicted by matching the 3D structure of an unknown protein with the 3D structure of a known protein.

#### v. Pair-wise genome comparison

After the identification of gene-functions, a natural step is to perform pair-wise genome comparisons. Pair-wise genome comparison of a genome against itself provides the details of paralogous genes (duplicated genes that have similar sequence with some variation in function). Pair-wise genome comparisons of a genome against other genomes have been used to identify a wealth of information such as orthologous genes (functionally equivalent genes diverged in two genomes due to speciation), different types of gene-groups (adjacent genes that are constrained to occur in close proximity due to their involvement in some common higher level function), lateral gene-transfer (gene transfer from a microorganism that is evolutionary distant), gene-fusion/gene-fission, gene-group duplication, gene-duplication, and difference analysis to identify genes specific to a group of genomes such as pathogens, and conserved genes.

In conclusion, despite the recent emergence of bioinformatics, it is already making big impacts on biotechnology. Except for the availability of bioinformatics techniques, the vast amount of data generated by genome sequencing projects would be unmanageable and would not be interpreted due to the lack of expert manpower and the prohibitive cost of sustaining such an effort. In the last decade, bioinformatics has silently filled in the role of cost effective data analysis. This has quickened the pace of discoveries, the drug and vaccine design, and the design of anti-microbial agents. The major impact of bioinformatics in microbiology and biotechnology has been in automating microbial genome sequencing, the development of integrated databases over the Internet, and analysis of genomes to understand gene and genome function. Programs exist for comparing gene-pair alignments which become the first steps to derive the gene-function and the functionality of genomes. Using bioinformatics techniques it is now possible to compare genomes so as to (i) identify conserved function within a genome family; (ii) identify specific genes in a group of genomes; and (iii) model 3D structures of proteins and docking of biochemical compounds and receptors.

### END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Explain the process of polymerase chain reaction and its relevance to industrial microbiology and biotechnology.
2. Why is it necessary to produce cDNA for expression of a eukaryotic gene in *E. coli*?
3. Define Bioinformatics and explain its significance to industrial microbiology and biotechnology.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Bansal, K.A. 2005. Bioinformatics in Microbial Biotechnology—A Mini Review. *Microbial Cell Factories*. 2005, 4, 19–30.
- Dorrel, N., Champoin, O.L., Wren, B.W. 2002. Application of DNA Microarray for Comparative and Evolutionary Genomics. *In: Methods in Microbiology*. Vol. 33, Academic Press Amsterdam; the Netherlands. pp. 83–99.
- Handelsman, J., Liles, M., Mann, D., Riesenfeld, C., Goodman, R.M. 2002. *In: Methods in Microbiology*. Vol. 33, Academic Press Amsterdam; the Netherlands. pp. 242–255.
- Hinds, J., Liang, K.G., Mangan, J.A., Butecer, P.D. 2002. Glass Slide Microarrays for Bacterial Genomes. *In: Methods in Microbiology*. Vol. 33, Academic Press Amsterdam; the Netherlands. pp. 83–99.
- Hinds, J., Witney, A.A., Vaas, J.K. 2002. Microarray Design for Bacterial Genomes. *In: Methods in Microbiology*. Vol. 33, Academic Press Amsterdam; the Netherlands. pp. 67–82.
- Madigan, M., Martinko, J.M. 2006. *Brock Biology of Microorganisms* 11th ed. Pearson Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, USA.
- Manyak, D.M., Carlson, P.S. 1999. Combinatorial Genomics™: New Tools to Access Microbial Chemical Diversity. *In: Microbial Biosystems: New Frontiers*. C.R. Bell, M. Brylinsky, P. Johnson-Green (eds.) Proceedings of the 8th International Symposium on Microbial Ecology Atlantic Canada Society for Microbial Ecology, Halifax, Canada, 1999.
- Priest, F., Austin, B. 1993. *Modern Bacterial Taxonomy*. Chapman and Hall. London, UK.
- Riesenfeld, C.S., Schloss, P.D., Handelsman, J. 2004. Metagenomics: Genomic Analysis of Microbial Communities. *Annual Review of Genetics*. 38, 525–52.
- Rogic, S., Mackworth, A.K., Ouellette, F.B.F. 2001. Evaluation of Gene-Finding Programs on Mammalian Sequences *Genome Research*. 11, 817–832.
- Whitford, D. 2005. *Proteins: Structure and Function*. John Wiley and Sons Chichester, UK.
- Zhou, J. 2002. Microarrays: Applications in Environmental Microbiology. *In: Encyclopedia of Environmental Microbiology*. Vol. 4. Wiley Interscience, New York USA. pp. 1968–1979.

---

# Nutrient Media for Cultivation of Industrial Microorganisms and Generation of Microbial Products

---

The use of a good, adequate, and industrially usable medium is as important as the deployment of a suitable microorganism in industrial microbiology. Unless the medium is adequate, no matter how innately productive the organism is, it will not be possible to harness the organism's full industrial potential. Liquid media are generally employed in industry because they require less space, are more amenable to engineering processes, and eliminate the cost of providing agar and other solid agents.

## 4.1 THE BASIC NUTRIENT REQUIREMENTS OF INDUSTRIAL MEDIA

All microbiological media, whether for industrial or for laboratory purposes, must satisfy the needs of the organism in terms of carbon, nitrogen, minerals, growth factors, and water. In addition, they must not contain materials which are inhibitory to growth. Ideally it would be essential to perform a complete analysis of the organism to be grown in order to decide how much of the various elements should be added to the medium. Figures for the three major groups of heterotrophic organisms usually grown on an industrial scale are available and may be used in such calculations ([Table 4.1](#)).

*Carbon or energy* requirements are usually met from carbohydrates, notably (in laboratory experiments) from glucose. However, more complex carbohydrates such as starch or cellulose may be utilized by some organisms. Energy sources may also include hydrocarbons, alcohols, or even organic acids.

In composing an industrial medium, the carbon content must be adequate for the production of cells. For most organisms, the weight of organism produced from a given weight of carbohydrates (known as the yield constant) under aerobic conditions is about

#### 44 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

**Table 4.1** Average composition of microorganisms (% dry weight)

<i>Component</i>	<i>Bacteria</i>	<i>Yeast</i>	<i>Molds</i>
Carbon	48 (46–52)	48 (46–52)	48 (45–55)
Nitrogen	12.5 (10–14)	7.5 (6–8.5)	6 (4–7)
Protein	55 (50–60)	40 (35–45)	32 (25–40)
Carbohydrates	9 (6–15)	38 (30–45)	49 (40–55)
Lipids	7 (5–10)	8 (5–10)	8 (5–10)
Nucleic Acids	23 (15–25)	8 (5–10)	5 (2–8)
Ash	6 (4–10)	6 (4–10)	4 (4–10)
Minerals (same for all three organisms)			
		1.0–2.5	
		0.3–1.0	
		0.1–0.5	
		0.01–0.1	
		0.001–0.01	

0.5 gram of dry cells per gram of glucose. This means that carbohydrates are at least twice the expected weight of the cells and must be put as glucose or its equivalent compound.

*Nitrogen* is found in proteins including enzymes as well as in nucleic acids, hence it is a key element in the cell. Most cells would use ammonia or other nitrogen salts. The quantity of nitrogen to be added in a fermentation can be calculated from the expected cell mass and the average composition of the micro-organisms used. For bacteria the average N content is 12.5%. Therefore, the production of 5 g of bacterial cells per liter would require about 625 mg N (Table 4.1). Any nitrogen compound which the organism cannot synthesize must be added.

*Minerals* form component portions of some enzymes in the cell and must be present in the medium. The major mineral elements needed include P, S, Mg and Fe. Trace elements required include manganese, boron, zinc, copper, and molybdenum.

*Growth factors* include vitamins, amino acids and nucleotides and must be added to the medium if the organism cannot manufacture them.

Under laboratory conditions, it is possible to meet the organism's requirement by the use of purified chemicals since microbial growth is generally usually limited to a few liters. However, on an industrial scale, the volume of the fermentation could be in the order of thousands of liters. Therefore, pure chemicals are not usually used because of their high expense, unless the cost of the finished material justifies their use. Pure chemicals are however used when industrial media are being developed at the laboratory level. The results of such studies are used in composing the final industrial medium, which is usually made with unpurified raw materials. The extraneous materials present in these unpurified raw materials are not always a disadvantage and may indeed be responsible for the final and distinctive property of the product.

## 4.2 CRITERIA FOR RAW MATERIALS IN INDUSTRIAL MEDIA

In deciding the raw materials to be used in the production of given products using designated microorganism(s) the following factors should be taken into account.

### *(a) Cost of the material*

The cheaper the raw materials the more competitive the selling price of the final product will be. Therefore, regardless of the suitability of a nutrient raw material, it will not usually be employed in an industrial process if its cost is so high that the selling price of the final product is not economic. Thus, although lactose is more suitable than glucose in some processes (e.g. penicillin production) because of the slow rate of its utilization, it is usually replaced by the cheaper glucose. When used, glucose is added only in small quantities intermittently in order to decelerate acid production. Due to these economic considerations the raw materials used in many industrial media are usually waste products from other processes.

### *(b) Ready availability of the raw material*

The raw material must be readily available in order not to halt production. If it is seasonal or imported, then it must be possible to store it for a reasonable period. Many industrial establishments keep large stocks of their raw materials for this purpose. Large stocks help beat the ever rising cost of raw materials. Nevertheless, large stocks mean that money which could have found use elsewhere is spent in constructing large warehouses or storage depots and in ensuring that the raw materials are not attacked during storage by microorganisms, rodents, insects, etc. The material being used must be capable of long-term storage without concomitant deterioration in quality.

### *(c) Transportation costs*

Proximity of the user-industry to the site of production of the raw materials is a factor of great importance, because the cost of the raw materials and of the finished material and hence its competitiveness on the market can all be affected by the transportation costs.

### *(d) Ease of disposal of wastes resulting from the raw materials*

The disposal of industrial waste is rigidly controlled in many countries. Waste materials often find use as raw materials for other industries. Thus, spent grains from breweries can be used as animal feed. But in some cases no further use may be found for the waste from an industry. Its disposal, especially where government regulatory intervention is rigid, could be expensive. When choosing a raw material therefore, the cost of treating its waste must be considered.

### *(e) Uniformity in the quality of the raw material and ease of standardization*

The quality of the raw material in terms of its composition must be reasonably constant in order to ensure uniformity of quality in the final product and the satisfaction of the customers and their expectations. A raw material with extremes of variability in quality is clearly undesirable as extra costs are needed, not only for the analysis of the raw material, but for the nutrients which may need to be added to attain the usual and expected quality in the medium.

*(f) Adequate chemical composition of medium*

As has been discussed already, the medium must have adequate amounts of carbon, nitrogen, minerals and vitamins in the appropriate quantities and proportions necessary for the optimum production of the commodity in question. The demands of the microorganisms must also be met in terms of the compounds they can utilize. Thus, most yeasts utilize hexose sugars, whereas only a few will utilize lactose; cellulose is not easily attacked and is utilized only by a limited number of organisms. Some organisms grow better in one or the other substrate. Fungi will for instance readily grow in corn steep liquor while actinomycetes will grow more readily on soy bean cake.

*(g) Presence of relevant precursors*

The raw material must contain the precursors necessary for the synthesis of the finished product. Precursors often stimulate production of secondary metabolites either by increasing the amount of a limiting metabolite, by inducing a biosynthetic enzyme, or both. These are usually amino acids but other small molecules also function as inducers. The nature of the finished product in many cases depends to some extent on the components of the medium. For example, for penicillin G to be produced, the medium must contain a phenyl compound. Corn steep liquor which is the standard component of the penicillin medium contains phenyl precursors needed for penicillin G.

*(h) Satisfaction of growth and production requirements of the microorganisms*

Many industrial organisms have two phases of growth in batch cultivation: the phase of growth, or the trophophase, and the phase of production, or the idiophase. In the first phase, cell multiplication takes place rapidly with little or no production of the desired material. It is in the second phase that production of the material takes place, usually with no cell multiplication and following the elaboration of new enzymes. Often, these two phases require different nutrients or different proportions of the same nutrients. The medium must be complete and be able to cater for these requirements. For example, high levels of glucose and phosphate inhibit the onset of the idiophase in the production of a number of secondary metabolites of industrial importance. The levels of the components added must be such that they do not adversely affect production.

### **4.3 RAW MATERIALS USED IN COMPOUNDING INDUSTRIAL MEDIA**

The raw materials to be discussed are used because of the properties mentioned above: cheapness, ready availability, constancy of chemical quality, etc. A raw material which is cheap in one country or even in a different part of the same country may not be cheap in another, especially if it has already found use in some other production process. In such cases, suitable substitutes must be found if the goods must be produced in the new location. The use of local substitutes where possible is advantageous in reducing the transportation costs and even creating some employment in the local population. Prior experimentation may however be necessary if such new local materials differ substantially in composition from those already being used. Some well-known raw materials will now be discussed. In addition, some of potential usability will also be examined.

**(a) Corn steep liquor**

This is a by-product of starch manufacture from maize. Sulfur dioxide is added to the water in which maize is steeped. The lowered pH inhibits most other organisms, but encourages the development of naturally occurring lactic acid bacteria especially homofermentative, thermophilic *Lactobacillus* spp. which raise the temperature to 38–55°C. Under these conditions, much of the protein present in maize is converted to peptides which along with sugars leach out of the maize and provide nourishment for the lactic acid bacteria. Lactic fermentation stops when the SO<sub>2</sub> concentration reaches about 0.04% and the concentration of lactic acid between 1.0 and 1.5%. At this time, the pH is about 4. Acid conditions soften the kernels, and the resulting maize grains mill better while the gel-forming property of the starch is not hindered. The supernatant drained from the maize steep is corn steep liquor. Before use, the liquor is usually filtered and concentrated by heat to about 50% solid concentration. The heating process kills the bacteria.

As a nutrient for most industrial organisms, corn steep liquor is considered adequate, being rich in carbohydrates, nitrogen, vitamins, and minerals. Its composition is highly variable and would depend on the maize variety, conditions of steeping, extent of boiling, etc. The composition of a typical sample of corn steep liquor is given in [Table 4.2](#). As corn steep liquor is highly acidic, it must be neutralized (usually with CaCO<sub>3</sub>) before use.

**(b) Pharmamedia**

Also known as proflo, this is a yellow fine powder made from cotton-seed embryo. It is used in the manufacture of tetracycline and some semi-synthetic penicillins. It is rich in protein (56% w/v), and contains 24% carbohydrate, 5% oil, and 4% ash, the last of which is rich in calcium, iron, chloride, phosphorous, and sulfate.

**(c) Distillers solubles**

This is a by-product of the distillation of alcohol from fermented grain. It is prepared by filtering away the solids from the material left after distilling fermented cereals (maize or barley) for whiskey or grain alcohol. The filtrate is then concentrated to about one-third solid content to give a syrup which is then drum-dried to give distillers soluble. It is rich

**Table 4.2** Approximate composition of corn steep liquor (%)

Lactose	3.0–4.0
Glucose	0–0.5
Non-reducing carbohydrates (mainly starch)	1.5
Acetic acid	0.05
Glucose lactic acid	0.5
Phenylethylamine	0.05
Amino acids (peptides, amines)	0.5
Total solids	80–90
Total nitrogen	0.15–0.2%

in nitrogen, minerals, and growth factors. Maize distillers soluble contain moisture (5%), protein (27%), lipid (9%), fiber (5%), carbohydrate (43%) and ash consisting mainly of K, Na, Mg, CO<sub>3</sub>, and P (11%).

#### **(d) Soy bean meal**

Soy beans (soja, *Glycine max*), is an annual legume which is widely cultivated throughout the world in tropical, sub-tropical and temperate regions between 50° N and 40° S. The seeds are heated before their oil is extracted that is used for food, as an anti-foam in industrial fermentations, or used for the manufacture of margarine. The resulting dried material, soy bean meal, has about 11% nitrogen, and 30% carbohydrate and may be used as animal feed. Its nitrogen is more complex than that found in corn steep liquor and is not readily available to most microorganisms, except actinomycetes. It is used particularly in tetracycline and streptomycin fermentations.

#### **(e) Molasses**

Molasses is a source of sugar and is used in many fermentation industries including the production of potable and industrial alcohol, acetone, citric acid, glycerol, and yeasts. It is a by-product of the sugar industry. There are two types of molasses depending on whether the sugar is produced from the tropical crop, sugar cane (*Saccharum officinarum*), or the temperate crop, beet (*Beta alba*).

Four stages are involved in the manufacture of cane sugar. After crushing, a clear greenish dilute sugar solution known as 'mixed juice' is expressed from the canes. During the second stage known as clarification, the mixed juice is heated with lime. Addition of lime changes the pH of the juice to alkaline and thus stops further hydrolysis (or inversion) of the cane sugar (sucrose), while heating coagulates proteins and other undesirable soluble portions of the mixed juice to form 'mud'. The supernatant juice is then concentrated (in the third stage) by heating under high vacuum and increasing low pressures in a series of evaporators. In the fourth and final stage of crystallization, sugar crystals begin to form with increasing heat and under vacuum yielding a thick brown syrup which contains the crystals and which is known as 'massecuite'. (In the beet industry, it is known as 'fillmass'.) The massecuite is centrifuged to remove the sugar crystals, and the remaining liquid is known as molasses. The first sugar so collected is 'A' and the liquid is 'A' molasses. 'A' molasses is further boiled to extract sugar crystals to yield 'B' sugar and 'B' molasses. Two or more boilings may be required before it is no longer profitable to attempt further extractions. This final molasses is known as 'black strap molasses'.

The sugar yielded with the production of black strap molasses is low-grade and brown in color and known as raw sugar, cargo sugar, or refining sugar. This raw sugar is further refined in a separate factory to remove miscellaneous impurities including the brown color (due to caramel) to yield white sugar. The heavy liquid discarded from the refining of sugar is known in the sugar refining industry as 'syrup' and corresponds to molasses in the raw sugar industry.

In the beet sugar industry, the processes used in raw refined sugar manufacture are similar, but the names of the different fractions recovered during purification differ. Cane and beet molasses differ slightly in composition ([Table 4.3](#)). Beet molasses is alkaline while cane molasses is acid.

Even within same type of molasses beet or cane, composition varies from year to year and from one locality to another. For the production of cells, the variability in molasses

**Table 4.3** Average composition of beet and cane molasses

	<i>Beet Molasses</i> % (w/w)	<i>Cane Molasses</i> % (w/w)
Water	16.5	20.0
Sugars:	53.0	64.0
Sucrose	51.0	32.0
Fructose	1.0	15.0
Glucose	–	14.0
Raffinose	1.0	–
Non-sugar (nitrogenous Materials, acids, gums, etc.)	19.0	10.0
Ash	11.5	8.0

quality is not critical, but for metabolites such as citric acid, it is very important as minor components of the molasses may affect the production of these metabolites.

*'High test' molasses* (also known as inverted molasses) is a brown thick syrup liquid used in the distilling industry and containing about 75% total sugars (sucrose and reducing sugars) and about 18% moisture. Strictly speaking, it is not molasses at all but inverted sugar (i.e. reducing sugars resulting from sucrose hydrolysis). It is produced by the hydrolysis of the concentrated juice with acid. In the so-called Cuban method, invertase is used for the hydrolysis. Sometimes, 'A' sugar may be inverted and mixed with 'A' molasses.

#### (f) *Sulfite liquor*

Sulfite liquor is the aqueous effluent resulting from the sulfite process for manufacturing cellulose or pulp from wood. Depending on the type, most woods contain about 50% cellulose, about 25% lignins, and about 25% of hemicelluloses. During the sulfite process, hemicelluloses hydrolyze and dissolve to yield the hexose sugars, glucose, mannose, galactose, fructose and the pentose sugars, xylose, and arabinose. The acid reagent breaks the chemical bonds between lignin and cellulose; subsequently they dissolve the lignin. The presence of calcium ions provides a buffer and helps neutralize the strong lignin sulfonic acid. The degradation of cellulose yields glucose. Portions of the various sugars are converted to sugar sulfonic acids, which are not fermentable. Variable but sometimes large amounts of acetic, formic, and galactonic acids are also produced.

Sulfite liquors of various compositions are produced, depending on the severity of the treatment and the type of wood. The more intense the treatment the more likely it is that the sugars produced by the more easily hydrolyzed hemicellulose will be converted to sulfonic acids; at the same time the more intense the treatment the more will glucose be released from the more stable cellulose. Hardwoods not only yield a higher amount of sugar (up to 3% dry weight of liquor) but the sugars are largely pentose in the form of xylose. Hardwood hydrolysates also contain a higher amount of acetic acid. Soft woods yield a product with about 75% hexose, mainly mannose.

Sulfite liquor is used as a medium for the growth of microorganisms after being suitably neutralized with  $\text{CaCO}_3$  and enriched with ammonium salts or urea, and other nutrients. It has been used for the manufacture of yeasts and alcohol.

**(g) Other substrates**

Other substrates used as raw materials in fermentations are alcohol, acetic acid, methanol, methane, and fractions of crude petroleum.

**4.4 GROWTH FACTORS**

Growth factors are materials which are not synthesized by the organism and therefore must be added to the medium. They usually function as cofactors of enzymes and may be vitamins, nucleotides, etc. The pure forms are usually too expensive for use in industrial media and materials containing the required growth factors are used to compound the medium. Growth factors are required only in small amounts. [Table 4.4](#) gives some sources of growth factors.

**Table 4.4** Some sources of growth factors

<i>Growth factor</i>	<i>Source</i>
Vitamin B	Rice polishing, wheat germ, yeasts
Vitamin B <sub>2</sub>	Cereals, corn steep liquor, vitamin
B <sub>6</sub>	Corn steep liquor, yeasts
Nicotinamide	Liver, penicillin spent liquor
Panthenic Acid	Corn steep liquor
Vitamin B <sub>12</sub>	Liver, silage, meat

**4.5 WATER**

Water is a raw material of vital importance in industrial microbiology. It is required as a major component of the fermentation medium as well as for cooling, washing, and cleaning. It is therefore used in rather large quantities and measured in thousands of liters a day depending on the industry. In some industries, such as the beer industry, the quality of the product depends to some extent on the water. In order to ensure constancy of product quality, the water must be regularly analyzed for minerals, color, pH, etc. and adjusted as necessary. Due to the importance of water, in situations where municipal water supplies are likely to be unreliable, industries set up their own supplies.

**4.6 SOURCES OF COMPONENTS OF INDUSTRIAL MEDIA**

Potential sources of industrial fermentation media include the following.

**4.6.1 Carbohydrate Sources**

These are all polysaccharides and have to be hydrolyzed to sugar before being used.

**(a) Cassava (*manioc*)**

The roots of the cassava-plant *Manihot esculenta* Crantz serve mainly as a source of carbohydrate for human (and sometimes animal) food in many parts of the tropical world.

Its great advantage is that it is high yielding, requires little attention when cultivated, and the roots can stay in the ground for many months without deterioration before harvest. The inner fleshy portion is a rich source of starch and has served, after hydrolysis, as a carbon source for single cell protein, ethanol, and even beer. In Brazil, it is one of the sources of fermentation alcohol which is blended with petrol to form gasohol for driving motor vehicles.

### **(b) Sweet potato**

Sweet potatoes (*Ipomea batatas*) is a warm-climate crop. There are a large number of cultivars which vary in the colors of the tuber flesh and of the skin; they also differ in the tuber size, time of maturity, yield, and sweetness. They are widely grown in the world and are found in South America, the USA, Africa and Asia. They are regarded as minor sources of carbohydrates in comparison with maize, wheat, or cassava, but they have the advantage that they do not require much agronomic attention. They have been used as sources of sugar on a semi-commercial basis because the fleshy roots contain saccharolytic enzymes. The syrup made from boiling the tubers has been used as a carbohydrate (sugar) source in compounding industrial media. Butyl alcohol, acetone and ethanol have been produced from such a syrup, and in quantities higher than the amounts produced from maize syrup of the same concentration.

### **(c) Yams**

Yams (*Dioscorea* spp.) are widely consumed in the tropics. Compared to other tropical roots however, their cultivation is tedious; in any case, enough of this tuber is not produced even for human food. Nevertheless, yams have been employed in producing various products such as yam flour and yam flakes. If the production of these materials is carried out on a sufficiently large scale it is to be expected that the waste materials resulting from peeling the yams could yield substantial amounts of waste materials high in starch that can be hydrolyzed to sugar.

### **(d) Cocoyam**

Cocoyam is a blanket name for several edible members of the monocotyledonous (single seed-leaf) plant of the family *Araceae* (the aroids), the best known two genera of which are *Colocasia* (taro) and *Xanthosoma* (tannia). They are grown and eaten all over the tropical world. As they are laborious to cultivate, require large quantities of moisture and do not store well they are not the main source of carbohydrates in regions where they are grown. Cocoyam starch has been found to be of acceptable quality for pharmaceutical purposes. Starchy waste from cocoyam processing can be hydrolyzed to sugar.

### **(e) Millets**

This is a collective name for several cereals whose seeds are small in comparison with those of maize, sorghum, rice, etc. They are classified as the minor cereals not because of their smaller sizes but because they generally do not form major components of human food. They are however hardy and will tolerate great drought and heat, grow on poor soil and mature quickly. For this reason, millets could become potential sources of cereal for use in industrial microbiology media. Millet starch has been hydrolyzed by malting for alcohol production on an experimental basis as far back as 50 years ago.

### *(f) Rice*

Rice, *Oryza sativa*, is one of the leading food crops of the world being produced on all five continents, but especially in the tropical areas. Although it is high-cost commodity, it has the advantage of ease of mechanization, storability, and the availability of improved seeds. The result is that this food crop is likely in the near future to displace as a carbohydrate source other starch sources as yams and to a lesser extent cassava in tropical countries. The increase in rice production is expected to become so efficient in many countries that the crop would yield substrates cheap enough for industrial microbiological use. Rice is used as a brewing adjunct and has been malted experimentally for beer brewing.

### *(g) Sorghum*

Sorghum, *Sorghum bicolor*, is the fourth in term of quantity of production of the world's cereals after wheat, rice, and corn. It is used for the production of special beers in various parts of the world. It has been mechanized and has one of the greatest potential among cereals for use as a source of carbohydrate in industrial media in regions of the world where it thrives. It has been successfully malted and used in an all-sorghum lager beer.

### *(h) Jerusalem artichoke*

Jerusalem artichoke, *Helianthus tuberosus*, is a member of the plant family compositae, where the storage carbohydrate is inulin, a polymer of fructose into which it can be hydrolyzed. It is a root-crop and grows in temperate, semi-tropical and tropical regions.

## 4.6.2 Protein Sources

### *(a) Peanut (groundnut) meal*

Peanuts (groundnuts), *Arachis hypogea*, are rich in liquids and proteins. The groundnut cake left after the nuts have been freed of oil is often used as animal feed. But just as is the case with soy beans, oil from peanuts may be used as anti-foam while the press-cake could be used for a source of protein. The nuts and the cake are rich in protein.

### *(b) Blood meal*

Blood consists of about 82% water, 0.1% carbohydrate, 0.6% fat, 16.4% nitrogen, and 0.7% ash. It is a waste product in slaughterhouses. Drying is achieved by passing live steam through the blood until the temperature reaches about 100°C. This treatment sterilizes it and also causes it to clot. It is then drained, pressed to remove serum, further dried, and ground. The resulting blood-meal is chocolate-colored and contains about 80% protein and small amounts of ash and lipids. Where sufficient blood is available, blood meal could form an important source of proteins for industrial media.

### *(c) Fish Meal*

Fish meal is used for feeding farm animals. It is rich in protein (about 65%), minerals (about 21%), calcium (8%), and phosphorus (3.5%) and may therefore be used for industrial microbiological media production. Fish meal is made by drying fish with steam either aided by vacuum or by simple drying. Alternatively, hot air may be passed over the fish placed in revolving drums. It is then ground into a fine powder.

## 4.7 PLANT WASTE MATERIALS IN INDUSTRIAL MICROBIOLOGY MEDIA: SACCHARIFICATION OF POLYSACCHARIDES

Plant agricultural wastes as sources of industrial microbiological media are not only plentiful but in contrast to petroleum, they are also renewable. Therefore, some studies have given serious consideration to the possibility of deriving industrial microbiological raw materials not just from wastes but from crops grown deliberately for this purpose. However, plant materials in general contain large amounts of polysaccharides which are not immediately utilizable by industrial microorganisms and which will therefore need to be hydrolyzed or saccharified to provide the more available sugars. Thereafter, the sugars may be fermented to ethyl alcohol for use as a chemical feedstock. The plant polysaccharides whose hydrolysis will be discussed in this section are starch, cellulose, and hemicelluloses.

### 4.7.1 Starch

Starch is a mixture of two polymers of glucose: amylose and amylopectin. Amylose is a linear (1 → 4)  $\alpha$ -D glucan usually having a degree of polymerization (D.P., i.e. number of glucose molecules) of about 400 and having a few branched residues linked with (1 → 6) bondings. Amylopectin is a branched D glucan with predominantly  $\alpha$ -D (1 → 4) linkages and with about 4% of the  $\alpha$ -D (1 → 6) type. Amylopectin consists of amylose-like chains of D.P. 12–50 linked in a number of possible manners. A comparison of the properties of amylose and amylopectin is given in Table 4.5.

Starches from various sources differ in their proportion of amylopectin and amylose. The more commonly grown type of maize, for example, has about 26% of amylose and 74% of amylopectin (Table 4.6). Others may have 100% amylopectin and still others may have 80–85% of amylose.

**Table 4.5** Some properties of amylose and amylopectin

<i>Property</i>	<i>Amylose</i>	<i>Amylopectin</i>
Structure	Linear	Branched
Behavior in water	Precipitates Irreversibly	Stable
Degree of polymerization	10 <sup>3</sup>	10 <sup>4</sup> –10 <sup>5</sup>
Average chain length	10 <sup>3</sup>	20–25
Hydrolysis to maltose (%)		
(a) $\alpha$ -amylase	87	54
(b) $\alpha$ -amylase and debranching enzyme	98	79
Iodine Complex max (nm)	650	550

**Table 4.6** Amylose contents of some starches

<i>Source</i>	<i>Amylose Content %</i>
Potato	20–22
Corn	20–27
Wheat	18–26
Oat	22–24
Waxy maize	0–5
Cassava	17–20
Sorghum	25–28
Rice	16–18

#### 4.7.1.1 Saccharification of starch

Starch occurs in discrete crystalline granules in plants, and in this form is highly resistant to enzyme action. However, when heated to about 55°C–82°C depending on the type, starch gelatinizes and dissolves in water and becomes subject to attack by various enzymes.

Before saccharification, the starch or ground cereal is mixed with water and heated to gelatinize the starch and expose it to attack by the saccharifying agents. The saccharifying agents used are dilute acids and enzymes from malt or microorganisms.

##### 4.7.1.1.1 Saccharification of starch with acid

The starch-containing material to be hydrolyzed is ground and mixed with dilute hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, or even sulfurous acid. When sulfurous acid is used it can be introduced merely by pumping sulfur dioxide into the mash.

The concentrations of the mash and the acid, length of time and temperature of the heating have to be worked out for each starch source. During the hydrolysis, the starch is broken down from starch (about 2,000 glucose molecules) through compounds of decreasing numbers of glucose moieties to glucose. The actual composition of the hydrolysate will depend on the factors mentioned above. Starch concentration is particularly important: if it is too high, side reactions may occur leading to a reduction in the yield of sugar.

At the end of the reaction, the acid is neutralized. If it is desired to ferment the hydrolysate for ethanol, yeast, or single cell production, ammonium salts may be used as they can be used by many microorganisms.

##### 4.7.1.1.2 Use of enzymes

Enzymes hydrolyzing starch used to be called collectively diastases. With increased knowledge about them, they are now called amylases. Enzymatic hydrolysis has several advantages over the use of acid: (a) since the pH for enzyme hydrolysis is about neutral, there is no need for special vessels which must stand the high temperature, pressure, and corrosion of acid hydrolysis; (b) enzymes are more specific, and hence there are fewer side reactions leading therefore to higher yields; (c) acid hydrolysis often yields salts which

may have to be removed constantly or periodically thereby increasing cost; (d) it is possible to use higher concentrations of the substrates with enzymes than with acids because of enzyme specificity and reduced possibility of side reactions.

#### 4.7.1.1.3 Enzymes involved in the hydrolysis of starch

Several enzymes are important in the hydrolysis of starch. They are divisible into six groups.

- (i) *Enzymes that hydrolyse  $\alpha$ -1, 4 bonds and bypass  $\alpha$ -1, 6 bonding*: The typical example is  $\alpha$ -amylase. This enzyme hydrolyses randomly the inner (1  $\rightarrow$  4)- $\alpha$ -D-glycosidic bonds of amylose and amylopectin (Fig. 4.1). The cleavage can occur anywhere as long as there are at least six glucose residues on one side and at least three on the other side of the bond to be broken. The result is a mixture of branched  $\alpha$ -limit dextrans (i.e. fragments resistant to hydrolysis and contain the  $\alpha$ -D (1, 6) linkage derived from amylopectin) and linear glucose residues especially maltohexoses, maltoheptoses, and maltotrioses. Alpha-amylases are found in virtually every living cell and the property and substrate pattern of  $\alpha$ -amylases vary according to their source. Among microbial  $\alpha$ -amylases some can withstand temperatures near 100°C.
- (ii) *Enzymes that hydrolyse the  $\alpha$ -1, 4 bonding, but cannot by-pass the  $\alpha$ -1, 6 bonds*: *Beta amylase*: Beta-amylase hydrolyses alternate  $\alpha$ -1, 4 bonds sequentially from the non-reducing end (i.e. the end without a hydroxyl group at the C-1 position) to yield maltose (Fig. 4.1). Beta amylase has different actions on amylose and amylopectin, because it cannot by-pass the  $\alpha$ -1, 6-branch points in amylopectin. Therefore, while amylose is completely hydrolyzed to maltose, amylopectin is only hydrolyzed to within two or three glucose units of the  $\alpha$ -1, 6-branch point to yield maltose and a 'beta-limit' dextrin which is the parent amylopectin with the ends trimmed off. Debranching enzymes are able to open up the  $\alpha$ -1, 6 bonds and thus convert beta-limit dextrans to yield a mixture of linear chains of varying lengths; beta amylase then hydrolyzes these linear chains. Those chains with an odd number of glucose molecules are hydrolyzed to maltose and one glucose unit per chain. The even numbered residues are completely hydrolyzed to maltose. In practice, there is a very large population of chains, and hence one glucose residue is produced for every two chains present in the original starch.
- (iii) *Enzymes that hydrolyze ( $\alpha$ -1, 4 and  $\alpha$ -1:6 bonds)*: The typical example of these enzymes is amyloglucosidase or glucoamylase. This enzyme hydrolyzes  $\alpha$ -D-(1, 4)-D-glycosidic bonds from the non-reducing ends to yield D-glucose molecules. When the sequential removal of glucose reaches the point of branching in amylopectin, the hydrolysis continues on the (1, 6) bonding but more slowly than on the (1, 4) bonding. Maltose is attacked only very slowly. The end product is glucose.
- (iv) *De-branching enzymes*: At least two de-branching enzymes are known: pullulanase and iso-amylase.

*Pullulanase*: This is a de-branching enzyme which causes the hydrolysis of  $\alpha$ -D-(1, 6) linkages in amylopectin or in amylopectin previously attacked by alpha-amylase. It does not attack  $\alpha$ -D (1, 4) bonds. However, there must be at least two glucose units in the group attached to the rest of the molecules through an  $\alpha$ -D-(1, 6) bonding.

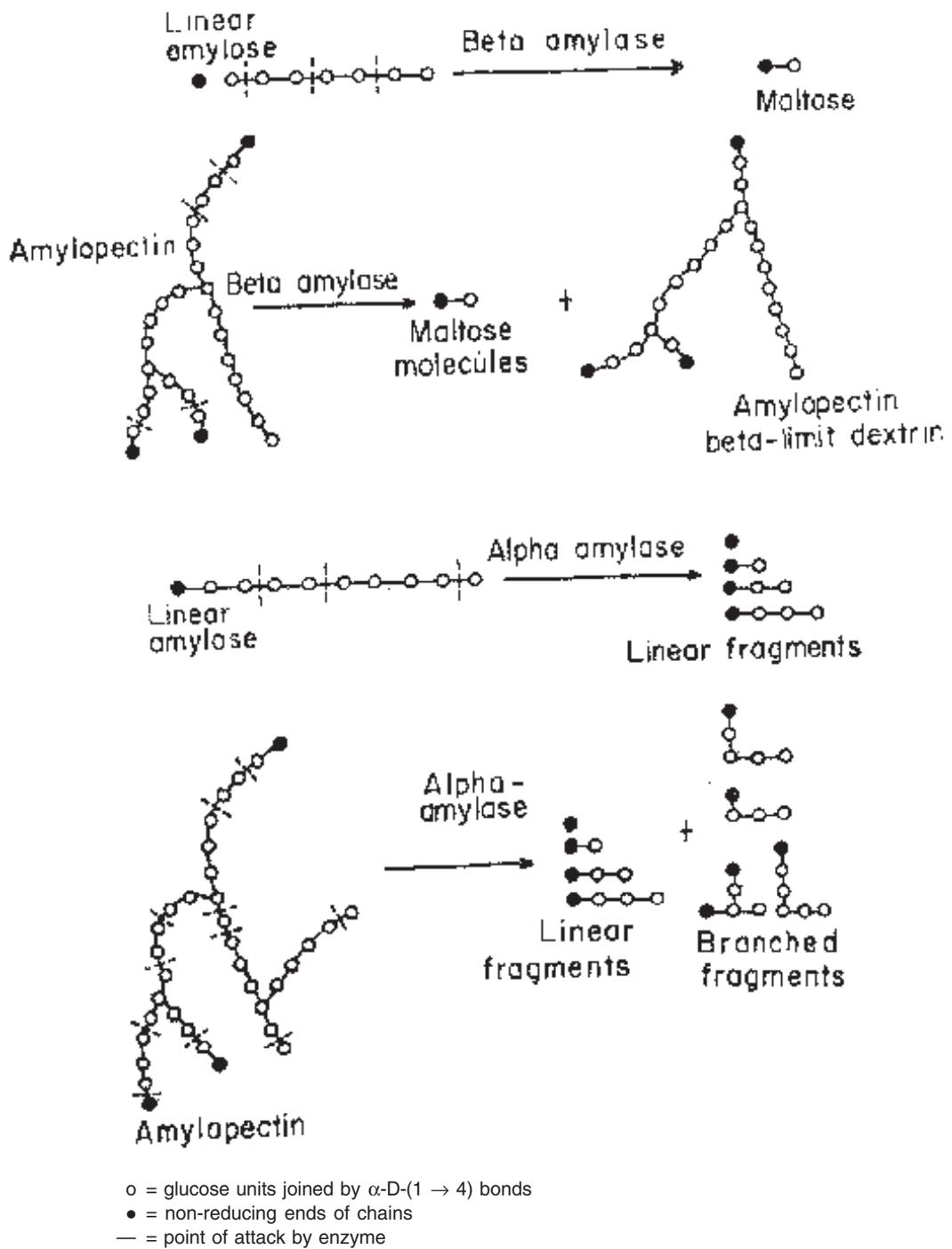


Fig. 4.1 Pattern of Attack of Alpha Amylase and Beta-amylase on Amylose and Amylopectin Respectively

*Iso-amylase*: This is also a de-branching enzyme but differs from pullulanase in that three glucose units in the group must be attached to the rest of the molecules through an  $\alpha$ -D-(1, 6) bonding for it to function.

- (v) *Enzymes that preferentially attack  $\alpha$ -1, 4 linkages*: Examples of this group are glucosidases. The maltodextrins and maltose produced by other enzymes are cleaved to glucose by  $\alpha$ -glucosidases. They may however sometime attack unaltered polysaccharides but only very slowly.
- (vi) *Enzymes which hydrolyze starch to non-reducing cyclic D-glucose polymers known as cyclodextrins or Schardinger dextrans*: Cyclic sugar residues are produced by *Bacillus macerans*. They are not acted upon by most amylases although enzymes in *Takadiastase* produced by *Aspergillus oryzae* can degrade the residues.

#### 4.7.1.1.4 Industrial saccharification of starch by enzymes

In industry the extent of the conversion of starch to sugar is measured in terms of dextrose equivalent (D.E.). This is a measure of the reducing sugar content, expressed in terms of dextrose, determined under defined conditions involving Fehling's solution. The D.E. is calculated as percentage of the total solids.

For the saccharification of starch in industry acid is being replaced more and more by enzymes. Acid saccharification has a practical upper limit of 55 D.E. Beyond this, breakdown products begin to accumulate. Furthermore, with acid hydrolysis reversion reactions occur among the sugar produced. These two deficiencies are avoided when enzymes are utilized. Besides, by selecting enzymes, specific sugars can be produced.

Starch-splitting enzymes used in industry are produced in germinated seeds and by micro-organisms. Barley malt is widely used for the saccharification of starch. It contains large amounts of various enzymes notably  $\alpha$ -amylase and  $\alpha$ -glucosidase which further split saccharides to glucose.

All the enzymes discussed above are produced by different microorganisms. The most commonly encountered organisms producing these enzymes are *Bacillus* spp., *Streptomyces* spp., *Aspergillus* spp., *Penicillium* spp., *Mucor* spp., and *Rhizopus* spp.

## 4.7.2 Cellulose, Hemi-celluloses and Lignin in Plant Materials

### 4.7.2.1 Cellulose

Cellulose is the most abundant organic matter on earth. Unfortunately, it does not exist pure in nature and even the purest natural form (that found in cotton fibers) contains about 6% of other materials. Three major components, cellulose, hemi-cellulose and lignin occur roughly in the ratio of 4:3:3 in wood.

### 4.7.2.2 Hemicelluloses

These are an ill-defined group of carbohydrates whose main and common characteristic is that they are soluble in, and hence can be extracted with, dilute alkali. They can then be precipitated with acid and ethanol. They are very easily hydrolyzed by chemical

or biological means. The nature of the hemicellulose varies from one plant to another. In cotton, the hemicelluloses are pectic substances, which are polymers of galactose. In wood, they consist of short (DP less than 200) branched heteropolymers of glucose, xylose, galactose, mannose and arabinose as well as uronic acids of glucose and galactose linked by 1--3, 1--6 and 1--4 glycosidic bonds.

#### 4.7.2.3 Lignin

Lignin is a complex three-dimensional polymer formed from cyclic alcohols. It is important because it protects cellulose from hydrolysis.

Cellulose is found in plant cell walls which are held together by a porous material known as the middle lamella. In wood, the middle lamella is heavily impregnated with lignin which is highly resistant and thus protects the cell from attack by enzymes or acid.

#### 4.7.2.4 Pretreatment of cellulose-containing materials before saccharification

In order to expose lignocellulosics to attack, a number of physical and chemical methods are in use or a being studied for altering the fine structure of cellulose and/or breaking the lignin-carbohydrate complex (Table 4.7).

Chemical methods include the use of swelling agents such as NaOH, some amines, concentrated  $H_2SO_4$  or HCl, or proprietary cellulose solvents such as 'cadoxen' (tris ethylene-diamine cadmium hydroxide). These agents introduce water between or within the cellulose crystals making subsequent hydrolysis easier. Steam has also been used as a swelling agent. The lignin may be removed by treatment with dilute  $H_2SO_4$  at high temperature.

Physical methods of pretreatment include grinding, irradiation, and simply heating the wood.

**Table 4.7** Various pretreatment methods used in lignocellulose substrate preparation

<i>Pretreatment type</i>	<i>Specific method</i>
Mechanical	Weathering and milling-ball, fitz, hammer, roller
Irradiation	Gamma, electron beam, photooxidation
Thermal	Autohydrolysis, steam explosion, hydrothermolysis, boiling, pyrolysis, moist or dry heat expansion
Alkali	Sodium hydroxide, ammonium hydroxide
Acids	Sulfuric, hydrochloric, nitric, phosphoric, maleic
Oxidizing agents	Peracetic acid, sodium hypochlorite, sodium chlorite, hydrogen peroxide
Solvents	Ethanol, butanol, phenol, ethylamine, acetone, ethylene glycol
Gases	Ammonia, chlorine, nitrous oxide, ozone, sulfur dioxide
Biological	Ligninolytic fungi

#### 4.7.2.5 Hydrolysis of cellulose

Following pretreatment, wood may be hydrolyzed with dilute HCl, H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> or sulfites of calcium, magnesium, or sodium under high temperature and pressure as described for sulfite liquor production in paper manufacture. When however the aim is to hydrolyze wood to sugars, the treatment is continued for longer than is done for paper manufacture.

A lot of experimental work has been done recently on the possible use of cellulolytic enzymes for digesting cellulose. The advantage of the use of enzymes rather than harsh chemicals have been discussed already. Fungi have been the main source of cellulolytic enzymes. *Trichoderma viride* and *T. koningii* have been the most efficient cellulase producers. *Penicillium funiculosum* and *Fusarium solani* have also been shown to possess equally potent cellulases. Cellulase has been resolved into at least three components: C<sub>1</sub>, C<sub>x</sub>, and β-glucosidases. The C<sub>1</sub> component attacks crystalline cellulose and loosens the cellulose chain after which the other enzymes can attack cellulose. The C<sub>x</sub> enzymes are β-(1, 4) glucanases and hydrolyse soluble derivatives of cellulose or swollen or partially degraded cellulose. Their attack on the cellulose molecule is random and cellobiose (2-sugar) and cellotriose (3-sugar) are the major products of their actions. There is evidence that the enzymes may also act by removing successive glucose units from the end of a cellulose molecule β-glucosidases hydrolyze cellobiose and short-chain oligosaccharides derived from cellulose to glucose, but do not attack cellulose. They are able to attack cellobiose and cellotriose rapidly. Many organisms described in the literature as 'cellulolytic' produce only C<sub>x</sub> and β-glucosidases because they were isolated initially using partially degraded cellulose. The four organisms mentioned above produce all three members of the complex.

##### 4.7.2.5.1 Molecular structure of cellulose

Cellulose is a linear polymer of D-glucose linked in the β-1, 4 glycosidic bond. The bonding is theoretically as vulnerable to hydrolysis as the one in starch. However, cellulose-containing materials such as wood are difficult to hydrolyze because of (a) the secondary and tertiary arrangement of cellulose molecules which confers a high crystallinity on them and (b) the presence of lignin.

The degree of polymerization (D.P.) of cellulose molecule is variable but ranges from about 500 in wood pulp to about 10,000 in native cellulose. When cellulose is hydrolyzed with acid, a portion known as the amorphous portion which makes up 15% is easily and quickly hydrolyzed leaving a highly crystalline residue (85%) whose DP is constant at 100–200. The crystalline portion occurs as small rod-like particles which can be hydrolyzed only with strong acid.

### END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Your company is considering starting production of a new fermentation product. You have been asked to develop the fermentation medium. Itemize the factors you will consider in choosing raw materials for your fermentation medium.
2. List four microbial enzymes involved in starch saccharification (hydrolysis to sugars).

3. Outline the composition of lignocellulose biomass.
4. List the major microbial enzymes involved in lignocellulose hydrolysis.

### **SUGGESTED READINGS**

Barnes, A.C. 1974. *The Sugar Cane*. Wiley, New York, USA.

Dahod, S.K. 1999. Raw Materials Selection and Medium Development for Industrial Fermentation Processes. *In: Manual of Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology*. A.L. Demain and J.E. Davies (eds.) American Society for Microbiology Press. 2nd ed., Washington DC.

Demain, A.L. 1998. Induction of Microbial Secondary Metabolism *International Microbiology*. 1, 259–264.

Flickinger, M.C., Drew, S.W. (eds.) 1999. *Encyclopedia of Bioprocess Technology—Fermentation, Biocatalysis, and Bioseparation*. Vol. 1–5. John Wiley, New York.

Ward, W.P., Singh, A. 2004. Bioethanol Technology: Developments and Perspectives. *Advance in Applied Microbiology*. 51, 53–80.

---

# Biosynthetic Pathways for Metabolic Products of Microorganisms

---

## 5.1 THE NATURE OF METABOLIC PATHWAYS

In order to be able to manipulate microorganisms to optimally produce materials of economic importance to humans at minimal cost, it is important that the physiology of the organisms is understood as much as is possible.

A yeast cell will divide and produce CO<sub>2</sub> under aerobic conditions if offered a solution of glucose and ammonium salts. The increase in cell number resulting from the growth and the bubbling of CO<sub>2</sub> are only external evidence of a vast number of chemical reactions going on within the cell. After absorbing glucose, the yeast cell has to produce various proteins which will form enzymes necessary to catalyze the various reactions concerned with the manufacture of proteins, carbohydrates, lipids, and other components of the cell as well as vitamins which will form coenzymes. A vast array of enzymes are produced as the glucose and ammonium initially supplied are converted from one compound into another or metabolized. The series of chemical reactions involved in converting a chemical (or a metabolite) in the organism into a final product is known as a metabolic pathway. When the reactions lead to the formation of a more complex substance, that particular form of metabolism is known as *anabolism* and the pathway an anabolic pathway. When the series of reactions lead to less complex compounds, the metabolism is described as *catabolism*. The compounds involved in a metabolic pathway are called *intermediates* and the final product is known as the end-product (see Fig. 5.1).

Catabolic reactions have been mostly studied with glucose. Four pathways of glucose breakdown to pyruvic acid (or glycolysis) are currently recognized. Catabolic reactions often furnish energy in the form of ATP and other high energy compounds, which are used for biosynthetic reactions. A second function of catabolic reactions is to provide the carbon skeleton for biosynthesis. Anabolic reactions lead to the formation of larger molecules some of which are constituents of the cell.

Although anabolism and catabolism are distinct phenomena, some pathways have elements of both kinds. Metabolic intermediates which are derived from catabolism and which are also available for anabolism are known as amphibolic intermediates.

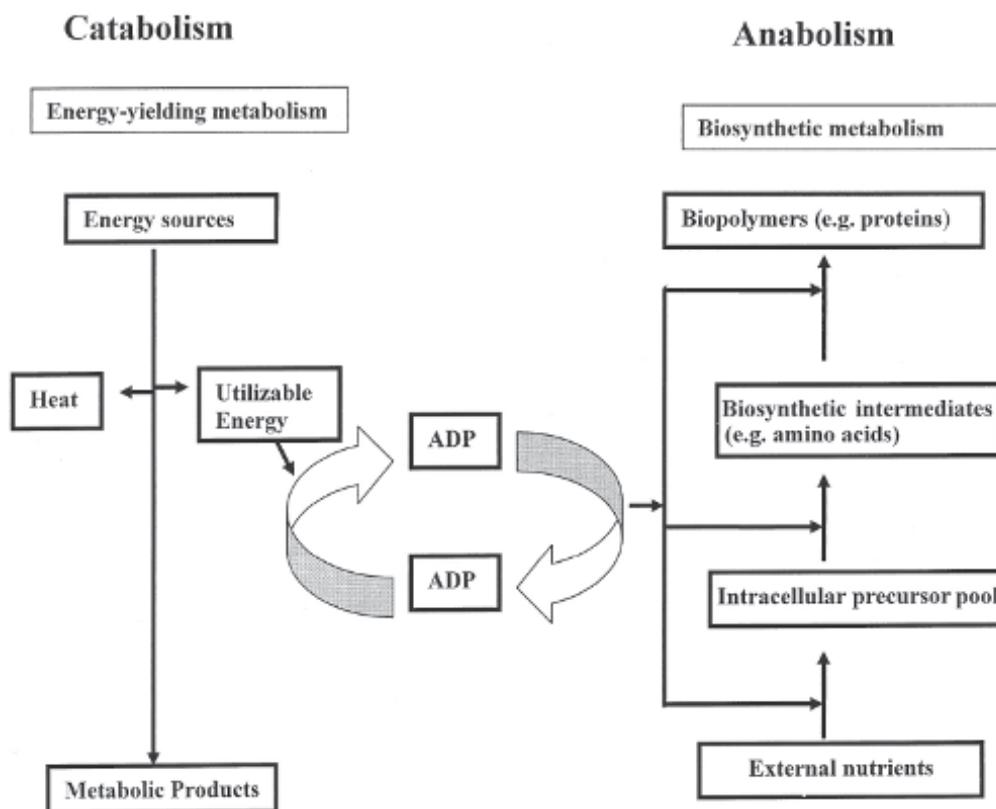


Fig. 5.1 Metabolism: Relationship between Anabolism and Catabolism in a Cell

## 5.2 INDUSTRIAL MICROBIOLOGICAL PRODUCTS AS PRIMARY AND SECONDARY METABOLITES

Products of industrial microorganisms may be divided into two broad groups, those which result from primary metabolism and others which derive from secondary metabolism. The line between the two is not always clear cut, but the distinction is useful in discussing industrial products.

### 5.2.1 Products of Primary Metabolism

Primary metabolism is the interrelated group of reactions within a microorganism which are associated with growth and the maintenance of life. Primary metabolism is essentially the same in all living things and is concerned with the release of energy and the synthesis of important macromolecules such as proteins, nucleic acids, and other cell constituents. When primary metabolism is stopped, the organism dies.

Products of primary metabolism are associated with growth and their maximum production occurs in the logarithmic phase of growth in a batch culture. Primary catabolic products include ethanol, lactic acid, and butanol, while anabolic products include amino acids, enzymes, and nucleic acids. Single-cell proteins and yeasts would also be regarded as primary products (Table 5.1).

**Table 5.1** Some industrial products resulting from primary metabolism

<i>Anabolic Products</i>	<i>Catabolic Products</i>
1. Enzymes	1. Ethanol and ethanol-containing products, e.g. wines
2. Amino acids	2. Butanol
3. Vitamins	3. Acetone
4. Polysaccharides	4. Lactic acid
5. Yeast cells	5. Acetic acid (vinegar)
6. Single cell protein	
7. Nucleic acids	
8. Citric acid	

### 5.2.2 Products of Secondary Metabolism

Secondary metabolism has the following characteristics: (i) Secondary metabolism has no *apparent* function in the organism. The organism continues to exist if secondary metabolism is blocked by a suitable biochemical means. (ii) Secondary metabolites are produced in response to a restriction in nutrients. They are therefore produced after the growth phase at the end of the logarithmic phase of growth and in the stationary phase (in a batch culture). They can be more precisely controlled in a continuous culture. (iii) Secondary metabolism appears to be restricted to some species of plants and microorganisms (and in a few cases to animals). The products of secondary metabolism also appear to be characteristic of the species. (iv) Secondary metabolites usually have 'bizarre' and unusual chemical structures, and several closely related metabolites may be produced by the same organism in wild-type strains. This latter observation indicates the existence of a variety of alternate and closely related pathways. (v) The ability to produce a particular secondary metabolite is easily lost. This phenomenon is known as strain degeneration. (vi) Owing to the ease of the loss of the ability to synthesize secondary metabolites, particularly when treated with acridine dyes, exposure to high temperature or other treatments known to induce plasmid loss, secondary metabolite production is believed to be controlled by plasmids rather than by the organism's chromosomes. A confirmation of the possible role of plasmids in the control of secondary metabolites is shown in the case of leupeptin in which the loss of the metabolite following irradiation can be reversed by conjugation with a producing parent. (vii) The factors which trigger secondary metabolism, the inducers, also trigger morphological changes (morphogenesis) in the organism.

#### *Inducers of Secondary Metabolites*

Autoinducers include the  $\gamma$ -butyrolactones (butanolides) of the actinomycetes, the N-acylhomoserine lactones (HSLs) of Gram-negative bacteria, the oligopeptides of Gram-positive bacteria, and B-factor [3'-(1-butylphosphoryl) adenosine] of rifamycin production in *Amycolatopsis mediterranei*. They function in development, sporulation, light emission, virulence, production of antibiotics, pigments and cyanide, plasmid-driven conjugation, and competence for genetic transformation.

Secondary metabolic products of microorganism are of immense importance to humans. Microbial secondary metabolites include antibiotics, pigments, toxins, effectors of ecological competition and symbiosis, pheromones, enzyme inhibitors, immunomodulating

agents, receptor antagonists and agonists, pesticides, antitumor agents and growth promoters of animals and plants, alkaloids such as ergometrine, a wide variety of other drugs, toxins, and useful materials such as the plant growth substance gibberellic acid (Table 5.2). Their formation is regulated by nutrients, growth rate, feedback control, enzyme inactivation, and enzyme induction. Regulation is influenced by unique low molecular mass compounds, transfer RNA, sigma factors, and gene products formed during post-exponential development. The synthases of secondary metabolism are often coded for by clustered genes on chromosomal DNA and infrequently on plasmid DNA.

Unlike primary metabolism, the pathways of secondary metabolism are still not understood to a great degree. Secondary metabolism is brought on by exhaustion of a nutrient, biosynthesis or addition of an inducer, and/or by a growth rate decrease. These events generate signals which affect a cascade of regulatory events resulting in chemical differentiation (secondary metabolism) and morphological differentiation (morphogenesis). The signal is often a low molecular weight inducer which acts by negative control, i.e. by binding to and inactivating a regulatory protein (repressor protein/receptor protein) which normally prevents secondary metabolism and morphogenesis during rapid growth and nutrient sufficiency.

Thousands of secondary metabolites of widely different chemical groups and physiological effects on humans have been found. It would appear that the vast potential utility of microbial secondary metabolites is yet to be realized and that many may not have been discovered.

### 5.3 TROPHOPHASE-IDIOPHASE RELATIONSHIPS IN THE PRODUCTION OF SECONDARY PRODUCTS

From studies on *Penicillium urticae*, the terms trophophase and idiophase were introduced to distinguish the two phases in the growth of organisms producing secondary metabolites.

**Table 5.2** Some industrial products of microbial secondary metabolism

<i>Product</i>	<i>Organism</i>	<i>Use/Importance</i>
<i>Antibiotics</i>		
Penicillin	<i>Penicillium chrysogenum</i>	Clinical use
Streptomycin	<i>Streptomyces griseus</i>	Clinical use
<i>Anti-tumor Agents</i>		
Actinomycin	<i>Streptomyces antibioticus</i>	Clinical use
Bleomycin	<i>Streptomyces verticulus</i>	Clinical use
<i>Toxins</i>		
Aflatoxin	<i>Aspergillus flavus</i>	Food toxin
Amanitine	<i>Amanita</i> sp.	Food toxin
<i>Alkaloids</i>		
Ergot alkaloids	<i>Claviceps purpurea</i>	Pharmaceutical
<i>Miscellaneous</i>		
Gibberellic acid	<i>Gibberella fujikuroi</i>	Plant growth hormone
Kojic acid	<i>Aspergillus flavus</i>	Food flavor
Muscarine	<i>Clitocybe rivialosa</i>	Pharmaceutical
Patulin	<i>Penicillium urticae</i>	Anti-microbial agent

The trophophase (Greek, tropho = nutrient) is the feeding phase during which primary metabolism occurs. In a batch culture, this would be in the logarithmic phase of the growth curve. Following the trophophase is the idio-phase (Greek, idio = peculiar) during which secondary metabolites peculiar to or characteristic of a given organism are synthesized. Secondary synthesis occurs in the late logarithmic and in the stationary phase.

#### 5.4 ROLE OF SECONDARY METABOLITES IN THE PHYSIOLOGY OF ORGANISMS PRODUCING THEM

Since many industrial microbiological products result from secondary metabolism, workers have sought to explain the role of secondary metabolites in the survival of the organism as follows:

- (i) *The competition hypothesis*: In this theory, which refers to antibiotics specifically, secondary metabolites (antibiotics) enable the producing organism to withstand competition for food from other soil organisms. In support of this hypothesis is the fact that antibiotic production can be demonstrated in sterile and non-sterile soil, which may or may not have been supplemented with organic materials. As further support for this theory, it is claimed that the wide distribution of  $\beta$ -lactamases among microorganisms is to help these organisms detoxify the  $\beta$ -lactam antibiotics. The obvious limitation of this theory is that it is restricted to antibiotics and that many antibiotics exist outside Beta-lactams.
- (ii) *The maintenance hypothesis*: Secondary metabolism usually occurs with the exhaustion of a vital nutrient such as glucose. It is therefore claimed that the selective advantage of secondary metabolism is that it serves to maintain mechanisms essential to cell multiplication in operative order when that cell multiplication is no longer possible. Thus by forming secondary enzymes, the enzymes of primary metabolism which produce precursors for secondary metabolism would be destroyed. In this hypothesis, the secondary metabolite itself is not important; what is important is the pathway of producing it.
- (iii) *The unbalanced growth hypothesis*: Similar to the maintenance theory, this hypothesis states that control mechanisms in some organisms are too weak to prevent the over-synthesis of some primary metabolites. These primary metabolites are converted into secondary metabolites that are excreted from the cell. If not converted, they would lead to the death of the organism.
- (iv) *The detoxification hypothesis*: This hypothesis states that molecules accumulated in the cell are detoxified to yield antibiotics. This is consistent with the observation that the penicillin precursor penicillanic acid is more toxic to *Penicillium chrysogenum* than benzyl penicillin. Nevertheless, not many toxic precursors of antibiotics have been observed.
- (v) *The regulatory hypothesis*: Secondary metabolite production is known to be associated with morphological differentiation in producing organisms. In the fungus *Neurospora crassa*, carotenoids are produced during sporulation. In *Cephalosporium acremonium*, cephalosporin C is produced during the idiophase when arthrospores are produced. Numerous examples of the release of secondary metabolites with some morphological differentiation have been observed in fungi. One of the most intriguing relationships between differentiation and secondary metabolite production is that between the production of peptide antibiotics by *Bacillus* spp. and

spore formation. Both spore formation and antibiotic production are suppressed by glucose; non-spore forming mutants of bacilli also do not produce antibiotics, while reversion to spore formation accompanied by antibiotic formation has been observed in actinomycetes. Many roles have been assigned to antibiotics in spore formers but the most clearly demonstrated has been the essential nature of gramicidin in sporulation of *Bacillus* spp. The absence of the antibiotic leads to partial deficiencies in the formation of enzymes involved in spore formation, resulting in abnormally heat-sensitive spores. Peptide antibiotics therefore suppress the vegetative genes allowing proper development of the spores. In this theory, the production of secondary metabolites is necessary to regulate some morphological changes in the organism. It could of course be that some external mechanism triggers off secondary metabolite production as well as the morphological change.

- (vi) *The hypothesis of secondary metabolism as the expression of evolutionary reactions:* To appreciate the hypothesis, it is important to bear in mind that both primary and secondary metabolism are controlled by genes carried by the organism. According to this hypothesis, secondary metabolism is a clearing house or a mixed bag of biochemical reactions, undergoing tests for possible incorporation into the cell's armory of primary reactions. Any reaction in the mixed bag which favorably affects any one of the primary processes, thereby fitting the organism better to survive in its environment, becomes incorporated as part of primary metabolism. According to this hypothesis, the antibiotic properties of some secondary metabolites are incidental and designed to protect the microorganisms. This hypothesis is attractive because it implies that secondary metabolism must occur in all microorganisms since evolution is a continuing process. If that is the case, then the current range of secondary metabolites is limited only by techniques sensitive enough to detect them.

## 5.5 PATHWAYS FOR THE SYNTHESIS OF PRIMARY AND SECONDARY METABOLITES OF INDUSTRIAL IMPORTANCE

The main source of carbon and energy in industrial media are carbohydrates. In recent times, hydrocarbons have been used. The catabolism of these compounds will be discussed briefly because they supply the carbon skeletons for the synthesis of primary as well as for secondary metabolites.

### 5.5.1 Catabolism of Carbohydrates

Four pathways for the catabolism of carbohydrates up to pyruvic acid are known. All four pathways exist in bacteria, actinomycetes, and fungi, including yeasts. The four pathways are the Embden-Meyerhof-Parnas Pathway, the Pentose Phosphate Pathway, the Entner-Duodoroff pathway, and the Phosphoketolase Pathway. Although these pathways are for the breakdown of glucose, other carbohydrates easily fit into the cycles.

- (i) *The Embden-Meyerhof-Parnas (EMP Pathways):* The net effect of this pathway (Fig. 5.2) is to reduce glucose ( $C_6$ ) to pyruvate ( $C_3$ ). The system can operate under both aerobic and anaerobic conditions. Under aerobic conditions, it usually functions with the tricarboxylic acid cycle which can oxidize pyruvate to  $CO_2$  and  $H_2O$ . Under anaerobic conditions, pyruvate is fermented to a wide range of fermentation products, many of which are of industrial importance (Fig. 5.3).

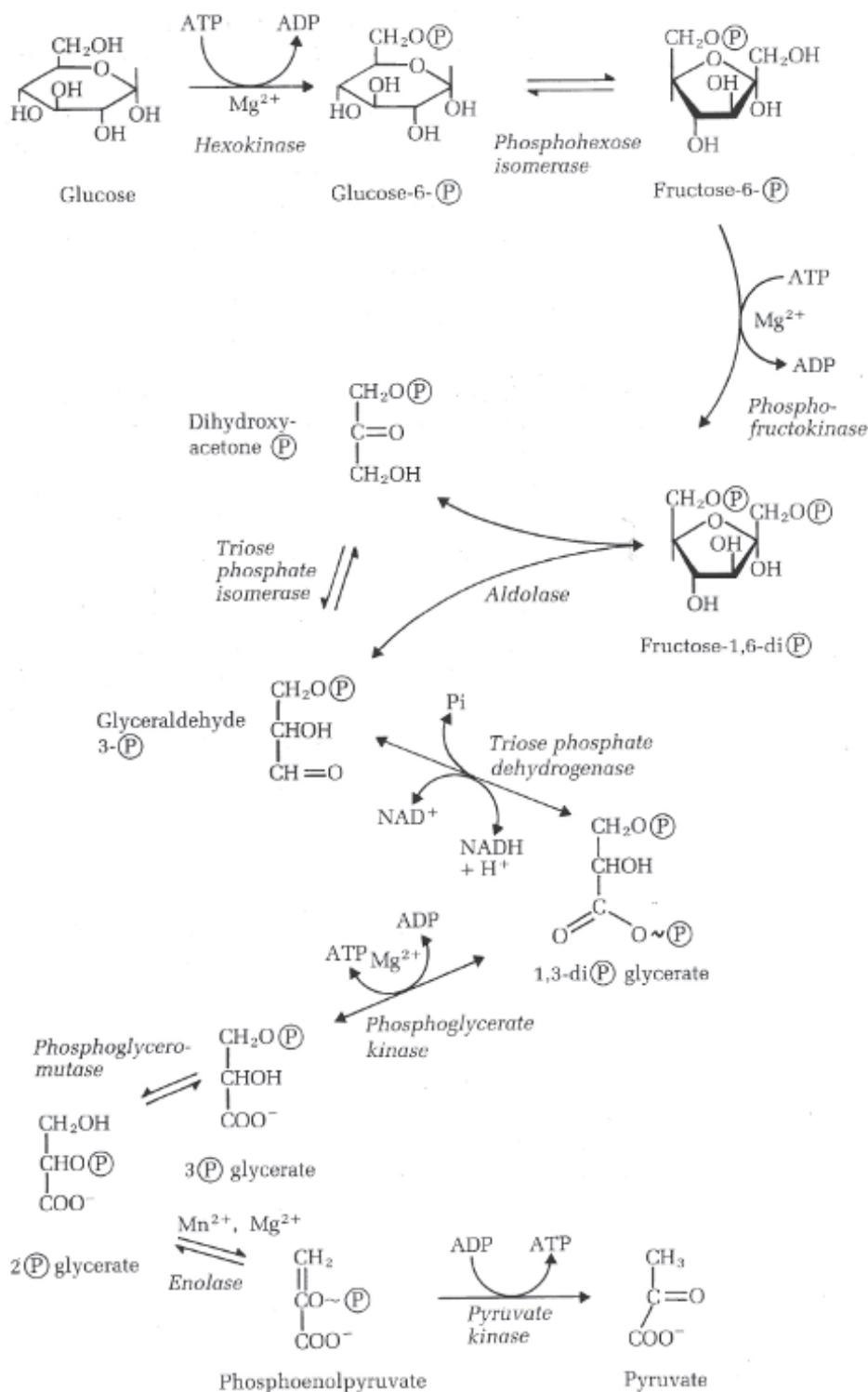
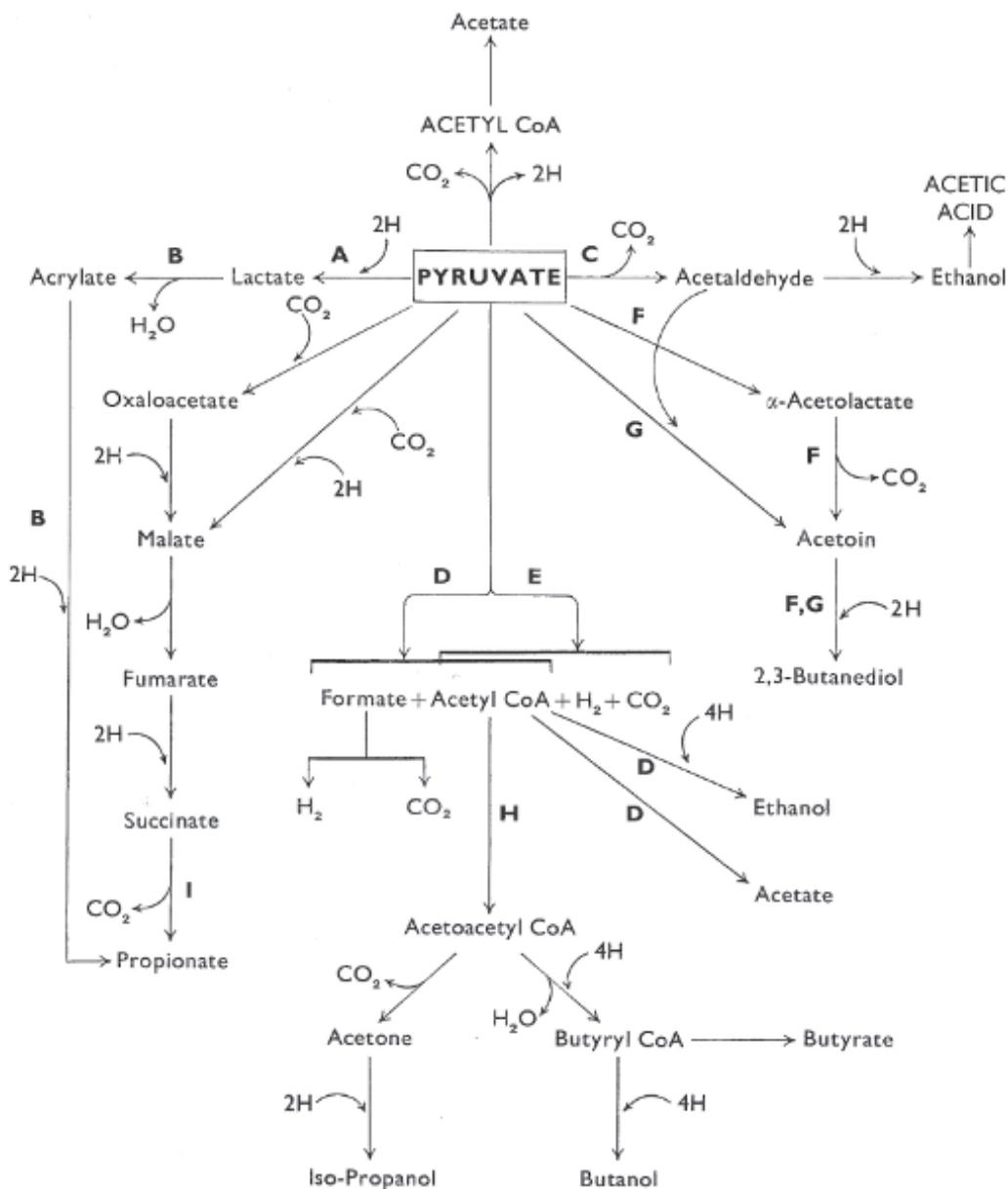


Fig. 5.2 The Embden-Meyerhof-Parnas (EMP Pathways)



A	(End product, Lactate)	Lactic acid bacteria
B	(End product, Acrylate)	<i>Clostridium propionicum</i>
C	(End product, Ethanol)	Yeasts, <i>Acetobacter</i> , <i>Zymomonas</i>
D	(Formic acid, H <sub>2</sub> , CO <sub>2</sub> , Ethanol)	<i>Enterobacteriaceae</i>
E	(H <sub>2</sub> , CO <sub>2</sub> , Ethanol)	Clostridia
F	(Acetoin, 2-3 Butanediol)	<i>Aerobacter</i>
G	(Acetoin, 2-3 Butanediol)	Yeasts
H	(Acetone, Iso-Propanol, Acetone)	Clostridia (butyric acid)
I	(Propionate)	Propionic acid bacteria

Fig. 5.3 Products of the Fermentation of Pyruvate by Different Microorganisms

- (ii) **The Pentose Phosphate Pathway (PP):** This is also known as the Hexose Monophosphate Pathway (HMP) or the phosphogluconate pathway. While the EMP pathway provides pyruvate, a C<sub>3</sub> compound, as its end product, there is no end product in the PP pathway. Instead, it provides a pool of triose (C<sub>3</sub>), pentose (C<sub>5</sub>), hexose (C<sub>6</sub>), and heptose (C<sub>7</sub>) phosphates. The primary purpose of the PP pathway, however, appears to be to generate energy in the form of NADPH<sub>2</sub> for biosynthetic and other purposes and pentose phosphates for nucleotide synthesis.
- (iii) **The Entner-Duodoroff Pathway (ED):** The pathway is restricted to a few bacteria especially *Pseudomonas*, but it is also carried out by some fungi. It is used by some organisms in the anaerobic breakdown of glucose and by others only in gluconate metabolism.
- (iv) **The Phosphoketolase Pathway:** In some bacteria, glucose fermentation yields lactic acid, ethanol, and CO<sub>2</sub>. Pentoses are also fermented to lactic acid and acetic acid. An example is *Leuconostoc mesenteroides*.

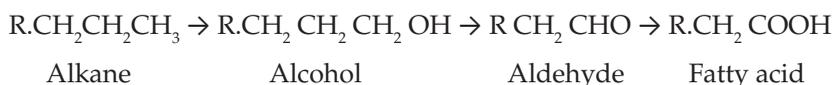
### Pathways used by microorganisms

The two major pathways used by microorganisms for carbohydrate metabolism are the EMP and the PP pathways. Microorganisms differ in respect of their use of the two pathways. Thus, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* under aerobic conditions uses mainly the EMP pathway; under anaerobic conditions only about 30% of glucose is catabolized by this pathway. In *Penicillium chrysogenum*, however, about 66% of the glucose is utilized via the PP pathway. The PP pathway is also used by *Acetobacter*, the acetic acid bacteria. Homofermentative bacteria utilize the EMP pathway for glucose breakdown. The ED pathway is especially used by *Pseudomonas*.

### 5.5.2 The Catabolism of Hydrocarbons

Although the price of crude oil continues to rise, it is along with other hydrocarbons still used as energy and carbon skeleton sources in some fermentations. However, compared with carbohydrates, far fewer organisms appear to utilize hydrocarbons. Hydrocarbons have been used in single-cell protein production and in amino-acid production among other products.

- (i) **Alkanes:** Alkanes are saturated hydrocarbons that have the general formula C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>n+2</sub>. When the alkanes are utilized, the terminal methyl group is usually oxidized to the corresponding primary alcohol, thus:



The alcohol is then oxidized to a fatty acid, which then forms as ester with coenzyme A. Thereafter, it is involved in a series of β-oxidations which lead to the step-wise cleaving off of acetyl coenzyme A which is then further metabolized in the Tricarboxylic Acid Cycle.

- (ii) **Alkenes:** The alkenes are unsaturated hydrocarbons and contain many double bonds. Alkenes may be oxidized at the terminal methyl group as shown earlier for alkanes. They may also be oxidized at the double bond at the opposite end of the molecule by

molecular oxygen given rise to a diol (an alcohol with two –OH groups). Thereafter, they are converted to fatty acid and utilized as indicated above.

## **5.6 CARBON PATHWAYS FOR THE FORMATION OF INDUSTRIAL PRODUCTS DERIVED FROM PRIMARY METABOLISM**

The broad flow of carbon in the formation of industrial products resulting from primary metabolism may be examined under two headings: (i) catabolic products resulting from fermentation of pyruvic acid and (ii) anabolic products.

### **5.6.1 Catabolic Products**

Industrial products which are catabolic products formed from carbohydrate fermentation are derived from pyruvic acid produced via the EMP, PP, or ED pathway. Those of importance are ethanol, acetic acid, 2, 3-butanediol, butanol, acetone, and lactic acid. The general outline for deriving these from pyruvic acid has already been shown in [Fig. 5.3](#). The nature of the products not only broadly depends on the species of organisms used but also on the prevailing environmental conditions such as pH, temperature, aeration, etc.

### **5.6.2 Anabolic Products**

Anabolic primary metabolites of industrial interest include amino acids, enzymes, citric acid, and nucleic acids. The carbon pathways for the production of anabolic primary metabolites will be discussed as each product is examined.

## **5.7 CARBON PATHWAYS FOR THE FORMATION OF PRODUCTS OF MICROBIAL SECONDARY METABOLISM OF INDUSTRIAL IMPORTANCE**

The unifying features of the synthesis of secondary metabolic products by microorganisms can be summarized as follows:

- (i) conversion of a normal substrate into important intermediates of general metabolism;
- (ii) the assembly of these intermediates in an unusual way by means of a combination of standard general mechanisms with a selection from a relatively small number of special mechanisms;
- (iii) these special mechanisms while being peculiar to secondary metabolism are not unrelated to general or primary mechanisms;
- (iv) the synthetic activity of secondary metabolism appears in response to conditions favorable for cell multiplication.

From the above, it becomes clear that although secondary metabolites are diverse in their intrinsic chemical nature as well as in the organism which produce them, they use only a few biosynthetic pathways which are related to and use the intermediates of the primary metabolic pathways. Based on the broad flow of carbon through primary metabolites to secondary metabolites, the secondary metabolites may then be classified according to the following six metabolic pathways.

- (i) **Secondary products derived from the intact glucose skeleton:** The carbon skeleton of glucose is incorporated unaltered in many antibiotics and other secondary metabolites. The entire basic structure of the secondary product may be derived from glucose as in streptomycin or it may form the glycoside molecule to be combined with a non-sugar (aglycone portion) from another biosynthetic route. The incorporation of the intact glucose molecule is more common among the actinomycetes than among the fungi.
- (ii) **Secondary products related to nucleosides:** The pentose phosphate pathway provides ribose (5-carbon) for nucleoside biosynthesis. Many secondary metabolites in this group are antibiotics and are produced mainly by actinomycetes and fungi. Examples are nucleoside antibiotics such as bleomycin.
- (iii) **Secondary products derived through the Shikimate-Chorismate Pathway:** Shikimic acid ( $C_7$ ) is formed by the condensation of erythrose-4-phosphate ( $C_4$ ) obtained from the PP pathway with phosphoenolpyruvate ( $C_3$ ) from the EMP pathway. It is converted to chorismic acid which is a key intermediate in the formation of numerous products including aromatic amino acids such as phenylalanine, tyrosine, and tryptophan. Chorismic acid is also a precursor for a number of secondary metabolites including chloramphenicol, p-amino benzoic acid, phenazines, and pyocyanin which all have antimicrobial properties. The metabolic route leading to the formation of these compounds is therefore referred to as the shikimate pathway. In view of this central role of chorismic acid, however, the route is more widely known as the shikimate-chorismate route. The shikimate-chorismate route is an important route for the formation of aromatic secondary products in bacteria and actinomycetes. Examples of such secondary products include chloramphenicol and novobiocin. The route is less used in fungi, where the polyketide pathway is more common for the synthesis of aromatic secondary products.
- (iv) **The polyketide pathway:** polyketide biosynthesis is highly characteristic of the fungi, where more secondary metabolites are produced by it than by any other. Indeed, most of the known polyketide-derived natural products have been obtained from the fungi, a much smaller number being obtained from bacteria and higher plants. The triose ( $C_3$ ) derived from glucose in the EMP pathway is converted via pyruvic acid to acetate, which occupies a central position in both primary and secondary synthesis. The addition of  $CO_2$  to an acetate group gives a malonate group. The synthesis of polyketides is very similar to that of fatty acids. In the synthesis of both groups of compounds, acetate reacts with malonate with the loss of  $CO_2$ . By successive further linear reactions between the resulting compound and malonate, the chain of the final compound (fatty acid or polyketide) can be successively lengthened.

However, in the case of fatty acid the addition of each malonate molecule is followed by decarboxylation and reduction whereas in polyketides these latter reactions do occur. Due to this a chain of ketones or a  $\beta$ -polyketomethylene (hence the name polyketide) is formed. The polyketide ( $\beta$ -poly-ketomethylene) chain made up of repeating  $C-CH_2$  or ' $C_2$  units' is a reactive protein-bound intermediate which can undergo a number of reactions, notably formation into rings. Polyketides are classified as triketides, tetraketides, pentaketides, etc. depending on the number of ' $C_2$  units'. Orsellinic acid is derived from the straight chain compound with four ' $C_2$ -units' is a tetraketide. Although the polyketide route is not common in actinomycetes, a modified polyketide route is used in the synthesis of tetracyclines by *Streptomyces griseus*.

- (v) **Terpenes and steroids:** The second important biosynthetic route from acetate is that leading via mevalonic acid to the terpenes and steroids. Microorganisms especially fungi and bacteria synthesize a large number of terpenes, steroids, carotenoids, and other products following the 'isoprene rule'. The central point of this rule is that these compounds are all derivatives of isoprene, the five-carbon compound. Simply put, the isoprene rules consist of the following
- (i) Synthesis of mevalonate from acetate or leucine.
  - (ii) Dehydration and decarboxylation to produce isoprene followed by condensation to give isoprenes of various lengths.
  - (iii) Cyclization (ring formation), e.g. to give steroids.
  - (iv) Further modification of the cyclised structure. The route leads to the formation of essential steroid hormones of mammals and to a variety of secondary metabolites in fungi and plants. It is not used to any extent in the actinomycetes.
- (vi) **Compounds derived from amino acids:** The amino acids are derived from various products in the catabolism of glucose. Serine (C<sub>3</sub>N) and glycine (C<sub>2</sub>N) are derived from the triose (C<sub>3</sub>) formed from glucose; valine (C<sub>5</sub>N) is derived from acetate (C<sub>3</sub>); aspartic acid (C<sub>4</sub>N) is derived from oxaloacetic acid (C<sub>4</sub>) while glutamic acid (C<sub>5</sub>N) is derived from oxoglutaric acid (C<sub>5</sub>).

Secondary products may be formed from one, two, or more amino acids. An example of the first group (with one amino acid group) is hadacidin which inhibits plant tumors and is produced from glycine and produced by *Penicillium frequentans* according to the formula shown below



Other examples are the insecticidal compound ibotenic acid (Amanita factor C) produced by the mushroom *Amanita muscaria* and psilocybin, a drug which causes hallucinations and produced by the fungus *Psilocybe*. The ergot alkaloids produced by *Claviceps purpurea* also belong in this group as does the antibiotic cycloserine.

Among the secondary products derived from two amino acids are gliotoxin which is produced by members of the Fungi Imperfecti, especially *Trichoderma*, and which is a highly active anti-fungal and antibacterial and Arantoin, an antiviral drug.

The secondary products derived from more than two amino acids include many which are of immense importance to man. These include many toxins from mushrooms, e.g. the *Amanita* toxins (phalloidin, amanitin), peptide antibiotics from *Bacillus* spp., and a host of other compounds.

An example of a secondary metabolite produced from three amino acids is malformin A which is formed by *Aspergillus* spp. It induces curvatures of bean shoots and maize seedlings. It is formed from L-leucine, D-leucine, and cysteine.

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. List metabolic pathways of relevance in industrial microbiology and biotechnology.
2. Comment on the importance of knowledge of metabolic pathways on production of various microbial products.

3. Distinguish between products of primary metabolism and products of secondary metabolism and explain why this classification is important in product recovery.

### SUGGESTED READINGS

- Bull, A.T., Ward, A.C., Goodfellow, M. 2000. Search and Discovery Strategies for Biotechnology. The Paradigm Shift Microbiology and Molecular Biology Reviews. 64, 573–606.
- Demain, A.L. 1998. Induction of Microbial Secondary Metabolism International Microbiology. 1, 259–264.
- Herrmann, K.H., Weaver, L.M. 1999. The Shikimate Pathway. Annual Review of Plant Physiology and Plant Molecular Biology. 50, 473–503.
- Madigan, M.T., Martinko, J.M. 2006. Brock Biology of Micro-organisms. Pearson Prentice Hall Upper Saddle River, USA.
- Meurer, G., Hutchinson, C.R. 1999. Genes for the Synthesis of Microbial Secondary Metabolites. *In*: Manual of Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology. A.L. Demain and J.E. Davies (eds.) ASM Press. 2nd ed. Washington, DC, USA. pp. 740–758.
- Zahner, H. 1978. *In*: Antibiotics and other Secondary Metabolites. R. Hutter, T. Leisenger, J. Nuesch, W. Wehrli (eds.) Academic Press, New York, USA. pp. 1–17.

---

## Processes for Overproduction of Microbial Metabolites for Industrial Applications

---

A yeast cell introduced into an aqueous solution of glucose and ammonium salts must first permit the entry of the glucose and ammonium salts. Under suitable environmental conditions such as pH and temperature, it will grow by budding within about half an hour. For these buds to occur, hundreds of activities will have gone on within the cell. New proteins to be incorporated into enzymes and other structures will have been synthesized as well as nucleic acids for the chromosomes and carbohydrates for the cell walls. Hundreds of different enzymes will have participated in these synthetic activities. The organism must synthesize each of the compounds at the right time and in the appropriate quantities. If, alongside ammonium salts, amino acids were supplied, the yeast cells would stop absorbing the ammonium salt and instead utilize the supplied 'readymade' substrate.

A few yeasts can utilize starch. If our yeast belonged to this group and was supplied nothing but starch and ammonium salts, it would secrete extracellular enzyme(s) to breakdown the starch to sugars. These sugars would then be absorbed and would be used with ammonium salts for the synthetic activities we described earlier.

Therefore, while the organism's genetic apparatus determines in broad terms the organism's overall synthetic potentialities, what is actually synthesized, clearly depends on what is available in the environment. Most importantly, the organism is not only able to 'decide' when to manufacture and secrete certain enzymes to enable it to utilize materials in the environment, but it is able to decide to stop the synthesis of certain compounds if they are supplied to it. These sensing mechanisms for the switching on and off of synthetic processes enable the organism to avoid the overproduction of any particular compound. If it did not have these regulatory mechanisms, it would waste energy and resources in making materials it does not require.

An efficient or 'stringent' organism which does not waste its resources in producing materials it does not require will survive well in natural environments where competition is intense. However, such an organism, while surviving well in nature, would not be of much use as an industrial organism. The industrial microbiologist or biotechnologist

prefers and indeed seeks the wasteful, inefficient, and 'relaxed' organism whose regulatory mechanisms are so poor that it will overproduce the particular metabolite sought. Therefore, knowledge of these regulatory mechanisms and biosynthetic pathways is essential to enable the industrial microbiologist to derange and disorganize them so that the organism will overproduce desired materials.

Regulatory methods and ways of disorganizing microorganisms for the over-production of metabolites are far better understood in primary metabolites than they are in secondary metabolites. For some time, it was thought that secondary metabolites did not need to be regulated since the microorganisms had no apparent need for them.

## 6.1 MECHANISMS ENABLING MICROORGANISMS TO AVOID OVERPRODUCTION OF PRIMARY METABOLIC PRODUCTS THROUGH ENZYME REGULATION

Some of the regulatory mechanisms enabling organisms to avoid overproduction are discussed briefly.

### 6.1.1 Substrate Induction

Some enzymes are produced by microorganisms only when the substrate on which they act is available in the medium. Such enzymes are known as *inducible* enzymes. Analogues of the substrate may act as the inducer. When an inducer is present in the medium, a number of different inducible enzymes may sometimes be synthesized by the organism. This happens when the pathway for the metabolism of the compound is based on sequential induction. In this situation, the organism is induced to produce an enzyme by the presence of a substrate. The intermediate resulting from the action of this enzyme on the substrate induces the production of another enzyme and so on, until metabolism is accomplished. The other group of enzymes is produced whether or not the substrate on which they act is present. These enzymes are known as *constitutive*.

Enzyme induction enables the organism to respond rapidly, sometimes within seconds, to the presence of a suitable substrate, so that unwanted enzymes are not manufactured.

**Molecular basis for enzyme induction:** The molecular mechanism for the rapid response of an organism to the presence of an inducer in the medium relates to protein synthesis since enzymes are protein in nature. Two models exist for explaining the expression of genes in protein synthesis on a molecular basis: one is a negative control and the other positive.

#### 6.1.1.1 The Jacob-Monod model of the (negative) control of protein synthesis

In this scheme (Fig. 6.1), the synthesis of polypeptides and hence enzyme protein is regulated by a group of genes known as the operon which occupies a section of the chromosomal DNA. Each operon controls the synthesis of a particular protein. An operon includes a regulator gene (R) which codes for a repressor protein. The repressor can bind to the operator gene (O) which controls the activity of the neighboring structural genes (S). The production of the enzymes which catalyze the transcription of the message on the DNA into mRNA (namely, RNA polymerase) is controlled by the promoter gene (P). If the repressor protein is combined with the operator gene (O), then the movement of

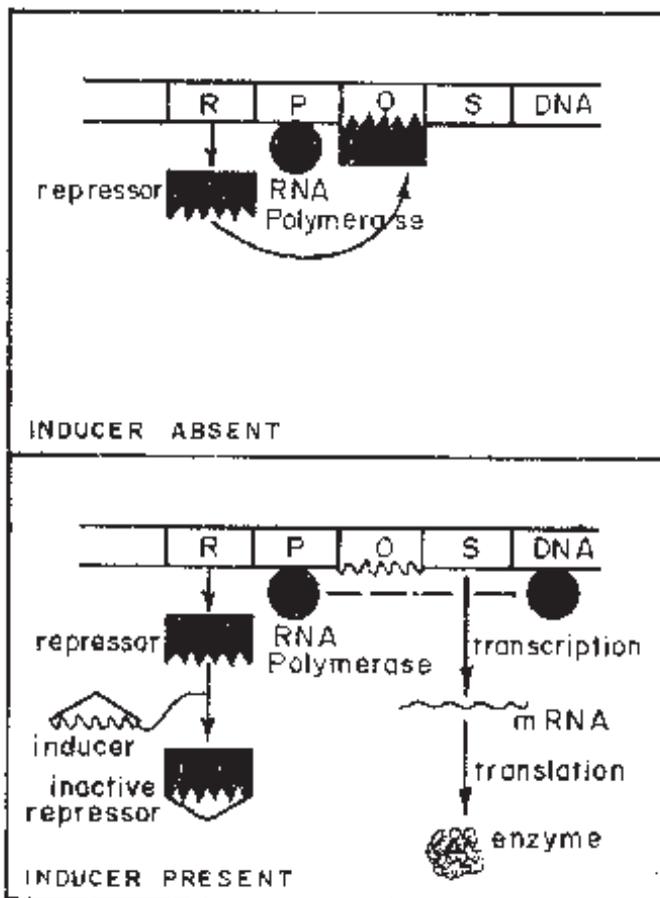


Fig. 6.1 Diagram Illustrating Negative Control of Protein Synthesis According to the Jacob and Monod Model

RNA polymerase is blocked and RNA complementary to the DNA in the structural genes (S) cannot be made. Consequently, no polypeptide and no enzyme will be made. In the absence of the attachment of the repressor to the operator gene, RNA polymerase from the promoter can move to and transcribe the structural genes, S.

Inducible enzymes are made when an inducer is added. Inducers inactivate or remove the repressor protein thus clearing the way for protein synthesis. Constitutive enzymes occur where the regulator gene (R) does not function, produces an inactive repressor, or produces a repressor to which the operator cannot bind. Often, more than one structural gene may be controlled by a given operator.

Mutations can occur in the regulator (R) and operator (O) genes, thus altering the nature of the repressor or making it impossible for an existing repressor to bind to the operator. Such a mutation is called constitutive and it eliminates the need for an inducer. The structural genes of inducible enzymes are usually repressed because of the attachment of the repressor to the operator. During induction the repressor is no longer a hindrance, hence, induction is also known as de-repression. In the model of Jacob and Monod, gene expression can only occur when the operator gene is free, i.e. in the absence of the

attachment of the repressor protein, the operator gene O. For this reason, the control is said to be negative.

### 6.1.1.2 Positive control of protein synthesis

Positive control of protein synthesis has been less well studied but has been established in at least one system, namely the *ara* operon, which is responsible for L-arabinose utilization in *E. coli*. In this system, the product of one gene (*ara C*) is a protein which combines with the inducer arabinose to form an activator molecule which in turn initiates action at the operon. In the scheme as shown in Fig. 6.2, 'C' protein combines with arabinose to produce an arabinose—'C' protein complex which binds to the Promoter P and initiates the synthesis of the various enzymes (isomerase, kinase, and epimerase) which convert L-arabinose to D-xylulose-5-phosphate, a form in which it can be utilized in the Pentose Phosphate pathway.

### 6.1.2 Catabolite Regulation

The presence of carbon compounds other than inducers may also have important effects on protein synthesis. If two carbon sources are available to an organism, the organism will utilize the one which supports growth more rapidly during which period enzymes needed for the utilization of the less available carbon source are repressed and therefore will not be synthesized. As this was first observed when glucose and lactose were supplied to *E. coli*, it is often called the 'glucose effect' since glucose is the more available of the two sugars and lactose utilization is suppressed as long as glucose is available. It soon became known

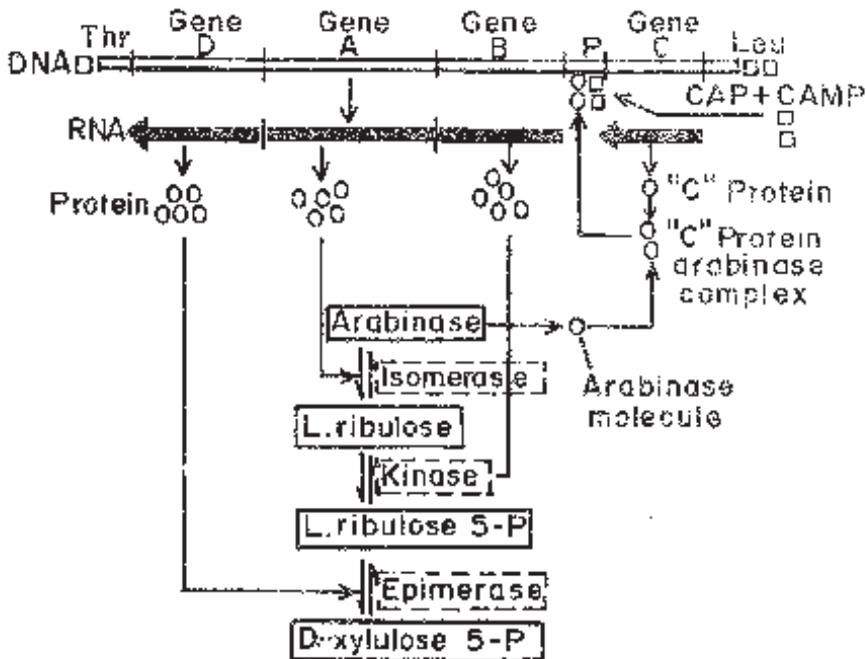


Fig. 6.2 Diagram Illustrating Positive Control of Protein Synthesis

that the effect was not directly a glucose effect but was due to some catabolite. The term *catabolite repression* was therefore adopted as more appropriate.

The active catabolite involved in catabolite repression has been found to be a nucleotide cyclic 3'5'-adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) (Fig. 6.3). In general, less c-AMP accumulates in the cell during growth on carbon compounds supporting rapid growth of the organism, and *vice versa*.

During the rapid growth that occurs on glucose, the intracellular concentration of cyclic AMP is low. c-AMP stimulates the synthesis of a large number of enzymes and is necessary for the synthesis of the mRNA for all the inducible enzymes in *E. coli*. When it is low as a result of growth on a favorable source, the enzymes which need to be induced for the utilization of the less available substrate are not synthesized.

Unlike the negative control of Jacob and Monod, c-AMP exerts a positive control. In this model, an increased concentration of c-AMP is a signal for energy starvation. When such a signal is given, c-AMP binds to an intracellular protein, c-AMP-receptor protein (CRP) for which it has high affinity. The binding of this complex to the promoter site of an operon stimulates the initiation of operon transcription by RNA polymerase (Fig. 6.3). The presence of glucose or a derivative of glucose inhibits adenylate cyclase, the enzyme which converts ATP to c-AMP. Transcription by susceptible operons is inhibited as a result. In short therefore, catabolite repression is reversed by c-AMP.

In recent times, it has been shown that c-AMP and CRP are not the only mediators of catabolite repression. It has been suggested that while catabolite repression in enterobacteria at least is exerted by the catabolite(s) of a rapidly utilized glucose source, it is regulated in a two-fold manner: positive control by c-AMP and a negative control by a catabolite modulation factor (CMF) which can interfere with the operation of operons sensitive to catabolite repression.

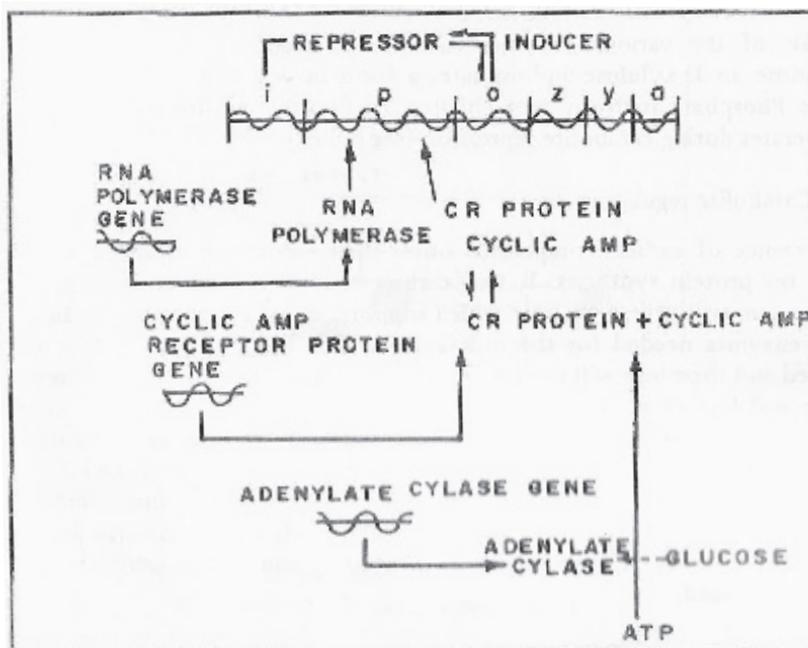


Fig. 6.3 Action of Cyclic Amp on the Lac Operon

### 6.1.3 Feedback Regulation

Feedback or end-product regulations control is exerted by the end-product of a metabolic pathway. Feedback regulations are important in the control over anabolic or biosynthetic enzymes whereas enzymes involved in catabolism are usually controlled by induction and catabolite regulation. Two main types of feedback regulation exist: feedback inhibition and feedback repression. Both of them help to adjust the production rate of pathway end-products to the rate at which macro-molecules are synthesized (see [Fig. 6.4](#)).

#### 6.1.3.1 Feedback inhibition

In feedback inhibition, the final product of metabolic pathway inhibits the action of earlier enzymes (usually the first) of that sequence. The inhibitor and the substrate need not resemble each other, hence the inhibition is often called *allosteric* in contrast with the *isosteric* inhibition where the inhibitor and substrate have the same molecular conformation. Feedback inhibition can be explained on an enzymatic level by the structure of the enzyme molecule. Such enzymes have two types of protein subunits. The binding site on the subunit binds to the substrate while the site on the other subunit binds to the feedback inhibitor. When the inhibitor binds to the enzyme, the shape of the enzymes is changed and, for this reason, it is no longer able to bind on the substrate. The situation is known as the allosteric effect.

#### 6.1.3.2 Feedback repression

Whereas feedback inhibition results in the reduction of the activity of an already synthesized enzyme, feedback repression deals with a reduction in the rate of synthesis of the enzymes. In enzymes that are affected by feedback repression, the regulator gene (R) is said to produce a protein aporepressor which is inactive until it is attached to corepressor, which is the end-product of the biosynthetic pathway. The activated repressor protein then interacts with the operator gene (O) and prevents transcription of the structural genes (S) on to mRNA. A derivative of the end-product may also bring about feedback repression. It is particularly active in stopping the overproduction of vitamins which are required only in small amounts (see [Fig. 6.1](#)).

While feedback inhibition acts rapidly, sometimes within seconds, in preventing the wasting of carbon and energy to manufacture an already available catabolite, feedback repression acts more slowly both in its introduction and in its removal. About two generations are required for the specific activity of the repressed enzymes to rise to its maximum level when the repressing metabolite is removed; about the same number of generations is also required for the enzyme to be repressed when a competitive metabolite is introduced.

#### 6.1.3.3 Regulation in branched pathways

In a branched pathway leading to two or more end-products, difficulties would arise for the organism if one of them inhibited the synthesis of the other. For this reason, several patterns of feedback inhibition have evolved for branched pathways. Each type is applicable to either feedback inhibition or feedback repression. The descriptions below refer to [Fig. 6.4](#).

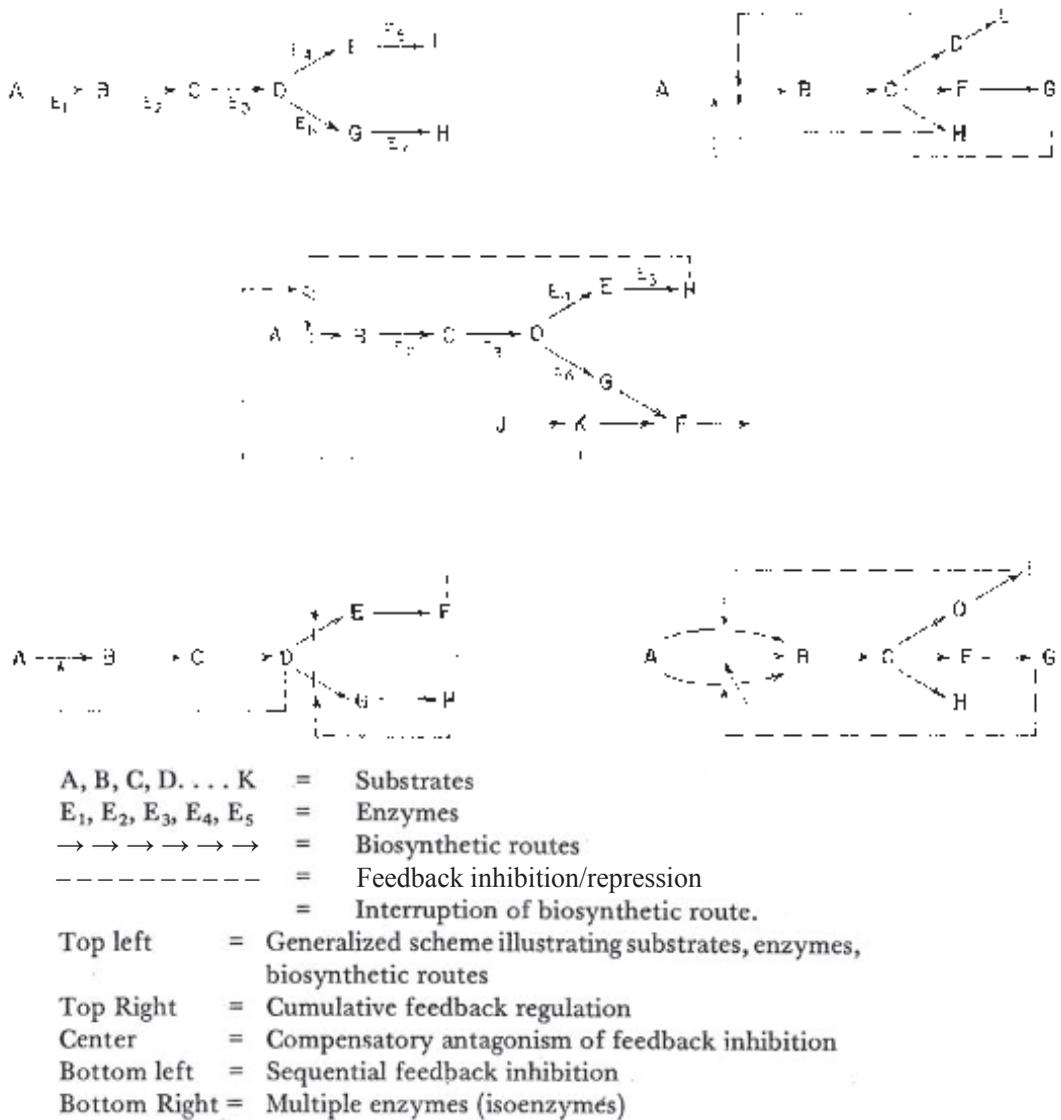


Fig. 6.4 Feedback Regulation (Inhibition and Repression) of Enzymes in Branched Pathways

- (i) **Concerted or multivalent feedback regulation:** Individual end-products F and H have little or no negative effect on the first enzyme, E<sub>1</sub>, but together they are potent inhibitors. It occurs in *Salmonella* in the branched sequence leading to valine, leucine, isoleucine, and pantothenic acid.
- (ii) **Cooperative feedback regulation:** In this case, the end-products F and H are individually weakly inhibiting the primary enzyme, E<sub>1</sub>, but together they act synergistically, exerting an inhibition exceeding the sum of their individual activities.
- (iii) **Cumulative feedback regulation:** In this system, an end-product for example (H) inhibits the primary enzyme E<sub>1</sub>, to a degree which is not dependent on other inhibitors. A second inhibitor further increases the total inhibition but not

synergistically. Complete inhibition occurs only when all the products (E, G, H in Fig. 6.4) are present.

- (iv) *Compensatory antagonism of feedback regulation*: This system operates where one of the end-products, F, is an intermediate in another pathway J, K, F (Fig. 6.4). In order to prevent the other end-product, H, of the original pathway from inhibiting the primary enzyme,  $E_1$ , and ultimately causing the accumulation of H, the intermediates J and K in the second pathway are able to prevent its own accumulation by decreasing the inhibitory effect of H on the primary enzyme  $E_1$ .
- (v) *Sequential feedback regulation*: Here, the end-products inhibit the enzymes at the beginning of the bifurcation of the pathways. This inhibition causes the accumulation of the intermediate just before the bifurcation. It is the accumulation of this intermediate which inhibits the primary enzyme of the pathway.
- (vi) *Multiple enzymes (isoenzymes) with specific regulatory effectors*: Multiple primary enzymes are produced each of which catalyzes the same reaction from A to B but are controlled by a different end-product. Thus, if one end-product inhibits one primary enzyme, the other end products can still be formed by the mediation of one of the remaining primary enzymes.

#### 6.1.4 Amino Acid Regulation of RNA Synthesis

Both protein synthesis and RNA synthesis stop when an amino acid requiring mutant exhausts the amino acid supplied to it in the medium. In this way, the cell avoids the overproduction of unwanted RNA. Such economical strains are 'stringent'. However, certain mutant strains are 'relaxed' and continue to produce RNA in the absence of the required amino acid. The stoppage of RNA synthesis in stringent strains is due to the production of the nucleotide guanosine tetraphosphate and guanosine pentaphosphate when the supplied amino acid becomes limiting. The amount of nucleotide guanosine tetraphosphate or nucleotide guanosine pentaphosphate in the cell is inversely proportional to the amount of RNA and the rate of growth.

#### 6.1.5 Energy Charge Regulation

The cell can also regulate production by the amount of energy it makes available for any particular reaction. The cell's high energy compounds adenosine triphosphate (ATP), adenosine diphosphate (ADP), and adenosine monophosphate (AMP) are produced during catabolism. The amount of high energy in a cell is given by the adenylate charge or energy charge. This measures the extent to which ATP-ADP-AMP systems of the cell contains high energy phosphate bonds and is given by the formula.

$$\text{Energy charge} = \frac{(\text{ATP}) + 1/2 (\text{ADP})}{(\text{ATP}) + (\text{ADP}) + \text{AMP}}$$

Using this formula, the charge for a cell falls between 0 and 1.0 by a system resembling feedback regulation; energy is denied reactions which are energy yielding and shunted to those requiring it. Thus, at the branch point in carbohydrate metabolism phosphoenolpyruvate is either dephosphorylated to give pyruvate or carboxylated to give oxaloacetate. A high adenylate charge inhibits dephosphorylation and so leads to decreased

synthesis of ATP. A high energy charge on the other hand does not affect carboxylation to oxaloacetate. It may indeed increase it because of the greater availability of energy.

### 6.1.6 Permeability Control

While metabolic control prevents the overproduction of essential macromolecules, permeability control enables the microorganisms to retain these molecules within the cell and to selectively permit the entry of some molecules from the environment. This control is exerted at the cell membrane.

A solute molecule passes across a lipid-protein membrane only if there is driving force acting on it, and some means exists for the molecule to pass through the membrane. Several means are available for the transportation of solutes through membranes, and these can be divided into two types: (a) passive diffusion, (b) active transport via carrier or transport mechanism.

#### 6.1.6.1 Passive transport

The driving force in this type of transportation is the concentration gradient. In the case of non-electrolytes or ions, this is the difference in electrical charge across the membrane between the internal of the cell and the outside. Yeasts take up sugar by this method. However, few compounds outside water pass across the border by passive transportation.

#### 6.1.6.2 Transportation via specific carriers

Most solutes pass through the membrane via some specific carrier mechanism in which macromolecules situated in the cell membrane pick up solute molecules and help them cross the membrane. Three of such mechanisms are known:

- (i) *Facilitated diffusion*: This is the simplest of the three, and the driving force is the difference in concentration of the solute across the border. The carrier in the membrane merely helps increase the rate of passage through the membrane and not the final concentration in the cell.
- (ii) *Active transport*: This occurs when material is accumulated in the cell against a concentration gradient. Energy is expended in the transportation through the aid of enzymes known as permeases but the solute is not altered. The permeases act on specific compounds and are controlled in many cases by induction or repression so that waste is avoided.
- (iii) *Group translocation*: In this system, the solute is modified chemically during the transport process, after which it accumulates in the cell. The carrier molecules act like enzymes catalyzing group-transfer reactions using the solute as substrate. Group translocation can be envisioned as consisting of two separate activities: the entrance process and the exit process. The exit process increases in rate with the accumulation of cell solute and is carrier-mediated, but it is not certain whether the same carriers mediate entrance and efflux.

Carrier-mediated transportation is important because it is selective, and also because it is the rate-limiting step in the metabolism of available carbon and energy sources. As an increased rate of accumulation of metabolizable carbon source can increase the extent of

catabolite repression of enzyme synthesis, the rate of metabolizable carbon transport may have widespread effects on the metabolism of the entire organism.

## 6.2 DERANGEMENT OR BYPASSING OF REGULATORY MECHANISMS FOR THE OVERPRODUCTION OF PRIMARY METABOLITES

The mechanisms by which microorganisms regulate their metabolism ensure that they do not overproduce metabolites and hence avoid wasting energy or building blocks. From the point of view of the organism, an efficient organism such as *Escherichia coli* does not permit any wastage: it switches its synthetic mechanisms on and off only as required and makes no concessions to the need of the industrial microbiologist to keep his job through obtaining excess metabolites from it!

The interest of the biotechnologist, the industrial microbiologist, and the biochemical engineer, is to see that the microorganism overproduces desirable metabolites. If the microorganism is highly efficient and economical, then the adequate approach is to disorganize its equipment for the establishment of order and thus cause it to overproduce. The previous section discussed methods by which the organism avoids overproduction. We will now discuss how these control methods are disorganized.

### 6.2.1 Metabolic Control

#### 6.2.1.1 Feedback control

Feedback control is the major means by which the overproduction of amino acids and nucleotides is avoided in microorganisms. The basic ingredients of this manipulation are knowledge of the pathway of synthesis of the metabolic product and the manipulation of the organism to produce the appropriate mutants.

- (i) **Overproduction of an intermediate in an unbranched pathway:** The accumulation of an intermediate in an unbranched pathway is the easiest of the various manipulations to be considered. Consider the production of end-product E following the series in Fig. 6.5.

End-product E inhibits Enzyme 1 and represses Enzymes 2, 3, and 4. An auxotrophic mutant is produced which lacks Enzyme 3. Such a mutant therefore requires E for growth. If limiting (low) levels of E are now supplied to the medium, the amount in the cell will not be enough to cause inhibition of Enzyme 1 or repression of Enzyme 2 and C will therefore be overproduced and excreted from the cells. This principle is applied in the production of ornithine by a citrulline-less mutant (citrulline auxotroph) of *Corynebacterium glutamicum* to which low level of arginine are supplied.

- (ii) **Overproduction of an intermediate of a branched pathway; Inosine-5-monophosphate (IMP) fermentation:** Nucleotides are important as flavoring agents and the over-production of some can be carried out as shown in Fig. 6.7. In the pathway shown in Fig. 6.7, end-products adenosine 5-monophosphate (AMP) and guanosine-5-monophosphate (GMP) both inhibit cumulatively via feedback regulation and repress the primary enzyme [1].

Furthermore, AMP inhibits an enzyme [11] which converts IMP to xanthosine-5-monophosphate (XMP). By feeding low levels of adenine to an auxotrophic mutant of

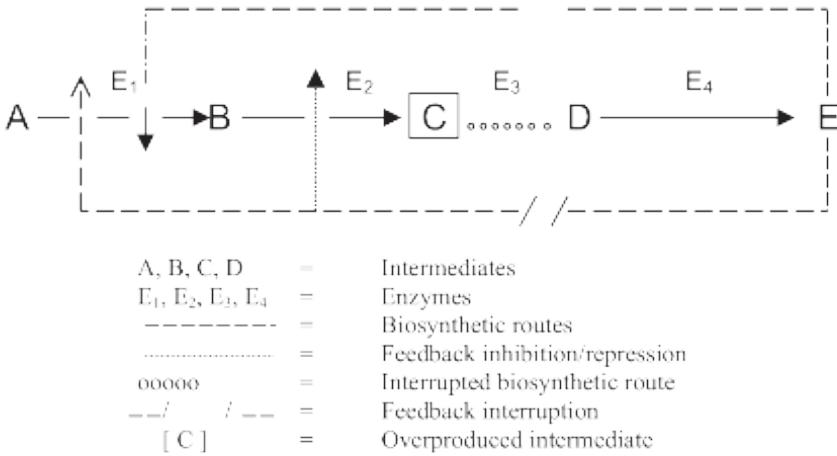


Fig. 6.5 Scheme for the Overproduction of an Intermediate in an Unbranched Pathway

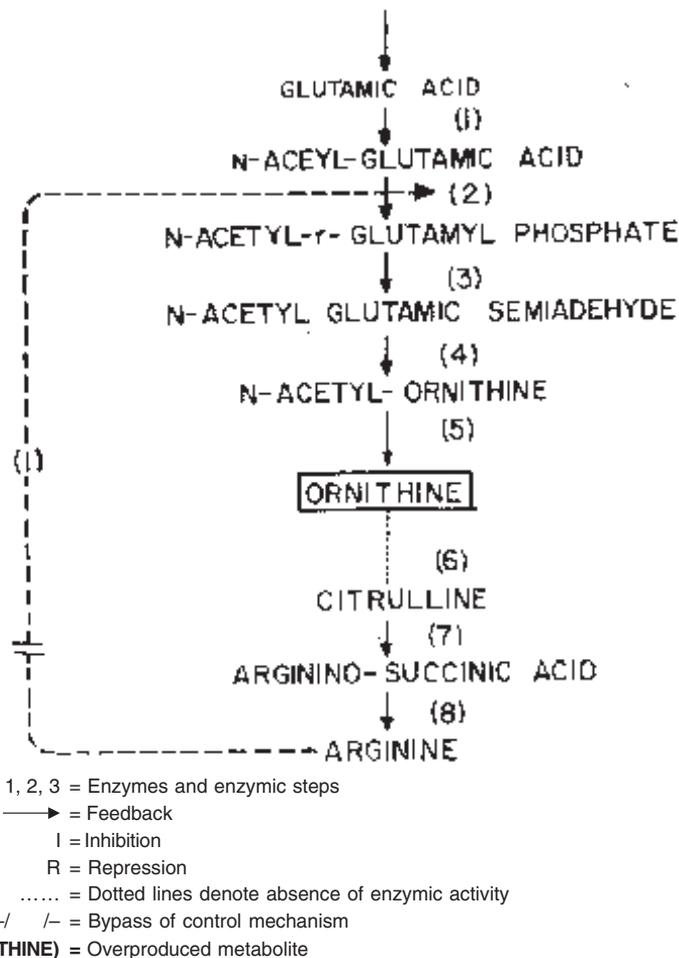
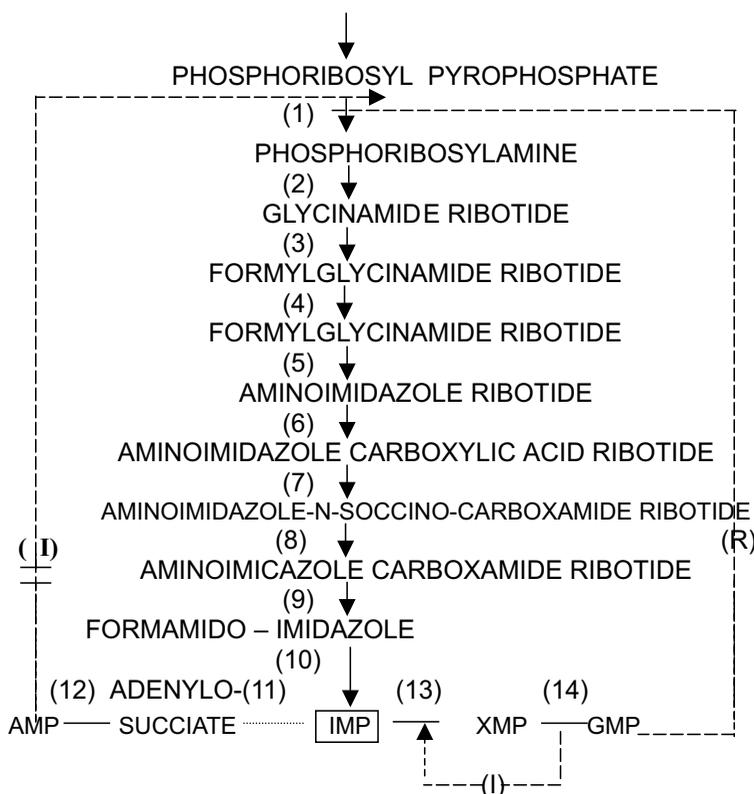


Fig. 6.6 Scheme for the Overproduction of Ornithine by a Citrullineless Mutant of *Corynebacterium glutamicum*



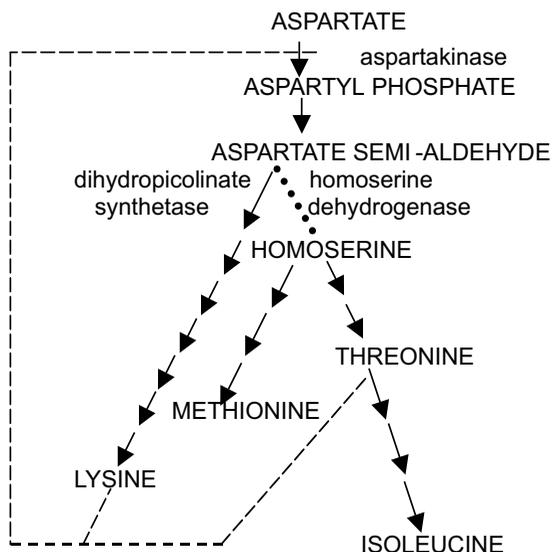
Key is as indicated in Fig. 6.6

**Fig. 6.7** Scheme for the Overproduction of Inosinic Acid by an Adenine Auxotroph of *Corynebacterium glutamicum*

*Corynebacterium glutamicum* which lacks the enzyme [11] (also known as adenineless because it cannot make adenine) IMP is caused to accumulate. The conversion of IMP to XMP is inhibited by GMP at [13]. When another enzyme [14] is removed by mutation, a strain requiring both guanine and adenine is obtained. Such a strain will excrete high amounts of XMP when fed limiting concentrations of guanine and adenine.

- (iii) **Overproduction of end-products of a branched pathway:** The overproduction of end-products is more complicated than obtaining intermediates. Among end-products themselves the production of end-products of branched pathways is easier than in unbranched pathways. Overproduction of end-products of branched pathways will be discussed in this section; unbranched pathway will be dealt with later.

This is best illustrated using lysine, an important amino acid lacking in cereals and therefore added as a supplement to cereal foods especially in animal foods (Fig. 6.8). It is produced using either *Corynebacterium glutamicum* or *Brevibacterium flavum*. Lysine is produced in these bacteria by a branched pathway that also produces methionine, isoleucine, and threonine. The initial enzyme in this pathway aspartokinase is regulated by concerted feedback inhibition of threonine and lysine. By mutational



Key as in Fig. 6.6

**Fig. 6.8** Lysine Overproduction Using a Mutant of *Corynebacterium glutamicum* Lacking the Enzyme Homoserine Dehydrogenase

removal of the enzyme which converts aspartate semi-aldehyde to homoserine, namely homoserine dehydrogenase, the mutant cannot grow unless methionine and threonine are added to the medium. As long as the threonine is supplied in limiting quantities, the intracellular concentration of the amino acid is low and does not inhibit the primary enzyme, aspartokinase. The metabolic intermediates are thus moved to the lysine branch and lysine accumulates in the medium (Fig. 6.8).

- (iv) *Overproduction of end-product of an unbranched pathway*: Two methods are used for the overproduction of the end-product of an unbranched pathway. The first is the use of a toxic analogue of the desired compound and the second is to back-mutate an auxotrophic mutant.

*Use of toxic or feedback resistant analogues*: In this method, the organism (bacterial or yeast cells, or fungal spores) are first exposed to a mutagen. They are then plated in a medium containing the analogue of the desired compound which is however also toxic to the organism. Most of the mutagenized cells will be killed by the analogue. Those which survive will be resistant to the analogue and some of them will be resistant to feedback repression and inhibition by the material whose overproduction is desired. This is because the mutagenized organism would have been 'fooled' into surviving on a substrate similar to but not the same as offered after mutagenesis. As a result, it may exhibit feedback inhibition in a medium containing the analogue but may be resistant to feedback inhibition from the material to be produced due to slight changes in the configuration of the enzymes produced by the mutant. The net effect is to modify the enzyme produced by the mutant so that it is less sensitive to feedback inhibition. Alternatively, the enzyme forming system may be so altered that it is insensitive to feedback repression. Table 6.1 shows a list of compounds which have been used to produce analogue-resistant mutants.

**Table 6.1** Excretion of end-products by analogue-resistant mutants

<i>Analogue</i>	<i>Compound Excreted</i>	<i>Organism</i>
p-fluorophenylalanine	Phenylalanine	<i>Pseudomonas</i> sp. <i>Mycobacterium</i> sp.
p-fluorophenylalanine	Tyrosine	<i>Escherichia coli</i>
Thienylalanine	Tyrosine + phenylalanine	<i>E. coli</i>
Thienylalanine	Phenylalanine	<i>E. coli</i>
Ethionine	Methionine	<i>E. coli</i> , <i>Candida utilis</i> <i>Neurospora crassa</i>
Norleucine	Methionine	<i>E. coli</i>
6-Methyltryptophan	Tryptophan	<i>Salmonella typhimurium</i>
5-Methyltryptophan	Tryptophan	<i>E. coli</i> , <i>Escherichia</i> <i>animdolica</i>
Canavanine	Arginine	<i>E. coli</i>
Trifluoroleucine	Leucine	<i>S. typhimurium</i>
Valine	Isoleucine	<i>E. coli</i>
2-Thiazolealanine	Histidine	<i>E. coli</i> , <i>S. typhimurium</i>
3, 4-Dehydroproline	Proline	<i>E. coli</i>
2, 6-Diaminopurine	Adenine	<i>S. typhimurium</i>

**Use of reverse mutation:** A reverse mutation can be caused in the structural genes of an auxotrophic mutant in a process known as reversion. Enzymes which differ in structure from the original enzyme but are nevertheless still active often result. It has been reported that the reversion of auxotrophic mutants lacking the primary enzyme in a metabolic pathway often results in revertants which excrete the end-product of the pathway. The enzyme in the revertant is active but differs from the original enzyme in being insensitive to feedback inhibition.

### 6.2.1.2 Restriction of enzyme activity

In *Aspergillus niger*, the accumulation of citric acid in the tricarboxylic acid cycle can be encouraged by limiting the supply of phosphate and the metals which form components of co-enzymes to the organism. These metals are iron, manganese, and zinc. In citric acid production, the quantity of these is limited, while that of copper which inhibits the enzymes of the TCA cycle is increased.

### 6.2.2 Permeability

Ease of permeability is important in industrial microorganisms not only because it facilitates the isolation of the product, but more importantly because of the removal of the

product from the site of feedback regulation. If the product did not diffuse out of the cell but remained cell-bound, then the cell would have to be disrupted to enable the isolation of the product, thereby increasing costs. The importance of permeability is most easily demonstrated in glutamic acid producing bacteria. In these bacteria, the permeability barrier must be altered so that a high level of amino acid is accumulated in the broth. This increased permeability can be induced by several methods:

- (i) **Biotin deficiency:** Biotin is a coenzyme in carboxylation and trans-carboxylation reactions, including the fixation of CO<sub>2</sub> to acetate to form malonate. The enzyme which catalyzes this is rich in biotin. The formation of malonyl CoA by this enzyme (acetyl-CoA carboxylase) is the limiting factor in the synthesis of long chain fatty acids. Therefore, biotin deficiency would cause aberrations in the fatty acid produced and hence in the lipid fraction of the cell membrane, resulting in leaks in the membrane. Biotin deficiency has been shown also to cause aberrant forms in *Bacillus polymax*, *B. megaterium*, and in yeasts.
- (ii) **Use of fatty acid derivatives:** Fatty acid derivatives which are surface-acting agents, e.g. tween 60 (polyoxyethylene-sorbitan monostearate) and tween 40 (polyoxyethylene-sorbitan monopalmitate), have actions similar to biotin and must be added to the medium before or during the log phase of growth. These additives seem to cause changes in the quantity and quality of the lipid components of the cell membrane. For example, they cause a relative increase in saturated fatty acids as compared to unsaturated fatty acids.
- (iii) **Penicillin:** Penicillin inhibits cell wall formation in susceptible bacteria by interfering with the crosslinking of acetyl-muramic-polypeptide units in the mucopeptide. The cell wall is thus deranged causing glutamate excretion, probably due to damage to the membrane which is the site of synthesis of the wall.

### 6.3 REGULATION OF OVERPRODUCTION IN SECONDARY METABOLITES

There is increasing evidence that controls similar to those discussed above for primary metabolism also occur in secondary metabolites. Some examples will be given below:

#### 6.3.1 Induction

The stimulatory effects of some compounds in secondary metabolite fermentation resemble enzyme induction. A good example is the role of tryptophan in ergot alkaloid fermentation by *Claviceps* sp. Although the amino acid is a precursor, its role appears to be more important as an inducer of some of the enzymes needed for the biosynthesis of the alkaloid. This is because analogues of tryptophan, while not being incorporated into the alkaloid, also induce the enzymes used for the biosynthesis of the alkaloid. Furthermore, tryptophan must be added during the growth phase otherwise alkaloid formation is severely reduced. This would also indicate that some of the biosynthetic enzymes, or some chemical reactions leading to alkaloid transformation take place in the trophophase, thereby establishing a link between idiophase and the trophophase. A similar induction appears to be exerted by methionine in the synthesis of cephalosporin C by *Cephalosporium acremonium*.

## 6.3.2 Catabolite Regulation

### 6.3.2.1 Carbon catabolite regulation

The regulation of secondary metabolism by carbon has been known for a long time. In penicillin production, it had been known for a long time that penicillin is not produced in a glucose-containing medium until after the exhaustion of the glucose, when the idiophase sets in. The same effect has been observed with cephalosporin production. Indeed, the 'glucose effect' in which production is suppressed until the exhaustion of the sugar is well known in a large number of secondary products. Although the phenomenon where an easily utilizable source is exhausted before a less available is used has been described as glucose effect, it is clearly a misleading term because other carbon sources may be preferred in two-sugar systems when glucose is absent. Thus,  $\beta$ -carotene production by *Mortierella* sp. is best on fructose even though galactose is a better carbon source for growth. Carbon sources which have been found suitable for secondary metabolite production include sucrose (tetracycline and erythromycin), soybean oil (kasugamycin), glycerol (butirosin), starch, and dextrin (fortimicin). Table 6.2 shows a list of secondary metabolites whose production is suppressed by glucose as well as non-interfering carbon sources.

It is fairly easy to decide whether the catabolite is *repressing* or *inhibiting* the synthesis. In *catabolite* repression, the synthesis of the enzymes necessary for the synthesis of the metabolite is repressed. It is tested by the addition of the test substrate just prior to the initiation of secondary metabolite synthesis where upon synthesis is severely repressed. To test for catabolite inhibition by glucose or other carbon source, the test substrate is

**Table 6.2** Secondary metabolites whose production is suppressed by glucose

<i>Secondary Metabolite</i>	<i>Organism</i>	<i>Non-interfering Carbon Sources</i>
Actinomycin	<i>Streptomyces antibioticus</i>	Galactose
Indolmycin	<i>Streptomyces griseus</i>	Fructose
Kanamycin	<i>Streptomyces kanamyceticus</i>	Galactose
Mitomycin	<i>Streptomyces verticillatus</i>	Low glucose
Neomycin	<i>Streptomyces fradiae</i>	Maltose
Puromycin	<i>Streptomyces alboniger</i>	Glycerol
Siomycin	<i>Streptomyces sioyaensis</i>	Maltose
Streptomycin	<i>Streptomyces griseus</i>	Mannan
Bacitracin	<i>Bacillus licheniformis</i>	Citrate
Prodigiosin	<i>Serratia marcescens</i>	Galactose
Violacein	<i>Chromobacterium violaceum</i>	Maltose
Cephalosporin C	<i>Cephalosporium acremonium</i>	Sucrose
Ergot alkaloids	<i>Claviceps purpurea</i>	-
Enniatin	<i>Fusarium sambucinum</i>	Lactose
Gibberellic acid	<i>Fusarium moniliforme</i>	-
Penicillin	<i>Penicillium chrysogenum</i>	Lactose

added to a culture already producing the secondary metabolite and any inhibition in the synthesis is noted.

### 6.3.2.2 Nitrogen catabolite regulation

Nitrogen catabolite regulation has also been observed in primary metabolism. It involves the suppression of the synthesis of enzymes which act on nitrogen-containing substances (proteases, ureases, etc.) until the easily utilizable nitrogen sources, e.g. ammonia, are exhausted. In streptomycin fermentation where soybean meal is the preferred substrate as a nitrogen source, the advantage may well be similar to that of lactose in penicillin, namely that of slow utilization. Secondary metabolites which are affected by nitrogen catabolite regulation include tri-hydroxy toluene production by *Aspergillus fumigatus*, bikaverin by *Gibberella fujikuroi*, and cephamycins by *Streptomyces* spp.

In all these cases, nitrogen must be exhausted before production of the secondary metabolite is initiated.

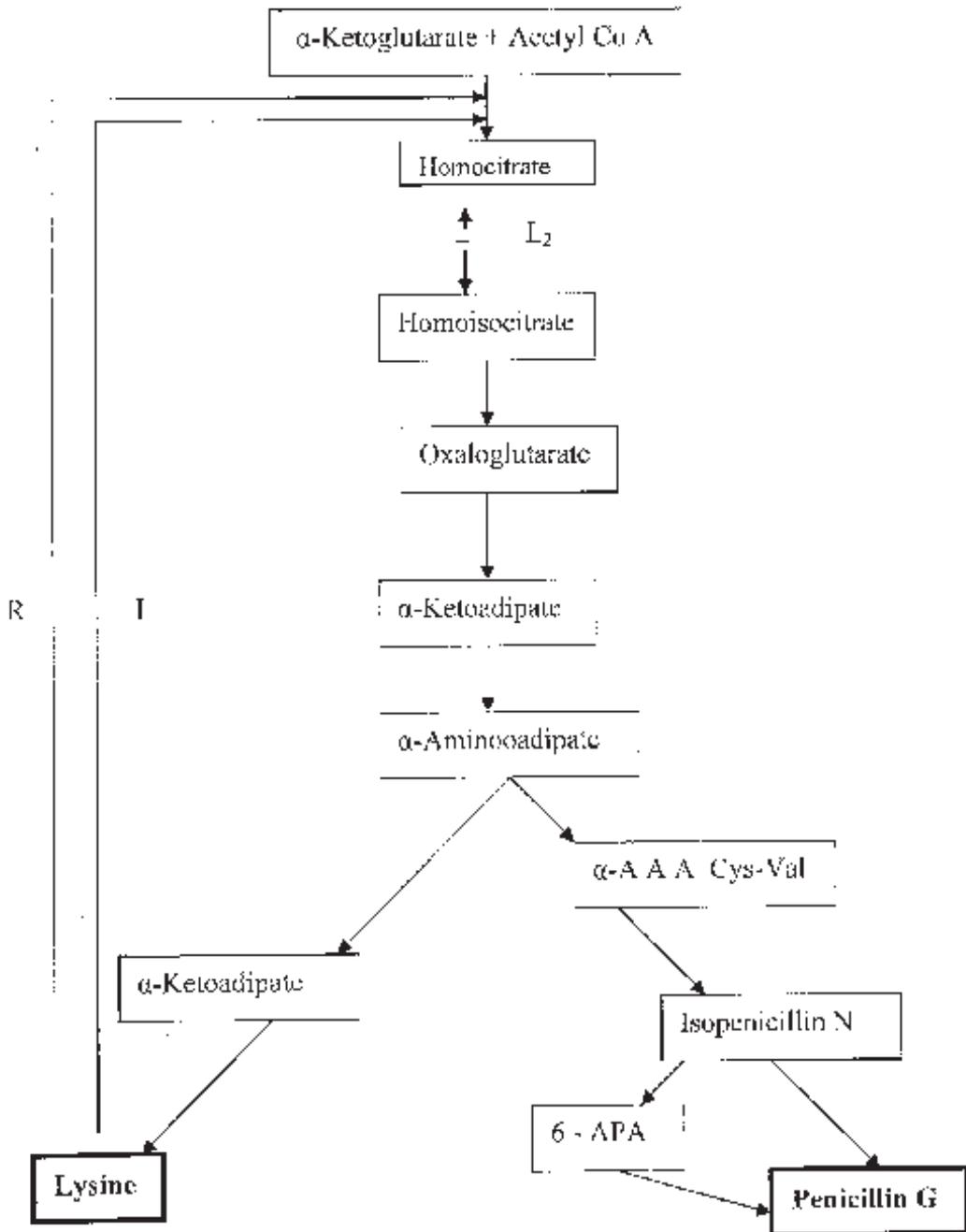
### 6.3.3 Feedback Regulation

That feedback regulation exists in secondary metabolism is shown in many examples in which the product inhibits its further synthesis. An example is penicillin inhibition by lysine. Penicillin biosynthesis by *Penicillium chrysogenum* is affected by feedback inhibition by L-lysine because penicillin and lysine are end-products of a branched pathway (Fig. 6.9). Feedback by lysine inhibits the primary enzyme in the chain, homocitrate synthetase, and inhibits the production of  $\alpha$ -aminoadipate. The addition of  $\alpha$ -aminoadipate eliminates the inhibitory effect of lysine.

**Self-inhibition by secondary metabolites:** Several secondary products or even their analogues have been shown to inhibit their own production by a feedback mechanism. Examples are odorox, an antibiotic active against Gram-positive bacteria, and used in poultry feeds, chloramphenicol, penicillin, cycloheximides, and 6-methylsalicylic acid (produced by *Penicillium urticae*). Chloramphenicol repression of its own production is shown in Fig. 6.10, which also shows chorismic acid inhibition by tryptophan.

### 6.3.4 ATP or Energy Charge Regulation of Secondary Metabolites

Secondary metabolism has a much narrower tolerance for concentrations of inorganic phosphate than primary metabolism. A range of inorganic phosphate of 0.3–30 mM permits excellent growth of prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms. On the other hand, the average highest level that favors secondary metabolism is 1.0 mM while the average lower quantity that maximally suppresses secondary process is 10 mM. High phosphate levels inhibit antibiotic formation. Therefore, the antibiotic industry empirically selects media of low phosphate content or reduces the phosphate content by adding phosphate-complexing agents to the medium. Several explanations have been given for this phenomenon. One of them is that phosphate stimulates high respiration rate, DNA and RNA synthesis and glucose utilization, thus shifting the growth phase from the idiophase to the trophophase. This shift can occur regardless of the stage of growth of the organisms. Exhaustion of the phosphate therefore helps to trigger off idiophase. Another hypothesis is that a high phosphate level shifts carbohydrate catabolism ways from HMP to the EMP pathway favoring glycolysis.



Penicillin and lysine are synthesized by a branched pathway in a mutant of *Penicillium chrysogenum*,  $L_2$ .  $\alpha$ -AAA is the branching intermediate. Mutant  $L_2$  is blocked before homoisocitrate and therefore accumulates homocitrate. The first enzyme is repressed (R) and inhibited (I) by L-lysine, but not by penicillin G. 6-APA = 6-amino penicillanic acid.

**Fig. 6.9** Penicillin Synthesis by a Mutant of *Penicillium chrysogenum*,  $L_2$

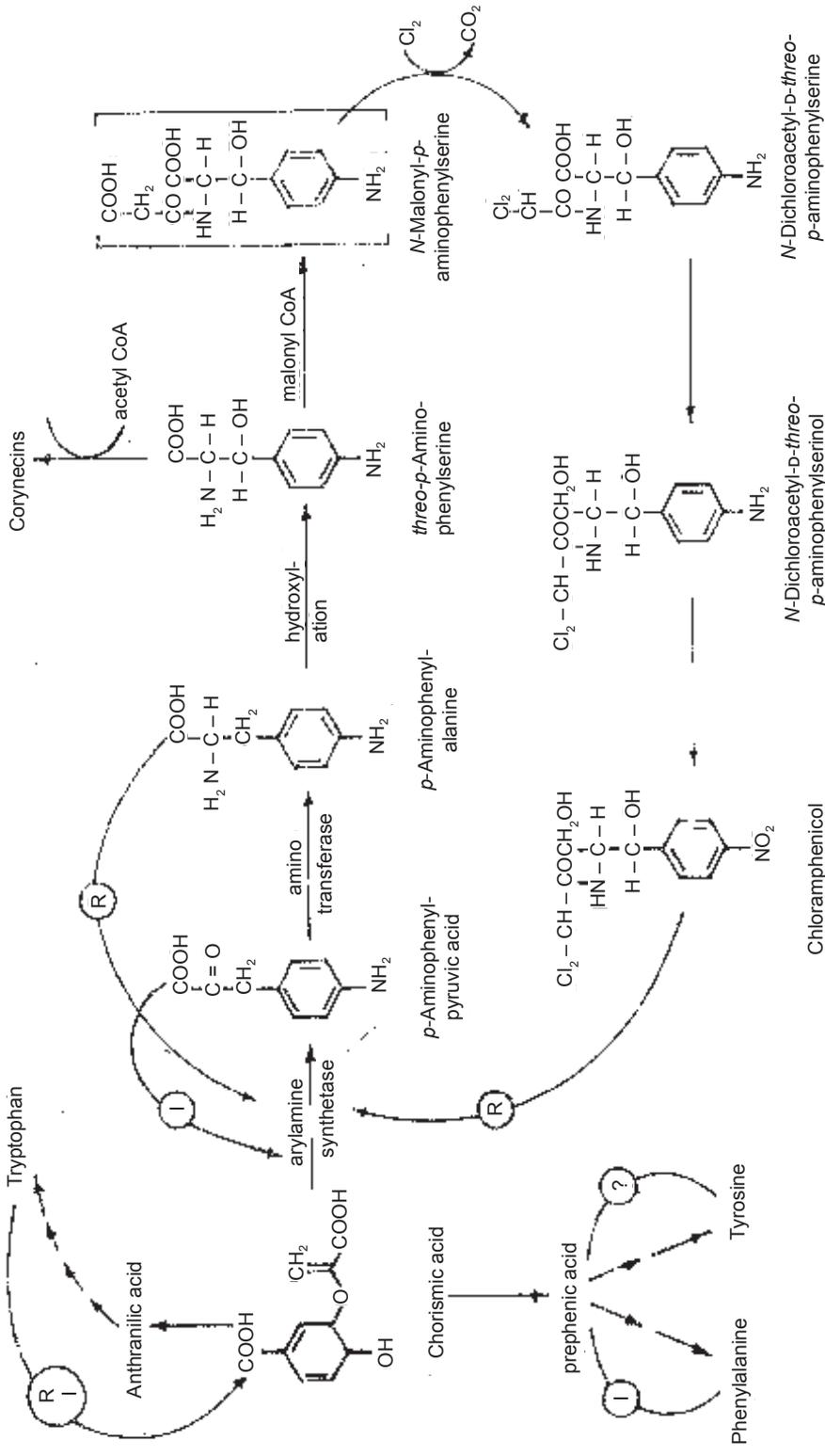


Fig. 6.10 Biosynthetic Pathway for Chloramphenicol

## 6.4 EMPIRICAL METHODS EMPLOYED TO DISORGANIZE REGULATORY MECHANISMS IN SECONDARY METABOLITE PRODUCTION

Metabolic pathways for secondary metabolites are becoming better known, and more rational approaches to disrupting the pathways to induce overproduction are being employed. More work seems to exist with regard to primary metabolites. Methods which are used to induce the overproduction of secondary metabolites are mainly empirical. Such methods include mutations and stimulation by the manipulation of media components and conditions.

- (i) **Mutations:** Naturally occurring variants of organisms which have shown evidence of good productivity are subjected to mutations and the treated cells are selected randomly and tested for metabolite overproduction. The nature of the mutated gene is often not known.
- (ii) **Stimulatory effect of precursors:** In many fermentations for secondary metabolites, production is stimulated and yields increased by the addition of precursors. Thus penicillin production was stimulated by the addition of phenylacetic acid present in corn steep liquor in the early days of penicillin fermentation. For the experimental synthesis of aflatoxin by *Aspergillus parasiticus*, methionine is required. In mitomycin formation by *Streptomyces verticillatus*, L-citrulline is a precursor.
- (iii) **Inorganic compounds:** Two inorganic compounds which have profound effects of fermentation for secondary metabolites are phosphate and manganese. The effect of inorganic phosphate has been discussed earlier. In summary, while high levels of phosphate encourage growth, they are detrimental to the production of secondary metabolites. Manganese on the other hand specifically encourages idiophase production particularly among bacilli, including the production of bacillin, bacitracin, mycobacillin, subtilin, D-glutamine, protective antigens, and endospores. Surprisingly, the required amount ranges from 20 to several times the amount needed to encourage growth are detrimental to the production of secondary metabolites.
- (iv) **Temperature:** While the temperature range that permits good growth (in the trophophase) spans about 25°C among microorganisms, the temperature range within which secondary metabolites are produced is much lower with approximately only 5–10°C. Temperatures used in the production of secondary metabolites are therefore a compromise of these situations. Sometimes two temperatures—a higher for the trophophase and a lower for the idiophase are used.

### END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. What mechanisms enable overproduction of microbial products?
2. What is a secondary metabolite? Give an example.
3. Discuss the role of cyclic AMP in overproduction of microbial metabolites.
4. Discuss feedback regulation and potential applications.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Betina, V. 1995. Differentiation and Secondary Metabolism in Some Prokaryotes and Fungi *Folia Microbiologica*. 40, 51–67.
- Bull, A.T., Ward, A.C., Goodfellow, M. 2000. Search and Discovery Strategies for Biotechnology: the Paradigm Shift. *Microbiology and Molecular Biology Reviews*. 64, 573–606.
- Demain, A.L. 1998. Induction of Microbial Secondary Metabolism. *International Microbiology*. 1, 259–264.
- Martin, J.F., Demain, A.L. 1980. Control of Antibiotic Biosynthesis. *Microbiological Reviews*. 44, 230–251.
- Krumphanzl, V., Sikyta, B., Vanck, Z. 1982. Overproduction of Microbial Products. Academic Press, London and New York.
- Spizek, J.J., Tichy, P. 1995. Some Aspects of Overproduction of Secondary Metabolites. *Folia Microbiologica*. 40, 43–50.
- Vinci, A.V., Byng, G. 1999. Strain Improvement by Non-recombinant Methods. *In: Manual of Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology*. 2nd ed. A S M Press. Washington, DC, USA. pp. 103–113.
- Watts, J.E.M., Huddleston-Anderson, A.S., Wellington, E.M.H. 1999. Bioprospecting. *In: Manual of Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology*. 2nd ed. A S M Press. Washington, DC, USA. pp. 631–641.

---

# Selection and Improvement of Industrial Organisms for Biotechnological Applications

---

In the last several decades, a group of microbial secondary metabolites, the antibiotics, has emerged as one of the most powerful tools for combating diseases. However, thousands of secondary metabolites are known, and they include not only antibiotics but also pigments, toxins, pheromones, enzyme inhibitors, immunomodulating agents, receptor antagonists and agonists, pesticides, antitumor agents, and growth promoters of animals and plants. When appropriate screening has been done on secondary metabolites, numerous drugs outside antibiotics have been found. Some of non-antibiotic drugs are shown in [Table 7.1](#).

## **7.1 SOURCES OF MICROORGANISMS USED IN BIOTECHNOLOGY**

### **7.1.1 Literature Search and Culture Collection Supply**

A search on the web and in the literature including patent literature accompanied by contact with one or more of the established culture collections and the regulatory offices dealing with patents may provide information on potentially useful microbial cultures. However, these cultures may be tied to patents, and fees may be involved before the organisms are supplied along with the right to use the patented process for producing the material. Generally, cultures are supplied for a small fee from most culture collections irrespective of whether or not the organism is part of a process patent.

### **7.1.2 Isolation *de novo* of Organisms Producing Metabolites of Economic Importance**

Soil is the preferred source for isolating organisms, because it is a vast reservoir of diverse organisms. Indeed, microorganisms capable of utilizing virtually any carbon source will be found in soil if adequate screening methods are used. In recent times, other 'new' habitats,

**Table 7.1** Some microbial metabolites with non-antibiotic pharmacological activity

<i>Compound</i>	<i>Activity</i>	<i>Producing Microorganism</i>
Aspergilllic acid	Antihypertensive	<i>Aspergillus</i> sp.
Astromentin	Smooth muscle relaxant	<i>Monascus</i> sp.
Siomycin	Acceleration of fibrin clot	<i>Streptomyces sioyaensis</i>
Azaserine	Antidiuretic, antitumor	<i>Streptomyces fragilis</i>
Ovalicin	Immunosuppressive, antitumor	<i>Pseudeurotum ovalis</i>
Candicidin (and other polyene Macrolides)	Cholesterol lowering	<i>Streptomyces noursei</i>
Streptozotocin	Hyperglycemic, antitumor	<i>Streptomyces achromogenes</i>
Zygosporin A	Anti-inflammatory	<i>Cephalosporium acremonium</i>
Fusaric acid	Hypotensive	<i>Fusarium oxysporum</i>
Leupeptin family	Plasmin inhibitor	<i>Bacillus</i> sp.
Pepstatin	Pepsin inhibitor	<i>Aspergillus niger</i>
Oosponol	Dopamine $\beta$ -hydroxlyase inhibitor	<i>Oospora adringens</i>
Fumagallin	Angiogenesis inhibitor	<i>Aspergillus fumigatus</i>

especially the marine environment, have been included in habitats to be studied in searches for bioactive microbial metabolites or 'bio-mining'.

### 7.1.2.1 Enrichment with the substrate utilized by the organism being sought

If the organism being sought is one which utilizes a particular substrate, soil is incubated with that substrate for a period of time. The conditions of the incubation can also be used to select a specific organism. Thus, if a thermophilic organism attacking the substrate is required, the soil is incubated at an elevated temperature. After a period of incubation, a dilution of the incubated soil is plated on a medium containing the substrate and incubated at the previous temperature (i.e. elevated for thermophile search). Organisms can then be picked out, especially if some means have been devised to select for them. Selection could be based on the ability to cause clear zones in an agar plate as a result of the dissolution of particles of the substrate in the agar. In the search for  $\alpha$ -amylase producers, the soil may be enriched with starch, and subsequently, suitable soil dilutions are plated on agar containing starch as the sole carbon source. Clear halos form around starch-splitting colonies against a deep blue background when iodine is introduced in the plate.

Continuous culture methods are a particularly convenient means of enriching for organisms from a natural source. The constant flow of nutrients over material from a natural habitat such as soil will encourage and select for organisms able to utilize the substrate in the nutrient solution. Conditions such as pH, temperature, etc. may also be adjusted to select the organisms which will utilize the desired substrate under the given

conditions. Agar platings of the outflow from the continuous culture setup are made at regular intervals to determine when an optimum population of the desired organism has developed.

### **7.1.2.2 Enrichment with toxic analogues of the substrate utilized by the organism being sought**

Toxic analogues of the material where utilization is being sought may be used for enrichment and incubated with soil. The toxic analogue will kill many organisms which utilize it. The surviving organisms are then grown on the medium with the non-toxic substrate. Under the new conditions of growth, many organisms surviving from exposure to toxic analogues overproduce the desired end-products.

### **7.1.2.3 Testing microbial metabolites for bioactive activity**

#### **(i) Testing for anti-microbial activity**

For the isolation of antibiotic producing organisms the metabolites of the test organism are tested for anti-microbial activity against test organisms. One of the most common starting points is to place a soil suspension or soil particles on agar seeded with the test organism(s). Colonies surrounded by clear zones are isolated, purified, and further studied.

#### **(ii) Testing for enzyme inhibition**

Microorganisms whose broth cultures are able to inhibit enzymes associated with certain disease may be isolated and tested for the ability to produce drugs for combating the disease. Enzyme inhibition may be determined using one of two methods: In the first method, the product of the reaction between an enzyme and its substrate is measured using spectroscopic methods. The quantity of the inhibitor in the test sample is obtained by measuring (a) the product in the reaction mixture without the inhibitor and (b) the product in the mixture with the inhibitor (i.e. a broth or suitable fraction of the broth whose inhibitory potency is being tested). The percentage inhibition (if any) is calculated by the formula

$$\frac{(a-b)}{a} \times 100$$

The second method determines the quantity of the unreacted substrate. For this determination, the following measurements of the substrate are made: (a) with the enzyme and without the inhibitor (i.e. broth being tested), (b) with the enzyme and with the inhibitor, and (c) without the enzyme and without the inhibitor. Percentage inhibition (if any) is determined by  $(c-a) - (c-b) \times 100$ . The results obtained above enable the assessment of the existence of enzyme inhibitors and facilitate the comparison of the inhibitory ability of broths from several sources.

#### **(iii) Testing for morphological changes in fungal test organisms**

The effect on spore germination or change in hyphal morphology may be used to detect the presence of pharmacologically active products in the broth of a test organism. This method does not rely on the death or inhibition of microbial growth which until now has been widely used for detecting antibiotic presence in broths.

**(iv) Conducting animal tests on the microbial metabolites**

The effect of broth on various animal body activities such as blood pressure, immunosuppressive action, anti-coagulant activity are carried out in animals to determine the content of potentially useful drugs in the broth.

**7.2 STRAIN IMPROVEMENT**

Several options are open to an industrial microbiology organization seeking to maximize its profits in the face of its competitors' race for the same market. The organization may undertake more aggressive marketing tactics including more attractive packaging while leaving its technical procedures unchanged. It may use its human resources more efficiently and hence reduce costs or it may adopt a more efficient extraction system for obtaining the material from the fermentation broth. The operations in the fermenter may also be improved by its use of a more productive medium, better environmental conditions, better engineering control of the fermentation processes, or it may genetically improve the productivity of the microbial strain it is using. Of all the options above, strain improvement appears to be the one single factor with the greatest potential for contributing to greater profitability.

While realizing the importance of strain improvement, it must be kept in mind that an improved strain could bring with it previously non-existent problems. For example, a more highly yielding strain may require greater aeration or need more intensive foam control; the products may pose new extraction challenges or may even require an entirely new fermentation medium. The use of a more productive strain must therefore be weighed against possible increased costs resulting from higher investments in extraction, richer media, more expensive fermentor operations, and other previously non-existent problems. Despite this possibility, strain improvement is usually part of the program of an industrial microbiology organization.

The ability of any organism to make any particular product is predicated on its capability for the secretion of a particular set of enzymes. The production of the enzymes themselves depends ultimately on the genetic make-up of the organisms. Improvement of strains can therefore be put down in simple term as follows:

- (i) regulating the activity of the enzymes secreted by the organisms;
- (ii) in the case of metabolites secreted extracellularly, increasing the permeability of the organism so that the microbial products can find these way more easily to the outside of the cell;
- (iii) selecting suitable producing strains from a natural population;
- (iv) manipulation of the existing genetic apparatus in a producing organism;
- (v) introducing new genetic properties into the organism by recombinant DNA technology or genetic engineering.

**7.2.1 Selection from Naturally Occurring Variants**

In selection of this type, naturally occurring variants which overproduce the desired product are sought. Strains which were encountered but not selected should not be automatically discarded; the better ones are usually kept as stock cultures in the organization's culture

collection for possible use in future genetic manipulations. Selection from natural variants is a regular feature of industrial microbiology and biotechnology. For example, in the early days of antibiotic production, the initial increase in yield was obtained in both penicillin and griseofulvin by natural variants producing higher yields in submerged rather than in surface culture. Another example is lager beer manufacture where the constant selection of yeasts that flocculate eventually gave rise to strains which are now used for the production of the beverage. Similarly in wine fermentation, yeasts were repeatedly taken from the best vats until yeasts of suitable properties were obtained.

Selection of this type is not only slow but its course is largely outside the control of the biotechnologist, an intolerable condition in the highly competitive world of modern industry.

## 7.2.2 Manipulation of the Genome of Industrial Organisms in Strain Improvement

The manipulation of the genome for increased productivity may be done in one of two general procedures as shown in [Table 7.2](#).

### 7.2.2.1 Genome manipulations not involving foreign DNA or bases: conventional mutation

#### *Nature of conventional mutation*

The properties of any microorganism depend on the sequence of the four nucleic acid bases on its genome: adenine (A), thymine (T), cytosine (C), and guanine (G). The arrangement of these DNA bases dictates the distribution of genes and hence the nature of proteins synthesized. A mutation can therefore be described as a change in the sequence of the bases in DNA or RNA. It is clear that since it is the sequence of these bases which is responsible for the type of proteins (and hence enzymes) synthesized, any change in the sequence will lead ultimately to a change in the properties of the organism.

Mutations occur spontaneously at a low rate in a population of microorganisms. It is this low rate of mutations which is partly responsible for the variation found in natural populations. However, an increased rate can be induced by mutagens or mutagenic agents which can either be physical or chemical.

**Table 7.2** Methods of manipulating the genetic apparatus of industrial organisms

- 
- |  |
|--|
| A. <i>Methods not involving foreign DNA</i>                                  |
| 1. Conventional mutation   |
| B. <i>Methods involving DNA foreign to the organism (i.e. recombination)</i> |
| 2. Transduction  |
| 3. Conjugation   |
| 4. Transformation  |
| 5. Heterokaryosis  |
| 6. Protoplast fusion   |
| 7. Genetic engineering   |
| 8. Metabolic engineering   |
| 9. Site-directed mutation  |
-

## 7.2.2.1.1 Physical agents

(i) ***Ionizing radiations:*** X-rays, gamma rays, alpha-particles, and fast neutrons are ionizing radiations and have all been successfully used to induce mutation. X-rays are produced by commercially available machines as well as van de Graaf generators. Gamma rays are emitted by the decay of radioactive materials such as Cobalt<sup>60</sup>. Fast neutrons are produced by a cyclotron or an atomic pile. Ionizing radiations are so called because they knock off the outer electrons in the atoms of biological materials (including DNA) thereby causing ionization in the molecules of DNA. As a result, highly reactive radicals are produced and these cause changes in the DNA. Some authors do not advise the use of ionizing radiations unless all other methods fail. This is partly because the equipment is expensive and therefore not always readily available, but also because ionizing radiations are apt to cause breakage in chromosomes.

(ii) ***Ultraviolet light:*** The mutagenic range of ultraviolet light lies between a wavelength of 200 and 300 nm. 'Low pressure' UV lamps used for mutagenesis emit most of their rays in the 254 nm region. The suspension of cells or spores to be mutagenized is placed in a Petri dish 2–3 cm below a 15 watt lamp and stirred either by a rocking mechanism or by a magnetic stirrer. The organisms are exposed for varying periods lasting from about 300 seconds to about 20 minutes depending on the sensitivity of the organisms. Since UV damage can be repaired by exposure to light in a process known as photo-reactivation all manipulations should be conducted under a special light source such as 25 watt yellow or red bulbs. A proportion of the organisms ranging from about 60–99.9% should be killed by the radiation. The initial concentration of the organisms should be in the order of  $10^7$  per ml.

The main effect of ultraviolet light on DNA is the formation of covalent bonds between adjacent pyrimidine (thymine and cytosine) bases. Thymine is mainly affected, and hence the major effect of UV light is thymine dimerization, although it can also cause thymine-cytosine and cytosine-cytosine dimers. Dimerization causes a distortion of the DNA double strand. The ultimate effect is to inhibit transcription, until finally the organism dies (Fig. 7.1).

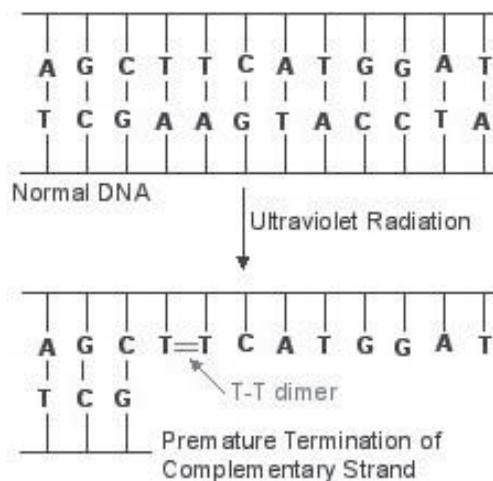


Fig. 7.1 Schematic Representation of Thymine Dimerization by UV Light on DNA

### 7.2.2.1.2 Chemical mutagens

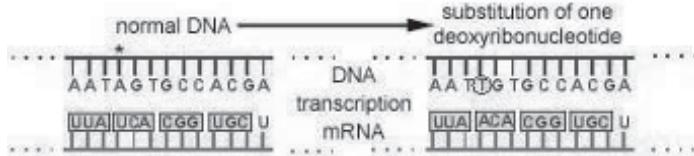
#### (i) Chemicals acting on resting DNA

Some chemical mutagens, such as nitrous acid and nitrosoguanidine, work by causing chemical modifications of purine and pyrimidine bases that alter their hydrogen-bonding properties. For example, nitrous acid converts cytosine to uracil which then forms hydrogen bonds with adenine rather than guanine. These chemicals act on the non-dividing cell and include nitrous acid, alkylating agents, and nitrosoguanidine (NTG, also known as MNNG).

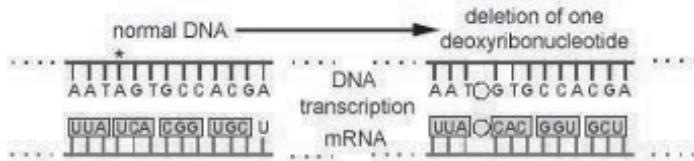
- (a) **Nitrous acid:** This acid is rather harmless and the mutation can be easily performed by adding 0.1 to 0.2 M of sodium nitrate to a suspension of the cells in an acid medium several times. The acid is neutralized after suitable intervals by the addition of appropriate amounts of sodium hydroxide. The cells are plated out subsequently.
- (b) **Alkylating agents:** These are compounds with one or more alkyl groups which can be transferred to DNA or other molecules. Many of them are known but the following have been routinely used as mutagens: EMS (ethyl methane sulfonate), EES (ethyl ethane sulfonate), and DES (Diethyl sulfonate). They are liquids and easy to handle. Cells are treated in solutions of about 1% concentration and allowed to react from  $\frac{1}{4}$  hour to  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour, and thereafter are plated out. Experimentation has to be done to decide the amount of kill that will provide a suitable amount of mutation. While some are carcinostatic (i.e. stop cancers), some are carcinogenic and must be handled carefully.
- (c) **NTG—nitrosoguanidine:** also known as *1-methyl-3-nitro-1-nitrosoguanidine*—MNNG: It is one of the most potent mutagens known and should be handled with care. Amounts ranging from 0.1 to 3.0 mg/ml have been used, but for most mutations, the lower quantity is used. It is reported to induce mutation in closely linked genes. It is widely used in industrial microbiology.
- (d) **Nitrogen mustards:** The most commonly used of this group of compounds is methyl-bis (Beta-chlorethyl) amine also referred to as 'HN2'. Nitrogen mustards were used for chemical warfare in World War I. Other members of the group are 'HN', 'HN1', or 'HN3' from the wartime code name for mustard gas, H. The number after the H denotes the number of 2-chloroethyl groups which have replaced the methyl groups in tri-methylamine. A spore or cell suspension is made in HN2 (methyl-bis [Beta-chlorethyl amine]), and after exposure to various concentrations for about 30 minutes each, the reaction is ended by a decontaminating solution containing 0.7% NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and 0.6% glycine. The solution is then plated out to identify survivors. Between 0.05 and 0.1% HN2 solutions in 2% sodium bicarbonate solutions have been found satisfactory for *Streptomyces*.

#### (ii) Base analogues

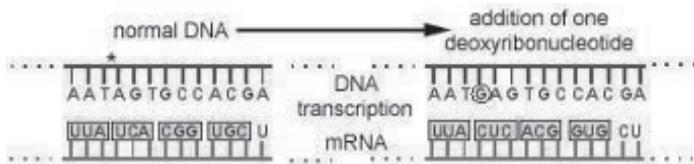
These are compounds similar to base nucleotides in composition and can be incorporated into a dividing DNA in place of the natural base. However, this incorporation takes place only in special conditions. The best examples include 2-amino purine, a compound that resembles adenine, and 5-bromouracil (5BU), a compound that resembles thymine. The base analogues however do not have the hydrogen-bonding properties of the natural base. Base analogues are not useful as routine mutagens because suitable conditions for their



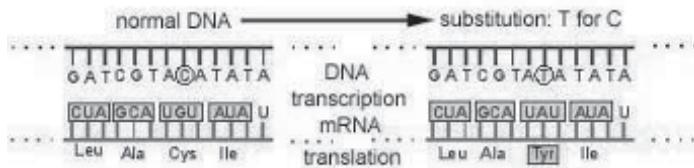
i) Point Mutation or Substitution of a Nucleotide



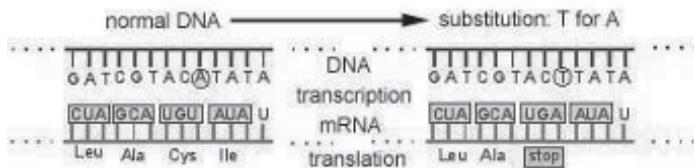
ii) Deletion of a nucleotide



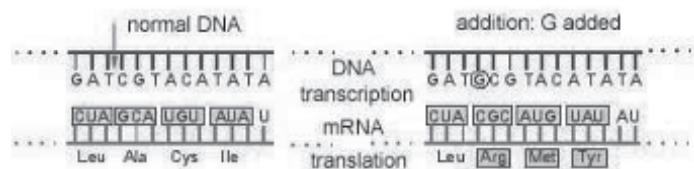
iii) Addition of a Nucleotide



iv) Substitution of a nucleotide: Results in one wrong codon and one wrong amino acid



v) Substitution of a nucleotide: Results in a 'stop' codon and premature termination of the protein



vi) Frameshift mutation: Results in a reading frame shift. All codons.

Fig. 7.2 Different Types of Mutation

use may be difficult to achieve. For example, with BU, incorporation occurs only when the organisms is starved of thymine.

(iii) *Frameshift mutagens (also known as intercalating agents)*

Frameshift or intercalating agents are planar three-ringed molecules about the same size as a nucleotide base pair. During DNA replication, these compounds can insert or intercalate between adjacent base pairs thus pushing the nucleotides far enough apart that an extra nucleotide is often added to the growing chain during DNA replication. A mutation of this sort changes all the amino acids downstream and is very likely to create a nonfunctional product since it may differ greatly from the normal protein. Furthermore, reading frames (i.e. the DNA base sequences) other than the correct one often contain stop codons which will truncate the mutant protein prematurely.

Acridines are among the best known of these mutagens, which cause a displacement or shift in the sequence of the bases. Although strongly mutagenic for some bacteriophages, acridines have not been found useful for bacteria. However, certain compounds, ICR (Institute for Cancer Research) compounds, in which an acridine nucleus is linked to an alkylating side chain induce mutations in bacteria (e.g. ICR191).

Acridine,  $C_{13}H_9N$ , is an organic compound consisting of three fused benzene rings. Acridine is colorless and was first isolated from crude coal tar. It is a raw material for the production of dyes. Acridines and their derivatives are DNA and RNA binding compounds due to their intercalation abilities. Acridine Orange (3,6-dimethylaminoacridine) is a nucleic acid selective metachromatic stain useful for cell cycle determination.

#### 7.2.2.1.3 Choice of mutagen

Mutagenic agents are numerous but not necessarily equally effective in all organisms. Should one agent fail to produce mutations, then another should be tried. Other factors besides effectiveness to be considered are (a) the safety of the mutagen: many mutagens are carcinogens, (b) simplicity of technique, and (c) ready availability of the necessary equipment and chemicals.

Among physical agents, UV is to be preferred since it does not require much equipment, is relatively effective, and has been widely used in industry. Chemical methods other than NTG are probably best used in combination with UV. The disadvantage of UV is that it is absorbed by glass; it is also not effective in opaque or colored organisms.

#### 7.2.2.1.4 Stages in practical isolation of mutants

- (i) *Exposing organisms to the mutagen*: The organism undergoing mutation should be in the haploid stage during the exposure. Bacterial cells are haploid; in fungi and actinomycetes, the haploid stage is found in the spores. However, in non-spore-forming strains of these organisms, hyphae, preferably the tips, may be used. The use of haploid stages is essential because many mutant genes are recessive in comparison to the parent or wild-type gene.
- (ii) *Selection for mutants*: Following exposure to the mutagen, the cells should be suitably diluted and plated out to yield 50–100 colonies per plate. The selection of mutants is greatly facilitated by relying on the morphology of the mutants or on some selectivity built-in into the medium on which the treated cells or spores are plated.

When morphological mutants are selected, it is in the hope that the desired mutation is pleiotropic (i.e. a mutation in which change in one property is linked with a mutation in another character). The classic example of a pleiotropic mutation can be seen in the development of penicillin-yielding strains of *Penicillium chrysogenum*. It was found in the early days of the development work on penicillin production that after irradiation, strains of *Penicillium chrysogenum* with smaller colonies and poor sporulation were better producers of penicillin. Similar increases of metabolite production associated with a morphological change have been observed in organisms producing other antibiotics: cycloheximide, nystatin, and tetracyclines. In citric acid production, it was observed that mutants with color in the conidia produced more of the acid; in some bacteria strains, overproducing nucleic acid had a different morphological characteristic from those which did not.

Built-in selectivity of the medium for mutants over the parent cells may be achieved by manipulating the medium. If, for example, it is desired to select for mutants able to stand a higher concentration of alcohol, an antibiotic, or some other chemical substance, then the desired level of the material is added to the medium on which the organisms are plated. Only mutants able to survive the higher concentration will develop. Toxic analogues may also be incorporated. Mutants resisting the analogues develop and may be higher yielding than the parent.

- (iii) **Screening:** Screening must be carefully carried out with statistically organized experimentation to enable one to confidently acknowledge any apparent improvement in a producing organism. Shake cultures are preferred and about 6 of these of 500 ml capacity should be used. Accurate methods of identifying the desired product among a possible multitude of others should be worked out. It may also be better in industrial practice where time is important to carry out as soon as possible a series of mutations using ultraviolet light and a combination of ultraviolet light and chemicals and then to test all the mutants.

#### *Isolation of auxotrophic mutants*

Auxotrophic mutants are those which lack the enzymes to manufacture certain required nutrients. Consequently, such nutrients must therefore be added to the growth medium. In contrast, the wild-type or prototrophic organisms possess all the enzymes needed to synthesize all growth requirements. Auxotrophic mutants are often used in industrial microbiology, e.g. for the production of amino acids, nucleotides, etc.

The organism (prototroph) is transferred from a slant to a broth of the minimal medium (mm) which is the basic medium that will support the growth of the prototroph but not that of the auxotroph. The auxotroph will only grow on the complete medium, i.e. the minimal medium plus the growth factor, amino acid, or vitamin which the auxotroph cannot synthesize. The prototroph is shaken in the minimal broth for 22–24 hours before being subjected to mutagenic treatment. The mutagenized cells are now grown on the complete medium for about 8 hours after which they are washed several times. The washed cells are then shaken again in minimal medium to which penicillin is added. The reason for the addition of penicillin is that the antibiotic kills only dividing cells; as only prototrophs will grow in the minimal medium, these are killed off leaving the auxotrophs. The cells are washed and plated out on the complete agar medium.

In order to determine the growth factor or compound which the auxotroph cannot manufacture, an agar culture is replica-plated onto each of several plates which contain

the minimal medium and various growth factors either single or mixed. The composition of the medium on which the auxotroph will grow indicates the metabolite it cannot synthesize; for example, when the auxotroph requires lysine, it is designated a 'lysine-less' mutant (Table 7.3).

**Table 7.3** Growth of various mutants, produced after treatment of a wild-type organism

<i>Organism</i>	<i>Complete medium (cm)</i>	<i>Minimal medium (mm)</i>	<i>mm + lysine</i>	<i>Growth on mm + biotin</i>	<i>mm + valine</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
1	+	-	-	+	-	Biotin-less mutant
2	+	-	+	-	-	Lysine-less mutant
3	+	-	-	-	+	Valine-less mutant
4	+	-	-	+	+	Biotin-and valine-less
5	+	+	+	+	+	Parent Prototype

*Key:* + = growth  
 - = no growth

## 7.2.2.2 Strain improvement methods involving foreign DNA or bases

### 7.2.2.2.1 Transduction

Transduction is the transfer of bacterial DNA from one bacterial cell to another by means of a bacteriophage. In this process, a phage attaches to and lyses the cell wall of its host. It then injects its DNA (or RNA) into the host.

Once inside the cell, the viral genome may become attached to the host DNA or remain unattached forming a plasmid. Such a phage, which does not lyse the cell, is a temperate phage and the situation is known as lysogeny. Sometimes, the viral genome may direct the host DNA to produce hundreds of copies of the phage. At the end of this manufacture, the host is lysed releasing the viral particles into the medium; the new phages carry portions of the host DNA. If one of these viral particles now invades another bacterium, but is lysogenic in the new host, the new host will acquire some nucleic acid and hence some properties from the previous bacterial host. This process of the acquisition of new DNA from another bacterium through a phage is transduction.

Transduction is two broad types: *general transduction* and *specialized transduction*. In general transduction, host DNA from any part of the host's genetic apparatus is integrated into the virus DNA; in specialized transduction, which occurs only in some temperate phages, DNA from a specific region of the host DNA is integrated into the viral DNA and replaces some of the virus' genes.

It is now possible by genetic engineering to excise genes responsible for producing certain enzymes and attach them on the special mutant viral particles, which do not cause the lysis of their hosts. Several hundreds of virus particles carrying the attached gene may therefore be present in one single bacterial cell following viral replication in it. The result is that the enzyme specified by the attached gene may be produced up to 1,000-fold. Gene amplification by phage is much higher than that obtained by plasmids. The method is a well-established research tool in bacteria including actinomycetes.

#### 7.2.2.2.2 Transformation

Transformation is a change in genetic property of a bacterium which is brought about when foreign DNA is absorbed by and integrates with the genome of the donor cell. Cells in which transformation can occur are 'competent' cells. In some cases, competence is artificially induced by treatment with a calcium salt. The transforming DNA must have a certain minimum length before it can be transformed. It is cut by enzymes, endonucleases, produced by the host before it is absorbed.

Reports of transformation in *Streptomyces* spp. have been made. Transformation has been used to introduce streptomycin production into *Streptomyces olivaceus* with DNA from *Streptomyces griseus*. Oxytetracycline producing ability was transformed into irradiated wild-type *S. rimosus* using DNA from a wild-type strain. The technique has also been used to transform the production of the antifungal antibiotic thiolutin from *S. picipirin* to a chlortetracycline producing *S. aureofaciens* which subsequently produced both antibiotics. An inactive strain of *Bacillus* was transformed to one producing the antibiotic bacitracin with the same method. The method has also been used to increase the level of protease and amylase production in *Bacillus* spp. The method therefore has good industrial potential.

#### 7.2.2.2.3 Conjugation

Conjugation involves cell to cell contact or through sex pili (*singular*, pilus) and the transfer of plasmids. Conjugation involves a donor cell which contains a particular type of conjugative plasmid, and a recipient cell which does not. The donor strain's plasmid must possess a sex factor as a prerequisite for conjugation; only donor cells produce pili. The sex factor may on occasion transfer part of the hosts' DNA. Mycelial 'conjugation' takes place among actinomycetes with DNA transfer as in the case of eubacteria. Among sex plasmids of actinomycetes, perhaps the two best known are plasmids SCP1 and SCP2. Plasmids play an important role in the formation of some industrial products, including many antibiotics.

#### 7.2.2.2.4 Parasexual recombination

Parasexuality is a rare form of sexual reproduction which occurs in some fungi. In parasexual recombination, nuclei in hyphae from the same strain or different strains fuse resulting in the formation of new genes. Parasexuality is important in those fungi such as *Penicillium chrysogenum* and *Aspergillus niger* in which no sexual cycles have been observed. It has been used to select organisms with higher yields of various industrial products such as phenoxymethyl penicillin, citric acid, and gluconic acid. Parasexuality has not become widely successful in industry because the diploid strains are unstable and tend to revert to their lower-yielding wild-type parents. More importantly, the diploids are not always as high yielding as the parents.

#### 7.2.2.2.5 Protoplast fusion

Protoplasts are formed from bacteria, fungi, yeasts, and actinomycetes when dividing cells are caused to lose their cell walls. Protoplasts may be produced in bacteria with the enzyme lysozyme, an enzyme found in tears and saliva and capable of breaking the  $\beta$ -1,4 bonds linking the building blocks of the bacterial cell wall. Protoplast fusion enables recombination in strains without efficient means of conjugation such as actinomycetes.

It has also been used previously to produce plant recombinants. The technique involves the formation of stable protoplasts, fusion of protoplasts, and subsequent regeneration of viable cells from the protoplasts. Fusion from mixed populations of protoplasts is greatly enhanced by the use of polyethylene glycol (PEG). Protoplast fusion has been successfully done with *Bacillus subtilis*, *B. megaterium*, and among several species of *Streptomyces* (*S. coelicolor*, *S. acrimycini*, *S. olividans*, and *S. pravulies*) as well as between the fungi *Geotrichum* and *Aspergillus*. The method has great industrial potential and has been used experimentally to achieve higher yields of antibiotics through fusion with protoplasts from different fungi.

#### 7.2.2.2.6 Site-directed mutation

The outcome of the conventional mutations is random and unpredictable. Recombinant DNA technology and the use of synthetic DNA now make it possible to have mutations at specific sites on the genome of the organism in a technique known as Site-Directed Mutagenesis. The mutation is caused by *in vitro* changes directed at a specific site in a DNA molecule. The most common method involves use of a chemically synthesized oligonucleotide mutant which can hybridize with the DNA target molecule; the resulting mismatch-carrying DNA duplex may then be transfected into a bacterial cell line and the mutant strands recovered. The DNA of the specific gene to be mutated is isolated, and the sequence of bases in the gene determined. Certain predetermined bases are replaced and the 'new' gene is reinserted into the organism. Site-directed mutagenesis creates specific, well-defined mutations (i.e. specific changes in the protein product). It has helped to raise the industrial production of enzymes as well as to produce specific enzymes.

#### 7.2.2.2.7 Metabolic engineering

Metabolic engineering is the science which enables the rational designing or redesigning of metabolic pathways of an organism through the manipulation of the genes so as to maximize the production of biotechnological goods. In metabolic engineering, existing pathways are modified or entirely new ones introduced through the manipulation of the genes so as to improve the yields of the microbial product, eliminate or reduce undesirable side products, or shift to the production of an entirely new product.

It is a modern evolution of an existing procedure used to induce overproduction of products by blocking some pathways so as to shunt productivity to another. In the older procedure, the pathways are shut off by producing mutants in which the pathways are lacking using the various mutation methods described earlier. In metabolic engineering, the desired genes are isolated, modified, and reintroduced into the organism. Metabolic engineering is the logical end of site-directed mutagenesis. It has been used to overproduce the amino acid isoleucine in *Corynebacterium glutamicum* and ethanol by *E. coli* and has been employed to introduce the gene for utilizing lactose into *Corynebacterium glutamicum* thus making it possible for the organism to utilize whey which is plentiful and cheap. Through metabolic engineering, the gene for the utilization of xylose was introduced into *Klebsiella* sp. making it possible for the bacterium to utilize the wood sugar.

It is equally applicable to primary and secondary metabolites alike. Among primary metabolites, the alcohol producing *adhB* gene from the high alcohol yielding bacterium *Zymomonas mobilis* was introduced into *E. coli* and *Klebsiella oxytoca* enabling these organisms to produce alcohol from a wide range of sugars, hexose and pentose. Other primary metabolites which have been produced in other organisms by introducing genes

from extraneous sources are carotenoids, the intermediates in the manufacture of vitamin A in the animal body, and 1,3 propanediol (1,3 PD), an intermediate in the synthesis of polyesters. 1,3 PD is currently derived from petroleum and is expensive to produce. 1,3 PD has been produced by *E. coli* carrying genes from *Klebsiella pneumoniae* able to anaerobically produce the diol.

Among secondary metabolites, increase in the production of existing antibiotics, and the production of new antibiotics and anti-tumor agents have been enabled by metabolic engineering. The transfer of genes from *Streptomyces erythreus* to *S. lividans* facilitated the production of erythromycin in the latter organism. In the field of anti-tumor drugs, epirubicin has less cardiotoxicity than others such as the more frequently prescribed doxorubicin. The chemical production of epirubicin is complicated and requires seven steps. However, using a metabolic engineering method in which the erythromycin biosynthetic gene was introduced into *S. peucetius*, it has been possible to produce it directly by fermentation.

#### 7.2.2.2.8 Genetic engineering

Genetic engineering, also known as recombinant DNA technology, molecular cloning, or gene cloning has been defined as the formation of new combinations of heritable material by the insertion of nucleic acid molecules produced by whatever means outside the cell, into any virus, bacterial plasmid, or other vector system so as to allow their incorporation into host organisms in which they do not naturally occur but in which they are capable of continued propagation.

The DNA to be inserted into the host bacterium may come from a eukaryotic cell, a prokaryotic cell, or may even be synthesized chemically. The vector-foreign DNA complex which is introduced into the host DNA is sometimes known as a DNA chimera after the Chimera of classical Greek mythology which had the head of lion, the body of a goat, and the tail of a snake.

A species has been described as a group of organisms which can mate and produce fertile offspring. Genetic engineering has enabled the crossing of the species barrier, in that DNA from one organism can now be introduced into another where such exchange would not be possible under natural conditions. With this technology, engineered cells are now capable of producing metabolic products vastly different from those of the unaltered natural recipient. The following briefly describes the steps involved in *in vitro* recombination or genetic engineering. Most of the work done so far has been with *E. coli* as the recipient organism.

1. Dissecting a specific portion from the DNA of the donor organism.
2. Attachment of the spliced DNA piece to a replicating piece of DNA (or vector), which can be from either a bacteriophage or a plasmid.
3. Transfer of the vector along with the attached DNA (i.e. the DNA chimera) into the host cell.
4. Isolation (or recognition) of cells successfully receiving and maintaining the vector and its attached DNA.

##### 7.2.2.2.8.1 Dissection of a portion of the DNA of the donor organism

The donor DNA may come from a plant, an animal, a microorganism, or may even be synthesized in the laboratory.

The dissection of DNA at specific sites is done by enzymes obtained from various bacteria and known as *restriction endonucleases*.

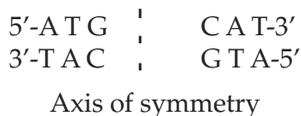
*(i) Nature and types of restriction endonucleases*

Restriction endonucleases are nucleic acid-splitting enzymes and are termed 'restriction' enzymes, because they help a host cell to destroy or restrict foreign DNA which enter the cell. The host protects its DNA from its own restriction endonucleases by the introduction of methyl groups at recognition sites where the cleavage of the DNA occurs. The host DNA so protected is said to be 'modified.' Conventionally restriction enzymes are denoted as single-stranded DNA; the position of the restriction is written '/' whereas the position of the modification is written as an asterisk (\*). Thus, the representation for the above enzyme would 5'G/AA\*TTC3'.

There are four different types of restriction endonucleases: Types I, II, III and IV (Type IV is designated Type II S by some authors). Only Type II is used extensively in gene manipulations. In Types I and III, one enzyme is involved for recognition of specific DNA sequences for cleavage and methylation, but the cutting positions are at variable distances from these sites [sometimes up to 1000 base pairs (bps)] away from these sites. Type IV cuts only methylated DNA. As most molecular biology work is done with Type II endonucleases, only they will be discussed.

Type II endonucleases have the following advantages over the others. Firstly in Type II systems, restriction and modification are brought about by different enzymes, and hence it is possible to cut DNA in the absence of modification (note that in Types I and III a single enzyme is involved); secondly, Type II enzymes are easier to use because they do not require enzyme cofactors. Finally as will be seen below, they recognize a defined symmetrical sequence and cut within this sequence.

Type II restriction endonucleases recognize and cut DNA within particular sequences of 4 to 8 nucleotides in an axis of symmetry in such a way that the sequences of the top strand are exactly like the bottom on the other side of the axis when read backwards, thus:



Such sequences are referred to as palindromes. Type II restriction endonucleases were discovered in *Haemophilus influenzae* in 1970. About 3,000 of these enzymes have now been discovered utilizing about 200 cutting patterns. Many of them are available commercially.

*(ii) Nomenclature of restriction endonucleases*

The nomenclature of restriction endonucleases is based on the proposals of Smith and Nathans. The currently adopted procedure follows:

- (a) The species name of the host organisms is identified by the first letter of the genus name and the first two letters of the species name to form a three-letter abbreviation written in italics. For example, *E. coli* is *Eco* and *Haemophilus influenzae* is *Hin*.
- (b) Strain or type identification is supposed to be written as a subscript. Thus, *E. coli* strain K, *Eco<sub>K</sub>*. However, in practice, it is all written in one line *Eco<sub>K</sub>*.
- (c) Where a particular host has several different restriction and modification systems, these are identified by Roman numerals. Thus, those from *H. influenzae* strain Rd. would be *Hind I*, *Hind II*, *Hind III*, in the order of their discovery.

- (d) Restriction enzymes have the general name endonuclease R and in addition carry the system name, thus endonuclease *R. Hind I*. Modification enzymes are named methylase M; thus the modification enzyme from *H. influenzae Rd.* is named methylase M. *Hind I*. Where the context makes it clear that restriction enzymes are being discussed, 'endonuclease R' is left out leaving *Hind I* as in the example quoted above.

(iii) *Cutting DNA by type II endonucleases*

Type II endonucleases recognize and break DNA within particular sequences of four, five, six, or seven nucleotides (Table 7.4A, B) which have a symmetry along a central axis.

The same restriction endonuclease is used to cut the foreign DNA to be inserted into a vector as well as the vector itself in order to open it up.

Restriction enzymes cut DNA between deoxyribose and phosphate groups leaving a phosphate at 5' end and an OH group at the 3'. The restriction enzymes used in genetic

Table 7.4 Restriction Endonucleases

A: Patterns of Endonucleases Cutting

1 **5' overhangs:** The enzyme cuts asymmetrically within the recognition site such that a short single-stranded segment extends from the 5' ends as with *BamHI*.

2 **3' overhangs:** Again, we see asymmetrical cutting within the recognition site, but the result is a single-stranded overhang from the two 3' ends as *KpnI* does.

3 **Blunts:** Enzymes that cut at precisely opposite sites in the two strands of DNA generate blunt ends without overhangs. *SmaI* cuts in this way.

B: Some Restriction Endonucleases and their Recognition Sequences. Modification sites (\*) are bolded

ORGANISM	ENZYME	RECOGNITION SEQUENCES
<i>Bacillus subtilis</i>	<i>BusRI</i>	CC/CC
<i>Brevibacterium albidum</i>	<i>Ball</i>	TGG/CCA
<i>Escherichia coli</i>	<i>EcoRI</i>	G/AATC
<i>Haemophilus influenzae</i>	<i>HindII</i>	GTPy/PuAC
<i>Nocardia otitidis-caviarum</i>	<i>NotI</i>	GC/GGCCGC

engineering cut within their recognition sites and generate one of three types of ends (see Table 7.4A):

- a) Single-stranded, “sticky” or cohesive ends as cut by *Bam* H1 (5′ overhangs).
- b) Single-stranded, “sticky” or cohesive ends as cut by *Kpn* 1 (3′ overhangs).
- c) Double-stranded, “blunt” ends as cut by *Sma* 1 (Blunts).

The single-stranded sticky or cohesive ends of DNA ends (Table 7.4A and Fig. 7.5) will join (anneal) with any DNA with sticky ends having complimentary bases regardless of the origin of the DNA provided that both DNA samples have been cut with the same restriction enzyme. Some restriction endonucleases and their recognition sequences are given in Table 7.4B.

#### 7.2.2.2.8.2 The attachment of the spliced piece of DNA to a vector

- (i) *Joining DNA molecules*: Three methods are used for the *in vivo* ‘tying’ of DNA molecules. The first method uses an enzyme DNA ligase to tie sticky ends produced by restriction endonucleases; the second is the use of another DNA ligase produced by *E. coli* infected by T4 bacteriophages to link blunt ended DNA fragments. The third method uses an enzyme terminal deoxynucleotidyl-transferase isolated from calf thymus to introduce single-stranded complimentary tails to two different DNA populations after which they anneal when mixed.
- (ii) *The use of DNA ligase to join foreign DNA to the vector*: High concentrations of the DNA of the previously circular vector (usually a plasmid) and of the foreign DNA to be cloned onto the vector are mixed. Both DNA types have sticky ends having been treated with the same restriction endonuclease: in the case of the foreign DNA to cut it from its source and in the case of the vector to open it up. Complimentary sticky ends from the foreign DNA and the vector anneal but leave gaps due to the absence of a few base pairs in opposite strands (Fig. 7.3).

The enzyme DNA ligase can repair these gaps to create an intact duplex. DNA ligase is produced by *E. coli* and phage T4. However, the ligase from T4 can join blunt-ended DNA whereas that from *E. coli* cannot. The vector-foreign DNA chimera is then introduced into the bacterial cell by transformation.

To prevent recircularization of the linearized vector, it may be treated with alkaline phosphatase. After this treatment, circularization can only occur when a foreign DNA is introduced. A gap is left at each joint. These gaps are closed after transformation by the hosts’ repair system.

- (iii) *Vectors used in recombinant DNA work*: Two broad groups of cloning vehicles have been used, namely plasmids and lambda phages. Both have replication systems that are independent of that of the host cell.

#### 7.2.2.2.8.3 Plasmids

Plasmids are circular DNA molecules with molecular weights ranging from a few million to a few hundred million Daltons. Plasmids appear to be associated with virtually all known bacterial genera. They replicate within the cell. Some of the larger plasmids, known as *conjugative plasmids*, carry a set of genes which promote their own transfer in a sexual

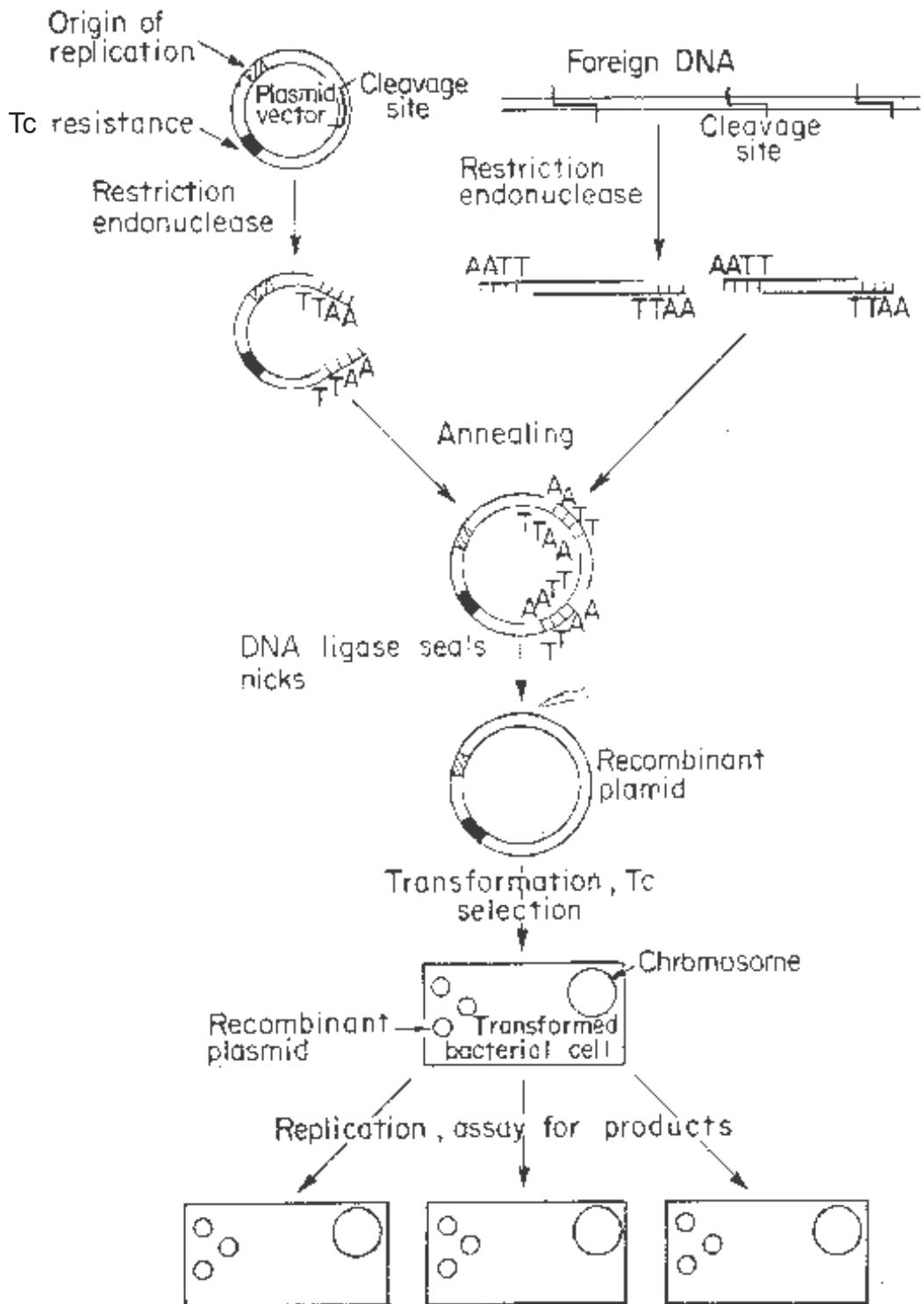


Fig. 7.3 Generalized Diagram of Procedure for Genetic Engineering

process known as conjugation which has already been discussed. Smaller plasmids are usually non-conjugative, but their transfer can usually be promoted by the presence of a conjugative plasmid in the same cell. Besides genes for sexual transfer, plasmids usually carry genes for antibiotic or heavy metal resistance. They often also carry genes for the production of toxins, bacteriocins, antibiotics, and unusual metabolites. In some cases, they may carry genes for unusual capabilities such as the breakdown of complex organic compounds. However, plasmids are not essential for the cell's survival.

Two important features of plasmids to be used in genetic experiments may be compared by examining two plasmids. Plasmid psC101 has only two to five copies per cell and replicates with its host DNA. It is said to be under 'stringent' control. However, another plasmid pCol E 1 is found in about 25–30 copies per cell. It has a 'relaxed control' independent of the host and replicates without reference to the host DNA. When the host cell is starved of amino-acids or its protein synthesis is inhibited in some other manner, such as with the use of chloramphenicol, the Col E 1 plasmid continues to replicate for several hours until there are 1,000 to 3,000 copies per cell. Due to this high level of gene dosage (also referred to as gene amplification), products synthesized because of the presence of these plasmids are produced in extremely high amounts, a property of immense importance in biotechnology and industrial microbiology. Generally, conjugative plasmids are large, exhibit stringent control of DNA replication and are present in low copy numbers; on the other hand, non-conjugative plasmids are small, show relaxed DNA replication, and are present in high numbers (Table 7.5).

(i) *Ideal properties in a plasmid used as a vector*

A plasmid to be used in genetic engineering should ideally have the following properties:

- (a) the plasmid should be as small as possible, so unwanted genes are not transmitted as well as to facilitate handling;
- (b) it should have an *origin of replication*, the site where DNA replication initiates;
- (c) it should have a relaxed mode of replication;
- (d) it should have sites for several restriction enzymes;
- (e) it should preferably carry two marker genes. Marker genes are those which express characteristics by which the plasmid can be identified. Such characteristics include

**Table 7.5** Some commonly used plasmid cloning vehicles

<i>Plasmid</i>	<i>Molecular weight</i> ( $\times 10^{-6}$ )	<i>Marker*</i>	<i>Single restriction sites</i>
pSC101	5.8	Tc	BamHI, EcoRI, HindIII, HpaI, Sall, SmaI
Col E1	4.2	Colimm	EcoRI
pMB9	3.6	Tc <sup>r</sup> , Colimm	BamHI, EcoRI, HindIII, HpaI, Sall, SmaI
pBR313	5.8	Tc <sup>r</sup> , Ap <sup>r</sup> Colimm	BamHI, EcoRI, HindIII, HpaI, Sall, SmaI
pBR322	2.6		BamHI, EcoRI, HindIII, pstI, Sall

\*Tc<sup>r</sup>: tetracycline resistance. Ap<sup>r</sup>: ampicillin resistance  
colimm: colicin immunity

resistance to one or more antibiotics. A marker of great importance is the ability to satisfy auxotrophy, i.e. the ability to produce an amino acid or other nutritional component which the host's chromosome is incapable of producing.

- (f) the nucleotide sequence of the plasmid should be known;
- (g) for safety reasons, the plasmid should not be able to replicate at mammalian body temperatures, so in case it should enter the human body and be able to produce deleterious substances, it would fail to replicate;
- (h) for safety reasons also, it should not be highly transmissible by conjugation if it controls the production of any material harmful to the mammalian body;
- (i) the plasmid as a cloning vehicle should have a site for inducing transcription across the inserted fragment. The plasmid-initiated transcription should be controlled by the host (by induction or repression). Uncontrolled transcription could be harmful to the host.

Table 7.5 shows some commonly used plasmid cloning vehicles. They carry various markers based on tetracycline or ampicillin resistance or immunity against colicin attack. The marker may be carried either on the plasmid or on the inserted DNA. If neither of them carries a marker, then DNA carrying a marker can be grafted on to either the vector or the insert.

#### (ii) *Plasmids currently in use for cloning*

In the early years of genetic engineering, naturally occurring plasmids such as Col E1 and pSC 101 were used as cloning vectors. They were small and had single sites for the common endonucleases. However, they lacked markers which would help select transformed organisms. New plasmids were therefore developed. The best and most commonly used plasmid is pBR322 developed by Francisco Bolivar. (In naming plasmids p is used to show it is a plasmid; p is followed by the initials of the worker who isolated or developed the plasmid; numbers are used to denote the particular strain). Plasmid pBR322 has all the properties expected in a plasmid vector: low molecular weight, two markers (resistance to ampicillin,  $Ap^R$  and tetracycline,  $Tc^R$ ), an origin of replication, and several single-cut replication sites (see map of pBR322 in Fig. 7.4). Modifications of the original pBR322 have been made to suit special purposes, and consequently many variants exist in the pBR322 family. A widely used variant of pBR322 is pAT153, which some consider a better vector than its parent because it is present in more copies per cell than pBR322.

#### 7.2.2.2.8.4 Phages

Two types of phages have been developed for cloning,  $\lambda$  lambda, and M13 (Fig. 7.6). Most of the phages used for cloning are derivatives of the lambda phage of *E. coli*. Derivatives are used because the wild-type phage is not suitable as a vector as it has several targets of sites for the majority of the most commonly used endonucleases. The chromosome of phage must be folded and encapsulated into the head of the virus in order to provide a mature virion. The amount of DNA that can enter the head is limited, and hence the available DNA in a phage is also limited. Therefore, unwanted phage DNA must be removed as well as all but one of restriction targets for the chosen enzyme.

The DNA of phage lambda when isolated from the phage particle is linear and double-stranded. At each end of the chain are single-stranded portions which are complementary to each other, much like the 'sticky ends' produced from DNA cutting by

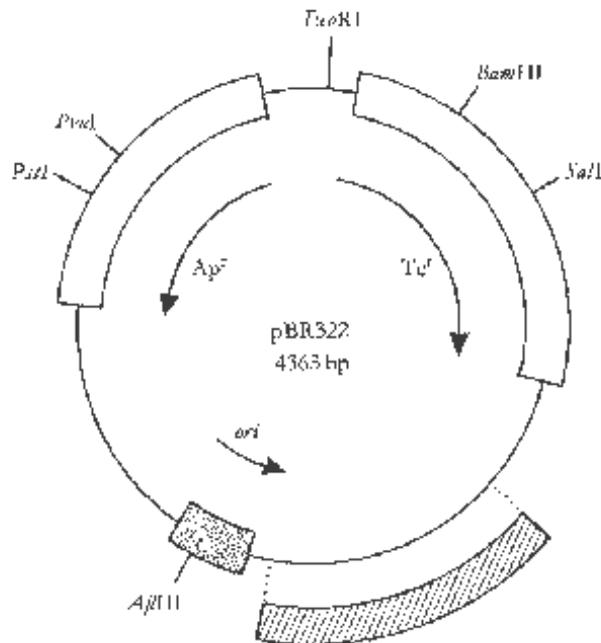


Fig. 7.4 Genetic Map of Plasmid pBR322 Showing Unique Recognition Endonuclease Sites and Genes for Tetracycline and Ampicillin Resistance

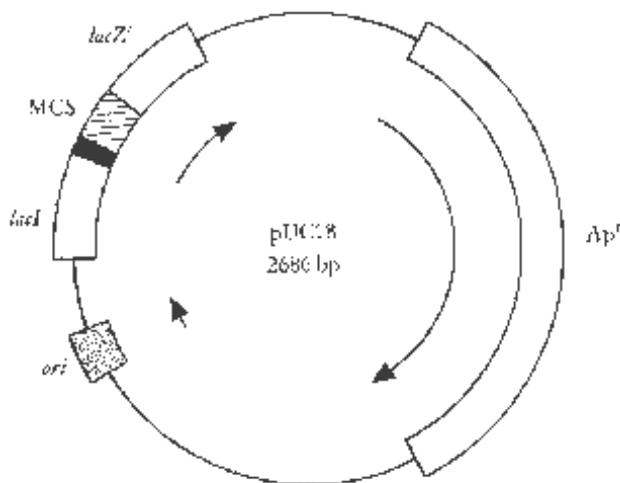


Fig. 7.5 Genetic Map of pUC18

restriction endonucleases. These lambda DNA pieces are able to circularize and replicate independently within the host.

The middle portion of the linear double-stranded phage DNA is non-essential for phage growth and it is here that the foreign DNA is introduced. The more distal positions carry genes which code for essential components such as the head, tail of the bacteriophage, and the host lysis.

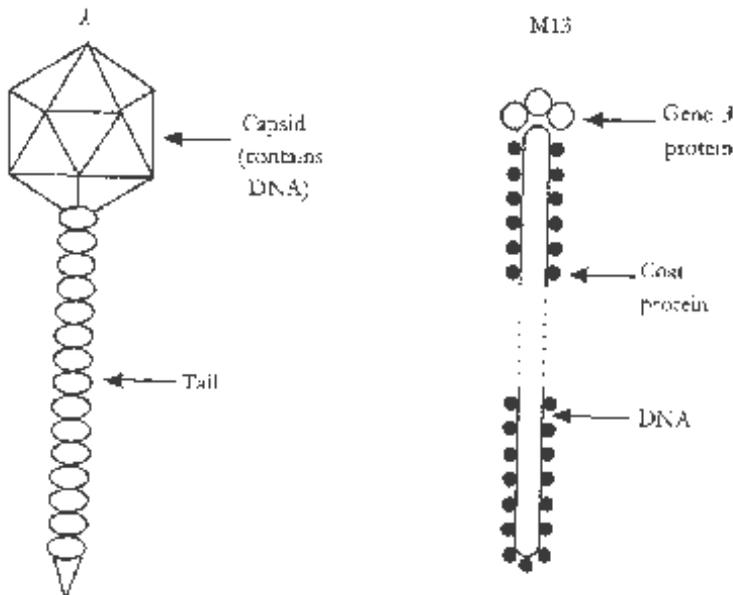


Fig. 7.6 Structure of  $\lambda$  and M13 Bacteriophages

- (i) **Transfection:** The linear chimera can be introduced by transformation. (When virus DNA is transformed, the process is known as transfection.) However, much of introduced chimeras are restricted in comparison to when pure phage DNA is transfected.
- (ii) **Packaging the chimeras into virus heads:** The recombinant DNA or chimera may be packaged by *in vitro* means. The procedure for this packaging is outside the scope of this book but may be found elsewhere. Once packaged, the synthetic virus can then inject its DNA into the host in the usual way.

#### 7.2.2.2.8.5 Cosmids

Cosmids are plasmids constructed from phage DNA by circularization at the 'sticky,' single stranded ends or *cos sites*. Foreign DNA is attached to the cosmid which is then packaged into a phage. When the cosmid is injected, it circularizes like other virus DNA, but it does not behave as a phage, rather it replicates like a plasmid. Drug resistance markers carried on it help to identify it.

#### 7.2.2.2.8.6 Transfer of the vector along with the attached DNA into the host cell

Once spliced with the endonuclease, the vector cannot reform into a circular structure unless a suitable fragment of the foreign DNA with a complimentary 'sticky end' fits in. Foreign DNA digests produced by physical inactivation may also be used. If a large enough amount of foreign DNA digest is used, the probability is that a piece with the appropriate complementary end will fit in. The new hybrid DNA is introduced into the host cell by

transformation. Transformation is facilitated by treating the host cells in calcium salts after washing them in magnesium salts.

#### 7.2.2.2.8.7 Recognizing the transformed cell

The introduction of the new property into the host may be detected by growing the cells in a medium containing antibiotics whose resistance is specified in the introduced foreign DNA. Growth should occur if the resistance gene was transferred. If genes for the synthesis of some products were introduced via the chimera, the transformed bacteria should grow on the selective medium. The products are then examined for the synthesis of the new compound. For the introduced gene to lead to protein synthesis, a suitable promoter must be present; it may be introduced from other organisms if an appropriate one is not indigenous.

#### 7.2.2.2.8.8 Gene transfer into organisms other than *E. coli*, including plants and animals

(i) *Delivery into bacteria other than E. coli*

##### (a) Electroporation

In the process of electroporation, cells into which DNA is to be introduced (i.e. cells to be transfected) are exposed to high-voltage electric pulses. This creates temporary holes in the cell membrane through which DNA can pass. Electroporation can be used for transfecting cells of *Bacilli* spp. and actinomycetes, especially when protoplasts are produced from the cells. Electroporation is the short form for electric field-mediated membrane permeabilization. In general, electroporation can be used for transfecting bacteria and archae, after the appropriate electric voltage and other parameters have been worked out. It is also used for transfecting plant cells.

##### (b) Conjugation

In some bacteria, where other means of introducing DNA appear difficult or have failed, the natural means of transferring DNA by plasmid mediated conjugation has been exploited. A conjugative plasmid which is carrying the insert and which has the genes for its own transfer is used. However, where this is not possible, a conjugative plasmid with its own transfer gene may first be introduced, followed by the non-conjugative (i.e. does not promote the transfer of DNA through pili) plasmid carrying the DNA insert. This has been used in some strains of *Pseudomonas*.

##### (c) Use of liposomes

When the DNA to be introduced is first entrapped in phospholipid droplets known as liposomes, it enhances the entry of the DNA into protoplasts of Gram-positive *Bacillus* and actinomycetes. Liposomes have also been used for delivering DNA into animal cells. Liposomes are microscopic, fluid-filled vesicles whose walls are made of layers of phospholipids identical to the phospholipids that make up cell membranes. The outer layer of the vesicle is hydrophobic, while the inner layer is hydrophilic; this enables the liposome to carry water soluble materials within it. They can be designed so that they have cationic, anionic or neutral charges at the hydrophobic end depending on their purpose. They are used for introducing DNA into animal, plant, or bacterial cells. When used for introducing DNA into plant cells, such cells must have their cell walls removed, yielding protoplasts;

with bacteria, the cell walls must also be removed to yield spheroplasts. Liposomes have been used experimentally to carry normal genes into a cell to replace defective, disease-causing genes in gene therapy. Liposomes are used to deliver certain vaccines, enzymes, or drugs (e.g. insulin and some cancer drugs) to the animal body. Liposomes are sometimes used in cosmetics because of their moisturizing qualities.

### (ii) *Delivery of DNA into Plant cells*

Plants are peculiar in that most single plant cells can be caused to develop into the entire plants. Successfully transfecting (i.e. introducing foreign DNA into) a plant cell will result in having the foreign DNA as part of the genetic apparatus of the transfected plant.

The introduction of foreign DNA into plants is done for the improvement of the agricultural, ornamental, nutritional, or horticultural value of the plant. It is also done to convert the plants into 'living fermenters' which with the appropriate genes can manufacture cheaply, some industrially important materials, which it may not be possible to produce by chemical means.

#### (a) **Plant transfection with Ti plasmid of *Agrobacterium tumefaciens***

The Gram-negative soil bacterium, *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*, is the causative agent of crown gall, a disease which produces tumors in plants (mainly dicots) on entering through a wounded plant cell.

The pathogenic properties of the bacterium are due to the Ti (tumor inducing) plasmid which it carries. Part of the Ti plasmid, known as the t-(transfer) DNA, is transferred to the plant cell and is integrated into the genome of the host under the direction of the virulence gene. It is within the tDNA that foreign DNA can be introduced. A section of the tDNA codes for the production of auxins and cytokines which lead to the formation of galls or tumors. Another section codes for the production of conjugates of amino acids and sugars known as opines and which are metabolized by *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* residing in the tumor. The oncogenic (tumor-causing) and the opine-producing portions of the tDNA of wild-type *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* are removed, when it is to be used for cloning. Furthermore, marker genes (e.g. for kanamycin resistance) are introduced into the plasmids, so that transformed plants can be identified. Because the marker genes are of bacterial origin, an origin of replication from *E. coli* is also introduced. The tDNA is defined by the left and right borders. The sequences of the right border are essential for the tDNA transfer and integration into the host plant. The transfected plant cells therefore result in normal plants. Ti plasmids in which the oncogenic section has been removed is said to be 'disarmed'. Such disarmed plasmids lack the sequences necessary to produce the phytohormones which give rise to diseased conditions, gall or tumor. Other properties such as the transfer of DNA are still active and the regeneration of healthy plants can still occur. The *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* Ti plasmid has been successfully and widely used in cloning in plants. However, it has been more successful in dicots than in monocots.

#### (b) **Use of viruses**

The cauliflower mosaic virus (caMV) has been used as a powerful vector for introducing DNA into plants. It is a double-stranded DNA virus with 8025 base pairs.

Certain portions of the virus are dispensable and foreign genes can replace them. However, it has a limited host range; furthermore, foreign sequences are often unstable in the caMV genome.

**(c) Electroporation**

Electroporation is widely used for transfecting plant cells. When plants are to be transfected, protoplasts or whole plant cells are placed in contact with exogenous DNA in foil-lined cuvettes and exposed to high electrical current. The cells become permeable and take up exogenous DNA, some of which integrate with the plant genome. It has been successfully used in a wide variety of species using equipment which is relatively inexpensive.

**(d) Ballistic or microprojectile methods**

This is one of the most common methods used for transfecting plants. In this method, a so-called gene gun or particle gun is used to shoot tiny pellets of tungsten or gold coated with the foreign DNA in question into the leaves or stem of the plant to be transformed. It is a widely used and highly successful method of transfecting plants using plant protoplasts, plant cell suspensions, callus cultures, even chloroplasts and mitochondria, and indeed any form of plant preparation capable of regeneration in dicots, monocots, and conifers. Success occurs more with linear DNA than with circular; furthermore very large DNA inserts tend to be broken during the projection. When inside the cell, some of the introduced DNA get integrated with the plant DNA.

**(e) Microinjection**

This method involves immobilizing the cells and injecting DNA into protoplasts, walled cells, or embryos. It is done with a fine needle under the microscope. The technique needs a lot of skill. Some authors do not think it has much future because only one cell can be injected at a time.

*(iii) Delivery of DNA into animal cells*

Genetic engineering in plants differs in at least two respects from that in animals. Firstly while plant cells are mostly totipotent (i.e. most plant cells are able to give rise to a new plant), animal cells cannot give rise to whole animals once differentiated into specialized cells. In animals, the cells that become reproductive cells separate early from those that are ordinary body (somatic) cells. Somatic cells do not give rise to new animals. To create transgenic animals, the foreign DNA must be introduced into cells while they are still totipotent and differentiation has not occurred. Generally, this involves introducing the DNA into stem cells (yet undifferentiated cells), an egg, the fertilized egg (oocyte or zygote), or early embryo.

Some of the methods discussed above for introducing foreign DNA into bacteria and plants are also applicable to animal cells: electroporation, ballistic methods, and microinjection have all been successfully used in animals. In addition, the liposome (phospholipid) delivery seen in bacteria is also used in animal cells.

Genes are also introduced into animal cells *in vivo* by transduction via viruses in gene therapy. Four groups of viral vectors are used for gene therapy in humans: adenoviruses, baculoviruses, herpesvirus vectors, and retroviruses.

Changing the genetic make-up of animals, for example, in large domesticated mammals such as cows, pigs, and sheep, allows a number of commercial applications. These applications include the production of animals which express large quantities of exogenous proteins in an easily harvested form (e.g. expression into the milk), the production of animals which are resistant to infection by specific microorganisms, and the production of animals having enhanced growth rates or reproductive performance.

Most of the work on transgenic animals has been done with mice on account of their small size and low cost of housing in comparison to that for larger vertebrates, their short generation time, and their fairly well defined genetics. Foreign DNA is introduced in mice in one of the following ways: DNA microinjection, embryonic stem cell-mediated gene transfer, retrovirus-mediated gene transfer, sperm-mediated transfer, transfer into unfertilized ova.

**(a) DNA microinjection**

This method involves the direct microinjection of a chosen gene construct (a single gene or a combination of genes) from another member of the same species or from a different species into the pronucleus of a fertilized ovum. The introduced DNA may lead to the over- or underexpression of certain genes or to the expression of genes entirely new to the animal species. The insertion of DNA is, however, a random process, and there is a high probability that the introduced gene will not insert itself into a site on the host DNA that will permit its expression. The manipulated fertilized ovum is transferred into the oviduct of a recipient female, or foster mother, that has been induced to act as a recipient by mating with a vasectomized male.

**(b) Embryonic stem cell-mediated gene transfer**

This method involves prior insertion of the DNA sequence by homologous recombination into an *in vitro* culture of embryonic stem (ES) cells. Stem cells are undifferentiated cells that have the potential to differentiate into any type of cell (somatic and germ cells) and therefore to give rise to a complete organism. These cells are then incorporated into an embryo at the blastocyst stage of development. The result is a chimeric animal. ES cell-mediated gene transfer is the method of choice for gene inactivation, the so-called knock-out method. This technique is of particular importance for the study of the genetic control of developmental processes. This technique works particularly well in mice. It has the advantage of allowing precise targeting of defined mutations.

**(c) Retrovirus-mediated gene transfer**

To increase the probability of expression, gene transfer is mediated by means of a carrier or vector, generally a virus or a plasmid. Retroviruses are commonly used as vectors to transfer genetic material into the cell, taking advantage of their ability to infect host cells in this way. Offspring derived from this method are chimeric, i.e. not all cells carry the retrovirus. Transmission of the transgene is possible only if the retrovirus integrates into some of the germ cells.

**(d) Sperm-mediated gene transfer**

Sperms may be coated with the target DNA or attached to the sperm through a linker protein, and introduced through surgical oviduct insemination. It has been successfully used in pigs.

With the above techniques, the success rate in terms of live birth of animals containing the transgene is extremely low. If there is birth, the result is a first generation (F1) of animals that need to be tested for the expression of the transgene. The F1 generation may result in chimeras. When the transgene has integrated into the germ cells, the germ line chimeras are then inbred for 10 to 20 generations until homozygous transgenic animals are obtained and the transgene is present in every cell. At this stage, embryos carrying the transgene can be frozen and stored for subsequent implantation.

#### 7.2.2.2.8.9 Application of genetic engineering in industrial microbiology and biotechnology in general

The unparalleled ability of DNA to replicate and reproduce itself is truly remarkable. DNA of a given sequence coding for the production of a polypeptide or protein in organism A will lead to the production of the same polypeptide or protein if the same sequence is put into organism B. This is the basic assumption underlying the numerous advances in our manipulation of the biotic world for the benefit of humans. Recombinant DNA technology has contributed to spreading a better quality of life to millions of people around the world through improvements in agriculture, health care delivery, and industrial productivity.

##### (i) Production of industrial enzymes

Genetically engineered bulk enzymes are used mostly in the food industry (baking, starch manufacture, fruit juices), the animal feed industry, in textile manufacture, and in detergents. A leading manufacturer of these enzymes among world manufacturer is Novozymes of Denmark.

The advantages of using engineered enzymes are as follows:

- (a) such enzymes have a higher specificity and purity;
- (b) it is possible to obtain enzymes which would otherwise not be available due to economical, occupational health, or environmental reasons;
- (c) on account of the higher production efficiency there is an additional environmental benefit through reducing energy consumption and waste from the production plants;
- (d) for enzymes used in the food industry particular benefits are for example a better use of raw materials (juice industry), better shelf life of the final food, thereby less wastage of food (baking industry), and a reduced use of chemicals in the production process (starch industry);
- (e) for enzymes used in the animal feed industry particular benefits include a significant reduction in the amount of phosphorus released to the environment from farming.

Two enzymes will be discussed briefly: chymosin (rennets) and bovine somatotropin (BST).

**Chymosin** is also known as rennets or chymase and is used in the manufacture of cheese. It used to be produced from rennets of farm animals, namely calves. Later, it was produced from fungi, *Rhizomucor* spp. Over 90% of the chymosin used today is produced by *E. coli*, and the fungi *Kluyveromyces lactis* and *Aspergillus niger*. Genetically engineered chymosin is preferred by manufacturers because while it behaves in exactly the same way as calf chymosin, it is purer than calf chymosin and more predictable. Furthermore, it is preferred by vegetarians and some religious organizations.

**Bovine Somatotropin (BST)** is a growth hormone produced by the pituitary glands of cattle and it helps adult cows produce milk. It is produced by genetic engineering in *E. coli* using a plasmid vector. Supplementing dairy cows with bovine somatotropin safely enhances milk production and serves as an important tool to help dairy producers improve the efficiency of their operations. The use of supplemental BST allows dairy farmers to produce more milk with fewer cows, thereby providing them with additional economic security. It is marketed by Monsanto as Posilac.

**Table 7.6** Some genetically engineered industrial enzymes (selected from brochure by Novo Industries of Denmark)

<i>Type of enzyme</i>	<i>Main application</i>
Alpha-amylase/Bacillolysin/Xylanase	Brewing industry, starch industry, baking industry
Amyloglucosidase	Alcohol industry, fruit processing
Cellulase	Detergent industry; textiles
Decarboxylase	Brewing industry
Glucoamylase	Alcohol industry, starch industry
Glucose oxidase	Baking industry
Lipase	Oils and fats industry; baking industry; dairy industry; leather industry
Lipase	Pasta/noodles
Maltogenic amylase	Starch industry, baking industry
Pectate lyase	Textile industry, fruit processing
Pectinesterase	Fruit processing
Phytase	Animal feed industry
Protease	Meat industry; detergent industry
Pullulanase/Amyloglucosidase	Starch industry, fruit processing

**(ii) Enhancing the activities of industrial enzymes**

Through protein engineering it has been possible to enhance the properties of proteins to make them more resistant to denaturation, more active in their biocatalytic ability, and even to design new properties in existing enzymes. The properties of proteins are due to their conformation which is a result of their amino acid sequence. Certain amino acids in a protein play important parts in determining the stability of the protein in high temperatures, specificity, and resistance to acidity. In protein engineering, changes are caused to occur in the protein by changes in the nucleotide sequence; a change of even a single nucleotide could lead to a drastic change in a protein. Many industrial processes are carried out at elevated temperatures, which can unfold the proteins and cause them to denature. The addition of disulfide bonds helps to stabilize them. Disulfide bonds are usually added by engineering cysteine in positions where it is desired to have the disulfide bonds. The addition of disulfide bonds not only increases stability towards elevated temperatures, but in some instances also increases stability towards organic solvents and extremes of pH. An example of the increase of stability in elevated temperatures due to the addition of disulfide bonds is seen in xylanase.

Xylanase is produced from *Bacillus circulans*. During paper manufacture, wood pulp is treated with chemicals to remove hemicelluloses. This treatment however leads to the release of undesirable toxic effluents. It is possible to use xylanase to breakdown the hemicellulose. However, by the time bleaching is done, the pulp is highly acidic as a result of the acid used to digest the wood chips to produce wood pulp. The acid is neutralized with alkali, but the temperature is still high and would denature native xylanase. *In silico* (i.e. computer) modeling showed the sites where disulfide bonds can be added without

affecting the enzyme's activity. The introduction of the disulfide bonds did increase the thermostability of the enzyme making it possible to keep 85% of its activity after 2 hours at 60°C, whereas the native enzyme lost its activity after about 30 minutes at the same temperature.

Another way in which enzyme activity can be enhanced by protein engineering is to actually increase the activity of the enzyme. This can be done only with an enzyme whose conformation, including the active sites, is thoroughly understood. Using *in silico* modeling, it is possible to predict the effect of changing amino acids at the active site of an enzyme. This has been done with the enzyme tRNA synthase from *Bacillus stearothermophilus*.

Various other properties have been engineered into proteins including a modification of the metal co-factor and even a change in the specificity of enzymes.

### (iii) Engineered products or activities used for the enhancement of human health

Engineered health care products and activities can be divided into: (a) those used to replace or supplement proteins produced by the human body in insufficient quantities or not produced at all; (b) those involving the replacement of a defective gene; (c) those that are used to treat disease; (d) those that are used for prophylaxis or prevention of disease, i.e. vaccines, or (e) those that are used for the diagnosis of disease (Table 7.7).

#### (1) *Insulin*

Insulin is a hormone produced by the pancreas; hormones are small proteins. Insulin is used to treat diabetes of which there are three types, only two of which are relevant to this discussion.

**Table 7.7** Some genetically engineered health related products

<i>Product</i>	<i>Application</i>
<b>Hormones</b>	
Insulin	Treatment of diabetes
Human growth hormone (somatotropin)	Treatment of dwarfism
Follicle stimulating hormone	Treatment of some disorders of the reproductive system
<b>Immune System Participants</b>	
Tumor necrosis factor	Anti-tumor agent
Interleukin 2	Treatment of some cancers
Lysozyme	Anti-inflammatory agent
Alpha-Interferon	Antiviral
<b>Blood components</b>	
Erythropoetin	Treatment of anemia and cancers
Tissue plasminogen activate	Dissolves blood clots
Factor VIII	Treating hemophilia
<b>Enzymes</b>	
Human DNase I	Treatment of cystic fibrosis

**Type 1 diabetes** (previously known as *insulin-dependent diabetes*) is an auto-immune disease where the body's immune system destroys the insulin-producing beta cells in the pancreas. This type of diabetes, also known as juvenile-onset diabetes, accounts for 10–15% of all people with the disease. It can appear at any age, although common under 40, and is triggered by environmental factors such as viruses, diet, or chemicals in people genetically predisposed. To live, people with type 1 diabetes must inject themselves with insulin several times a day and follow a careful diet and exercise plan.

**Type 2 diabetes** (previously known as *non-insulin dependent diabetes*) is the most common form of diabetes, affecting 85–90% of all people with the disease. This type of diabetes, also known as late-onset diabetes, is characterized by relative insulin deficiency. The disease is strongly genetic in origin but lifestyle factors such as excess weight, inactivity, high blood pressure and poor diet are major risk factors for its development.

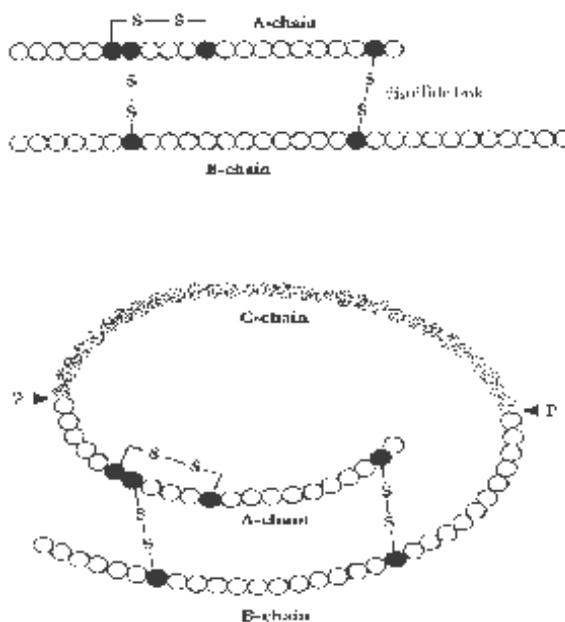
Symptoms may not show for many years and, by the time they appear, significant problems may have developed. People with type 2 diabetes are twice as likely to suffer cardiovascular disease. Type 2 diabetes may be treated by dietary changes, exercise, and/or medications. Insulin injections may later be required.

Genetically engineered insulin was the first major product of biotechnology. As insulin from some animals is similar to human insulin, beginning from the 1920s, insulin isolated from the pancreas of farm animals, mainly pigs and cows, was used to treat diabetes. There were several problems with this product. First, it takes several months for animals to mature and be ready to be slaughtered for their pancreas. This made animal-based insulin expensive since it was difficult to meet the demand. Furthermore, such animal insulin caused immune reactions in some patients and a few became intolerant or resistant to animal insulin. For a more effective solution, the then new technology of recombinant DNA was resorted to. In 1978, in the laboratory of Herbert Boyer at the University of California at San Francisco, a synthetic version of the human insulin gene was constructed and inserted into *E. coli*. In 1982, the Eli Lilly Corporation was granted approval for its genetically engineered insulin. Insulin is a small protein, and today's insulin is produced with a synthesized gene, which is expressed in a yeast.

Insulin consists of two amino acid chains: the **A peptide chain** which is acidic and consists of 21 amino acids and the **B peptide chain** which is basic and contains 30 amino acids. When synthesized, the A and B chains are further linked by a 30 amino acid **C peptide chain** to produce a structure known as pro-insulin. Pro-insulin is cleaved enzymatically to yield insulin (Fig. 7.7).

#### (2) Edible vaccines

An innovative new approach to vaccine production is the surface expression of the antigen of a bacterium in a plant. Most current immunization is done by injection (parenteral delivery) and rarely results in specific protective immune responses at the mucosal surfaces of the respiratory, gastrointestinal, and genito-urinary tracts. Mucosal immune responses represent a first line of defense against most pathogens. In contrast, mucosally targeted vaccines achieve stimulation of both the systemic as well as the mucosal immune networks. In addition, mucosal vaccines delivered orally increase safety and compliance by eliminating the need for needles. In addition, many vaccines depend on the need of maintenance of a 'cold chain' (refrigeration) for delivery. Many developing countries lack the resources to maintain the chain giving rise to many cases of vaccine failure. In addition to that, they lack the resources and technology for fermentation industries. Both of these



Top: Structure of insulin. The A chain has 21 amino acids (represented by circles) and the B chain has 30 amino acids. The A and B chains are linked by disulfide bond between cysteine residues (filled circles)

Bottom: Synthesis of Insulin: Proinsulin, the Precursor of Insulin

When synthesized proinsulin consists of an 81-amino acid polypeptide. The C chain is then cleaved off by a protease (P) to yield insulin.

Fig. 7.7 Structure and Synthesis of Insulin

factors create constraints in vaccine use in the developing world where these vaccines are needed the most. Combining a cost-effective production system with a safe and efficacious delivery system, plant edible vaccines, provide a compelling new opportunity.

Plant-based oral vaccines are cheap, safe, and efficient. Vaccines have been produced in several plants including a vaccine against dental caries caused by *Streptococcus mutans*, which was produced in tobacco. Two other interesting examples are the expression of the rabies external antigen in tomatoes and the hepatitis virus antigen in lettuce.

#### 7.2.2.2.8.10 Genetically engineered plants

Plants have been engineered for the introduction of many new desirable properties. Collectively, these attainments represent a major triumph of biotechnology enabling us to achieve in a few years what would take traditional plant breeding decades to attain, if at all. Some genetic engineering achievements would be impossible with traditional plant breeding methods, since in the latter, the introduction of new genetic properties occurs only through the exchange of sexual materials (in the pollen grains) of the same species. In genetic engineering, the natural species barrier is not recognized since the DNA sequence introduced into a plant can come from another plant of a different species or even from a non-plant source such as a bacterium and indeed may even be synthesized.

**Table 7.8** Vaccines produced in plants

<i>Vaccine against</i>	<i>Plant</i>
Cholera	Potato
Foot and mouth disease	<i>Arabidopsis</i>
Herpes virus	Tobacco
Norwalk (diarrhea) virus	Potato
Rabies	Tobacco

### (i) Engineering plants for herbicide resistance

An estimated \$10 billion is spent annually on weed killers. In spite of this, about 10% of world crop production is lost to weeds. Herbicides (weed killers) target processes that are essential and unique to plants. These processes are however important to plants and weeds alike, and finding methods that are selective for either is difficult. One method used is to engineer crops so they become resistant to the weed killer. Plants can become resistant to herbicides in one of the four following ways:

- overproduction of the herbicide sensitive target, so that some is still left for the proper cell function despite presence of the herbicide in the cell;
- reduction of the ability of the herbicide-sensitive target protein to bind to the herbicide;
- engineering into plants the ability to metabolically inhibit the herbicide;
- inhibition of the uptake of the herbicide.

It is important to have some idea of the modes of action of herbicides so as to understand how the genetic engineering is to proceed.

- **Auxin mimics** (2,4-D, clopyralid, picloram, and triclopyr), which mimic the plant growth hormone auxin causing uncontrolled and disorganized growth in susceptible plant species;
- **Mitosis inhibitors** (fosamine), which prevent re-budding in spring and new growth in summer (also known as dormancy enforcers);
- **Photosynthesis inhibitors** (hexazinone, bromoxynil), which block specific reactions in photosynthesis leading to cell breakdown;
- **Amino acid synthesis inhibitors** (glyphosate, imazapyr, and imazapic), which prevent the synthesis of amino acids required for construction of proteins;
- **Lipid biosynthesis inhibitors** (fluazifop-p-butyl and sethoxydim), that prevent the synthesis of lipids required for growth and maintenance of cell membranes.

Engineering plants for resistance to glyphosate will be discussed. Glyphosate (N-phosphonomethylglycine) is a non-selective, broad spectrum herbicide that is systematically translocated to the meristems of growing plants. It causes shikimate accumulation through inhibition of the chloroplast localized EPSP synthase (5-*enol*pyruvylshikimate-3-phosphate synthase; EPSPs) [EC 2.5.1.19]. Resistance to the herbicide glyphosate has been developed for soybean. Glyphosate is said to be environmentally friendly as it does not accumulate in the environment because it is easily broken by soil bacteria. Glyphosate kills plants by

preventing the synthesis of certain amino acids produced by plants but not animals. It acts by inhibiting the enzyme 5-enolpyruvylshikimate-3-phosphate synthase (EPSPS), an enzyme in the shikimate pathway and plays an important part in the synthesis of aromatic amino acids in plants and bacteria. An EPSPS gene isolated from a glyphosate-resistant *E. coli* was linked to a plant promoter and termination transcription sequence and cloned into plant cells. Tobacco, tomato, potato, petunia, and cotton have been transfected with glyphosate resistance in this way. They produce large amounts of EPSPS, enough to leave some for the plants cells to utilize for their metabolism after neutralization of a portion by glyphosate.

An example of a case where the plant is engineered to inactivate the herbicide before it can act is bromoxynil, a photosynthesis inhibitor. Plants were made resistant to this herbicide by engineering into them the gene for nitrilase obtained from the bacterium, *Klebsiella ozaenae*. Nitrilase inactivates bromoxynil before it can act.

### **(ii) Engineering plants for pathogenic microbe resistance**

The majority of microbes attacking plants are fungi, but some bacterial diseases of plants do exist. Plants are conventionally sprayed with chemicals to eliminate fungal pathogens. Sometimes, such chemicals are not always easily biodegradable and they may also find their way into food. A genetic approach which bypasses this problem is to engineer into plants anti-fungal proteins such as the gene coding for chitinase, an enzyme which hydrolyzes chitin, a polymer of the amino sugar N-acetyl glucosamine. The chitinase gene from bean has been cloned into tobacco where chitinase stopped the attack by the fungus *Rhizoctonia solani*. Chitinase is one of the 'pathogen-related proteins' (PRs) synthesized by plants; they also synthesize anti-fungal peptides known as defensins. Genes coding for these are sought from source of high productivity and cloned into plant to protect them.

Plant resistance to bacterial disease has also been genetically engineered. For example, the a-thionin gene from barley has been shown to confer resistance to a bacterial pathogen, *Pseudomonas syringae*, in transgenic tobacco.

With regard to engineering plants against viruses, when the viral coat of a plant virus is engineered into a plant, that plant usually becomes resistant to the virus from which the coat comes. Often the plant is also resistant against other unrelated viruses.

### **(iii) Engineering plants for insect resistance**

Insect pests are devastating to crops, about \$5 billion are currently being used to control them annually with chemicals. Biological insecticides which are sprayed on plants have the disadvantage that they are inactivated by ultraviolet rays from the sun or may be washed away by the rain. Genetic engineering of crops for resistance against insect pests has the advantage that the active constituents are protected from the environment and remain within the plant.

The major strategy of producing plants resistant to insect pests is to engineer the gene for producing the toxic crystals of *Bacillus thuringiensis* (Bt) into plants. These crystals are produced in Bt but in no other *Bacillus* sp. They are small proteins and are highly specific against given insects. In such susceptible insects they bind to receptors in the gut lining of the insects, dissolve in the alkali environment therein and create holes in the gut lining through which gut contents leak out, leading to death. The gene for Bt toxin has been engineered into cotton, tomatoes, and numerous other plants.

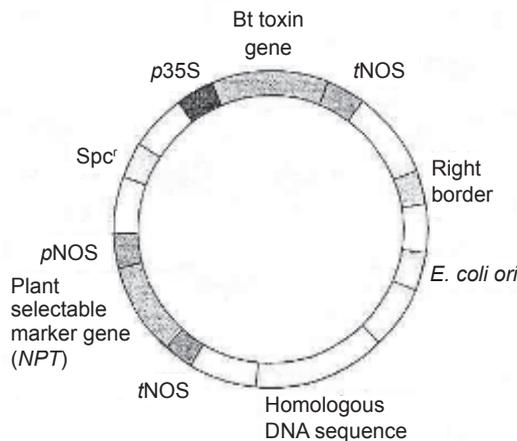


Fig. 7.8 Cloning Vector Carrying a *B. thuringiensis* (Bt) Insecticidal Toxin Gene

An alternative strategy which has been inspired by the fact that Bt toxins do not affect some insects is to engineer two groups of enzymes which inhibit digestive enzymes in the insect gut into plants: amylase inhibitors and protease inhibitors. In effect, the insect starves to death.

Another strategy for developing insect resistance in plants is to engineer into the plant the gene for cholesterol oxidase which is present in many bacteria. Cholesterol oxidase catalyzes 3-hydroxysteroids to ketosteroids and hydrogen peroxide. Small amounts of this enzyme are very lethal to the larvae of the boll weevil which attacks cotton. It is possible that the cholesterol oxidase acts by disrupting the insect larva's alimentary canal epithelium leading to its death.

#### (iv) Engineering plants to survive water and salt stress

Many parts of the world have desert or near desert conditions where water is in short supply. Added to this is the fact that salt used for treating ice in the winter finds its way into agricultural land. These factors create conditions which bring plants into conditions of water (drought) and salt stress. To survive under these conditions, many plants synthesize compounds known as osmoprotectants. They help the plant increase its water uptake as well as retain the water absorbed. Osmoprotectants include sugars, alcohols and quaternary ammonium compounds. The quaternary ammonium compound betaine is a powerful osmoprotectant and the gene encoding it obtained from *E. coli* has enabled plants into which it was cloned survive drought better than un-engineered plants.

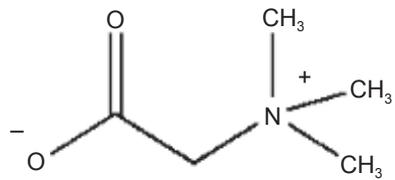


Fig. 7.9 Betaine

#### Modification of Plant Consumer Products

This section looks at how genetic engineering has been used to modify the plant food which comes to the consumer as opposed to the previous section which dealt with the concerns of the farmer or the producer.

**(i) Maintenance of hardness and delayed ripeness in fruits**

During post-harvest transportation of fruits to supermarkets, these fruits sometimes ripen and become soft due to the natural processes which go on within the fruit. These natural processes include the production of polygalacturonase (PG) (which hydrolyzes pectin) and cellulases by the fruit. In tomatoes, the softening of the fruit is inhibited by engineering an anti-sense PG producing gene into the plant, enabling the fruit to ripen on the plant before harvesting instead of harvesting them while still green. Such tomatoes have a longer shelf life while retaining the taste of regular tomatoes. The genetically engineered tomato known as Flavr Savr was approved by the FDA in 1994 as safe for human use. In anti-sense technology, a gene sequence is inserted in the opposite direction, so during transcription, mRNA complimentary to the normal RNA is produced. The anti-sense mRNA therefore binds to the normal inhibiting translation. The net result is that the gene is shut off, and in the particular case of PG, the fruit-softening enzyme is reduced to about 1% of the normal, thereby inhibiting softening of the fruit and possible microbial attack thereafter.

In climacteric fruits (i.e. fruits that are picked before they are ripe) such as tomatoes, avocados, and bananas, the initiation of ripening is associated with a burst in ethylene biosynthesis. After harvesting, unripe fruits such as bananas may be treated with ethylene to induce simultaneous ripening. Ethylene has been described as a gaseous plant hormone: extraneous ethylene and ethylene generated by the plant equally induce ripening. Ethylene is a gaseous effector with a very simple structure. In higher plants, ethylene is produced from L-methionine. A major step is the production of the non-protein amino acid 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid (ACC), catalyzed by the enzyme ACC synthase. It has numerous functions in higher plants. It stimulates the following activities: the release of dormancy, leaf and shoot abscission, leaf and flower senescence, flower opening, and fruit ripening.

Two biotechnological strategies have been pursued to control ethylene action on fruit ripening. One approach taken in tomato was designed to inhibit biosynthesis of ethylene within the plant by the use of antisense expression of ACC synthase. In a second approach, a mutated ethylene receptor from *Arabidopsis* was introduced into tomato and petunia. This resulted in delayed fruit ripening.

**(ii) Engineering sweetness into foods**

The taste of fresh tomatoes and lettuce is well known in sandwiches. Sweet taste has been engineered into tomatoes and lettuce by cloning into them the synthesized gene coding for monellin. Monellin is a protein which is 3,000 times sweeter than sucrose by weight; it is naturally obtained from the red berries of the West African plant *Dioscoreophyllum comminsii* Diels and has been expressed in yeast.

**(iii) Modification of starch for industrial purposes**

Starch consists of amylose in which the glucose molecules are configured in a straight chain in the  $\alpha$ -1,4 linkage, and the branched chain amylopectin which has  $\alpha$ -1,4 and  $\alpha$ -1,6 linkages. Starches from different plants have different percentages of amylose and amylopectin, but generally in the order of 20–30% amylose to 70 to 80% amylopectin. Starch is used for making several industrial products such as glue, gelling agent, or thickener. For some purposes, it may be desirable to have starch that has a preponderance of amylase. Antisense technology has been used to block the formation of the amylopectin component of starch giving rise to a product with only about 20% amylopectin.

**Table 7.9** Some sweet tasting proteins produced by plants

<i>S/No</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Plant</i>	<i>Sweetness ratio over sucrose (w/w)</i>
1	Thaumatococin	<i>Thaumatococcus danielli</i> Benth	3,000
2	Monellin	<i>Dioscoreophyllum cumminsii</i> Diels	3,000
3	Brazzein	<i>Pentadiplandra brazzeana</i>	2,000
4	Curculin	<i>Curculingo latifolia</i>	550

**Table 7.10** Modification of Canola oil for different purposes

<i>Seed product</i>	<i>Commercial use(s)</i>
40% Stearic	Margarine, cocoa butter
40% Lauric	Detergents
60% Lauric	Detergents
80% Oleic	Food, lubricants, inks
Petroselinic	Polymers, detergents
“Jojoba” wax	Cosmetics, lubricants
40% Myristate	Detergents, soaps, personal care items
90% Erucic	Polymers, cosmetics, inks, pharmaceuticals
Ricinoleic	Lubricants, plasticizers, cosmetics, pharmaceuticals

One further modification is the engineering of the enzymes needed to convert starch to high fructose syrup into a starch source. In the production of high fructose syrup, the starch is first converted to glucose by  $\alpha$ -amylase, and thereafter the resulting glucose is converted to high fructose syrup by glucose isomerase. Both operations are normally done sequentially. However, both enzymes have been linked together and engineered into potato and the potato starch converted into fructose in one operation with consequent saving in costs.

#### **(iv) Modifying flower pigmentation and delaying wilting and abscission in flowers**

The flower business is of the order of many billions of dollars annually. Most of the market centers around four flowers: roses, carnations, tulips, and chrysanthemums. The usual shortcomings have also affected this industry: the slow pace of the plant breeding, the uncertainty of the results of the efforts, and the limitation imposed by the paucity of the genes available in traditional plant breeding.

Genetic engineering has now been introduced and has helped to extend the range of the variety of flowers. A group of flavonoids, anthocyanins are the most common pigments in flowers. Anthocyanins are glycosides of phenolic compounds produced in plants, some being colorless, while many are responsible for the colors in plants. The aglycone (non-sugar) portions of anthocyanins are derived from the amino acid phenylalanine. The color which they bear is determined by the chemical nature of the side chain substituent. By blocking some of the genes in the pathway of anthocyanin synthesis using anti-sense technology or introducing totally new genes, it is possible to create flowers with new colors.

It is also known that flower wilting and abscission are controlled by ethylene in the same way as it does with fruits. When a mutated ethylene receptor from *Arabidopsis* was introduced into petunia, it led to delayed petal fading and in delayed flower abscission.

#### **(v) Modification of nutritional capabilities of crops**

Genetic engineering has enabled the introduction of new nutritional capabilities in crops in a much shorter time and in a range of qualities impossible with traditional breeding. The amino acid content of foods, the lipid composition, the amylose/amylopectin ratio of starch, the vitamin contents and even the mineral contents of foods have all been modified by genetic engineering.

#### **(a) Engineering Vitamin A into rice**

'Golden rice' has been prepared by engineering beta-carotene into it, a substance which the body can convert to Vitamin A to combat vitamin A deficiency (VAD), a condition which afflicts millions of people in developing countries, especially children and pregnant women. Severe Vitamin A deficiency (VAD) can cause partial or total blindness; less severe deficiencies weaken the immune system, increasing the risk of infections such as measles and malaria. Golden rice was created by transforming rice with three beta-carotene biosynthesis genes: *psy* (phytoene synthase) and *lyc* (lycopene cyclase), both from daffodil (*Narcissus pseudonarcissus*), and *crt1* from the soil bacterium *Erwinia uredovora*. The *psy*, *lyc*, and *crt1* genes were transformed into the nuclear genome and placed under the control of an endosperm specific promoter so that they are only expressed in the endosperm. The plant endogenous enzymes process the lycopene to beta-carotene in the endosperm giving the rice the distinctive yellow color which gave it the name 'golden'.

#### **(b) Engineering amino acids into legumes and cereals**

The seed storage compounds in cereals such as corn usually contain proteins deficient in the essential amino acids lysine and methionine. Storage proteins found in many legumes are sometimes deficient in these two essential amino acids or cysteine. Corn and many grain legumes are used as animal feeds and feeds made from them have to be supplemented with the deficient amino acids. Legumes such as lupine have been engineered to express sunflower seed albumin which is unusually rich in the sulfur-containing amino acids methionine and cysteine.

#### **(c) Modifying fats and oils for various purposes**

Plant oils are derived from soybean, oil palm, sunflower, rapeseed (canola) and to a lesser extent from the endosperm of corn. Most of the oils are used for margarine manufacture, as fats for baking, salads, and frying. The extent to which an oil is liquid at room temperature depends on the degree of unsaturation, i.e. the number of double bonds it has. For industrial purposes, oils are also used in cosmetics, in detergents, soaps, confectionaries, and as drying agents in paints and inks. Each use to which the oils are put requires a different property. For example, oils which contain conjugated double bonds (in contrast to those which contain double bonds separated by methyl groups require less oxygen for polymerization and hence dry more quickly in paints and inks. Genetic engineering has been used to modify oils for various uses. Thus canola oil from rapeseed has been genetically modified for use in various products.

Soybean oil has been genetically modified by DuPont to make it more suitable as an edible oil and also for certain industrial uses including the manufacture of inks, paints, varnishes, resins, plastics, and biodiesel.

Soybean oil is a complex mixture of five fatty acids (palmitic, stearic, oleic, linoleic, and linolenic acids) that have vastly differing melting points, oxidative stabilities, and chemical functionalities. The most notable example, developed by researchers at DuPont, is the transgenic production of soybean seeds with oleic acid content of approximately 80% of the total oil. Conventional soybean oil, by comparison, contains oleic acid at levels of 25% of the total oil. The high oleic acid trait was obtained by downregulating the expression of *FAD2* genes that encode the enzyme, which converts the monounsaturated oleic acid to the polyunsaturated linoleic acid. High-oleic oils with elevated oleic acid content are generally considered to be healthier oils than conventional soybean oil, which is an omega-6 or linoleic acid-rich oil. From an industrial perspective, the high content of oleic acid and low content of polyunsaturated fatty acids result in an oil that has high oxidative stability. In addition, soybean oil is naturally rich in the vitamin E antioxidant gamma-tocopherol which also contributes to the oxidative stability of high oleic acid soybean oil. High oxidative stability is a critical property for lubricants.

Genetic engineering can also be used to produce soybean oil with high levels of linoleic acid, a polyunsaturated fatty acid with low oxidative stability. Soybean seeds with linoleic acid content in excess of 50% of the total oil have been generated by increasing the expression of the *FAD3* gene which encodes the enzyme that converts linoleic acid to linoleic acid. The linoleic acid content of conventional soybean oil, in contrast, is approximately 10% of the total oil. The low oxidative stability associated with high linoleic acid oil is a desirable property for drying oils that are used in coating applications, such as paints, inks, and varnishes.

### 7.2.2.2.8.11 Transgenic animals and plants as biological fermenters (or bioreactors)

Transgenic animals and plants have been used to produce high-quality pharmaceutical substances or diagnostics. The procedure is known as 'pharming' from a parody of the word pharmaceutical; it is also known as 'molecular farming' or 'gene pharming' and the transgenic plants or animals used are sometimes referred to as animal or plant 'bioreactors' or 'fermenters'. Therapeutically active proteins already on the market are usually produced in bacteria, fungi, or animal cell cultures. However, microorganisms usually produce comparatively simple proteins; furthermore, microorganisms are not always able to correctly assemble and fold complex proteins. If the protein structure is very complicated, such microorganisms may produce defective clumps.

In pharming, transgenic animals are mostly used to make human proteins that have medicinal value. The protein encoded by the transgene is secreted into the animal's milk, eggs, blood, or even urine, and then collected and purified. Livestock such as cattle, sheep, goats, chickens, rabbits, and pigs have already been modified in this way to produce several useful proteins and drugs. Some human proteins that are used as drugs require biological modifications that only the cells of mammals, such as cows, goats, and sheep, can provide. For these drugs, production in transgenic animals is a good option. Using farm animals for drug production has many advantages: they are reproducible, have flexible production, and are easily maintained. Since the mammary gland and milk are not part of the main life support systems of the animal, there is not much risk of harm to the animal making the transgenic protein. To ensure that the protein coded in the transgene is secreted in the milk, the transgene is attached to a promoter which is only active in the mammary gland. Although the transgene is present in every cell of the animal, it is only active where

the milk is made. Some examples of the drugs currently being tested for production in animals are antithrombin III and tissue plasminogen activator used to treat blood clots, erythropoietin for anemia, blood clotting factors VIII and IX for hemophilia, and alpha-1-antitrypsin for emphysema and cystic fibrosis.

A good example of the need for processing a protein in an animal is seen in the silk of the golden spider, *Nephila clavipes*. The dragline form of spider silk is regarded as the strongest material known; it is five times stronger than steel. People have actually tried starting 'spider farms' to harvest silk, but the spiders are too aggressive and territorial to live close together. They also like to eat each other. Though the genes for dragline silk were isolated several years ago, attempts to produce it in bacterial and mammalian cell culture have failed. When the genes were put into a goat and expressed in the mammary glands, however, the animal produced silk proteins in its milk that could be spun into a fine thread with all the properties of spider-made silk. This can be used to make lighter, stronger bulletproof vests, thinner thread for surgery, and stitches or indestructible clothes.

The advantage of using biological fermenters have been put as follows: lower drug prices for consumers, production of drugs unavailable any other way, new value-added products for farmers, and inexpensive vaccines for the developing world.

#### **(a) Lower drug costs**

Expected savings on infrastructure and production costs lead companies producing 'pharm' and industrial crops to predict drug prices 10 to 100 times lower than current prices. The cost of treating a patient with Fabry's disease, currently as much as \$400,000 a year, for example, is predicted to drop to approximately \$40,000 annually. Similarly, it is claimed that the leaves from only 26 tobacco plants could make enough glucocerebrosidase, currently one of the most expensive drugs in the world, to treat a patient with Gaucher's disease for a whole year. Regarding plants, the biggest factor in reducing costs is the high yields of recombinant proteins attainable in transgenic plants. Production costs for corn systems are estimated at between \$10 and \$100 per gram for proteins that currently cost as much as \$1,000 per gram. Dollar figures based on large-scale tobacco production vary widely from less than \$10 per gram to \$1000 per gram. If realized, these projections would represent substantial savings over current costs.

#### **(b) Faster, more flexible manufacturing**

Abundantly available commodity like corn and the environment as production inputs could cut not only production costs but also capital investment and the time it takes to increase manufacturing infrastructure. Very rapid scale-up (or scale-down) of a production pipeline in response to the market or other factors and new drugs could theoretically become available sooner.

#### **(c) Drugs unavailable any other way**

Cheap production also means that drugs that could not be produced cheaply enough at high volume through conventional methods might become economically viable using genetically engineered crops. Monoclonal antibodies ('plantibodies') fall into this category. One company's idea for such a product is a monoclonal antibody against bacteria responsible for tooth decay which could be used as a dental prophylactic. A topical therapeutic for herpes as well as antibodies for the treatment of many other diseases are also under development.

**(d) New value-added agricultural products**

These crops producing pharmaceutical products could be a boom for farmers, as they could be economically viable alternatives to commodity production of corn or tobacco.

*Special advantages of plants as biological fermenters*

A sector of the biotechnology industry views plants (in comparison with animals) as preferable for protein production for the following reasons.

**(a) Plants are less controversial than animal production systems**

Plants do not normally transmit animal pathogens (that can cause diseases like mad cow). Products obtained by 'pharming' plants are promoted as safer than animal-sourced proteins. However, plants as bioreactors may also present their own risks of product contamination from mycotoxins, pesticides, herbicides, or endogenous plant secondary metabolites such as nicotine and glycoalkaloids.

Using plants as bioreactors also avoids any animal welfare and certain ethical concerns associated with cloning animals and using them as bioreactors.

**(b) Inexpensive, easily delivered vaccines**

Food plants engineered to contain pieces of disease agents can function as orally administered vaccines avoiding the need for injection and syringes. Currently, tomatoes and other vegetables are under development for that purpose. Although the vaccines would still have to be standardized for dose and delivered to patients one at a time, it is hoped that the lower production costs and the convenience of avoiding refrigeration would make the products attractive to the developing world.

**Table 7.11** Human proteins synthesized in animals

<i>Protein</i>	<i>Use</i>	<i>Animal(s)</i>
$\alpha$ -1-anti-protease inhibitor	$\alpha$ -1-antitrypsin deficiency	Goat
$\alpha$ -1-antitrypsin	Anti-inflammatory	Goat, sheep
Antithrombin III	Sepsis and disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)	Goat
Collagen		Cow
Factor VII and IX	Burns, bone fracture, incontinence	Sheep, pig
Fibrinogen	Hemophilia	Pig, sheep
Human fertility hormones	"Fibrin glue," burns, surgery localized chemotherapeutic drug deliver	Goat, cow
Human hemoglobin	Infertility, contraceptive vaccines	Pig
Human serum albumin	Blood replacement for transfusion	Goat, cow
Lactoferrin	Burns, shock, trauma, surgery	Cow
LAtPA	Bacterial gastrointestinal infection	Goat
Monoclonal antibodies	Venous stasis ulcers	Goat
Tissue plasminogen activator	Colon cancer	Goat
	Heart attacks, deep vein thrombosis, pulmonary embolism	

**Table 7.12** Some therapeutic agents produced in transgenic plants

<i>Protein</i>	<i>Plant(s)</i>	<i>Application</i>
Human protein C	Tobacco	Anticoagulant
Human hirudin variant 2	Tobacco, canola, Ethiopian mustard	Anticoagulant
Human granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor	Tobacco	Neutropenia
Human erythropoietin	Tobacco	Anemia
Human encephalins	Thale cress, canola	Antihyperanalgesic by opiate activity
Human epidermal growth factor	Tobacco	Wound repair/control of cell proliferation
Human $\alpha$ -interferon	Rice, turnip	Hepatitis C and B
Human serum albumin	Potato, tobacco	Liver cirrhosis
Human hemoglobin	Tobacco	Blood substitute
Human homotrimetic collagen I	Tobacco	Collagen synthesis
Human $\alpha$ -1-antitrypsin	Rice	Cystic fibrosis, liver disease, hemorrhage
Human growth hormone	Tobacco	Dwarfism, wound healing
Human aprotinin	Corn	Trypsin inhibitor for transplantation surgery
Angiotension-1-converting enzyme	Tobacco, tomato	Hypertension
$\alpha$ -Tricosanthin	Tobacco	HIV therapy
Glucocerebrosidase	Tobacco	Gaucher disease

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Summarize sources of microorganisms for industrial microbiology and biotechnology applications.
2. Your scientific team isolated a novel *Bacillus* species that produces heat stable bacteriocin, but its antimicrobial activity is not high. Briefly describe how you would improve production of more active bacteriocin from the *Bacillus* species.
3. List 10 genetically engineered healthcare products.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Bleecker, A.B., Kende, H. 2000. Ethylene: A Gaseous Signal Molecule in Plants. *Annual Review of Cell Devision and Biology*. 16, 1–18.
- Deacon, J. 2006. *Fungal Biology*. 4th Blackwell. Malden USA.
- Gelvin, S.B. 2003. Agrobacterium-Mediated Plant Transformation: the Biology behind the “Gene-Jockeying” Tool *Microbiology and Molecular Biology Reviews*. 67, 16–37.
- Glick, B.R., Pasternak, J.J. 2003. *Molecular Biotechnology: Principles and Applications of Recombinant DNA*. ASM Press Washington DC, USA.

- Glover, S.W., Hopwood, D.A. (eds.) 1981. Genetics as a Tool in Microbiology. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.
- Keiji, K.Y., Miura, Y., Sone, H., Kobayashi, K., Hiroshi Iijima, H., Parek, S. 2004. Strain Improvement: High-level Expression of a Sweet Protein, Monellin, in the Food Yeast *Candida utilis*.
- Koffas, M., Roberge, C., Lee, K., Stephanopoulos, G. 1999. Metabolic Engineering. Annual Reviews of Biomedical Engineering. 1, 535–557.
- Kondo, K., Miura, Y., Sone, H., Kobayashi, K., Iijima, H. 1997. High-level Expression of a Sweet Protein, Monellin, in the Food Yeast *Candida utilis*. Nature Biotechnology. 15, 453–457.
- Labeda, D.P., Shearer, M.C. 1990. Isolation of Actinomycetes for Biotechnological Applications. In: Isolation of Biotechnological Organisms from Nature. D.P. Labeda (ed.) McGraw-Hill, New York, USA. pp. 1–20.
- Murooka, Y., Imanaka, T. (eds.) 1994. Recombinant Microbes for Industrial and Agricultural Applications. Marcel Dekker, New York, USA.
- Parek, S. 2004. Strain Improvement. In: The motherland. The Desk Encyclopedia of Microbiology. M. Schaechter (ed.) Elsevier Amsterdam: pp. 960–973.
- Steele, D.B., Stowers, M.D. 1991. Techniques for the Selection of Industrially Important Microorganisms. Annual Review of Microbiology. 45, 89–106.
- Velandez, W., Lubon, H., Drohan, W. 1997. Transgenic Livestock as Drug Factories. Scientific American. 1: 55.
- Wei, L.N. 1997. Transgenic Animals as New Approaches in Pharmacological Studies. Annual Reviews of Pharmacology and Toxicology. 37, 119–141.

---

## Culture Collections and Methods of Preservation of the Gene Pool of Industrial Organisms

---

### 8.1 THE IMPORTANCE OF CULTURE COLLECTIONS IN INDUSTRIAL MICROBIOLOGY AND BIOTECHNOLOGY

The central importance of a microorganism in an industrial microbiological establishment may sometimes be underestimated. While a raw material may be fairly easily substituted, the use of an organism different from one already in existence may involve extensive experimentation and modification of established processes if the usual products are to be obtained. Therefore, the gene pool of organisms with desirable properties must be preserved and be constantly available.

The gene pool is the group of genes which collectively define a species and create the distinctions between one species and another. Thus, while genes which give rise to the variations among humans exist in the gene pool of humans resulting in people of different shapes and sizes, humans are clearly distinct from other animals which have a completely different gene pool. It should also be mentioned that even within the gene pool, there are groups of genes which define *strains* within the species. In industrial microbiology, the *strain* is often more valuable than the species as the ability to produce the unique characteristics of a product resides in the strain.

Industrial microbiological establishments usually keep a collection of the microorganisms which possess the gene pools for producing the goods manufactured by the establishment. This stock of organisms is known as a *culture collection* and ensures a regular supply of organisms to be used in the manufacturing process. Organisms in a culture collection are maintained in a low metabolic state in which replication of the cells is kept to a minimum or even entirely restricted. Industrially important microorganisms are often mutants, and the condition of low metabolism in which they are kept, limits their tendency to revert to their low-yielding ancestors.

In some circumstances, organisms are maintained for comparatively short periods of days in an active state in which they are immediately ready for use in fermentations; such organisms are called *working stock*. In many breweries, for example, the producing yeasts are reused sometimes for up to eight runs or more before being discarded. In the interval between inoculations, such yeasts are regarded by some workers as working stocks. It must be kept in mind that working stocks are exposed to potential contamination and/or mutation, two serious problems inherent in industrial fermentations.

## **8.2 TYPES OF CULTURE COLLECTIONS**

Culture collections, in general, are an important part of the science of microbiology but they are especially important in industrial microbiology. Culture collections maintained by industrial establishments are usually specialized and store mainly those used in that particular organization.

There are various kinds of culture collections. Some national culture collections handle a wide variety of organisms. The best known in this category is the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC). Other collections are specialized and may handle only pathogenic microorganisms, such as the National Collection of Type Cultures (NCTC) in Colindale, London, UK, or industrial microorganisms, such as National Collection of Industrial Bacteria (NCIB) in Aberdeen, Scotland. Still others almost exclusively handle one type of organism such as Center vor Braunsveitzer (CBS) in Holland which handles fungi exclusively. Many universities all over the world have culture collections which reflect their range of microbiological interests.

Culture Collections around the world are linked by the World Federation of Culture Collections (WFCC). The WFCC is an affiliate of the International Union of Microbiological Societies (IUMS), the organization which links national microbiological societies worldwide. The WFCC is concerned with the collection, authentication, maintenance, and distribution of cultures of microorganisms and cultured cells. Its aim is to promote and support the establishment of culture collections and related services, to provide liaison, to set up an information network between the collections and their users, and work to ensure the long term perpetuation of important collections. The WFCC pioneered the development of an international database on culture resources worldwide. The result is the WFCC World Data Center for Microorganisms (WDCM).

Culture Collections are organized on a regional and international basis for the exchange of cultures and ideas and include the Asian Network on Microbial Research (ANMR), BCCM (Belgium Co-ordinated Collections of Microorganisms), ECCO (European Culture Collection Organization), JFCC (Japanese Federation of Culture Collections), MICRO-NET (Microbial Information Network of China), MSDN (Microbial Strain Data Network, UK), UKNCC (United Kingdom National Culture Collection), and the USFCC (United States Federation of Culture Collections, USA). The WFCC maintains a World Data Center for Microorganisms (WDCM) at the National Institute of Genetics (NIG) in Japan and has records on about 500 culture collections from 60 countries. A list of culture collections around the world will be found in the Kirsop and Doyle Manual, 1991.

Culture collections may be specialized and in-house such as those in industrial establishments. Others are public and have the function of acquiring, identifying, preserving and distributing microorganisms and for a fee will supply cultures for in

teaching, research, or to industry. Such culture collections receive cultures from all over the world and thus serve the overall purpose of maintaining worldwide microbiological biodiversity.

In addition to making available organisms for industrial use, the major culture collections serve the important function of acting as depositories for microorganisms mentioned in the patenting of microbiological processes.

### 8.3 HANDLING CULTURE COLLECTIONS

Cultures are expensive to purchase. However, they are usually supplied at a discount when used for teaching. Universities can however build their own cultures collections by preserving cultures arising from their research.

An industrial process may be initiated with organisms obtained through the Patent Office in connection with a patent. Usually, only one vial of such an organism is available. Once growth has been obtained from that vial, the organism should be multiplied and stored in one or more of the several manners described below for the preservation of primary stock organisms in a Culture Collection. No matter what the source of a valuable organism, it is important that several replicates are stored immediately due to the risk of contamination while tests are carried out to ascertain its potential for fulfilling the expected activity. If the tests show that the expected antibiotic or other desired metabolite is being produced in the expected quantity, then stored organisms are retained. The stocks of those organisms which proved negative at first sampling should not be discarded in a hurry because further examination may show that poor productivity was due to factors extrinsic to the organism such as an inadequate medium. In order to identify the organisms, they must be properly labeled, and accurate records must be kept of the handling of the organism. Date of transfer, the medium and the temperature of growth, etc. must all be carefully recorded to afford a means of assessing the effect of the preservation method.

### 8.4 METHODS OF PRESERVING MICROORGANISMS

Several methods have been devised for preserving microbial cultures, however, no one method is suitable for preserving all organisms. The method most suited to any particular organism must be determined by experimentation, unless the information is already available.

Methods employed in the preservation of microorganisms all involve some limitation on the rate of metabolism of the organism. A low rate of spontaneous mutation exists during the growth of microorganisms, about once in every  $10^9$  division. Lowering the metabolic rate of the organism will further reduce the chances of occurrence of mutations. Preservation methods will be discussed under the following three headings, although it should be understood that in practice the methods combine one or more of the following three principles. The principles involved in preserving microorganisms are:

- (a) reduction in the temperature of growth of the organism;
- (b) dehydration or desiccation of the medium of growth;
- (c) limitation of nutrients available to the organism.

All three principles lead to a reduction in the organism's metabolism.

### 8.4.1 Microbial Preservation Methods Based on the Reduction of the Growth Temperature

#### 8.4.1.1 Preservation on agar with ordinary refrigeration (4–10°C)

Organisms growing on suitable agar at normal growth temperatures attain the stationary phase and begin to die because of the release of toxic materials and the exhaustion of the nutrients. Agar-grown organisms are therefore refrigerated as soon as adequate growth is attained as to preserve them.

##### *a) Aerobic organisms*

*Agar slants:* Aerobic organisms may be grown on agar slants and refrigerated at 4–10°C as soon as they have shown growth.

*Petri dishes:* Aerobic organisms may also be stored on Petri dishes. The plates may be sealed with tape to prevent the plates from drying out on account of evaporation. Electrical tapes of different colors may be used to identify special attributes or groups among the cultures.

*b) Anaerobic organisms:* Anaerobic organisms may be stored on *agar slabs* which are then sealed with sterile molten petroleum jelly.

The main advantage of agar storage methods is that they are inexpensive because they do not require any specialized equipment.

The disadvantages are:

- (a) The organisms must be sub-cultured at intervals which have to be worked for each organism, medium used, laboratory practice, etc. This is due to the temperature of the refrigeration not being low enough to limit growth completely.
- (b) The consequence of regular sub-culturing is the possibility that contaminations and or mutations may occur.
- (c) Petri dishes occupy a lot of space in the refrigerator when compared with agar slants. But even agar slants are too bulky in comparison with the small vials in which lyophilized (freeze-dried) cultures are stored. Since plates occupy a lot of space, test tubes are usually preferred for storage in refrigerators.
- (d) The process of sub-culturing is tedious apart from the possibility of contamination and mutation.
- (e) When petroleum jelly is used as a seal, the arrangement can be messy.

##### *Oil overlay*

With the method of oil overlay whose function is to limit oxygen diffusion, most bacteria, especially anaerobes and facultatives, and fungi survive for at least one year, some of them up to three years.

##### *Medium for storing organisms on agar*

The nature of the agar medium on which organisms are stored is of importance. A medium prepared from natural components rather than a chemically defined material is preferable, since a defined medium may select for organisms specifically capable of growing on it due to the lack of some constituents present in the natural components. A stock culture medium should also not be unduly rich in carbohydrates such as glucose which will lead to early

production of acid and hence possible early microbial death. Where glucose is used, such as for lactic bacteria, the medium should contain a buffer like calcium carbonate.

#### *Popularity of agar storage methods*

In spite of its shortcomings, storage on agar is very popular and is the most widely used after lyophilization.

#### **8.4.1.2 Preservation in deep freezers at about $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ , or between $-60^{\circ}\text{C}$ and $-80^{\circ}\text{C}$**

The regular home freezer attains a temperature of about  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Laboratory deep freezers used for molecular biology work range in temperature between  $-60^{\circ}\text{C}$  and  $-80^{\circ}\text{C}$ . It is possible to store microorganisms in either type of deep freezers in the form of agar plugs or on sterile glass beads coated with the organism to be stored.

#### *Preservation on glass beads*

The bacteria to be preserved are placed in broth containing cryoprotective compounds such as glycerol, raffinose, lactose, or trehalose. Sterile glass beads are placed in the glass vials containing the bacterial cultures. The vials are gently shaken before being put in the deep freezers.

To initiate a culture a glass bead is picked up with a pair of sterile forceps and dropped into warm broth. Growth develops from the organisms coating the bead. The growth is introduced onto an agar plate containing the appropriate medium and checked for purity before use.

#### *Storage of agar cores with microbial growth*

Bacteria, but especially molds, yeasts, and actinomycetes may be stored as agar plugs made from plates of the confluent growths of bacteria or hyphae of filamentous organisms. It consists of placing agar plugs of confluent growth of bacteria and yeasts and hyphae of molds or actinomycetes in glass vials containing a suitable cryoprotectant and freezing the vials in deep freezers as above. To initiate growth, a plug is placed in warm broth and plated out.

Freezing is rapidly gaining acceptance for preserving organisms because of its dual use for working and primary stock maintenance as well as its storage effectiveness for up to three years. It is useful for a wide range of organisms, and survival rates have been shown to be as good as freeze-drying in many organisms.

#### *Advantages of the above freezing methods*

- (a) The methods are simple to use and require a minimum of equipment;
- (b) they save space as many hundreds of cultures can be stored in a small space;
- (c) beads thaw rapidly, and hence the method saves time;
- (d) different bead colors can represent different bacteria making them easy to recognize;
- (e) the methods can be adapted for both aerobic and anaerobic organisms;
- (f) the methods are suitable for situations or countries where power outages occur, as the freezer can remain cold for some time during power failures.

### 8.4.1.3 Storage in low temperature liquid or vapor phase nitrogen (-156°C to -196°C)

The liquid or vapor phase of nitrogen at -156°C to -196°C is widely used for preserving microorganisms and cultured cells. Fungi, bacteriophages, viruses, algae, protozoa, bacteria, yeasts, animal and plant cells, and tissue cultures have all been successfully preserved in it. It is a major method for organisms which will not survive freeze-drying. The period of survival and the number of surviving organisms are higher for most organisms than when freeze drying is used. In many laboratories, it is the choice method for storing very valuable organisms. Some organisms are prone to losing numbers with this method, but the loss is reduced with the use of cryoprotectants. Some of the most commonly used cryoprotectants are (vol/vol) 10–20% glycerol and 5–10% dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) in broth culture of the organism in vials which are then frozen in liquid nitrogen. Vials for storing organisms in low temperature nitrogen may be made of glass or fashioned from ordinary polypropylene (plastic) drinking straws. Straws (4 mm diameter) are usually cut into pieces 40 mm long and made into ampoules by sealing the ends with heat.

Freezing at -156°C to -196°C has the following disadvantages:

- (a) As liquid nitrogen evaporates, it has to be replenished regularly; if not replenished, the cultures may be lost.
- (b) A risk of explosion exists when cultures are frozen in liquid nitrogen in improperly sealed glass vials which permit entry of liquid nitrogen into the vials. Such vials may explode when warmed to thaw them. Discarding poorly sealed glass vials removes such risks; vapor phase storage removes such dangers.
- (c) Although it is not labor intensive, the equipment is expensive.
- (d) Finally, it is not a convenient method for transporting organisms.

### 8.4.2 Microbial Preservation Methods Based on Dehydration

Just as reduction in temperature limits the metabolism of the organism, dehydration removes water, a necessity for the metabolism of the organism. Several methods may be used to achieve desiccation as a basis for preserving microorganisms.

#### 8.4.2.1 Drying on sterile silica gel

Many organisms including actinomycetes and fungi are dried by this method. Screw-cap tubes half-filled with silica gel are sterilized in an oven. On cooling, a skim-milk suspension of spores and the cells of the fungus or actinomycetes is placed over the silica gel and cooled. They are dried at 25°C, cooled, and stored in closed containers containing desiccants.

#### 8.4.2.2 Preservation on sterile filter paper

Spore-forming microorganisms such as fungi, actinomycetes, or *Bacillus* spp. may be preserved on sterile filter paper by placing drops of broth containing the spores on sterile filter paper in a Petri dish and drying in a low temperature oven or in a dessicator. Alternatively, sterile filter paper may be soaked in the broth culture of the organism to be

dried, placed in a tube, which is then evacuated and sealed. After drying, the filter paper may be placed in sterile screw caps bottles and stored either at room temperature or in the refrigerator.

#### 8.4.2.3 Preservation in sterile dry soil

The most commonly used form of storage in a dry state is the use of *dry sterile soil*. In this method, dry soil is sterilized by autoclaving. It is then inoculated with a broth or agar culture of the organism. The soil is protected from contamination and allowed to dry over a period of time. Subsequently, it may be refrigerated. The method has been widely and successfully used to store sporulating organisms, especially clostridia and fungi. It has also been used for bacilli and *Azotobacter* sp. Some non-sporulating bacteria which do not survive well under lyophilization may be stored in soil.

#### 8.4.2.4 Freeze-drying (drying with freezing): lyophilization

*Freeze-drying or lyophilization* is widely employed, and a lot of literature is available for this method. The principle of the method is that the organism is first frozen. Subsequently, water is removed by direct vaporization of the ice with the introduction of a vacuum. As the suspension is not in the liquid state, distortion of shape and consequent cell damage is minimized. At the end of the drying, the ampoule containing the organism may be stored under refrigeration, although survival for many years has also been obtained by storage at room temperature. The initial freezing (before the drying) may be achieved in a number of ways including the use of freezing mixtures of CO<sub>2</sub> and alcohol, salt and ice, or in a chamber of a freeze-drying machine in which the evaporation of water vapor from the material causes enough cooling to freeze the material. A desiccant, usually phosphorus pentoxide, is used to absorb water vapor during the freezing.

The suspending medium must be carefully chosen because of differences in the cryoprotection properties of different substrates. Horse blood is usually used; others which have been successfully used are inositol, various disaccharides, and polyalcohols. Unless the information already exists, the best suspending medium can only be decided by experimentation. The ampoule is usually evacuated after freeze-drying. It may however be filled with nitrogen, CO<sub>2</sub>, or argon but the survival of organisms with them is lower than in vacuum or with nitrogen.

Lyophilization is preferred for the preservation of most organisms because of its success with a large number of organisms, the relatively inexpensive equipment, the scant demand on space made by ampoules, and above all, the longevity (up to 10 years or more in some organisms) of most organisms stored by lyophilization.

#### 8.4.2.5 L-drying (liquid-drying, drying without refrigeration)

This is considered a modification of drying methods, since unlike freeze-drying, the organisms are not frozen but dried from the liquid state. It has been used to preserve non-spore formers sensitive to freeze-drying, such as *Cytophaga*, *Spirillum*, and *Vibrio*. Liquid drying has been effectively used to preserve organisms such as anaerobes that are damaged by freezing.

Small vials made of glass are filled with a mixture of skim milk, medical grade activated charcoal, and myo-inositol, autoclaved, and thereafter frozen at about -40°C for a few

hours. The vials are then freeze-dried which leads to a disc of freeze-dried carrier material in the vials. The broth of the organism to be dried is placed on the disc and the material is subjected to a vacuum in the liquid, unfrozen state at 20°C.

### 8.4.3 Microbial Preservation Methods Based on the Reduction of Nutrients

#### 8.4.3.1 Storage in distilled water

Many organisms die in distilled water because of water absorption by osmosis. However, some have been known to survive for long periods in sterile distilled water. Usually, such storage is accompanied by refrigeration; some organisms are however harmed by refrigeration. Among organisms which have been stored for long periods with this method are *Pseudomonas solanaceanum*, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, and *Sarcina lutea*. The attractiveness of this method is its simplicity and inexpensiveness. To ensure that no organism is lost and since so few organisms seem to be storable in this manner, it should not be adopted as the sole method for storing a newly acquired or isolated organism until it has been shown to be suitable.

### 8.4.4 Determination of the Most Appropriate Method of Preserving an Organism

No one method can be said to be suitable for the preservation of every organism. The appropriate method must be determined for each organism, unless prior literature information exists. Even then, such information must be used with caution, because a minor change in the medium composition may affect the outcome of the effort. The criterion to be used for determining the success of a method may not always necessarily be growth.

The preservation method must retain the characteristics which are desirable in the organism and this is crucial for industrial microorganisms. For example, the characteristic brick-red color of *Sarcina lutea* was lost in some preservation methods, while the production of rennet by *Rhizomucor* sp. and of antibiotics by some actinomycetes were respectively affected by the method used for their preservation.

### END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. List 5 methods of preservation of industrial microorganisms.
2. A yogurt manufacturing company is seeking your advice for one method of short term preservation of cultures and one method for long term preservation of cultures. Give your recommendations to this company.
3. List 5 culture collections. Include culture collections of at least three different countries.

### SUGGESTED READINGS

- Anony. 1980. National Work Conference on Microbial Collections of Major Importance to Agriculture. American Phytopathological Society St. Paul, Minnesota, USA.
- Calam, C.T. 1980. The Long-term Storage of Microbial Cultures in Industrial Practice. *In*: The Stability of Industrial Organisms. B.E. Kirsop (ed.) Commonwealth Mycological Institute, Kew, England.

- Demain, A.L., Solomon, N.A. (eds.) 1985. *Biology of Industrial Microorganisms*. The Benjamin/Cummings Publishing Co., California, USA.
- Kirsop, B.E., Doyle, A. (eds.) 1991. *Maintenance of Microorganisms and Cultured Cells*. Academic Press London and San Diego.
- Kurtzman, C.P. 1992. Culture Collections: Methods and Distribution. *In: Encyclopedia of Microbiology*. J. Lederberg (ed.) Vol. 1 Academic Press, San Diego, USA. pp. 621–625.
- Lamana, C. 1976. The Role of Culture Collections in the Era of Molecular Biology. *In: The Role of Culture Collections in the Era of Molecular Biology*. Rita Colwell (ed.) American Society for Microbiology Washington, DC, USA.
- Monaghan, R.L., Gagliardi, M.M., Streicher, S.L. 1999. Culture Collections and Inoculum Development. *In: Manual of Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology*. A.L. Demain, J.E. Davies (eds.) ASM Press, 2nd ed. Washington, DC, USA. pp. 29–48.
- Newman, Y.M., Ring, S.G., Colago, C. 1993. *In: Biotechnology and Genetic Engineering Reviews*. M.P. Tombs (ed.) Vol. 11. Intercept Press, Andover USA. pp. 263–294.
- Stevenson, R.E., Hatt, H. 1992. Culture Collections, Functions. *In: Encyclopedia of Microbiology*. J. Lederberg (ed.) Vol. 1 Academic Press, San Diego, USA. pp. 615–625.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# **Section** C

## Basic Operations In Industrial Fermentations



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# CHAPTER 9

---

## Fermentors and Operation of Fermentation Equipment

---

### 9.1 DEFINITION OF A FERMENTOR

A fermentor (or fermenter) is a vessel for the growth of microorganisms which, while not permitting contamination, enables the provision of conditions necessary for the maximal production of the desired products. In other words, the fermentor ideally should make it possible to provide the organism growing with optimal pH, temperature, oxygen, and other environmental conditions. In the chemical industry, vessels in which reactions take place are called reactors. Fermentors are therefore also known as bioreactors.

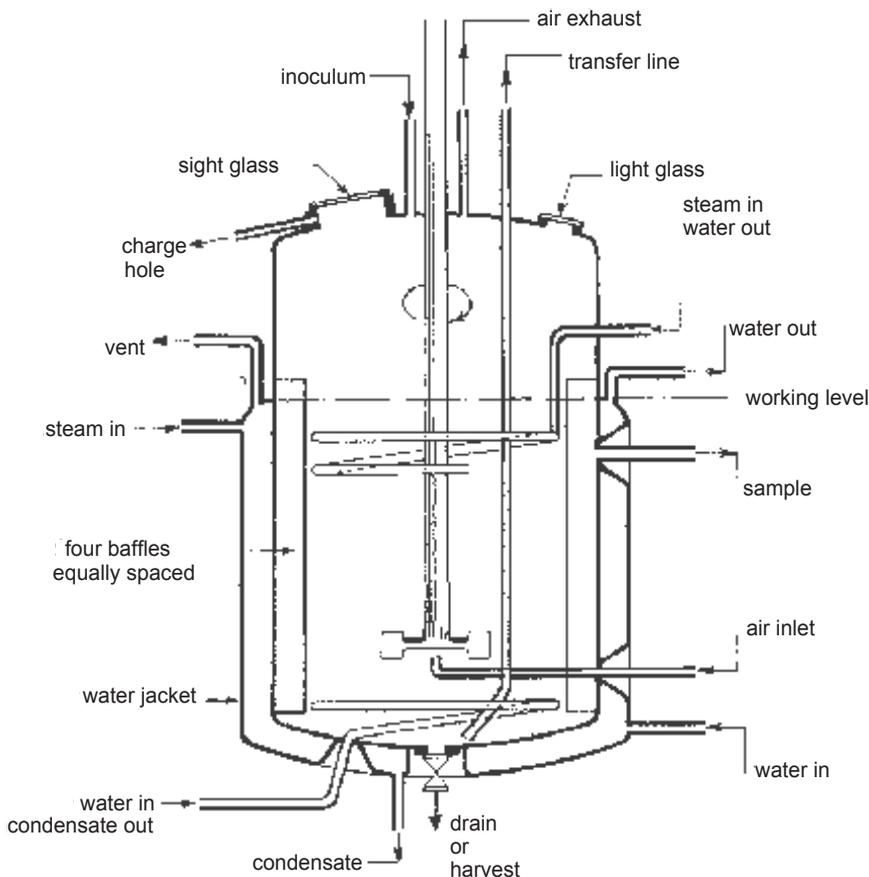
Fermentations may be liquid, also known as submerged, or solid state, also known as surface. Most fermentations used in the industry are submerged processes, because the fermentors used in submerged fermentation save space and are more amenable to engineering control and design.

Depending on the purpose, fermentors can be as small as 1 liter or up to about 20 liters in laboratory-scale fermentors and range from 100,000 liters to 500,000 liters (approximately 25,000–125,000 gallons) for factory or production fermentors. Between these extremes, pilot fermentors are found. It should be noted that while fermentor size is measured by the total volume, only about 75% of the volume is usually utilized for actual fermentation, the rest being left for foam and exhaust gases. Several types of fermentors are known which may be grouped in several ways: shape or configuration, whether aerated or anaerobic, and whether they are batch or continuous. The most commonly used type of fermentor is the Aerated Stirred Tank Batch Fermentor. Unless specifically qualified, the word fermentor usually refers to the Aerated Stirred Tank Batch Fermentor.

The details of the construction and design of a fermentor are the domain of the engineer, and only the facts necessary for the biotechnologist or microbiologist to understand to utilize the fermentor efficiently will be discussed.

### 9.2 THE AERATED STIRRED-TANK BATCH FERMENTOR

A typical fermentor of this type (Fig. 9.1) is an upright closed cylindrical tank fitted with four or more baffles attached to the side of the wall, a water jacket or coil for heating



**Fig. 9.1** Structure of a Typical Fermentor (Stirred Tank Batch Bioreactor)

and/or cooling, a device for forcible aeration (known as a sparger), a mechanical agitator usually carrying a pair or more impellers, means for introducing organisms and nutrients and for taking samples, and outlets for exhaust gases. Modern fermentors are highly automated and usually have means of continuously monitoring, controlling or recording pH, oxidation-reduction potential, dissolved oxygen, effluent  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$ , and chemical components of the fermentation broth (or fermentation *beer* as the broth is called before it is extracted). Nevertheless, the fermentor need not have all these gadgets, and many automated activities can also be operated manually.

It is important that the type of fermentation required be clearly understood when a fermentor is being planned; a fermentor is expensive, and once installed, it may cause unnecessary expenses if drastic modifications need to be made. Furthermore because of its expense, a fermentor will be expected to be in use for a reasonably long period of time to enable the organization to recover the investment made. It may therefore be wise for small establishments to set up general-purpose fermentors such as the one that has been described above, with provision for, if not for actual installation of, as many components as are likely to be needed in the future.

### 9.2.1 Construction Materials for Fermentors

A simple batch fermentor may consist of no more than an open tank made of wood, concrete, or carbon-steel, if contamination is not a serious problem and provided that no need exists for strict pH and temperature control, or that the temperature is controlled in the building. Serious contamination is restricted because of the acidity of the medium usually used. However, for fermentations with strict sterility requirements and closely controlled environmental needs such as in the antibiotic industry, a material which can withstand regular steam sterilization is necessary. Furthermore, the hydrostatic pressure of a large volume of liquid can be enormous. Stainless steel is therefore normally used for pilot and production fermentors. Laboratory scale fermentors are usually made of Pyrex glass to enable autoclaving.

Where a highly corrosive material is fermented, e.g. citric acid, the fermentor should definitely be made of stainless steel. It is inevitable that small quantities of the material of which the fermentor is made will dissolve in the medium. Some materials, e.g. iron, may inhibit the productivity of organisms in certain fermentations. It is for this reason that carbon-steel fermentors are often lined with glass, or 'plastic' materials, e.g. a phenolic-epoxy coating. The material used for lining depends on the expected abrasion on the wall of the fermentor by medium constituents. Glass lining is employed only for small fermentors due to the high cost and the possibility of breakage.

In order to avoid contamination, fermentor vessels of all types should be of welded construction throughout. The welds should be free of pinpoints where organisms can develop in small bits of old media and shielded from sterilization. The joint inlets and outlets of the fermentor should be designed with smooth surfaces and eliminate pockets difficult to sterilize. If gaskets are used at joints, these should be non-porous.

### 9.2.2 Aeration and Agitation in a Fermentor

Oxygen is essential for growth and yield of metabolites in aerobic organisms. In those fermentations where aerobic organisms are used, the supply of oxygen is therefore critical. For the oxygen to be absorbed by microorganisms, it must be dissolved in aqueous solution along with the nutrients. Unfortunately, not only does air ordinarily contain only 20% of oxygen, but oxygen is also highly insoluble in water. At 20°C, for example, water holds only about nine parts per million of oxygen. Furthermore, the higher the temperature, the less oxygen (and other gases) water can hold. For some highly aerobic fermentations such as the growth of yeast or production of citric acid, oxygen is so critical that, even if the broth were entirely saturated with oxygen, it would contain only a 15 second supply for the organisms. In other fermentations, the aeration requirement needs not be as intense but must be presented to the organisms at a controlled level.

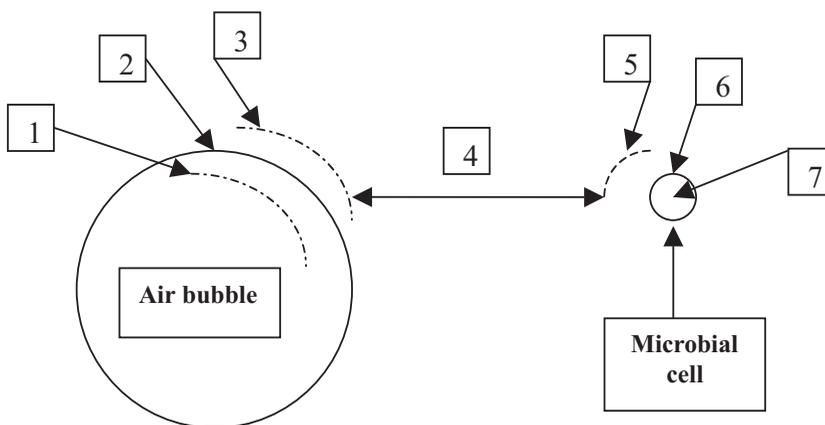
The air used in most fermentation is sterile. If sterility is not necessary, such as in yeast fermentation, the air is merely scrubbed by passing it through glycerol. The air used in fermentation, is forced under pressure into the bottom of the fermentor just below the lowest impeller. The air enters through a sparger which is a pipe with fine holes. The smaller the holes, the finer the bubbles and the more effective is the supply of oxygen to the microorganisms. However, if the holes are too small, then a greater pressure will be required to force the air through with consequently higher consumption of energy and therefore costs. A balance must be struck between wide holes which may become plugged and holes small enough to release fine bubbles. Usually, holes of about 0.25–3.0

cm in diameter meet these requirements. Since the size of the holes is fixed, the amount of oxygen fed into the medium (usually measured in feet/sec) can be controlled by altering the pressure of the incoming air.

For many fermentation, especially where filamentous fungi and actinomycetes are involved or the broth is viscous, it is necessary to agitate the medium with the aid of impellers.

Agitators with their attached impellers serve a number of purposes. They help to distribute the incoming air as fine bubbles, mix organisms uniformly, create local turbulence as well as ensure a uniform temperature. The optimal number and arrangement of impellers have to be worked out by engineers using information from pilot plant experiments. The viscosity of the broth affects the effectiveness of the impellers. Since the viscosity of the broth may change as fermentation proceeds, a satisfactory compromise of size, shape, and number of impellers must be worked out. In unbaffled fermentors, a vortex or inverted pyramid of liquid forms, and liquid is thrown up on the side of the fermentor. The result is that heavier particles precipitate and thorough agitation is not achieved. The insertion of baffles helps eliminate the formation of a vortex and interferes with the upward throw of liquid against the fermentor walls. A similar effect can be observed by stirring a cup of coffee or water rapidly with the handle of a spoon and inserting the handle of the spoon thereafter along the side of the cup. If four spoon ends were stuck simultaneously in the cup, the effective mixing of the liquid can be easily visualized. The use of baffles thus ensures not only a more thorough mixing of the nutrient and air but also the breakup of the air bubbles. In order to understand the importance of fine bubbles, it is important to appreciate the several barriers through which oxygen must theoretically pass before reaching the organism in the two film gas model which is commonly used (Fig. 9.2):

- (i) Gas-film resistance between gas and interface. In this model, in the transfer of oxygen from a gas bubble to a liquid, a stagnant gas film and a stagnant liquid film exist on both sides of a gas-liquid inter-phase. The resistance of these films to the transfer of solutes depends to a large extent on the degree of agitation. In the case of oxygen, the only significant resistance is that of the liquid film which is broken by agitation. On the other hand, cell-liquid resistance becomes important when clumping of organisms occurs.



**Fig. 9.2** The Various Barriers through which Gas Passes to Reach the Microorganism in a Liquid

- (ii) Gas-liquid interfacial resistance;
- (iii) Liquid-film resistance between interface and the bulk of the liquid;
- (iv) Liquid-path resistance characterized by oxygen gradient in bulk;
- (v) Liquid-film resistance around cell or cell-clump;
- (vi) Intercellular or intra-clump resistance;
- (vii) Resistance to reaction ('absorption') of oxygen with the cell respiratory enzymes.

In terms of the above theory, the function of agitation of the fermentation may be described as follows:

- (i) Gas dispersion or the creation of a large air-liquid interfacial area;
- (ii) Reduction in the thickness and hence resistance to oxygen diffusion of the liquid film which surrounds each bubble;
- (iii) Bulk mixture of the culture;
- (iv) Control of clump size.

It is clear from the figure that the finer the bubbles, the greater will be the total surface area of oxygen presented to the organism by a given volume of air. Provisions for agitation and aeration are thus very important components of an Aerated Stirred Tank Fermentor. In large-scale operations, where aeration is achieved by swarms of tiny air bubbles floating through thousands of liters of medium, the cost of aeration and agitation could be high, hence aeration and agitation have been and still are the subject of intense study by chemical engineers. Based on these studies, the size and shape of the impellers in comparison to the rest of the fermentor (i.e. tank geometry), the airflow, the power requirement, etc. are calculated.

The exhaust air from the fermentor is passed through a filter which is sterilized with steam from time to time. This is especially necessary if the organism being grown is pathogenic (e.g. for vaccines). The exhaust pipe is positioned away from the incoming sterile air to avoid any chance of contamination. Furthermore, the agitation shaft which is impelled by a motor is fitted with a special seal at the point where it enters the fermentor in order to avoid contamination.

Sterile air is needed in some aerobic fermentations and it is produced in several ways including irradiation, electrostatic absorption of particles, and the use of heat resulting from the compression of the gas. However, the most commonly used method is the passage of the air through filters either made of materials such as cellulose nitrate or more commonly, of cotton and sometimes other materials. Besides supplying oxygen to the organisms, the provision of air under pressure helps remove inhibitory volatile metabolites and contributes to the reduction of contaminants by providing a positive air pressure.

### 9.2.3 Temperature Control in a Fermentor

Many fermentation processes release heat, which must be removed so as to maintain the optimum temperature for the productivity of the organism. In small laboratory fermentors, temperature control may be achieved by immersing the tank in a water bath; in medium-sized ones, control may be achieved by a jacket of cold water circulating outside the tank or merely by bathing the unjacketed cylinder with water. In large fermentors, temperature is maintained by circulating refrigerated water in pipes within the fermentor and sometimes outside it as well. A heating coil is also provided to raise the temperature when necessary.

The area required for the transfer of heat may be determined theoretically on the basis of the expected heat release from the fermentation, the energy input from the agitator, the work done by the air stream, and the amount of heat involved if the broth were sterilized *in situ* in the fermentor. Heat losses to be taken account of include that lost by the effluent air and to the cooling water.

### 9.2.4 Foam Production and Control

Foams are dispersions of gas in liquid. In fermentation, they usually occur as a result of agitation and aeration. In a few industrial processes, e.g. in the beer industry (where foam head retention is a desirable quality) or in the manufacture of foam latex, foam is a welcomed property. However, in most industrial fermentations, foam has undesirable microbiological, economic, and chemical engineering consequences as seen below:

- (i) The need to accommodate foams means that a substantial head space is left in industrial fermentations. By reducing foaming, it has been possible to increase the total fermentation by 30–45%.
- (ii) If the fermentation medium encourages rapid foaming, then the maximum aeration and agitation possible cannot be introduced because of excessive foaming. The effect of this is that the oxygen transfer rate is reduced.
- (iii) If the foam escapes, contamination may be introduced when foam bubbles coalesce and fall back into the medium after wetting the filters and other non-sterile portions of the fermentor.
- (iv) Organic nutrients or inorganic ions with complex organic compounds may be removed from the medium by foam floatation, a phenomenon well-known in beer fermentation, when proteins, hop-resins, dextrans, etc. concentrate in the foam layer. A loss of nutrient from fermentations in this way could lead to reduced yield.
- (v) It can be seen that the fermentation product may also be diminished, should it be amenable to foam floatation. Such a loss has actually been observed in a laboratory experiment with the antibiotic monamycin.
- (vi) Loss of microorganisms could also easily occur by floatation thereby leading also to reduced yields.

The above has dealt with surface foams which occur on the top of the medium. The more stable surface foams are the most troublesome. The unstable foams break down in about 20 seconds and cause no further problems. In contrast to surface foams, the so-called fluid foams occur within the broth. These are common in highly viscous mycelial fermentations and in unbaffled vortex fermentors.

#### 9.2.4.1 Foaming patterns

In order to understand methods of dealing with foams, it is important to discuss some factors leading to their formation and their behavior during the progress of fermentation. Fermentation media are usually made up of complex materials whose compositions are not always precisely known. Of the compounds which give rise to foams, proteins produce the most stable foams. A medium consisting of only inorganic compounds will not foam unless suitable metabolites are produced by the organisms.

It is sometimes possible to reduce foaming by altering the medium composition of the fermentation. Thus, it is possible to use a larger broth volume by reducing foam from a yeast fermentation following the absorption of caramel and organic acids with bentonite from a sample of molasses. Furthermore, the concentration of nutrients, the pH, the method of preparing the medium components, e.g. sterilization time, etc. can all affect foam formation and stability.

The pattern of peak foam formation and disappearance during the course of fermentation depends on the composition of the medium and the nature and activity of microorganisms taking part in the fermentation. Four or five foaming patterns have been recognized.

In the first type, the foam remains constant throughout the fermentation. This is not common in media made of complex materials and is more frequent in defined media consisting mainly of inorganic components. In the second type, following the utilization of foam stabilizers in the nutrients by microorganisms, the foam falls from a fairly high level to a low but constant level. In this type, the microorganisms themselves produce neither foam stabilizers nor defoamers. In the third type, foam life-time falls at first but then rises. Under this condition, the foam stabilizers in the original medium are metabolized but the organism also produces foam-stabilizing metabolites. In the fourth type, the medium initially contains only a low amount of foam stabilizers. These increase as autolysis of the mycelium sets in. If these are later metabolized, the foaming may once more drop resulting in a fifth pattern. In practice, combinations of all or some of these may occur simultaneously.

#### 9.2.4.2 Foam control

Foams in industrial fermentations are controlled either by chemical or mechanical means. *Chemicals controlling foams* have been classified into antifoams, which are added in the medium to prevent foam formation, and defoamers, which are added to knock down foams once these are formed. In this discussion, the term antifoam will refer to both (examples see Table 9.1).

Foams are formed via froths which are temporary dispersals of gas bubbles in a liquid without foam formation ability. Bubbles in a froth coalesce as they rise to the surface. In a foam however, they do not coalesce. Rather, the liquid film between two bubbles thins to a lamella. Materials which yield foam forming aqueous solutions such as proteins, peptides, synthetic detergents, soaps, and natural products such as saponin lower the surface tension of the solution and permit foam formation. An analogy which seems to explain this is to imagine a fermentation liquid as being covered by various sheets of rubber (or other elastic materials) of varying thickness representing surface tensions. A thick sheet in this analogy represents high surface tension and a thin sheet low surface tension. The thinner the sheet, the easier it is to blow balloons from it. Solutes which lower the surface tension of water are surfactants (although this name applies to a particular group of chemicals). In general, surfactants have a positive hydrophobic or water repellent end and a negative, hydrophilic or water-absorbing end.

The foam-forming properties of a surfactant may be seen as resulting from the repulsion of positive charges surrounding the bubbles. Some commercial surfactants can lower the surface tension of water from  $92 \text{ dyne cm}^{-1}$  ( $7.2 \times 10^{-2} \text{ Nm}^{-1}$ ) to about  $27 \text{ dyne cm}^{-1}$  ( $27 \times 10^{-2} \text{ Nm}^{-1}$ ). The positively absorbed surfactant layer confers on the liquid a phenomenon known as film elasticity which prevents local thinning during bubble formation in the same manner as a rubber sheet stretches and holds together.

**Table 9.1** Some antifoams which have been used in industry

<i>Category</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Chemical nature</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
Natural oils and fats	Peanut oil, soybean oil	Esters of glycerol and long chain mono-basic acids	Not very efficient. Used as carriers for other antifoams; may be metabolized.
Alcohols	Sorbitan alcohol	Mainly alcohols with 8–12 carbon atoms	Not very efficient; may be toxic or may be metabolized.
Sorbitan derivatives	Sorbitan monolaureate (Span 20-Atlas)	Derivatives of sorbitol produced by reacting it with H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> or ethylene	Span 20 is active in extremely small amounts.
Polyethers	P400, P1200, P2000 (Dow Chemical Co.)	Polymers of ethylene oxide & propylene oxide	Active, but varies with fermentation.
Silicones	Antifoam A (Dow Corning Ltd.)	Polymers of polydimethyl-siloxane fluids	Very active; inert, highly dispersible, low toxicity; expensive.

Basically, antifoams enter the lamella between the bubbles by spreading over or mixing with the positively adsorbed surfactants monolayer and thus destroying the film elasticity. The result is the collapse of the film. Ideally therefore, the antifoam should be miscible with the foaming liquid. Antifoams used in industrial fermentation should ideally have the following properties:

- (i) be non-toxic to microorganisms and higher animals, especially if the fermentation product is for internal use.
- (ii) have no effect on taste and odor; a change in the usual organoleptic properties of the finished goods due to the antifoam or other components of the medium may result in consumer rejection of the goods. It is significant that a silicon antifoam has been used to limit foaming during wort boiling in beer manufacture. The silicone was subsequently removed and had no effect on the quality, including the foam head retention, of the beer.
- (iii) be autoclavable.
- (iv) not be metabolized by the microorganisms; sometimes as when natural oils are used, the antifoam may be utilizable in which case they must be replaced regularly.
- (v) not impair oxygen transfer.
- (vi) be active in small concentrations, cheap, and persistent.

Many antifoams work best if dispersed in suitable carriers. Thus for Alkaterge C (Trade name), paraffin oil was found to be the best carrier.

Antifoams may be added manually when foam is observed. This entails a close watch and may be expensive. Automatic antifoam additions are now very common and depend on a probe which is activated when foams rise and make contact with the probe. One of the earliest is the wick defoamer (Fig. 9.3), in which the foam drew some antifoam on making contact with a wick. Modern methods are electrically activated systems. Other systems which have been used include antifoam introduction via the sparging air or continuous drip-feeding.

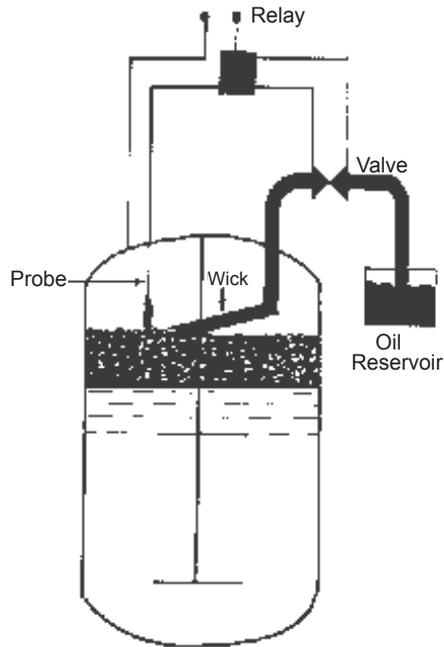


Fig. 9.3 Wick Type Anti-foam

*Mechanical defoamers* of various designs have been described. In general, they act by physically dispersing the foams by rapidly breaking them up.

## 9.2.5 Process Control in a Fermentor

The course of a fermentation may be followed by monitoring various operational parameters within the fermentor, e.g. pH, air input, effluent gases, temperature, factors such as cell yield, or the output of metabolites.

### 9.2.5.1 pH measurement and control

In some industrial fermentations, good yield depends on accurate control (and hence accurate measurement) of the pH of the fermentation broth. Sometimes, the control of pH is achieved by natural buffers present in the medium; phosphates and calcium carbonate may also be used for this purpose. However, the buffering effect of these compounds is usually temporary. The broth must therefore be sampled and the pH adjusted as desired with either acid or base. This method is laborious and may not accurately reflect the continuous change taking place in the pH of the broth. Sterilizable pH probes have become available and these are inserted in the fermentor or in a suitable projection immersing the electrode in the broth. With these electrodes, it is now possible to use an arrangement which will monitor pH changes and automatically induce the introduction into the medium of either acid or alkali. In many fermentations, acidity rather than alkalinity is the situation to be combatted. Such acidity usually arises from microbial activity. It is therefore common to arrange for the introduction of anhydrous ammonia as acidity increases.

### 9.2.5.2 Carbon dioxide measurement

Water and carbon dioxide are two of the most common end-products of aerobic fermentations. The measurement of  $\text{CO}_2$  therefore helps determine the course of the fermentation as well as the carbon balance. At least three principles are employed in current equipment for  $\text{CO}_2$  determination. The first method which is the most widely used depends on the ability of  $\text{CO}_2$  to absorb infrared rays. A sensitive sensor translates this absorption to a gauge or recorder from which it can be read. In another principle, the effluent gas emerging from the broth is bubbled through a dilute solution of NaOH containing phenol red. The change in color of the phenol red is reflected in a photocell, and the amount of  $\text{CO}_2$  may be calculated from a standard curve. The third method depends on the thermal conductivities of the various gases in a mixture.

### 9.2.5.3 Oxygen determination and control

A number of methods are available for determining the oxygen concentration in a fermentation broth.

Of the *chemical* methods, the best known is the Winkler titration which is routinely used to determine the biochemical oxygen demand (B.O.D.) of water. This method relies on the back-titration of unoxidized manganese salt added to the liquid to be analyzed using iodine and starch. Interfering substances are usually present in fermentation broths. Furthermore, the method is cumbersome. Modern sensing methods sample the dissolved oxygen (DO) in the medium. Modern dissolved oxygen probes are autoclavable and are based on one or the other of two principles: the polarographic or the galvanic method.

In the polarographic method, a negative electric current 0.6–0.8 in voltage is passed through an electrode immersed in an electrolyte made of neutral potassium chloride. This negative electrode (cathode) is made of a noble metal such as platinum or gold. The anode is calomel or  $\text{Ag}/\text{AgCl}$ . Under this condition, the dissolved oxygen is reduced at the surface of the cathode.

The current which is measured after it has passed through the electrolyte is proportional to the dissolved oxygen reacting at the cathode. A plastic membrane permeable to gases but not ions separates the cathode, anode, and the electrolyte from the liquid to be studied. The dissolved oxygen diffuses through the membrane and its reaction at the cathode is measured at the current meter. The electrolyte soon becomes depleted by the constant replacement of  $\text{Cl}^-$  by  $\text{OH}^-$  and the electrolyte has to be replaced.

In the galvanic method, no external source of electricity is applied. Instead, the electricity generated between a base metal anode (zinc, lead, or cadmium) and noble metal cathode (silver or gold) is sufficient to cause the reduction of oxygen at the cathode.

The principle remains the same otherwise. The electric current generated in the system is proportional to the quantity of oxygen reacting at the cathode. However, the electrolyte does not participate but the anode surface is gradually oxidized.

### 9.2.5.4 Pressure

It is important to know the pressure of gases in order to ensure that a positive pressure is maintained. A positive pressure helps eliminate contamination and contributes to the maintenance of proper aeration. Pressure may be determined with aid of a manometer.

### 9.2.5.5 Computer control

The fermentation industry, especially the antibiotic manufacturing aspect, usually compares its operations with those in the chemical industry. Leaders in the fermentation industry usually point to the fact that the fermentation industry in the early 1970s lagged behind the chemical industry in applying computers in regulating and managing fermentations. The situation today is different and fermentation procedures are now highly automated. Automation is an engineering problem and the expected advantages of computerization have been given as follows:

- (i) It should reduce labor by eliminating manual intervention.
- (ii) The use of a computer should render an operator's work easier and reduce human error. However, it should be possible to make changes while fermentation is on.
- (iii) Automatic recording of all aspects of the fermentation is possible with a computer and is useful in meeting any regulatory requirements as well as in improving fermentation operations.
- (iv) Experimentation should be easier as it should be much easier to study the effect of altering any variables such as dissolved oxygen, temperature, pH, air flow, nutrient addition, etc.
- (v) Quality control should be easier to carry out.
- (vi) In the event of power failure and other emergencies, the system should be able to shut up itself and restart and gradually build up to the original level of activity.

Commercial sensors are available for a wide variety of parameters in a fermentor. This includes various ions, redox potential, cell mass measurement, and carbohydrate measurements to name a few. The computerization of these parameters makes it fairly easy to monitor modern fermentation operations.

## 9.3 ANAEROBIC BATCH FERMENTORS

Some processes do not require the high levels of oxygen needed in aerobic fermentation. Indeed, some such as clostridial fermentations do not require oxygen at all. These are collectively referred to as 'anaerobic' fermentations although in strict terms some may be micro-aerophilic. Anaerobic fermentors, whether strict or micro-aerophilic (requiring small amounts of oxygen), are not commonly used in industry. When they do (require oxygen), they are essentially the same as the descriptions given above in the typical (aerobic) fermentor. They, however, differ in the construction and operation as given below.

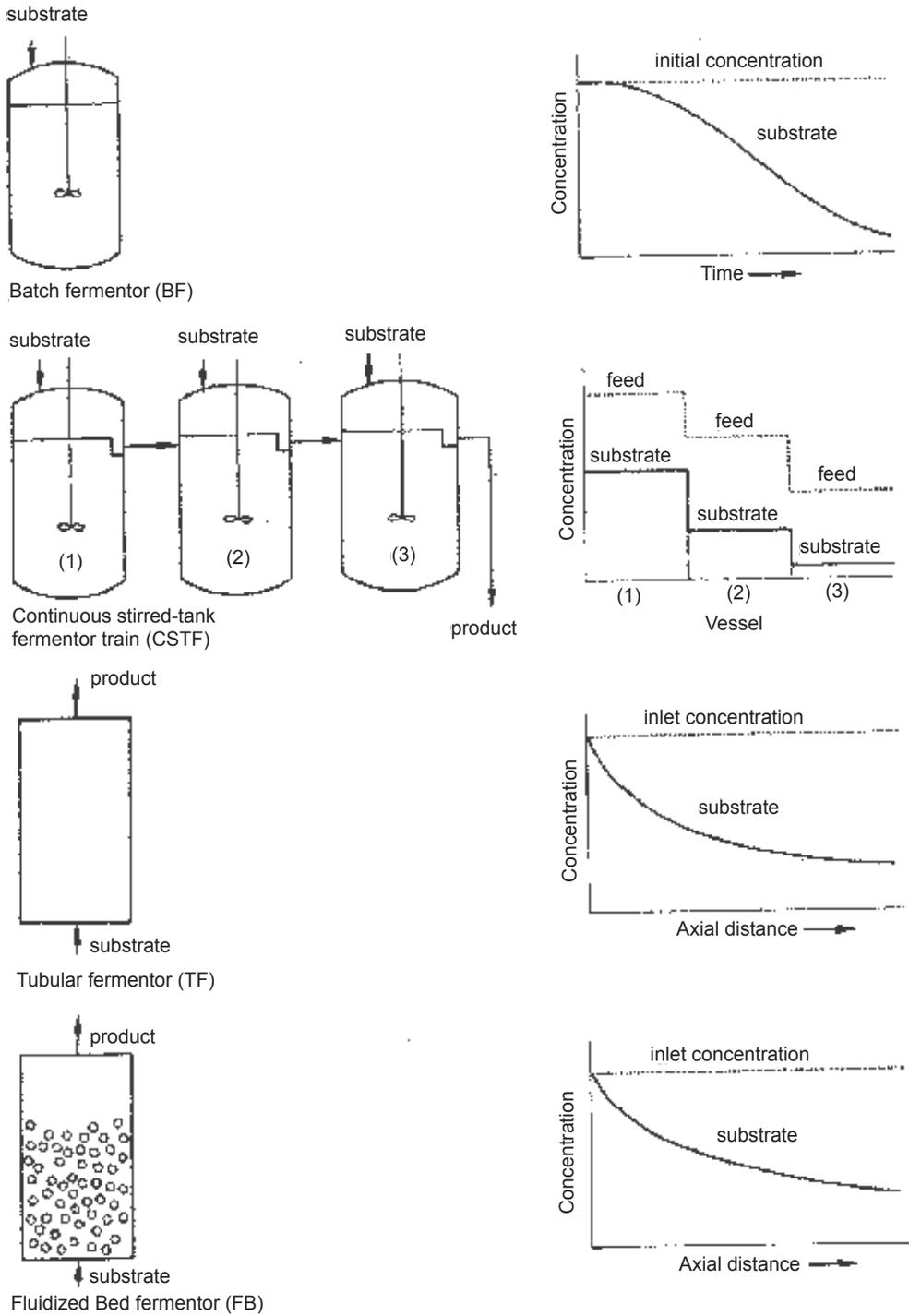
- (i) Vigorous aeration through air sparging is absent, as oxygen is not required.
- (ii) If present, agitation is aimed only at achieving an even distribution of organisms, nutrients, and temperature, but not for aeration. In some cases, agitation may be essential only initially; the emergence of CO<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub> in anaerobic fermentors may stir the medium.
- (iii) The medium is introduced into the fermentor while hot to prevent the absorption of gases; and usually, it is introduced at the bottom of the fermentor.
- (iv) The fermentor itself is filled as much as possible, in order to avoid an airspace which would introduce oxygen.

- (v) If strict anaerobiosis is desirable, then an inert gas such as nitrogen may be blown through the fermentation, at least initially, to remove oxygen.
- (vi) Some low redox compounds, such as cysteine, may be introduced into the medium. The same typical fermentor already described may be used for both aerobic and anaerobic fermentations. It is especially important that it is possible for aerobic or anaerobic fermentations to be carried out in the same vessel as some fermentations such as alcohol manufacture require an earlier aerobic stage in which cells are produced in large numbers and a later stage in which alcohol is produced anaerobically. But even the strictly anaerobic fermentations can be carried out in the stirred tank batch fermentor already described above.

Two strictly anaerobic fermentation processes include acetone-butanol fermentation (*Clostridium acetobutylicum*) and anti-tetanus toxoid production (*Clostridium tetani*). An example of a micro-aerophilic fermentation which requires only a small amount of oxygen is lactic acid production, while alcohol production is an example for a primary aerobic and a secondary anaerobic system. Other examples are dextran production and the production of 2-3-butylene-glycol.

#### 9.4 FERMENTOR CONFIGURATIONS

- (i) **Batch fermentors** (Stirred Tank Batch Fermentors): (designated BF in Fig. 9.4). The major features of this type of fermentor have been described already in Section 9.2 and Fig. 9.1. The other three are continuous fermentors and these are described below:
- (ii) **Continuous stirred tank fermentors:** (CSTF in Fig. 9.4). The tank used in this system is essentially similar to that of the batch fermentor. It differs only in so far as there is provision for the inlet of medium and the outlet of broth. The system has been described under continuous cultivation.
- (iii) **Tubular fermentors:** (TF in Fig. 9.4). In general, tubular fermentors are continuous unstirred fermentors in which the reactants move in a general direction. Reactants enter at one end and leave from the other and no attempt is made to mix them. Due to the absence of mixing, there is a gradual fall in the substrate concentration between the entry point and the outlet while there is an increase in the product in the same direction.
- (iv) **The fluidized bed fermentor:** This is essentially similar to the tubular fermentor. In both the continuous stirred fermentor and the tubular fermentor, there is a real danger of the organisms being washed out. The fluidized bed reactor is an answer to this problem because it is intermediate in nature between the stirred tank and the tubular fermentor. The microorganisms which are in a fluidized bed fermentor are kept in suspension by a medium flow rate whose force just balances the gravitational force. If the flow was lower, the bed would remain 'fixed' and if the flow rate was at a force higher than the weight of the cells then 'elutriation' would occur with the particles being washed away from the tube. The tower fermentor for the brewing of beer and production of vinegar is an example of a fluidized bed fermentor.



**Fig. 9.4** Different Fermentor Configurations (Left) and Graphs Depicting Substrate Usage in the Various Configuration (Right) (see also Fig. 9.5)

### 9.4.1 Continuous Fermentations

Continuous fermentations are those in which nutrients are continuously added, and products are also continuously removed. Continuous fermentations contrast with batch fermentations in which the products are harvested, the fermentor is cleaned up and recharged for another round of fermentation. In the chemical industry, continuous processing has replaced many batch processes. This is because for products for which there is a high and constant demand, continuous processing offers several advantages.

These advantages when adapted to the microbiological industry potentially include the following:

- (i) More intensive use of the equipment, especially the fermentor, and therefore greater return on the initial capital investment made in installing them. A great deal of time involved in the cycle of batch production is not employed in direct production of the final goods. Part of such 'dead' time is used in emptying the batch fermentor during harvest, for cleaning, sterilizing, cooling, and recharging with fresh medium in between each batch. Furthermore, much of the period of a batch fermentation is required for a lag period when the organisms are merely growing and not yet producing (where the product is a metabolite), or the maximum population has not been attained (where the product is the cell itself). In a continuous fermentation, as soon as the steady state has been attained and provided no contaminations occur and other production activities permit the plant to run for a reasonably long time, the 'dead' time required for all the above is eliminated.
- (ii) In connection with the above are savings in labor since it is not necessary to repeatedly perform the various operations linked with the 'unproductive' portions of batch fermentation.
- (iii) Continuous processes are more easily automated. This helps eliminate human error and thus ensures greater uniformity in the quality of the products.

Despite the possible advantages of continuous fermentation, the fermentation industry has not in general adopted it. The areas where it has been employed include beer brewing, food and feed yeast production, vinegar manufacture, and sewage treatment.

The reasons for the slow adoption of continuous fermentation since interest in it developed several decades ago are to be found in technical and economic factors. One of the early deterrents was the fact that many early continuous fermentations became easily contaminated. It is easy to see that while slow growing contaminants might not have developed to the point where they can be noticed in the 4, 5, or 10 days of a batch fermentation, they can pose a serious threat to production in a continuous culture which goes on for up to three, six, or nine months. If the contaminant is fast growing, then the danger while serious in a batch fermentation is infinitely more so in a continuous fermentation. Another problem was that mutants better adapted to the environment of the continuous fermentor are easily selected. Where they perform better than the parent type, the difference was hardly noticed, except perhaps that a particular continuous fermentation was imbued with an apparently inexplicable efficiency. On the other hand, where the mutants were less productive, the cause of continuous fermentation was not helped.

### 9.4.1.1 Theory of continuous fermentation

In a batch culture, four phases of growth are well recognized: the lag phase, the phase of exponential or logarithmic growth, the stationary phase, the death or decline phase. In the lag phase, individual cells increase somewhat in size but there is no substantial increase in the size of the population. In the exponential phase, the population doubles at a constant rate in an environment in which the various nutritional requirements are present in excess. As the population increases, various nutrients are used up and inhibitory materials, including acids, are produced; in other words, the environment changes. The change in the environment soon leads to the death of some organisms. In the stationary phase, the rate of growth of the organisms is the same as the rate of death. The net result is a constant population. In the death phase, the rate of death exceeds the growth rate and the population declines at an exponential rate.

If however during the exponential phase of growth, a constant volume is maintained by ensuring an arrangement for a rate of broth outflow which equals the rate of inflow of fresh medium, then the microbial density (i.e. cells per unit volume) remains constant. This is the principle of one method of the continuous culture in the laboratory, namely, the *turbidostat*.

As discussed above, the stationary phase sets in partly because of the exhaustion of various *nutrients* and partly because of the introduction of an unfavorable environment produced by *metabolites* such as acid. Either of these two groups of factors can be used to maintain the culture at a constant density. Usually, nutrients are used and their use for this purpose will be discussed.

In a batch culture, the various nutrients required by an organism are usually initially present in excess. If all but one of the nutrients are present in adequate amount, then the rate of growth of the organisms will depend on the proportion of the limiting nutrient that is added. Thus, if 100 grams per liter of the limiting nutrients are required for maximum growth but only 90 grams per liter are added, then the rate of growth will be 90% of the maximum. It is then possible to control the growth at any given rate less than the maximum possible by letting in fresh nutrient at the same rate as broth is released and also supplying one of the nutrients at a level slightly less than the maximum. This principle is employed in the *chemostat* method of continuous growth.

In both the chemostat and the turbidostat, the rate of nutrient inflow and broth outflow must relate to the generation time or growth rate of the organism. If the rate of nutrient addition is too high, then sufficient time is denied to the organism to develop an adequate population. The organisms are then washed out in the outflow. If on the other hand the rate of nutrient addition is too low, a stationary phase may set in and the population may begin to decline.

To summarize, in the turbidostat, a device exists for ensuring that a constant volume of a microbial culture is maintained at constant density or turbidity. All the nutrients are present in excess and the density or turbidity is monitored by a photo-cell which translates any change to a mechanism which automatically reduces or increases the rate of medium inlet and broth output as needed.

In the chemostat method, a constant population is maintained in a constant volume by the use of sub-maximal amounts of nutrient(s).

In the laboratory and in practice, the chemostat is far more widely used than the turbidostat, probably because of the slightly more complex set up of the turbidostat which follows from the need for constant density monitoring of the broth.

#### 9.4.1.2 Classification of continuous microbial cultivation

It is important to understand the physiology of the production of the fermentation product in order to enable the designing of an efficient continuous fermentation set-up. The classification given below enables such a selection (Fig. 9.5).

##### 9.4.1.2.1 Single-stage continuous fermentations

There are fermentations in which the entire operation is carried out in one vessel, the nutrient being added simultaneously with broth outflow. This system is suited for growth related fermentations such as yeast, alcohol, or organic acid production.

##### 9.4.1.2.2 Multiple-stage continuous fermentation

This consists of a battery of fermentation tanks. The medium is led into the first and the outflow into the second, third, or fourth, and so on. This is most frequently used for the fermentation involving metabolites. The first tank may be used for the growth phase and subsequent tanks for production, depending on the various requirements identified for maximal productivity.

##### 9.4.1.2.3 Recycled, single or multiple stage continuous fermentation

The outflowing broth may be separated from the organisms by centrifugation and the supernatant returned to the system. This system is particularly useful where the substance is difficult to degrade or not easily miscible with water such as in hydrocarbons. Recycling can be applied in a single stage fermentor. In a multiple stage fermentor, recycling may involve all or some of the fermentation vessels in the series depending on the need.

##### 9.4.1.2.4 Semi-continuous fermentations

In semi-continuous fermentations, simultaneous nutrient addition and outflow withdrawal are carried out intermittently, rather than continuously.

In *Cyclic-continuous* fermentation, a single vessel is usually employed, although a series of vessels may be used. Fermentation proceeds to completion or near completion and a volume of the fermentation broth is removed. Fresh medium of a volume equivalent to that withdrawn is introduced into the vessel. As the size of the fresh medium is reduced, the time taken to complete the fermentation cycle is reduced until eventually the intermittent feeding becomes continuous. This system has been said to ensure a compromise between the desirable and undesirable features of batch and continuous fermentation; productivity has however been shown theoretically and experimentally to be lower than in continuous fermentation.

In *cell reuse*, cells are centrifuged from the fermentation broth and used to re-inoculate fresh medium. It is continuous only in the sense that cells are reused; in essence, it is a batch fermentation.

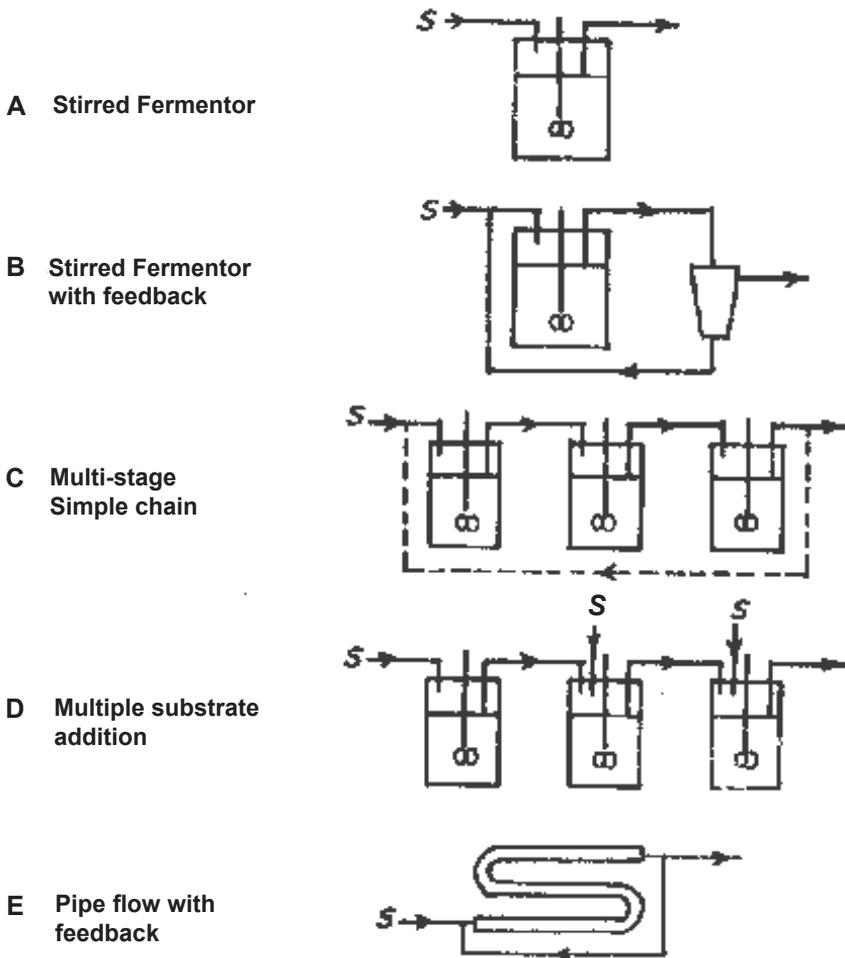


Fig. 9.5 Various Types of Continuous Culture Arrangements (S Denotes Substrate Addition) A = Stirred Batch Fermentor. B–E, Continuous Fermentors

### 9.4.1.3 Applications of continuous cultivation

Various areas of potential application of continuous fermentation, experimented upon either in the laboratory or in pilot plants including single cell protein production, organic solvents such as ethanol, acetone, butanol, isopropanol, or acetic acid from traditional raw materials such as sugar, starch, and molasses. Cellulose is also being considered as a substance for these and the continuous culture of cellulose digesting enzymes from *Trichoderma* is an important step. In agriculture, continuous cheese making, continuous yoghurt starter production, and continuous use of lactose in whey are being vigorously pursued. Medical and veterinary applications include the continuous production of vaccines and cell cultivation.

Continuous waste digestion for sewage chemical wastes outside the activated sludge exist as well as the continuous brewing of beer, the continuous production of wine, and the continuous manufacture of yeasts, vinegar, and alcohol.

## 9.5 FED-BATCH CULTIVATION

Fed-batch cultivation is a modification of batch cultivation in which the nutrient is added intermittently to a batch culture. It was developed from cultivation of yeasts on malt, where it was noticed that an overly high malt concentration caused excessively high yeast growth leading to anaerobic conditions and the production of ethanol instead of yeast cells.

After its successful introduction in yeast cultivation, the original method or modifications of it have been used to achieve higher yields or more efficient media utilization in the production of various antibiotics, amino acids, vitamins, glycerol, acetone, butanol, and lactic acid. Some of the modifications include continuous (rather than intermittent) addition of single or multiple media components, withdrawal of a portion of the broth from the growth vessel, immediate dilution of the residue with fresh medium, and the use of diffusion capsules. The latter are cylindrical capsules to one end of which a semi-permeable membrane is fixed. The nutrient diffuses slowly out through the membrane into the medium.

## 9.6 DESIGN OF NEW FERMENTORS BASED ON THE PHYSIOLOGY OF THE ORGANISMS: AIR LIFT FERMENTORS

The Stirred Tank Batch Fermentor already described is the most widely used type of fermentors. Increasing knowledge of the physiology of industrial microorganisms and better instrumentation have provided the basis for more efficient manipulation of the organisms in the existing batch fermentors:

- (i) More sophisticated instrumentation is now used to monitor such fermentor parameters as dissolved oxygen and carbon dioxide, redox potential, and control of the fermentation leading to higher yields.
- (ii) Different levels of pH, temperature, and phosphate concentration are sometimes needed during the trophophase and the idiophase for the production of secondary metabolites. These differences have been exploited in some fermentations for higher yields.
- (iii) By careful monitoring using automated sensing devices, it is now possible to add just enough of the nutrients required by a growing culture so that feedback inhibition is avoided.

The above are a few examples to show that the existing fermentors can be better utilized when greater knowledge of microbial physiology is harnessed for that purpose. Despite this progress, additional requirements have emerged that called for drastic improvements of the typical stirred tank batch fermentor. Some of the requirements call for a completely new fermentor design based on the following:

- (i) The diversification of fermentation products and new attendant problems. Examples are the production of single-cell protein by continuous fermentation, production of microbial polysaccharides, fermentor cultivation of animal and plant cells, and the growing re-emergence of anaerobic fermentations such as for ethanol.
- (ii) The unusual properties of the substrates or products involved in this diversification such as insolubility in water (for example, of petroleum fractions, agricultural wastes, or hydrogen gas) or high viscosity (for example, microbial capsules).

- (iii) Greater knowledge or awareness of the physiology of the organisms during their growth in a fermentor, especially:
  - (a) the need for high amounts of dissolved oxygen,
  - (b) adequate mixing of fermentation broths,
  - (c) the problem of clumping or aggregation especially in filamentous organisms such as actinomycetes,
  - (d) the need to avoid feedback inhibition by the removal of inhibitory products.

To solve some of these problems, most of the newly designed fermentors have moved away from the structure of the commonly used Stirred Tank Batch Fermentor. In fact, they lack stirrers; instead, they represent the recycle, loop, or airlift type in which stirring is replaced by pumping of air. Some of the problems these fermentors or arrangements are designed to solve are given below:

**(i) Need for high amounts of dissolved oxygen:** Many industrial fermentations require large amounts of oxygen, and yields are severely limited when the gas is in short supply. To solve this problem, especially in regard to the utilization of novel carbon sources from hydrocarbons, the airlift fermentor was designed. In this fermentor, high levels of dissolved oxygen are achieved by using the air pressure to lift the broth.

**(ii) Mixing of the broth:** Poor mixing reduces yields in yeasts grown on alkanes. Aggregates consisting of alkane droplets and yeast cells float to the top of the broth in poorly mixed fermentations. When this is the case, the nutrients cannot get to the yeasts which become starved as a consequence. The problem was solved using a completely filled circulating fermentor which operates on the same principle as a shake flask (Fig. 9.6).

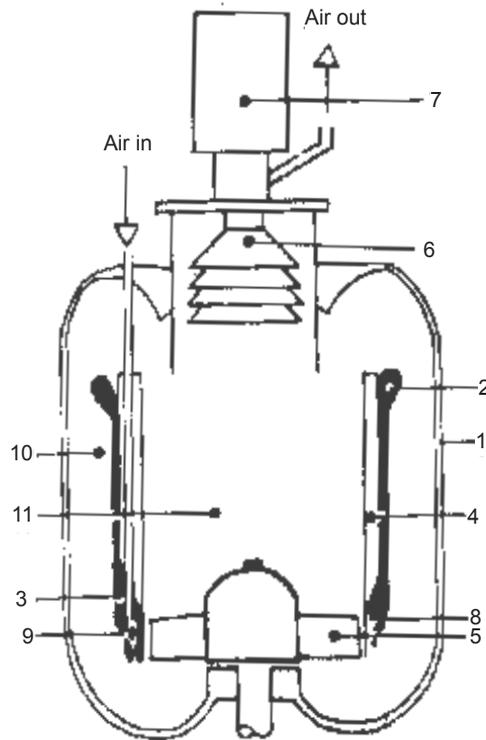
**(iii) Aggregate of cells:** In filamentous cells, e.g. actinomycetes and fungi, the cells tend to aggregate and only those at the periphery of the clump grow. Therefore, a steep gradient concentration of the product exists from the outside to the inside. The avoidance of clumps and the production of loosely organized cells are achieved in the airlift fermentor.

**(iv) Removal of inhibitory products:** In the high concentration of components of a fermentation broth, feedback inhibition easily limits production. One manner of dealing with the problem is to subject the broth to dialysis. This can be achieved by constantly circulating the broth in an external membrane in contact with water. Volatile end products may be removed as they are formed by applying reduced pressure.

## 9.7 MICROBIAL EXPERIMENTATION IN THE FERMENTATION INDUSTRY: THE PLACE OF THE PILOT PLANT

When the microorganism used in a fermentation is new, experimentation must be carried out to determine conditions for its maximum productivity. The usual practice is to initiate the studies in a series of conical flasks of increasing size and to progress through a 10–20 liter fermentor to a pilot plant (100–500 liter) and finally to a production plant (10,000–200,000 liters). The processes involved in the increasing scale of operation culminating in the production plant are known as *scaling up*.

On the other hand, in a well-established fermentation procedure, any change to be introduced must be experimented on and tested out in a pilot plant whose function is to simulate the conditions and structures of the production plant. This procedure is often



**Fig. 9.6** Circulating Fermentor: 1, Vessel; 2 & 3, Draught Type; 4, Baffle; 5, Stirrer; 6 & 7, Foam Breaker; 8 & 9, Air Sparger; 10, Outer Section; 11, Inner Section

referred to as *scaling down*. The processes of scaling up and scaling down are essentially in the domain of the chemical engineer who depends on data supplied by the microbiologist.

Information gathered at the shake flask stage is used to predict requirements in the *pilot plant* which itself serves a similar purpose for the production plant. The optimum requirements of medium composition, aeration, temperature, redox potential, pH, foaming, etc. are determined and extrapolated for the next higher scale. The pilot fermenter is also used for training new recruits in the fermentation industry and may also be used for continuous fermentation where a large enough number of them exist.

One approach which helps facilitate translation of information from the pilot plant to production is to reproduce the production plant as a geometrical replica of the pilot plant. Baffles, agitators, etc. are increased exactly according to a predetermined scale. However, this does not entirely solve the problem because the mere increase in volume immediately poses its own problems. If the same level of productivity as encountered in the pilot study is to be maintained, then agitation and aeration may be applied at a level higher than that expected in a proportional increase in the production fermenter.

## 9.8 INOCULUM PREPARATION

The conditions needed for the development of industrial fermentations often differ from those in the production plant. This is because, except in a few examples where the cells themselves are the required product, e.g. in single cell protein or in yeast manufacture,

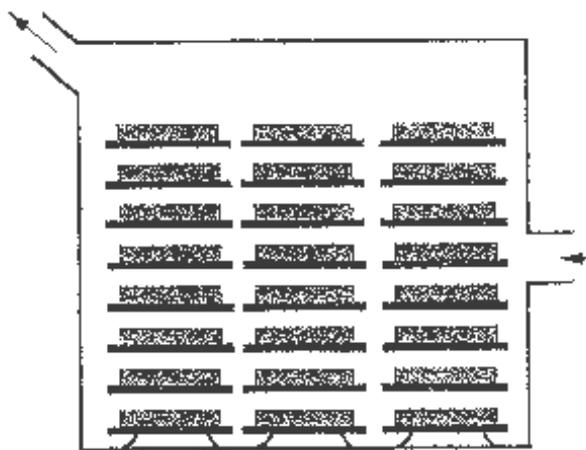
most fermentation products are metabolites. Cells to be used must be actively growing, young, and vigorous, and must therefore be in the phase of logarithmic growth. Since organisms used in most fermentations are aerobes, the inoculum will usually be vigorously aerated in order to encourage maximum cell development, although they may need less aeration in subsequent incubation. The chemical composition of the medium may differ in the inoculum and production stages. The inoculum usually forms 5–20% of the final size of the fermentation. By having an inoculum of this size, the actual production time is considerably shortened.

The initial source of the inoculum is usually a single lyophilized tube. If the content of such a tube were introduced directly into a 100,000 liter production fermentor, it is most likely that it would take an intolerably long time to achieve a production population, which would create an increased risk of contamination. For these reasons, inocula are prepared in several stages of increasing volume. At each step, the growth is checked for the absence of contamination by plating. When the lyophilized vial is initially plated out and shown to be pure, the *entire* plate instead of a single colony is scraped off and transferred to the shake flask so as to avoid picking mutants.

### 9.9 SURFACE OR SOLID STATE (SUBSTRATE) FERMENTORS

In solid state or solid substrate fermentors, rice bran or similar solids are used. Molasses may be added and a nutrient solution of ammonium and phosphate may be introduced. It is used mainly in Japan for enzyme production, and has been used for citric acid production. Fungal bioinsecticides are also cultivated as surface cultures. Certain mushrooms are also grown in tray fermentors.

In the surface fermentor shown in Fig. 9.7, a series of shallow trays no more than about 7 cm in depth is used, the solid medium not being more than about 5 cm so that air can penetrate into the solid medium. Humid air is blown into the chamber containing the trays. The incoming air and the outgoing air may be filtered, especially when fungi are used to save the dissemination of the spores in the atmosphere. In some fermentations, some form of temperature control is imposed through blowing cold air into the fermentor and also by cooling the room where the fermentor is located.



**Fig. 9.7** Diagram of a Solid-state (Surface)Tray Fermentor: Humid, Cooled, Sometimes Filtered, Air is let into the Fermentor; the Exhaust Air is also Filtered (see text)

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Draw a sketch of a 20 L fermentor. Label all essential parts and annotate their functions. Suggest volumes of a pilot scale fermentor and an industrial scale fermentor for large-scale production of lovastatin.
2. Assume you are the lead industrial microbiologist in a company that produces cholesterol-lowering fungal metabolite such as lovastatin. Your team isolated a novel fungus that can be used for large-scale production of lovastatin. Briefly describe how you would produce 20 L of this product from a potato dextrose agar plate culture using a 20 L fermentor.
3. Discuss the importance of fed-batch fermentor in production of bakers yeast using rich nutrients like malt extract medium.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Ahuja, S. 2000. Handbook of Bioseparations. Vol. 2 Academic Press. San Diego, USA.
- Dobie, M., Kruthiventi, A.K., Gaikar, V.G. 2004. Biotransformations and Bioprocesses. Marcel Dekker, New York, USA.
- Endo, I., Nagamune, T., Katoh, S., Yonemoto, T. (eds.) 1999. Bioseparation Engineering. Elsevier Amsterdam the Netherlands.
- Flickinger, M.C., Drew, S.W. (eds.) 1999. Encyclopedia of Bioprocess Technology—Fermentation, Biocatalysis, and Bioseparation. Vol. 1–5. John Wiley, New York, USA.
- Garcia, A.A., Bonem, M.R., Ramirez-Vick, J., Saddaka, M., Vuppu, A. 1999. Bioseparation Process Science. Blackwell Science Massachusetts USA.
- Harrison, R.G., Todd, P., Rudge, S.R., Petrides, D.P. 2003. Bioseparation Science and Engineering. Oxford University Press, New York, USA.
- Kalyanpur, M. 2000. Downstream Processing in Biotechnology. *In: Downstream Processing of Proteins: Methods and Protocols.* M. Desai, (ed.) Humana. Totowa, NJ, USA. pp. 1–10.
- Naglak, T.J., Hettwer, D.J., Wang, H.Y. 1990. Chemical permeabilization of Cells for Intracellular Product Release. *In: Separation Processes In Biotechnology.* Marcel Dekker, New York, USA.

---

## Downstream Processing

### Extraction of Fermentation Products

---

Judging from the extent of discussion on the fermenter and its accessories, one might be led to the assumption that they consume nearly all of the capital investment in a fermentation industry. However, not only is the investment in recovery equipment high, but isolation costs represent a good portion (sometimes up to 60%) of the cost of the final product. In one antibiotic factory, recovery equipment costs four times more than the fermenter.

The central problem in the extraction of fermentation products from the fermentation 'beer' or broth is that the required product usually (but not always) forms a small proportion of a complex heterogeneous mixture of cell debris, other metabolic product, and unused portions of the medium. The following are the factors to be considered in deciding on the best extraction method to be used:

- (i) the value of the final product;
- (ii) the degree of purity required to make the final product acceptable, bearing in mind its revenue-yielding potential;
- (iii) the chemical and physical properties of the product;
- (iv) the location of the product in the mixture, i.e. whether it is free within the medium or is cell-bound;
- (v) the location and properties of the impurities; and finally;
- (vi) the cost-effectiveness or the economic attractiveness of the available alternate isolation procedures.

The various steps followed in the extraction of fermentation products together with the approximate level of purification obtained in each stage are given in [Table 10.1](#).

The procedure followed within each stage depends of course on the material being extracted. The product sought could be the cells themselves, such as in yeast manufacture, lodged in the cells (such as in streptomycin or some enzymes), or free in the medium as with penicillin.

**Table 10.1** Conventional steps\* followed in the purification of products in the soluble portion of 'beer'

<i>Step Process</i>	<i>Hypothetical degree of purity (%)</i>
<i>1a. Removal of insolubles</i>	0.1–1.0 (if product is soluble)
Filtration	90–99 if product is cell
Centrifugation	such as yeasts
Decantation	
<i>1b. Disruption of cells</i>	
<i>2. Primary foam isolation of the product</i>	1–10
Sorption physical and/or ion exchange	
Solvent extraction	
Precipitation	
Ultracentrifugation	
<i>3. Purification</i>	50–80
Fractional precipitation	
Chromatography (adsorption, partition, ion exchange, affinity)	
Chemical derivatization	
Decolorization	
<i>4. Final product isolation</i>	90–100
Crystallization	
Drying	
Solvent removal	

\* Some modern extraction methods combine steps 1 and 2

## 10.1 SOLIDS (INSOLUBLES) REMOVAL

In general, the initial step separates solids from the liquid fraction thereby facilitating further extractive steps, such as sorption, solvent extraction which would be wasteful or near impossible if the cells were not separated. When the required product is solid or is lodged in the insoluble portion, liquid removal helps concentrate the solids.

In a few cases, no separation takes place such as in the acetone butanol fermentation, where the entire beer is used. In most cases, however, the separation methods used are filtration, centrifugation, decantation, and foam fractionation. When the required fraction is in the cells, then much of the impurities are removed with the filtrate after the cells have been isolated.

### 10.1.1 Filtration

**The rotary vacuum filter:** One of the most commonly used filters in industry is the *rotary vacuum filter* which is available in several forms. Essentially, the filter consists of a hollow rotating cylinder divided into four partitions and covered with a metal or cloth gauze. A vacuum is applied in the cylinder, and as it rotates, the vacuum sucks liquid materials from the shallow trough in which the rotating cylinder is immersed. For thick slurries which are difficult to filter (e.g. aminoglycoside broths), a thin layer of filter aid (e.g. Kieselguhr) is first allowed to be absorbed on the cylinder. Later, the filter cylinder with its thin coating

of the filter aid is allowed to rotate in the trough in which the broth is now placed. With the vacuum still applied, the rotating cylinder is washed with a sprinkle of water; a knife whose edge is positioned just short of the layer of filter aid scrapes off the solids picked up from the broth.

When it is used for easily filtered broth, such as in penicillin broth, no filter aid is used. Instead, an arrangement of strings coupled with a release of the vacuum in the segment of the cylinder helps release the material picked up from the broth.

**Ring and wire type filters:** These filters consist of a coating of diatomaceous earth on a wire-mesh supported by a frame of metal rods. The liquid to be filtered is introduced under a pressure of 75 p.s.i. rather than under a vacuum as in the rotary vacuum filter. They are used when the load is light such as for polishing beer or fruit juices. They can be cleaned by back-flushing with water.

### 10.1.2 Centrifugation

Centrifugation is not widely used for the primary separation of solids from broth in fermentation beer because of the thickness of these slurries and the fact that many industries have operated successfully with filters. Only in a few cases, a centrifuge is able to dehydrate a broth to anywhere near the extent a filter would. In the enzyme isolation industry, however, centrifugation is preferred to filtration, probably because unwanted cell debris is quite efficiently removed by this method. A new fermentation industry or a change in the production method of old processes may require the use of centrifuges for primary separation.

### 10.1.3 Coagulation and Flocculation

Coagulation is the cohesion of dispersed colloids into small flocks; in flocculation, these flocks aggregate to form larger masses. The first is induced by electrolytes and the latter by polyelectrolytes, high molecular weight, and water soluble compounds that can be obtained in ionic, anionic, or cationic forms. Bacteria and proteins, being negatively charged colloids, are easily flocculated by electrolytes or polyelectrolytes. Sometimes clay or activated charcoal may be used. The net effect of the flocculation is that colloid removal facilitates filtration. It may even be possible to merely decant the supernatant, once large enough flocks remove the solid portion of the 'beer'. Which one and how much of the various flocculants to use, must be worked out by experimentation. Since flocculation depends on cell wall characteristics, the agents must meet the following requirements, especially if the cells and not the liquid are the required products. The flocculants should have the following properties.

- (i) They must react rapidly with the cells.
- (ii) They must be non-toxic.
- (iii) They should not alter the chemical constituents of the cell.
- (iv) They should have a minimum cohesive power in order to allow for effective subsequent water removal by filtration.
- (v) Neither high acidity nor high alkalinity should result from their addition.
- (vi) They should be effective in small amounts and be low in cost.
- (vii) They should preferably be washable for reuse.

### 10.1.4 Foam Fractionation

The general principle of foam fractionation is that in a liquid foam system, the chemical composition in the bulk liquid is usually different from the chemical composition in the foam. Foam is formed by sparging the bulk liquid containing the substance to be fractionated with an inert gas. The gas is fed at the bottom (Fig. 10.1) of a tower and the foam created overflows at the top carrying with it the solutes to be fractionated. Surfactants or (surface active substances that reduce surface tension, e.g. teepol) may be added in liquids that do not foam. This method has been used to collect a wide range of microorganisms.

### 10.1.5 Whole Broth Treatment

In some fermentations such as the acetone-butanol fermentation, the whole unseparated broth is stripped of its content of the required product. In the antibiotic industry, a similar situation was achieved before it became possible to directly absorb the antibiotics streptomycin (using cationic-exchange resin) and novobiocin (on an anionic resin). The antibiotics are eluted from the resins and then crystallized. This process saves the capital and recurrent expense of the initial separation of solids from the broth.

## 10.2 PRIMARY PRODUCT ISOLATION

After separation of the broth into soluble and insoluble fractions, the next process depends on the location of the desired product as follows: the cells themselves as in yeasts may be the desired product; they are dried or refrigerated and the liquid discarded. Further treatment such as drying is discussed later in the chapter.

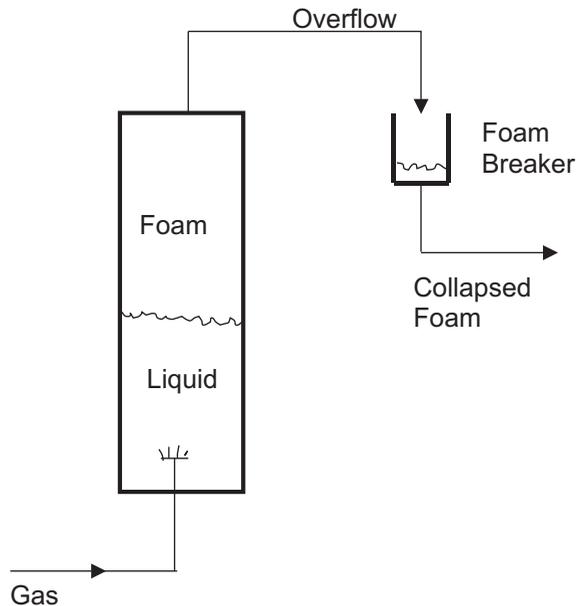


Fig. 10.1 Foam Fractionation

The required product may be bound to the mycelia or to bacterial cells as in the case of bound enzymes or antibiotics. The cells then have to be disrupted with any of the several ways available—heat, mechanical disruption, etc. The cell debris is now removed by centrifugation, filtration, or any of the other methods for removing solids, described above.

If the material is extracellularly available or if it has been obtained by leaching with or without cell disruption, it is treated by one of the following methods: liquid extraction, dissociation extraction, sorption, or precipitation.

### 10.2.1 Cell Disruption

Biological molecules inside the cell must be released. This is achieved by cell disruption (lysis). Cell disruption is a sensitive process because of the cell wall's resistance to the high osmotic pressure inside them. Furthermore, difficulties arise from a non-controlled cell disruption that results from an unhindered release of all intracellular products (proteins nucleic acids, cell debris) as well as the requirements for cell disruption without the desired product's denaturation.

#### 10.2.1.1 Mechanical methods

When the target material is intracellular, the microorganisms are disrupted mainly by mechanical disruption of the cells. Equipment for cell disruption includes:

- (i) *Homogenizers*. These pump slurries through restricted orifices or valves at very high pressure (up to 1500 bar) followed by an instant expansion through a special exiting nozzle. The sudden pressure drop upon discharge causes an explosion of the cell. The method is applied mainly for the release of intracellular molecules.
- (ii) *Ball Mills*. In a ball mill, cells are agitated in suspension with small abrasive particles. Cells break because of shear forces, grinding between beads, and collisions with beads. The beads disrupt the cells to release biomolecules.
- (iii) *Ultrasonic disruption*. This method of cell lysis is achieved with high frequency sound that is produced electronically and transported through a metallic tip to an appropriately concentrated cellular suspension. It is expensive and is used mainly in laboratories.

#### 10.2.1.2 Non-mechanical methods

Cells can be caused to disrupt by permeabilization through a number of ways:

- (i) *Chemical Permeabilization*: Many chemical methods have been employed in order to extract intracellular components from microorganisms by permeabilizing (i.e. making them permeable) the outer-wall barriers. It can be achieved with organic solvents that act by the creation of canals through the cell membrane: toluene, ether, phenylethyl alcohol DMSO, benzene, methanol, or chloroform. Chemical permeabilization can also be achieved with antibiotics, thionines, surfactants (Triton, Brij, Duponal), chaotropic agents, and chelates. A very important chemical is EDTA (chelating agent) which is widely used for permeabilization of Gram negative microorganisms. Its effectiveness is a result of its ability to bond the divalent cations of  $\text{Ca}^{++}$ ,  $\text{Mg}^{++}$ . These cations stabilize the structure of outer membranes by bonding

the lipopolysaccharides to each other. Through the removal of these cations, EDTA, increases the permeability areas of the outer walls.

- (ii) *Mechanical Permeabilization*: One method of mechanical permeabilization is osmotic shock. While cells exposed to slowly varying extracellular osmotic pressure are usually able to adapt to such changes, cells exposed to rapid changes in external osmolarity can be mechanically injured. This procedure is typically conducted by first allowing the cells to equilibrate internal and external osmotic pressure in a high sucrose medium and then rapidly diluting away the sucrose. The resulting immediate overpressure of the cytosol is assumed to damage the cell membrane. Enzymes released by this method are believed to be periplasmic or at least located near the surface of the cell.
- (iii) *Enzymatic Permeabilization*: Enzymes can also be employed to permeabilize cells, but this method is often limited to releasing periplasmic or surface enzymes. In these procedures, they often use EDTA in order to destabilize the outer membrane of Gram negative cells, making the peptidoclycan layer accessible to the enzyme used. Enzymes used for enzymatic permeabilization are: beta (1,6) and beta (1,3) glycanases, proteases, and mannase.

### 10.2.2 Liquid Extraction

Also known as solvent extraction or liquid-liquid extraction, this procedure is widely used in industry to transfer a solute from one solvent into another in which it is more soluble. It also can be used to separate soluble solids from the mixture with insoluble material by treatment with a solvent.

The law on which liquid-liquid extraction is based states that when an organic solute is exposed to a two-phase immiscible liquid system the ratio of the solute concentration in the two phases is constant for a given temperature. This ratio,  $K$ , is the partition or distribution coefficient, given as:

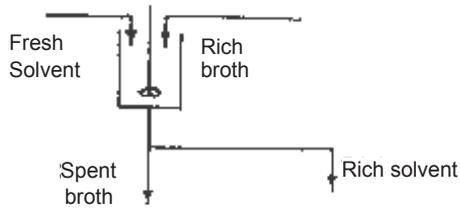
$$K = C_1/C_2$$

where  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  are the concentrations in phase 1 and phase 2, respectively. However, the equation is effective for dilute solutions, but not for very concentrated solutions. The selectivity of a solvent solution is indicated by the ratio of the distribution coefficients of the components in question. Which solvents are actually used, will depend on a number of factors including the distribution properties of the solute in them, volatility, ease of recovery, and cost.

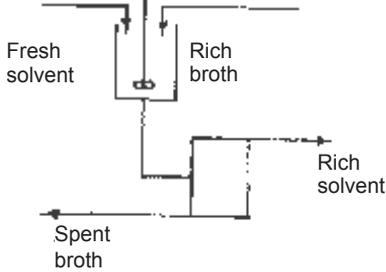
In this method, the broth to be extracted is shaken with a hydrophobic solvent (i.e. one that will not mix with water), allowed to settle, and the solvent which should contain more of the material to be extracted is removed. This may be done in a small laboratory scale in separating funnels or in a stirred tank in industry.

The separation may be done in a stirred tank in one of several ways (Fig. 10.2): (1) batch wise in a single tank and the solvent with its solute drained, or (2) continuous with a mixing and a settling tank. More efficient extractions are achieved with continuous addition of solvent in (3) a cross-current arrangement in which successive solvent extracts will be progressively more dilute or in a (4) counter-current fashion in which efficient extraction is achieved with less solvent usage.

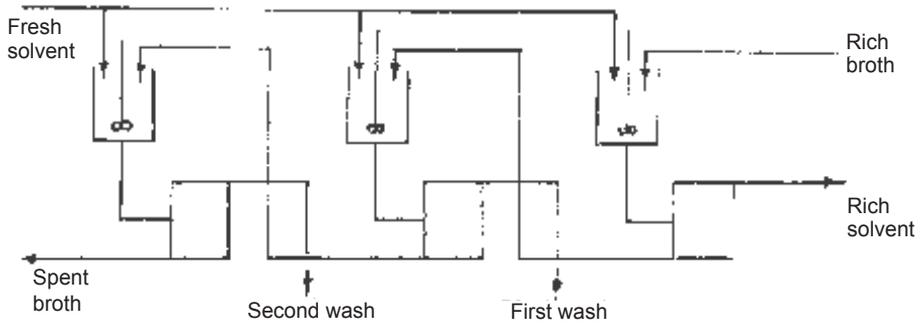
(1) Batch



(2) Continuous



(3) Cross-current



(4) Counter-current

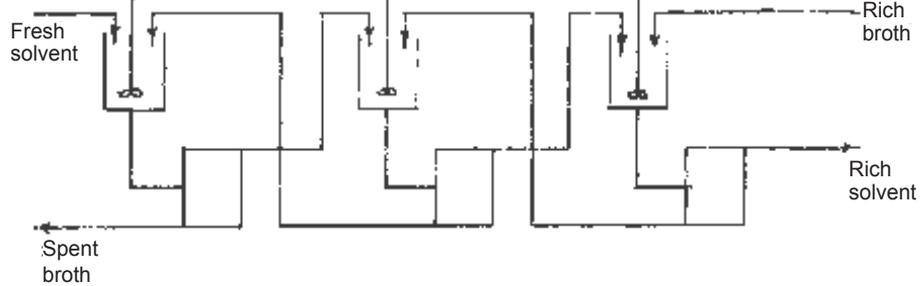


Fig. 10.2 Schematic Representation of Various Methods of Solvent Extraction

The counter-current multi-stage system is most commonly used and a wide variety of equipment incorporating this system exists. In many applications, a vertical column may be used with the heavier liquid introduced from the top and the lighter from the bottom. Mixing of the liquid may occur via a stirring shaft or by the turbulence created by a series of plates placed in the column. A series of such columns may be set up with provision for automatic transfer of liquid from one column to the next. A set-up similar to this has been used to separate radioactive materials. This principle has also found use in penicillin separation, but because penicillin would be destroyed in the acidified broth by prolonged contact and also because such prolonged contact enable protein present in the medium to stabilize, separation is done quickly.

### 10.2.3 Dissociation Extraction

Dissociation extraction is a special case of liquid-liquid extraction. Many fermentation products are either weak bases or acids. When solvent extraction is employed, the pH is so selected that the material to be isolated is unionized since the ionized form is soluble in the aqueous phase and the unionized form is soluble in the solvent phase. Weak bases are therefore extracted under high pH conditions and weak acids under low pH conditions. The result is a rapid and complete extraction of the solute and materials similar to it.

### 10.2.4 Ion-Exchange Adsorption

Ion exchange adsorption is one of several adsorption methods which include chromatography and charcoal adsorption.

Ionic filtrates of fermentation broths can be purified and concentrated using ion exchange resins packed in columns. An ion exchange resin is a polymer (normally polystyrene) with electrically charged sites at which one ion may replace another. Synthetic ion exchange resins are usually cast as porous beads with considerable external and pore surface where ions can attach. Whenever there is a great surface area, adsorption plays a role. If a substance is adsorbed to an ion exchange resin, no ion is liberated. Testing for ions in the effluent will distinguish between removal by adsorption and removal by ion exchange. While there are numerous functional groups that have charges, only a few are commonly used for manmade ion exchange resins:

- $-\text{COOH}$  which is weakly ionized to  $-\text{COO}^-$
- $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$  which is strongly ionized to  $-\text{SO}_3^-$
- $-\text{NH}_2$  that weakly attracts protons to form  $\text{NH}_3^+$
- secondary and tertiary amines that also weakly attract protons
- $-\text{NR}_3^+$  that has a strong, permanent charge (R stands for some organic group)

These groups are sufficient to allow selection of a resin with either weak or strong positive or negative charge. The resins are usually branched polymers of high molecular weight-containing easily exchanged ions which are in equilibrium with ions in the surrounding solution. The resins are however usually used in neutral salt forms: cation exchangers in the sodium form and anion exchangers in the chloride form. The resins lose the labile ions and in exchange bind suitable materials in the liquid percolating down the column. The efficiency of the exchange depends on the following factors:

- (i) The capacity of the resin for the ion to be adsorbed, usually expressed in milli-equivalents.
- (ii) The size of the resin spheres: the smaller, the more the exchange.
- (iii) The flow rate; the slower, the greater the adsorption.
- (iv) Temperature: the higher, the more rapid the exchange.

The choice of the resin depends on the chemical and physical properties of both resin and product as well as on the contaminating materials.  $\text{CaCO}_3$ , for example, is often left out of media for streptomycin fermentation, because  $\text{Ca}^{++}$  ions are preferentially adsorbed onto the resin in place of streptomycin cations.

As indicated earlier, streptomycin is extracted over a resin (a carboxylic acid resin) with prior separation of the soluble from the insolubles. The broth is passed successively through two resin columns which have previously been flushed with NaOH to convert them to the sodium phase. The resin absorbs a large amount of the streptomycin which is eluted with HCl converting the streptomycin to chloride and the resin to the hydrogen form. In this way, the streptomycin is both purified and concentrated.

### 10.2.5 Precipitation

The insolubility of many salts is used in the selective isolation of some industrial products. It is particularly useful in the elimination of proteinaceous impurities or in the isolation of enzymes. Salts are precipitated by one of several methods: adding inorganic salts and (or) reducing the solubility with the addition of organic solvents such as alcohol in the case of enzymes. Lactate and oxalate salts of erythromycin have been so isolated, and citric acid has been isolated with its calcium salt.

## 10.3 PURIFICATION

The methods described earlier isolate mixtures of materials similar in chemical and physical properties to the required product. The methods used in this section are finer and further eliminate the impurities thus leaving the desired product purer.

### 10.3.1 Chromatography

In chromatography, the components of a mixture of solutes migrate at different rates on a solid because of varying solubility levels of the solutes in a particular solvent. The mixture of solutes is introduced (usually as a solution) at one end of the solid phase, and the solvent (i.e. the solution which separates the mixture) flows through this initial point of the mixture application. Fermentation products are separated by any of the following chromatographic methods with the reasons for separation of the solids given in each one of them:

- (i) *Adsorption chromatography*: (e.g. paper chromatography) variations in the weak (Van der Waal) forces binding solutes to the solid phase;
- (ii) *Partition chromatography*: A mobile solvent is passed through a column containing an immobilized liquid phase; the solvent and immobilized liquid phases are immiscible. Separation occurs by the different distribution or partition coefficients of the solutes between the mobile and immobilized liquid phases.

- (iii) *Ion exchange chromatography*: The difference in the strength of the chemical bonding between the various solutes and the resin constitutes the basis for this method.
- (iv) *Gel filtration*: This depends on the ability of molecules of different sizes and shapes to permeate the matrix of a gel swollen in the desired solvent. The gel can be considered as containing two types of solvent: one within the gel particle and one outside it. Large particles which cannot penetrate the gel appear in the column effluent after a volume equivalent to the solvent outside the gel has emerged from the column. Small molecules which permeate the matrix appear in the effluent after a volume equivalent to the total liquid volume within the matrix has emerged.

### 10.3.2 Carbon Decolorization

Some solids are able to adsorb and concentrate certain substances on their surfaces when in contact with a liquid solution (or gaseous mixture). These include activated charcoal, oxides of silicon, aluminum, titanium, and various types of absorbent clays. Absorbents have been used for the adsorption of antibiotics from broths, removal of colored impurities from a solution of an antibiotic, sugar, or even from gasoline. In the fermentation industry, activated charcoal has been most widely used because of its extensive pores which confer on it a large surface. Furthermore, the pores are large enough to allow the passage of the solvent.

Activated carbon, powdered or granular, is used to remove color. Thus, penicillin solution is usually treated with activated carbon before the crystallization of the amino salt. A single-stage batch-wide system of mixing the solution with carbon followed by filtration may be used. Multi-stage counter-current decolorization is far more efficient per unit of carbon than batch. Before using an adsorbent, it is important to determine experimentally the most efficient depth of the absorption zone which will thoroughly remove all color.

### 10.3.3 Crystallization

Crystallization is the final purification method for those materials which can stand heat. The solution is concentrated by heating and evaporation at atmospheric pressure to produce a supersaturated solution. However, many fermentation products are not heat tolerant, and the initial water removal is made by heating at reduced pressure or by lowering the temperature to form crystals which can be centrifuged off leaving a concentrated liquor. It yields compounds which are highly potent more stable and free from colored impurities. To obtain crystals, first a supersaturated solution is produced, secondly, minute nuclei or seeds are formed, and thirdly, the molecules of the solute build on the nuclei. Crystalline particles from a previous preparation may be deliberately introduced to produce the nuclei. In procaine penicillin production, fine crystals are used to induce crystallization whereas in dehydrostreptomycin sulfate, addition of methanol brings about crystallization.

## 10.4 PRODUCT ISOLATION

The final isolation of the product is done in one of the two following ways:

- (i) processing of crystalline products.
- (ii) drying of products direct from solution.

### 10.4.1 Crystalline Processing

Crystalline products are free-filtering and non-compressible and therefore may be filtered on thick beds under high pressure. This is usually done on a centrifugal machine capable of developing very high (about 1,000 fold) gravitational force. The crystals are washed to remove adhering mother liquor. After washing, they are dried by spinning for further drying or solvent removal.

### 10.4.2 Drying

Drying consists of liquid removal (either organic solvent or water) from wet crystals such as was described above from a solution, from solids, or cells isolated from the very earliest operation. Several methods of drying exist, and the one adopted will depend on such factors as the physical nature of the finished product, its heat sensitivity, the form acceptable to the consumer, and the competitiveness of the various methods in relation to the cost of the finished product. Drying can be applied in two methods: (i) liquid-phase moisture removal, and (ii) solid-phase moisture removal.

#### 10.4.2.1 Liquid-phase moisture removal

Liquid-phase moisture removal involves drying by heat. When drying is done by heating, the processes may be broken down to the supply of heat to the material and the removal of the resulting water vapor. The simplest method is by direct heating in which heated atmospheric air both heats the material and removes the water vapor. In others, the heating is done at reduced pressure to facilitate evolution of the water vapor. Under such conditions, indirect heating from a heated surface, radiation (e.g. infra-red), or both is used to supplement the heat introduced by reduced vapor pressure.

The actual method of heating is done in a number of different mechanical contraptions which will be mentioned briefly below.

- (i) *Tray Driers*: The most commonly used in some fermentation industries is the vacuum tray drier. It is versatile and consists simply of heated shelves in a single cabinet which can be vacuum-evacuated. In some, the trays may have provision for vibration or shaking to speed up evaporation. As it can be evacuated, heating at fairly low temperature is possible, and hence it is useful for heat-labile materials.
- (ii) *Drum driers*: In this method, the broth or slurry is applied to the periphery of a revolving heated drum. The drum may be single or in pairs. High temperature is

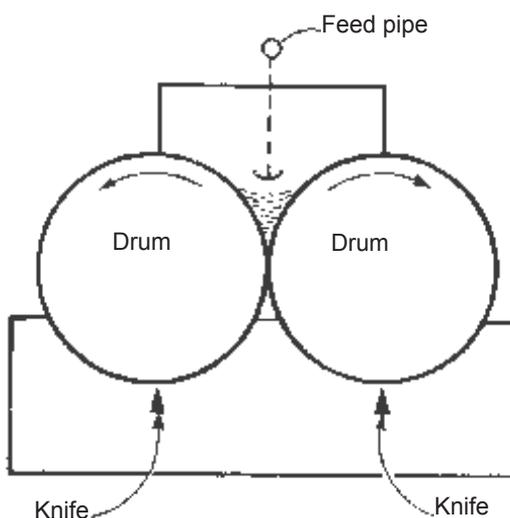


Fig. 10.3 Drum Drier

applied though for a short time on the material to be dried, and some destruction may occur. One arrangement of drum driers is illustrated in Fig. 10.3.

- (iii) *Spray drying*: This method is used extensively in the food and fermentation industries for drying heat-sensitive materials such as drugs, plasma, and milk. The conventional spray drier consists of an arrangement for introducing a fine spray of the liquid to be dried against a counter-current of hot air. As the material is exposed to high temperature for only a short while, a matter of a few seconds, very little damage usually occurs. Furthermore, it is convenient because of its continuous nature. Sometimes, the material is introduced simultaneously with air (Fig. 10.4).

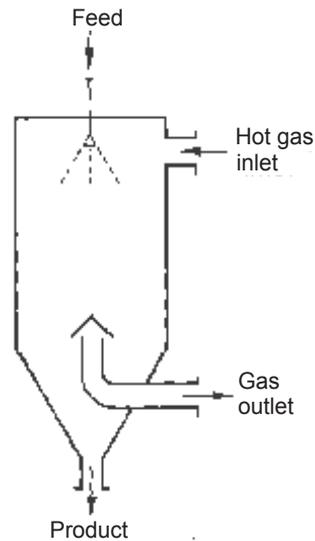


Fig. 10.4 Conventional Spray Drying

#### 10.4.2.2 Solid-phase moisture removal (freeze-drying)

The equipment used in freeze-drying is essentially the same as in the vacuum drier described earlier. The main difference is that the material is first frozen. In this frozen state, the water evaporates straight from the material. It is useful for heat-labile materials such as enzymes, bacteria, and antibiotics.

#### END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Outline six factors that will influence your decision in recommending methods of extraction of fermentation products.
2. List four methods used for separation of solids. Is separation of solids from liquid always necessary before extraction of fermentation products?
3. Summarize four methods of mechanical disruption of cells to harvest intracellular products.
4. List three non-mechanical methods of cell disruption and give specific examples.
5. Give examples of chemical agents that can be employed to extract fermentation products.
6. List four methods of chromatography for purification of fermentation products.
7. What methods would you recommend for final processing of fermentation products before packaging?

#### SUGGESTED READINGS

- Ahuja, S. 2000. Handbook of Bioseparations. Vol. 2 Academic Press. San Diego, USA.  
 Dobie, M., Kruthiventi, A.K., Gaikar, V.G. 2004. Biotransformations and Bioprocesses. Marcel Dekker, New York, USA.

- Endo, I., Nagamune, T., Katoh, S., Yonemoto, T. (eds.) 1999. *Bioseparation Engineering*. Elsevier Amsterdam, the Netherlands.
- Garcia, A.A., Bonem, M.R., Ramirez-Vick, J., Saddaka, M., Vuppu, A. 1999. *Bioseparation Process Science*. Blackwell Science, Massachusetts, USA.
- Harrison, R.G., Todd, P., Rudge, S.R., Petrides, D.P. 2003. *Bioseparation Science and Engineering*. Oxford University Press, New York, USA.
- Kalyanpur, M. 2000. Downstream Processing in Biotechnology. *In: Downstream Processing of Proteins: Methods and Protocols*. M. Desai (ed.) Humana. Totowa, NJ: USA. pp. 1–10.
- Naglak, T.J., Hettwer, D.J., Wang, H.Y. 1990. Chemical Permeabilization of Cells for Intracellular Product Release. *In: Separation Processes In Biotechnology*. Marcel Dekker, New York, USA.

---

## Significance and Processes of Sterility in Industrial Microbiology

---

In the fermentation industry, contamination by unwanted organisms could pose serious problems because of the vastly increased scale of the operation in comparison with laboratory work. If *Pediococcus* (*Streptococcus*) *damnosus* which causes sourness in beer were to contaminate the fermentation tanks of a brewery, hundreds of thousands of liters of beer may have to be discarded resulting in a loss in revenue to the brewery.

### 11.1 THE BASIS OF LOSS BY CONTAMINANTS

Losses due to contaminations may be explained in one or more of the following ways:

- (i) The contaminant may utilize the components of the fermentation broth to produce unwanted end-products and therefore reduce yield. When slime-forming *Leuconostoc mesenteroides* invades a sugar factory, it utilizes sucrose to form the polysaccharide in its capsule which forms the slime. Similarly, in the beer industry, when lactic acid bacteria contaminate the fermenting wort, they utilize sugars present therein to produce unwanted lactic acid which renders the beer sour.
- (ii) The contaminant may alter the environmental conditions such as the pH or oxidation-reduction potential of the fermentation and render it unsuitable for maximum production of the required product. Thus, if *E. coli* which grows much more rapidly than the highly aerobic *Streptomyces griseus* should contaminate a streptomycin fermentation, it may use up a large proportion of the oxygen thereby reducing the yield of the antibiotic because less than optimal amounts of oxygen are available to the actinomycete.
- (iii) Contamination by lytic organisms such as bacteriophages or *Bdellovibrio* could lead to the entire destruction of the producing organism.
- (iv) Finally, it is conceivable that contaminants could, even if they did not reduce yield in a product, produce by-products not removable in the extraction process already established in the factory.

Although contaminants are generally undesirable, not all fermentations need to be carried out under strict asepsis depending on the selling price of the end-product. Thus, while the high cost of antibiotics justifies strict sterility during production, such sterility is not called for in such bulk products as yeasts or industrial alcohol.

## 11.2 METHODS OF ACHIEVING STERILITY

The various methods for achieving sterility include physical and chemical methods.

### 11.2.1 Physical Methods

#### 11.2.1.1 Asepsis

Asepsis involves general cleanliness and is a procedure routinely observed in many microbiological, pharmaceutical, and food industries. In such organizations, laboratory coats, face masks, gloves, and other protective clothing are often worn to prevent the transfer of organisms from the individual to the product. Hands are regularly washed; pipes, utensils, fermentation vats, and floors are washed with water and disinfectants. In some industries, such as those concerned with *parenteral* (injection) material, or with vaccines, even the incoming air must be sterile. The maintenance of asepsis does not sterilize but it helps reduce the load of microorganisms and hence lessens the stringency of the sterility measures employed. It also helps to remove foci of microbial growth such as particles of food or media which could be sources of future contaminations.

#### 11.2.1.2 Filtration

Filtration is used in industry and in the laboratory to free fluids (i.e. gases and liquids) of dust and other particles and microorganisms. If properly used, it is highly effective and also relatively inexpensive. Large volumes of sterile air and other gases are sometimes required for 'sterile' areas where in the pharmaceutical industries, injections and vaccines are handled and for aeration in most fermentations.

Two types of air filters are available: the absolute filters which are usually made of ceramic and are so called because their pores are not large enough to admit a microorganism. Their disadvantage is that they are suitable for only small volumes of the gas being sterilized. The second group, fibrous filters, is made of fibers of wool, cotton, glass or mineral slag, whose pore diameters are in the order of 0.5–15  $\mu$ . Fibrous filters are quite effective and hold back organisms of the diameter of about 1.0  $\mu$  or even viruses. The factors which contribute to their removal of microorganisms include direct interception by the fibers, settlement by gravity, electrostatic attraction between fiber and particles, Brownian movement, and convection.

*Prefilters* usually consist of discs or mats of asbestos of the type used in Seitz filters. They, however, let in fine fibers which are undesirable in injectable materials. The fine fibers are removed in the final filter. Prefilters also absorb large amounts of the liquid, although such absorbed liquid can be re-extracted by flushing the filter at the end of filtration with sterile nitrogen. The filters may also be made of compressed paper pulp; filter paper coated with Kieselguhr may be placed between the filter pads.

*Final filters* which may be of unglazed porcelain are usually made in the form of cylindrical candles over which the liquid to be filtered flows. The filtrate is drained from the inside of the cylinder. This type of arrangement increases the surface area available for filtration. The candles may be sterilized by autoclaving. Sintered glass is usually made in form of discs and, like porcelain, they are fragile. Membrane ('Millipore') filters made of cellulose acetate may also be used as final filters.

Sterilizing filters should have pores with maximum diameters of 0.2  $\mu$ . They should be themselves sterilized before being used. Membrane filters can be sterilized by chemical sterilants (such as ethylene oxide, hydrogen peroxide in vapor form, propylene oxide, formaldehyde, and glutaraldehyde), radiant energy sterilization (such as  $\gamma$ -irradiation), or steam sterilization. The most common method of sterilization is steam sterilization.

Steam sterilization of a membrane filter can be accomplished either by an autoclave or by *in situ* steam sterilization.

### 11.2.1.3 Heat

*Dry heat*: Not only is dry heat used to sterilize glassware on a small scale in industry associated laboratories, more importantly it is used on a large scale in industry for sterilizing some types of air filters. However principally, it is used for sterilizing air by compression. When air is compressed, the temperature rises in accordance with the gas law,  $PV = RT$  where P is the pressure, V the volume, R the gas constant and T the temperature. If P and V are increased, then T, the temperature, would rise as shown in Table 11.1. However, compression is expensive. Furthermore, heated air must be at a high temperature, and at a much higher pressure than it actually will be used at, for fairly long holding periods. Although not a very practical method, compression could reduce the microbial population of air.

*Moist heat*: Moist heat can be employed in industry to kill microorganisms during boiling, tyndallization, and autoclaving.

*Tyndallization* consists of boiling the material for one half hour on three consecutive days. Vegetative cells are killed on the first day's boiling. Spores are not, but they germinate. During the second day's boiling, the vegetative spores resulting from the spores not killed on the first day are killed. Any spore still surviving after the second day will be killed during boiling on the third day as the spores would have germinated. After the third day's

**Table 11.1** Temperature of air after compression

<i>Final pressure (p.s.i.g.)</i>	<i>Temp. (°C)</i>
20	78
40	117
60	140
80	169
100	189
150	229
200	261

boiling, the medium is expected to be sterile. It is a method which can be used for sterilizing heat-labile media where filtration is not possible.

*Pasteurization* is very widely used in the food industry. It consists of exposing the food or material to a temperature for a sufficiently long period to destroy pathogenic or spoilage organisms. Pasteurization can either be batch or continuous. The low temperature long time (LTLT) technique usually involves heating at about 60°C for one half hour and is used in batch pasteurization, whereas the high temperature short time (HTST) or flash method involves heating at about 70°C for about 15 seconds. The flash method is employed in continuous pasteurizing.

When batch pasteurization is used on a large scale, the final temperature of pasteurization is attained by gradual increases. Similarly, the temperature is lowered gradually to cool it. In many breweries, for 600 ml bottles, batch pasteurization time is a total of about 90 minutes divided equally between raising the temperature, holding at the pasteurization temperature, and cooling. This prolonged time during which the material is exposed to high temperature and which may give rise to a 'burnt' odor is the major deficiency of batch in comparison with continuous pasteurization.

**Steam under pressure:** Steam is useful as a sterilizer for the following reasons:

- (i) It has a high heat content and hence a high sterilizing ability per unit weight or volume; this heat is rapidly released.
- (ii) Steam releases its heat at a readily controlled and constant temperature.
- (iii) It can be fairly easily produced and distributed.
- (iv) No obnoxious waste products result from its use, and it is clean, odorless, and tasteless.

Its disadvantages are that it is not suitable for sterilizing anhydrous solids, greases, and powders, and its effectiveness may be limited in the presence of air.

Steam is widely used for the sterilization of equipment in the laboratory as well as in industry. Pipes, fermenters, and media are all sterilized with steam. Steam used for this purpose is under pressure because the higher the pressure the higher the temperature.

There are three 'types' of steam.

*Wet steam* is steam in which sufficient heat is lacking to keep all the steam in the gaseous vapor phase. The effect of this is that some liquid water is present in the steam.

In '*saturated*' steam, all the steam is in the vapor phase. Its heat content is such that there is an equilibrium between it and water at any temperature and pressure. Saturated steam is water vapor in the condition in which it is generated from the water with which it is in contact. Saturated steam cannot undergo a reduction in temperature without a lowering of its pressure, nor can the temperature be increased without expanding the pressure. Therefore, saturated steam can be described either by its pressure or its temperature with which the two characteristics are linked. Wet steam has far less heat than saturated steam per unit weight of steam. Furthermore, wet steam introduces a lot more water than necessary in the material being sterilized. One major reason for the occurrence of wet steam is the use of long poorly insulated pipes.

In *superheated* steam, no liquid water is present, and the temperature is higher than that of saturated steam at the same pressure. Superheated steam is produced by, for example, passing it over heated surfaces or coils. For the purposes of sterilization, saturated steam is the most dependable, efficient, and effective of the three types of steam. Superheated

steam behaves more like a gas than vapor and takes up water avidly. Although it has a higher temperature than saturated steam at the same pressure, it does not sterilize to the extent of saturated steam. This is because it lacks moisture which enables heat to kill microorganisms at considerably lower temperatures than dry air. Superheated steam, like dry air, would require that the organisms be exposed for periods as long as glassware is exposed in a dry air oven. For transportation over long distances, steam is transported in the superheated form in pipes in order to reduce heat losses; it is returned to saturated steam at the end of the transportation and at the point of use by the introduction of water.

The temperature of steam sterilization is 121°C for media both in industry and in the laboratory. When industrial media are sterilized by heat, steam is forced into the medium which is gently agitated; heating is supplemented when necessary by passing steam through coils running along the fermenter wall. The dilution resulting from steam injection is calculated from the quantity of steam introduced. In some instances, the medium may be autoclaved in a much larger version of a laboratory autoclave known as a retort.

The major difference between sterilization of media in industry and in the laboratory is the much greater scale of the former. Due to the greater scale, it takes a much longer time to attain the sterilizing temperature and to cool down than would be the case in the laboratory.

#### 11.2.1.4 Radiations

The electromagnetic spectrum is given in Fig. 11.1: the shorter the wavelength, the more powerful the radiation.

**Ionizing radiations:** These are extremely high frequency electromagnetic waves (X-rays and gamma rays) which have enough photon energy to produce ionization (create positive and negative electrically charged atoms or parts of molecules) by knocking off the electrons on the outer orbits of atoms of the materials through which they pass. The electrons knocked out are accepted by other atoms. The atoms losing the electrons and those accepting them become ionized on account of the electron charges. It is this ability of x-rays and gamma rays to create ions that has earned them the name ionizing radiations. Gamma rays are generated from x-ray machines such as those used in hospitals to take x-ray pictures. Gamma rays are also produced by the spontaneous decay of radioactive metals such as cobalt 60 ( $\text{Co}^{60}$ ). Ionizing radiations can be used to sterilize plastic syringes, rubber gloves, and other materials which are liable to damage by heat or chemicals.

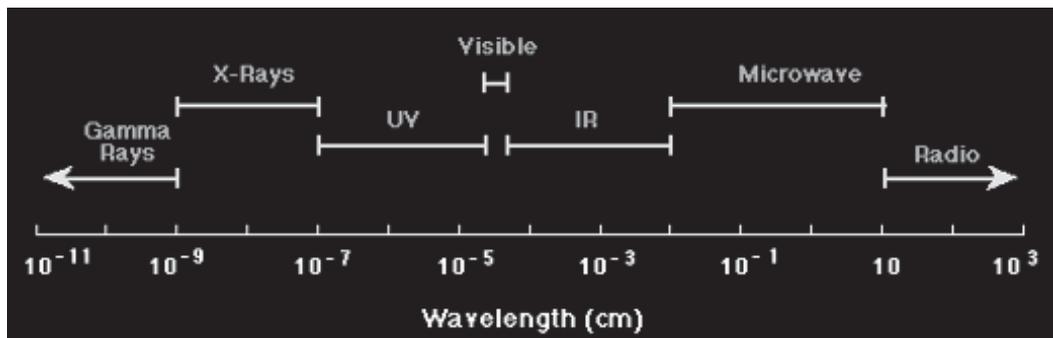


Fig. 11.1 The Electromagnetic Spectrum

**Ultraviolet light:** Visible light falls between wavelengths of 400 and 700 nm. Ultraviolet light (UV) ranges from 100 to 400 nm. The 'germicidal range' of UV light is approximately 200–300 nm with a peak germicidal effectiveness at 254 nm. The process of the killing of microbes by UV involves absorption of a UV photon by DNA chains. This causes a disruption in the DNA chain by causing adjacent thymine bases to dimerize or become linked. The organism's metabolism is disrupted, and it may eventually die.

Unfortunately, ultraviolet light does not penetrate and acts mainly on the surface. Therefore, its use would be limited to laboratory work such as sterilizing the laboratory air or creating mutations in culture improvement. In industry, it is used for sterilizing the air in fermentation halls and other such large open spaces.

## 11.2.2 Chemical Methods

These can be divided into two groups: chemosterilants (which kill both vegetative cells as well as spores of bacteria, fungi, viruses, and protozoa) and disinfectants which may not kill spores or even some vegetative cells, but at least kill unwanted (pathogenic or spoilage) organisms.

### 11.2.2.1 Chemosterilants

For a chemical to be useful as a sterilant, it should have the following properties:

- (i) It should be effective at low concentrations.
- (ii) The components of the medium should not be affected, when used for media.
- (iii) Any breakdown products resulting from its use should be easily removed or be innocuous.
- (iv) It should be effective under ambient conditions.
- (v) It should act rapidly, be inexpensive, and be readily available.
- (vi) It should be non-flammable, non-explosive, and non-toxic.

The discussion on chemosterilants will focus on gaseous sterilants because they have special advantages when parts of the materials to be sterilized are difficult to reach or heat-labile.

### 11.2.2.2 Gaseous sterilants

(i) *Ethylene oxide:* Ethylene oxide  $\text{CH}_2\text{-CH}_2$  reacts with water, alcohol, ammonia, amines, organic acids, and mineral acids. Above  $10.7^\circ\text{C}$  it is gaseous. It is very penetrating and is widely used in the food and pharmaceutical industries where it is capable of killing all forms of microorganisms. However, bacterial spores are however 3–10 times more resistant than vegetative cells.

Spores of some bacteria, e.g. the thermophilic *Bacillus stearothermophilus*, are in fact less resistant than vegetative cells of some bacteria, e.g. *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Micrococcus radiodurans*, and *Streptococcus faecalis*.

Relative humidity is very important in deciding the bacterial activity of ethylene oxide, it is most effective in the range of 28–33% relative humidity. At humidity levels higher

than 33%, it is converted to ethylene glycol which has a weaker anti-bacterial activity. For effectiveness, ethylene oxide requires a much longer time of exposure than steam sterilization.

It is widely used in the pharmaceutical industry for sterilizing rubber and plastic bottles, vials, catheters, and sometimes sutures, syringes, needles, some antibiotics, and microbiological media. Generally, residual ethylene oxide must be removed by allowing it to evaporate and this takes some time.

One of the main disadvantages of the sterilant is that the liquid (which form it assumes below 107°C) is highly inflammable. The gas also forms explosive mixtures with air from 3 to 80% by volume. For this reason, it is mixed with inert gases such as CO<sub>2</sub> often in a ratio of 10% ethylene oxide and 90% CO<sub>2</sub>. Pure ethylene gas has an unpleasant odor. For use, it is introduced into large containers constructed like autoclaves.

(ii) *Propylene oxide*: This is only about half as active as ethylene oxide. It is liquid at room temperature, and it hydrolyzes less slowly than ethylene oxide in the presence of moisture. It is used for room fumigation and in the food industry because some countries discourage the use of ethylene oxide for this purpose. Propylene oxide has been used in industry for sterilizing culture media, powdered and flaked foods, barley seeds, and dried fruits. For these dried foods, an exposure of 1,000–2,000 mg/liter of the sterilant for 2–4 hours resulted in 90–99% kill of various microorganisms including bacteria and fungi. Like ethylene oxide, it is an alkylating agent and should be handled carefully since it is a potential carcinogen.

(iii) *β-propiolactone*: β-propiolactone is a heterocyclic colorless pungent liquid. It is highly active as an antibacterial agent, but it has a low penetrative power. Its probable carcinogenicity has decreased its general applications, although it has been used to fumigate houses. In the pharmaceutical industry, it is used to sterilize plasma and vaccines. When used to sterilize bacterial medium, all spores introduced were killed. Subsequently, *E. coli* grew indicating that no residual toxicity resulted. Indeed, β-propiolactone breaks down to the non-toxic and less carcinogenic β-hydroxypropionic acid. Under maximum operating conditions (temperature, humidity, etc.), it has been claimed that β-propiolactone in the vapor phase is 25 times more effective than formaldehyde, 4000 times more effective than ethylene oxide, and 50,000 more active than methyl bromide. The relative humidity for maximum activity is 75%.

(iv) *Formaldehyde*: Formaldehyde is a gas which is highly soluble in water. Like for other gaseous sterilants, relative humidity is important, but it is most active between 60–90% humidity. It does not penetrate deeply and should be used at 22°C or above to be effective. An exposure of at least 12 hours is necessary. Formaldehyde oxidizes to formic acid and this breakdown product could be corrosive to metals. It is used in the pharmaceutical industries to preserve pathological specimens of animals used for tests.

(v) *Methyl bromide*: Methyl bromide is widely used for fumigation and disinfection in cereal mills, warehouses, granaries, seed houses, and food processing plants. As it is highly toxic, ethylene oxide is sometimes preferred to it. Furthermore, it has been reported to be only about one tenth as effective as ethylene oxide.

(vi) *Sulfur dioxide*: This is a colorless pungent gas. Due to its corrosiveness, it is of limited use, but it is used in the food industries. In wineries, it is used to partially 'sterilize' the grape must before fermentation and to destroy wild yeasts and other unwanted organisms.

### 11.2.2.3 Other sterilants

(i) *Chlorine*: Chlorine is widely used in industry as solutions of hypochloride. It is used for washing pipes in breweries and other establishments and in the dairy industry for sterilizing utensils.

(ii) *Phenol*: Phenol and phenol-derivatives are widely used as disinfectants. Other compounds which could find use in some aspects of industry include ozone, hydrogen peroxide, and quaternary ammonium compounds.

## 11.3 ASPECTS OF STERILIZATION IN INDUSTRY

In this section, the practical methods of dealing with contaminations and the potential for contaminations to occur in industry will be discussed.

### 11.3.1 The Sterilization of the Fermenter and its Accessories

Unless sterilized, the fermenter itself is a source of contamination. Steam is the most practical for fermenter sterilization. It is used to sterilize the medium *in situ* in the fermenter, but sometimes the medium may be sterilized separately in a retort or autoclave and subsequently transferred aseptically to a fermenter. In order to avoid microbial growth within the fermenter when it is not in use, crevices and rough edges are avoided in the construction of fermenters, because these provide pockets of media in which undesirable microorganisms can grow. These crevices and rough edges may also protect any such organisms from the lethal effects of sterilization. Saturated steam should be used and should remain in contact with all parts of the fermenter for at least half an hour. Pipes which lead into the fermenter should be steam-sealed using saturated steam. The various probes used for monitoring fermenter activities, namely probes for dissolved oxygen, CO<sub>2</sub>, pH, foam, etc. should also be sterilized.

### 11.3.2 Media Sterilization

The following should be considered when sterilizing industrial media with steam:

- (i) Breakdown products may result from heating and may render the medium less available to the microorganisms; some of the breakdown products may even be toxic;
- (ii) pH usually falls with sterilization and the usual laboratory practice of making the pH slightly higher than the expected final pH should be followed;
- (iii) Most media would have been sterilized if heat was available to all parts at a temperature of 120–125°C for 15–20 minutes. Oils (sometimes used as anti-foams) are generally more difficult to sterilize. If immiscible with water, they may need to be sterilized separately at a much higher temperature than the above and/or for a longer period.
- (iv) The order and number of the addition of the various components of the medium could be important. Thus, when powders such as corn starch are to be added, it is advisable to dissolve them separately and to add the slurry into the fermenter

with vigorous stirring; otherwise, lumps could form. Such lumps may not only protect some organisms but may even render the powdered material unavailable as nourishment for the target organisms. Some commercial autoclaves therefore have an arrangement for stirring the medium to break up clumps of medium as well as distribute the heat.

**Sterilization of heat labile medium:** Thermo-labile media may be sterilized by tyndallization as described earlier in this chapter.

Chemical sterilization of the medium may be done with  $\beta$ -propiolactone. Filtration may also be used. Filtration is especially useful in the pharmaceutical industry where in addition to sterilization, it also removes pyrogens (fever-producing agents resulting from walls of Gram-negative bacteria), when filtration is combined with charcoal adsorption.

**Batch vs. continuous sterilization:** The various advantages of continuous over batch fermentation can be extended, with appropriate modifications, to sterilization. Exposure to sterilization temperature and cooling thereafter are achieved in continuous sterilization in much shorter periods than with batch sterilization. The two methods generally used for continuous sterilization are shown in [Fig. 11.1](#).

## 11.4 VIRUSES (PHAGES) IN INDUSTRIAL MICROBIOLOGY

Viruses are non-cellular entities which consist basically of protein and either DNA or RNA and replicate only within specific living cells. They have no cellular metabolism of their own and their genomes direct the genetic apparatuses of their hosts, once they are within them. Viruses are important in the industrial microbiology for at least two reasons:

- (i) Those that are pathogenic to man and animals are used to make vaccines against disease caused by the viruses.
- (ii) Viruses can cause economic losses by destroying microorganisms used in fermentations.

This second aspect will be considered in this section. We will look at those viruses which attack organisms of industrial importance, namely bacteria (including actinomycetes) and fungi. Such viruses are known as bacteriophages, actinophages, or mycophages depending on which one of these organisms they attack.

### 11.4.1 Morphological Grouping of Bacteriophages

Bacteriophages can be divided into six broad morphological groups. Most phages attacking industrial organisms are to be found in groups I, II, and III.

### 11.4.2 Lysis of Hosts by Phages

The growth cycle of a phage has three steps: adsorption onto the host cell, multiplication within the cell, and liberation of the prepotency phages by the lysis of the host cell. Phages may be classified as virulent or temperate according to their reaction to their host. In temperate phages, the phage genome (known as a prophage) integrates in and replicates with the genetic apparatus of the host. They can be lysogenic and are known as lysogens.

Temperate phages may become virulent and lyse their hosts, either spontaneously or after induction by various agents, e.g. mitomycin C or UV light. They may also mutate

to lytic phages, complete the virus growth cycle, and lyse their hosts. For this reason, lysogenic phages should be avoided in industrial microorganisms.

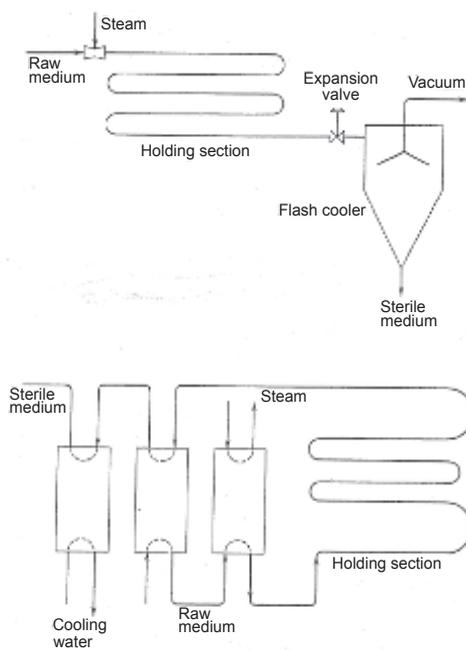
The nature of the interferences caused by phages in an industrial fermentation depends on a number of factors.

- (i) The kinds of phages.
- (ii) The time and period of phage infect.
- (iii) The medium composition.
- (iv) The general physical and chemical conditions of the fermenter.

The manifestation of infection is variable, and the same phage does not always cause the same symptom. In general, the symptom of infection could be a slowing down of the process resulting in poor yield, this being the case when the infection is light. When it is heavy, the cells may be completely lysed. The length of time before a phage manifests itself is variable depending on its latent period (i.e. the period before the cell is lysed) and the number of phages released. In a continuously operated fermentation, phages may take up to three months to manifest themselves. In general however, the period is much shorter.

### 11.4.3 Prevention of Phage Contamination

Phages are as ubiquitous as microorganisms in general and are present in the air, water, soil, etc. Therefore, the first cardinal rule in avoiding phage contamination is routine general cleanliness and asepsis. Pipes, fermenters, utensils, and media should all be well



Top: Direct injection of steam into medium  
 Bottom: Medium sterilization via heated plates, steam is not injected directly into the medium  
 Note that in both methods the medium is held in a holding section for a period of time

**Fig. 11.2** Methods of Continuous Sterilization

sterilized. The culture should be protected from aerial phage contamination, an insidious situation which, unlike bacterial or fungal contamination, cannot be observed on agar. Air filters should be replaced or sterilized regularly.

Aerosol sterilization of the factory with chlorine compounds, and other disinfectants as well as UV irradiation of fermentation halls should be done routinely.

#### 11.4.4 Use of Phage-Resistant Mutants

Phages may of course be introduced as direct contaminants or be lysogenic in the organism used in the fermentation. Mutants as productive as the original parent but resistant to various contaminating phages should be developed. Such mutants should have no tendency to revert to the phage-sensitive type. Freedom from particular phages can be checked by treating the organisms with antisera against phages normally likely to attach to the surfaces of the organisms. Lysogenic bacteria which are resistant to some phages even when high yielding should be avoided.

Phage-resistant mutants may become infected by new phages to which the organisms have no resistance.

#### 11.4.5 Chemical Inhibition of Phage Multiplication

Specific chemicals selectively active on phages and not harmful to bacteria may be used in the fermentation medium.

- (i) To prevent infection by phages requiring divalent cations ( $Mg^{2+}$ ;  $Ca^{2+}$ ) for adsorption to host cell or for DNA injection into the host cell, chelating agents have been used. These sequester the cations from the medium, and hence the phage cannot adsorb onto its host. Examples of the chelating agents are 0.2–0.3% tri-polyphosphate and 0.1–0.2% citrate.
- (ii) Non-ionic detergents, e.g. tween 20, tween 60, polyethylene glycol monoester, also inhibit the adsorption of some phages or the multiplication of the phages in the cell.
- (iii) The addition of  $Fe^{2+}$  suppresses cell lysis by phages.
- (iv) Certain antibiotics may be added to prevent growth of phages. Chloramphenicol has been used. It has no direct action on the phage, but it inhibits protein replication in phage-infected cells probably due to selective absorption of the antibiotic by phage-infected cells.

#### 11.4.6 Use of Adequate Media Conditions and Other Practices

Fermentation conditions and practices which adversely affect phage development should be selected. Media unfavorable to phages (high pH, low  $Ca^{2+}$ , citrates, and salts with cations reacting with  $-SH$  groups) should be developed. Pasteurization of the final beer and high temperature of incubation consistent with production should be used.

### END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. An industrial microbiology organization can suffer huge financial losses due to contamination. Discuss how contamination can influence product quality and yield.

2. Itemize methods of achieving sterility in industrial microbiology processes.
3. A very active antimicrobial drug was found to be heat sensitive. Discuss methods you would employ to produce sterile preparations of this drug.

### **SUGGESTED READINGS**

- Flickinger, M.C., Drew, S.W. (eds.) 1999. Encyclopedia of Bioprocess Technology—Fermentation, Biocatalysis, and Bioseparation. Vol. 1–5. John Wiley, New York, USA.
- Soares, C. 2002. Process Engineering Equipment Handbook Publisher. McGraw-Hill.
- Vogel, H.C., Tadaro, C.L. 1997. Fermentation and Biochemical Engineering Handbook—Principles, Process Design, and Equipment. (2nd ed) Noyes.
- Zeng, A. 1999. Continuous Culture. *In*: Manual of Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology. A.L. Demain, J.E. Davies (eds.) 2nd ed. ASM Press. Washington, DC, USA. pp. 151–164.



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## **Section** D

Production of *Metabolites* as  
Bulk Chemicals or as Inputs in  
Other Processes



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# CHAPTER 12

---

## Biocatalysts, Immobilized Enzymes and Immobilized Cells

---

### 12.1 ENZYMES PRODUCED BY MICROORGANISMS

Enzymes are organic compounds which catalyze all the chemical reactions of living things—plants, animals, and microorganisms. They contain mainly protein; some of them however contain non-protein components known as prosthetic groups. When excreted or extracted from the producing organism, enzymes are capable of acting independently of their source.

All enzymes have infrastructural backbones of protein. In some enzymes, only proteins exist, while in others, covalently attached carbohydrate groups may be present. Often, these carbohydrate groups may play no part in the catalytic activity of the enzyme, though they may contribute to the stability and solubility of the enzyme. Metal ions known as co-factors and low molecular weight organic compounds known as co-enzymes may also be present. Co-factors and co-enzymes are important for the stability and activity of the enzyme. They have a tendency to detach, and it is important to provide conditions which ensure their retention.

Most industrial enzymes can be obtained from microorganisms. The advantages of using microorganisms are numerous:

- (a) Plants and animals grow slowly in comparison with microorganisms.
- (b) Enzymes form only small portions of the total plant or animal, and large tracts of land as well as huge numbers of animals would be necessary for substantial productions. These limitations make plant and animal enzymes expensive. Microbial enzymes on the other hand are not subject to the above constraints and may be produced at will in any desired amount.
- (c) By far, the greatest attraction for the production of microbial enzymes is the great diversity of enzymes which reflects the diversity of microbial types in nature. Thus, due to the widely varying environmental conditions in nature, microbial enzymes have been isolated which are able to operate under extreme environmental conditions.

For example, microorganisms produce amylases functioning at temperatures as high as 110°C and proteases operating at pH values as high as 11 or as low as 3.

- (d) Finally, following greater understanding of the genetic basis for the control of physiological function in microorganisms, it is now possible to manipulate microorganisms to produce virtually any desired metabolic product, including enzymes.

## 12.2 CLASSIFICATION OF ENZYMES

Based on catalyzed reactions, the enzyme committee (EC) of the International Union of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology (IUBMB) recommended the classification of enzymes into six groups. The nomenclature of enzymes is based on the number assigned to these six major groups and the sub-groups found within the major groups. Enzymes are also known by long-standing common names which are also widely used.

The IUBMB committee also defines subclasses and sub-subclasses. Each enzyme is assigned an EC (Enzyme Commission) number. For example, the EC number of catalase is EC 1.11.1.6. The first digit indicates that the enzyme belongs to oxido-reductases (class 1). Subsequent digits represent subclasses and sub-subclasses. Thus, the enzyme rennet used in cheese manufacture and also known as chymosin has the number of EC 5.3.1.5. The six major EC groups are as follows:

**1. Oxidoreductases** catalyze a variety of oxidation-reduction reactions. Common names include dehydrogenase, oxidase, reductase, and catalase.

**2. Transferases** catalyze transfers of groups (acetyl, methyl, phosphate, etc.). Common names include acetyltransferase, methylase, protein kinase, and polymerase. The first three play major roles in the regulation of cellular processes.

**3. Hydrolases** catalyze hydrolysis reactions where a molecule is split into two or more smaller molecules by the addition of water. Some examples are:

*Proteases:* Proteases split protein molecules. They are further classified by their optimum pH as acid, alkaline, or neutral. They may also be classified on the basis of their active centers into the following:

- (i) *Serine proteases:* These have a serine residue in their active center and are specifically inhibited by di-isopropyl phosphofluoridate and other organophosphorous derivatives.
- (ii) *Thiol proteases:* The activity of these depends on the presence of an intact-SH group in their active center. They are specifically inhibited by thiol reagents such as heavy metal ions and their derivatives as well as alkylating and oxidizing agents.
- (iii) *Metal proteases:* These depend on the larger presence of less tightly bound divalent cations for their activity.
- (iv) *Acid proteases:* Acid proteases contain one or more side chain carboxyl groups in their active center.

*Nucleases* split nucleic acids (DNA and RNA). Based on the substrate type, they are divided into RNase and DNase. RNase catalyzes the hydrolysis of RNA, and DNase acts on DNA. They may also be divided into **exonuclease** and **endonuclease**. The exonuclease progressively splits off single nucleotides from one end of DNA or RNA. The endonuclease splits DNA or RNA at internal sites.

Phosphatase catalyzes dephosphorylation (removal of phosphate groups).

4. **Lyases** catalyze the cleavage of C-C, C-O, C-S, and C-N bonds by means other than hydrolysis or oxidation. Common names include decarboxylase and aldolase.

5. **Isomerases** catalyze atomic rearrangements within a molecule. Examples include rotamase, protein disulfide isomerase (PDI), epimerase, and racemase.

6. **Ligases** catalyze the reaction which joins two molecules. Examples include peptide synthase, aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase, DNA ligase, and RNA ligase.

### 12.3 USES OF ENZYMES IN INDUSTRY

Most of the enzymes used in industry are hydrolases (i.e. those which hydrolyze large molecules). In particular, amylases, proteases, pectinases, and to a lesser extent lipases have been most commonly used.

(i) **Production of nutritive sweeteners from starch:** Enzymatic hydrolysis has now almost completely replaced the use of acid in starch hydrolysis. The sweeteners which have been produced from starch are high conversion (or high DE) syrup, high maltose syrup, glucose syrup, dextrose crystals, and high fructose syrup. These sweeteners are often called corn syrups because they are produced from maize, although starch from any source (e.g. cassava, sorghum, or potatoes) may be used. The processes of production of sweeteners from corn consists of the gelatinization of starch, production of water-soluble dextrans with  $\alpha$ -amylase, the subsequent application of a de-branching enzyme (e.g. pullulanase), and depending on the sugar sought, the application of a third enzyme.  $\alpha$ -Amylase from *B. licheniformis* is particularly suitable for dextrinization due to its optimum temperature of 110°C, a convenient temperature on account of the need to boil starch to gelatinize it. If high maltose syrup is sought,  $\alpha$ -amylase is applied, while for glucose syrup, gluco-amylase is applied (Fig. 12.1). Dextrose crystals are usually produced by removing minerals with ion exchange resins and then crystallizing the liquid after concentration.

Nowadays, most sweeteners produced from starch are in the form of high fructose corn syrup (HFCS). Glucose is not as sweet as sucrose, while fructose is about 1.7 times as sweet as sucrose. In the confectionary industry therefore, glucose resulting from the hydrolysis of starch is converted to fructose by the enzyme glucose isomerase which rearranges the glucose molecule to yield fructose and the syrup itself to a glucose/fructose syrup.

Glucose isomerase is completely specific for monomeric D-glucose. The maltose, maltotriose, and higher malto-oligosaccharides present in glucose syrup are untouched by the enzyme. An acceptable composition of high-fructose glucose syrups in commerce is: fructose 42%, glucose 50%, maltose 6%, and maltotriose 2%. These high fructose mixtures are used in place of sucrose and invert sugar in the baking and beverages industries. HFCS production represents one of the major uses of enzymes.

Fructose has other qualities which make it superior to glucose. It is regarded as a low-calorie sweetener, since it is so much sweeter than sucrose. Furthermore, fructose is favored for intravenous infusions over glucose because the body tolerates it better. It is therefore the preferred sugar for patients in a state of shock. Finally, it is more quickly absorbed than glucose and does not need the enzyme and hormonal system required for absorbing the former.

Organisms which have served as sources for glucose isomerase include more than two dozen strains of *Streptomyces*, several of *Arthrobacter*, *Nocardia*, *Micromonospora* as well as *Lactobacillus brevis* and *Pseudomonas hydrophila*.

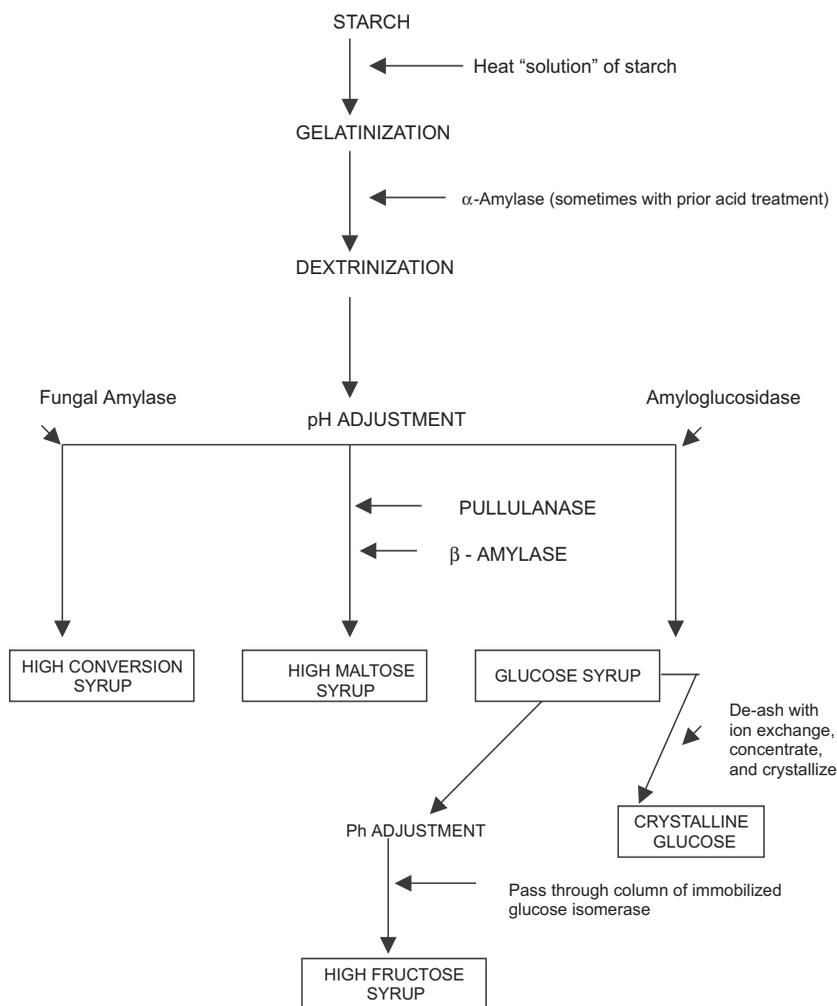


Fig. 12.1 Hydrolysis of Starch for High Fructose Corn Syrup Production

(ii) *Proteolytic enzymes in the detergent industry:* The detergent industry is at present one of the greatest consumers of enzymes, mostly utilizing proteases. Blood and pus stains from hospital linen and other protein dirt precipitate and coagulate on clothes and are ordinarily difficult to remove. The inclusion of proteolytic enzymes in a detergent or washing soap greatly facilitates the removal of such stains. The proteolytic enzymes used for this purpose should have a high pH optimum of 9–11, which is the pH of detergents, and a high temperature optimum of 65–70°C, since hot water facilitates laundering. Furthermore, the enzyme should be able to cleave peptide bonds randomly and facilitate the dissolution of the protein. Such proteolytic enzymes have been produced mainly by alkalophilic and aerobic spore-formers such as strains of *Bacillus licheniformis* and *Bacillus amyloliquifaciens*.

Soon after the introduction of enzymes in detergents in the early 1960s, some factory workers handling the enzymes suffered from allergic reactions. Strong public protests led to the withdrawal of enzymes in detergents; however, a commission of inquiry showed

that there was no danger to the user. Subsequently, enzymes are added in dust-free encapsulated preparations to avoid inhalation by producers and users.

**(iii) Microbial rennets:** Rennin is an acid protease found in gastric juice of young mammals where it helps to digest milk. It is used in the manufacture of cheese and functions by hydrolyzing a polypeptide fragment from milk protein, kappa casein, to leave paracasein which then forms an insoluble complex with cations to give a firm curd. The commercial form of rennin known as rennet is obtained from the fourth stomachs of young calves which makes it expensive. Strains of *Mucor miehi*, *M. pusillus*, *Endothia parasitica*, *Bacillus polymyxa*, *B. subtilis*, and *Aspergillus* are now used to produce acid proteases which successfully substitute for rennin. Microbial rennet constitutes the third largest use of microbial enzymes.

**(iv) Lactase:** Lactase hydrolyzes the disaccharide lactose into its component galactose and glucose, both of which are sweeter than lactose and correspond to the addition of 0.9% sucrose. Thus, dairy products containing lactose, such as yoghurt and ice cream, can be sweeter and more acceptable to consumers without the extra expense of extraneously added sugar. Galactose and glucose are also metabolized by a far wider range of organisms than lactose. Milk in which lactose is hydrolyzed is preferred by individuals in some parts of the world where intestinal lactase is low. Finally, when lactose occurs in high concentrations, such as is in ice cream, it tends to crystallize out giving the impression during consumption that grains of sand are present in the product. The addition of lactase prevents such crystallization. Lactase is now produced commercially from *Kluyveromyces fragilis*, *Saccharomyces lactis*, or *Aspergillus niger*.

**(v) The textile industry:** In the textile industry, large amounts of starch, gelatin, and their derivatives such as glue are used to strengthen threads (yarns) of synthetic and natural materials (e.g. cotton) to enable them to stand abrasion during weaving and also to polish sewing thread. Starch and its derivatives are furthermore used to restrict dye stuffs and prevent their diffusion to other portions of the fabric.

At the end of the manufacturing, the starch is removed with thermostable  $\alpha$ -amylases from *Bacillus licheniformis*. The cloth is passed through hot water to remove inorganic salts and to raise the temperature. It is then passed into an enzyme solution where it is allowed to remain from 15 minutes to several hours depending on the enzyme concentration and other factors.

Natural silk threads are proteinaceous in nature and consist of a highly resistant protein known as fibroin, but they are held together by a semi-soluble protein gum known as sericin. Sericin is removed with a neutral proteolytic enzyme; the silk threads are then sized and woven into cloth after which they are de-sized in an amylase or protease depending on the sizing material.

**(vi) Pectinases for use in fruit juice and wine manufacture:** Pectinases are enzymes which attack pectic substances, a group of complex acidic polysaccharides. Pectic substances are high molecular weight substances made up of poly-D-galacturonic acid. As the carboxylic acid groups of the sugar units are partially esterified with methanol, they are regarded as poly-uronides. They are the cementing material holding plant cells together.

*Proteopectin:* The water-insoluble parent pectic substance which occurs in plants and which, upon restricted hydrolysis, yields pectin or pectinic acids.

*Pectinic acids:* are colloidal polygalacturonic acids containing more than a negligible proportion of methyl ester groups.

Pectic substances may be regarded as polygalacturonides composed of unbranched  $\alpha$ -1, 4 galacturonic acid residues, but with other non-uronides bound to the chain. However, pectic materials are not uniform because of the great variations which have been observed by many authors in the molecular weights, degree of esterification and acetylation, and amount and type of neutral sugars and non-uronide residues found in various preparations of pectic substances.

Pectinolytic enzymes or pectinases are widely distributed in plants and among microorganisms. These enzymes vary greatly in their mechanisms of action, but may be grouped into two: esterases which de-esterify pectin to pectic acid and depolymerases which depolymerize pectin, pectic acid, or short-chain galacturonic acid (ligo-D-galacturonates) derived from pectin and pectic acids. *Aspergilli* (*A. niger*, *A. oryzae*, *A. wentii*, and *A. flavus*) and other fungi are used for industrial enzyme production. The industrial enzymes themselves are a mixture of various pectinolytic enzymes.

Pectinolytic enzymes are used principally in the fruit juice, fruit processing, and the wine industries. In the fruit juice and fruit industry, pectinases are used to disintegrate the fruit and to clarify the resulting juices to give a clear sparkling liquid after the filtration of the debris.

Another application of pectinases which does not involve the isolation of the enzymes but which deserves mention is the retting of plants for flax (linen) from flaxseed (*Linum usitatissimum*) and hemp (*Cannabis sativa*) and of jute from *Corchorus* sp. Pectinolytic enzymes are produced anaerobically by *Clostridium* spp. when the plants are immersed in water. When aerobic conditions prevail as in 'dew-retting', the organisms which have been isolated include *Bacillus comesii*, and the fungi, *Cladosporium*, *Aspergillus*, and *Penicillium*.

**(vii) Naringinase** is used for removing the bitter tasting substance from citrus fruits, especially grape fruits. Naringin is a flavonoid found in grapefruits giving them their characteristic bitter flavor. Flavonoids are a group of polyphenolic secondary metabolites secreted by plants and found widely among plants. Although naringin is supposed to have some beneficial effects such as stimulating our perception of taste by stimulating the taste buds, the bitter taste is undesirable in fruit juices. Therefore, grapefruit processors attempt to select fruits with a low naringin content or use naringinase produced by strains of *Aspergillus* spp. to remove it.

**(viii) Enzymes in the baking industry:** Flour contains 72–75% starch, 11–13% protein, and 0.04–0.4% minerals. It also contains amylases and proteases derived from wheat. These enzymes play major roles in the nature of the final baked product. When the flour is deficient in amylases, unusually low amounts of sugar and intermediate products are produced giving rise to low volume, dry texture, and other undesirable characteristics in the finished bread. Similarly, while wheat brands rich in gluten (or 'hard' wheat) are suitable for bread making because they are highly elastic, they are not suitable for cakes.

However, 'hard' wheat is rendered 'soft' by the hydrolysis of some of the gluten using proteases. Bakery amylases and proteases are derived from fungi.

**(ix) Enzymes in the alcoholic beverages industry:** Amylases derived from fungi or bacilli may be employed in the distilled alcoholic beverages to hydrolyze starch to sugars prior to fermentation by yeasts. The enzymes may also be used to hydrolyze unmalted barley and other starchy adjuncts converting them to maltose and thus reducing the cost of beer brewing. Turbidities due to starch may arise in beer due to the destruction of the amylases following the use of too high a temperature during malt kilning. Amylases are used to remove turbidities due to starch. In beer, chill-hazes are due mainly to protein-tannin

(protein-polyphenol) precipitates. Chill-hazes may be removed in several ways, one of which is the addition of proteases usually derived from *Aspergillus niger*.

(x) **Leather baiting:** The purpose of baiting of animal skin is to prepare the de-haired skins and hides for tanning. Baiting used to be done by keeping the skin in a warm suspension of chicken and dog dung which probably yielded proteolytic bacteria. Nowadays, proteolytic enzymes from *Bacillus* spp. and *Aspergillus* spp. are used. The effect of baiting is to make the fibrous protein collagen of which leather is composed more amenable to the subsequent processes of leather manufacture.

(xi) **Some medical uses of microbial enzymes:** At present, the most successful medical applications of enzymes are the use of proteolytic enzymes from *Bacillus* spp. and other bacteria for the treatment of burns and skin cancers and the treatment of life-threatening disorders within the blood circulation using hemolytic enzymes produced from  $\beta$ -hemolytic streptococci. Other uses are:

- (a) Fungal acid proteases may be used to treat alimentary dyspepsia because of the acid resistance of the enzyme. Fungal amylases may also be used to help digestion.
- (b) Dextrans deposited on the teeth by *Streptococcus mutans* may be removed with the use of fungal dextranase often introduced into the toothpaste, thus helping to fight dental decay.
- (c) L-asparaginase produced from *E. coli* and other gram-negative bacteria may be used in the treatment of certain kinds of leukemia.
- (d) Penicillinases produced by many organisms are sometimes used in emergency cases of penicillin hypersensitivity.
- (e) Rhodanase has been used to combat cyanide poisoning. It is produced by the thermoacidophilic bacterium *Sulfolobus sibiricus*.

## 12.4 PRODUCTION OF ENZYMES

### 12.4.1 Fermentation for Enzyme Production

Most enzyme production is carried out in deep submerged fermentation; a few are best produced in semi-solid media.

#### 12.4.1.1 Semi solid medium

This system, also known as the 'Koji' or 'moldy bran' method of 'solid state' fermentation is still widely used in Japan. The medium consists of moist sterile wheat or rice bran acidified with HCl; mineral salts including trace minerals are added. An inducer is also usually added: 10% starch is used for amylase; gelatin and pectin for protein and pectinase production, respectively. The organisms used are fungi, which appear amenable to high enzyme production because of the low moisture condition and high degree of aeration of the semi-soluble medium.

The moist bran inoculated with spores of the appropriate fungi is distributed either in flat trays or placed in a revolving drum. Moisture (about 8%) is maintained by occasionally spraying water on the trays and by circulating moist air over the preparation. The temperature of the bran is kept at about 30°C by the circulating cool air.

The production period is usually 30–40 hours. The optimum production is determined by withdrawing the growth from time to time and assaying for enzyme. The material is dried with hot air at about 37°C–40°C and ground.

Growth in a semi-solid medium sometimes seems to encourage an enzyme range different from that produced in submerged growth. Thus, *Aspergillus oryzae* on semi-solid medium will produce a large number of enzymes, primarily amylase, glucoamylase, and protease. In submerged culture, amylase production rises at the expense of the other enzymes. Similarly, if *Aspergillus oryzae* producing takadiastase (a commercial powder containing amylase and some protease) is grown in submerged culture, four protease components are formed whereas on semi-solid medium, not only are merely two proteases formed, but these are less heat resistant than those produced in submerged fermentation.

#### 12.4.1.2 Submerged production

Enzyme production by submerged cultivation in a deep fermenter has replaced semi-solid production wherever possible because the latter is labor intensive and therefore expensive, and due to the risk of infection and the generally greater ease of controlling temperature, pH, and other environmental factors in a fermenter.

The medium must contain all the requirements for growth, including adequate sources of carbon, nitrogen, various metals, trace elements, growth substances, etc. However, a medium adequate for growth may not be satisfactory for enzyme production.

For the production of inducible enzymes, the inducers must be present. Thus, pectic substances need to be in the medium when pectinolytic enzymes are the desired product. Similarly, in the production of microbial rennet, soy bean proteins are added into the medium to induce protease production by most fungi. The inducer may not always be the substrate; sometimes, a breakdown or end-product may serve such as cellobiose which stimulates cellulose production.

Some easily metabolizable components of the medium may repress enzyme production by catabolite repression. Strong repression is often seen in media containing glucose. Thus,  $\alpha$ -amylase synthesis is repressed by glucose in *Bacillus licheniformis* and *B. subtilis*. In many organisms, protease synthesis is repressed by amino acids as well as by glucose. It is therefore common to replace glucose by more slowly metabolized carbohydrates such as partly hydrolyzed starch.

End-product inhibition has also been widely observed. Some specific amino acids inhibit protease production in some organisms. Thus, isoleucine and proline are involved in the case of *B. megaterium*, while sulfur amino acids inhibit protease formation in *Aspergillus niger*.

Temperature and pH requirements have to be worked out for each organism and each desired product. The temperature and pH requirements for optimum growth, enzyme production, and stability of the enzyme are not necessarily the same for all enzymes. The temperature adopted for the fermentation is usually a compromise taking all three requirements into account.

The oxygen requirement is usually high, as most of the organisms employed in enzyme production are aerobic. Vigorous aeration and agitation are therefore done in the submerged fermentations for enzyme production. Batch fermentation is usually employed in commercial enzyme fermentation and lasts from one to seven days.

In a few cases, the enzyme production is highest during the exponential phase of growth, but in most others, it occurs post-exponentially. Furthermore, different enzymes

are produced at different stages of the growth cycle. Thus, *A. niger* produces mostly  $\alpha$ -amylases in the first 72 hours but mainly maltase thereafter.

### 12.4.2 Enzyme Extraction

The procedures for the extraction of fermentation products described in [Chapter 10](#) are applicable to enzyme extraction. In order to limit contamination and degradation of the enzyme, the broth is cooled to about 20°C as soon as the fermentation is over. Stabilizers such as calcium salts, proteins, sugar, and starch hydrolysates may be added and destabilizing metals may be removed with EDTA. Antimicrobials if used at all are those that are normally allowed in food such as benzoates and sorbate. Most industrial enzymes are extracellular in nature. In the case of cell bound enzymes, the cells are disrupted before centrifugation and/or vacuum filtration.

The extent of the purification after the clarification depends on the purpose for which the enzyme is to be used. Sometimes, enzymes may be precipitated using a variety of chemicals such as methanol, acetone, ethyl alcohol, or ammonium sulfate. The precipitate may be further purified by dialysis, chromatography, etc. before being dried in a drum drier or a low temperature vacuum drier depending on the stability of the enzymes to high temperature. Ultra-filtration separation technique based on molecular size may be used.

### 12.4.3 Packaging and Finishing

Enzymes are packaged preferably in liquid form but where solids are used, the enzyme is mixed with a filler. It is now common practice to coat the particles with wax so that enzyme dusts are not formed.

### 12.4.4 Toxicity Testing and Standardization

The enzyme preparation should be tested by animal feeding to show that it is not toxic. This test not only assays the enzyme itself but any toxic side-product released by the microorganisms. The potency of the enzyme preparation, based on tests carried out with the substrate, should be determined. The shelf life and conditions of storage for optimal activity should also be determined.

## 12.5 IMMOBILIZED BIOCATALYSTS: ENZYMES AND CELLS

The major handicap in the traditional use of enzymes is that they are only used once, mainly because the enzymes are unstable in the soluble form in which they are used, and recovery would be expensive, if even possible.

The immobilization of enzymes and cells provides a basis for the reuse of enzymes and cells. Interest in immobilized enzymes has grown since the 1960s. Immobilized cells have also received a great deal of attention.

(i) *Immobilized enzymes*: An immobilized enzyme may be defined as an isolated or purified enzyme confined or localized in a defined volume of space.

(ii) *Immobilized cells*: Immobilized cells, also referred to as controlled biological catalysts, may be defined as a high density of cells physically confined on a solid phase or in pellets or clumps and in which cell movement is restricted for the period of their use as biological

agents. This definition excludes cells in a chemostat or cells which are recovered by centrifugation in a batch culture and returned to the fermentation. Cell immobilization has existed or been exploited long before it became recognized as potentially valuable in industry. Thus, microorganisms in natural habitats such as soil, marine, alimentary canal, dental plaque, in the 'Orleans' process of vinegar production where cells are immobilized on wood shavings, or the activated and trickling filter treatment of wastewater may be seen as examples of immobilized cells.

### 12.5.1 General Advantages of Immobilized Biocatalysts

The advantages of immobilized enzymes beside reuse are as follows:

- (i) They can be easily separated from the reaction mixture containing any residual reactants and reused.
- (ii) Immobilized enzymes are more stable over broad ranges of pH and temperature.
- (iii) Enzymes are absent in the waste-stream.
- (iv) Immobilized systems specially lend themselves to continuous processes.
- (v) Reduced costs in industrial production.
- (vi) Greater control of the catalytic effect.
- (vii) Greater ease of new applications for industrial and medical purposes.
- (viii) Immobilized enzymes permit the use of enzymes from organisms which would not normally be regarded as safe (i.e. non-GRAS).

### 12.5.2 Methods of Immobilizing Enzymes

The classification of immobilized enzymes adopted here is the one published in 1995 by the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) which divides methods of immobilized enzymes into four broad groups:

- (a) covalent bonding of the enzyme to a derivatized water-insoluble matrix,
- (b) intermolecular crosslinking of enzyme molecules using multifunctional reagents,
- (c) adsorption of enzyme onto a water-insoluble matrix, and
- (d) entrapment of the enzyme molecule inside a water-insoluble polymer lattice or semi-permeable membrane.

The IUPAC groups can be divided into two basic groups, the chemical and the physical methods as shown in [Fig. 12.2](#).

The IUPAC emphasizes that in dealing with immobilized enzymes, the properties of the free enzyme, the type of support used, and the methods of support activation and enzyme attachment must be specified.

#### 12.5.2.1 Immobilization by covalent linkage

Covalent linkage is achieved between a functional group on the enzyme not essential for catalytic activity and a reactive group on a solid water-insoluble support. The functional groups available on enzymes for linkage are amino and carboxyl groups, hydroxyl groups, imidazole groups, indole groups, phenolic groups, and sulfhydryl groups. The nature

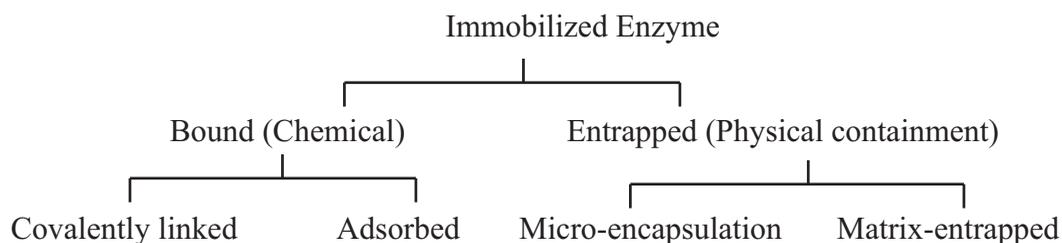


Fig. 12.2 Methods of Enzyme Immobilization

of the enzyme's functional group determines the reaction which will be used to bind the enzyme to the support. Some of the reactions which have been used are acylation, amination, arylation, and alkylation.

Some supports which have been used for immobilization include agarose, cellulose, dextran, chitin, starch, polygalacturonic acid (pectin), polyacrylamide, polyvinyl alcohol, polystyrene, polypropylene, polyamino acids, polyamide, glass and metal aides, and bentonite. Recently, the use of inorganic support has been advocated on the grounds of reuse of inorganic materials, non-toxicity, good half-life of enzymes immobilized on inorganic supports, and the ease with which inorganic materials can be fashioned to suit any particular enzyme system.

In the above description, the reaction has been a direct one between functional groups on the enzyme and reactive sites on the support. In some cases, intermolecular linkage may occur through the mediation of a crosslinking reagent. In such cases, the crosslinking agent has a number of different active sites. Some of these react with the support and others with the enzyme. One of the most commonly used crosslinking agent is glutaraldehyde which has two crosslinking sites. The advantages of the covalent bonding method of enzyme immobilization are:

- (i) The coupling of the enzyme to the support is easy to conduct and consists of allowing support and enzyme to interact and therefore facilitates centrifuging and washing off any enzymes not bound.
- (ii) The enzyme-support derivative is easy to manipulate and adapt because of the great physical and chemical variation in the available support: they can be used in a variety of reactors including stirred tank, fluidized bed-reactors and can also be modified into flat sheets fiber.
- (iii) Covalent coupling has been widely described, and methods for carrying it out are readily available in the literature.
- (iv) The supports themselves are widely available commercially.

The disadvantages are that some preparations are tedious to make; the chemical bonding may inactivate the enzyme in some cases; and finally, covalently-bound water-insoluble enzyme-substrate derivatives act poorly on high molecular weight substrates.

### 12.5.2.2 Immobilization by adsorption

This method is both simple and inexpensive and consists of bringing an enzyme solution in contact with a water-insoluble solvent surface and washing off the unadsorbed enzyme. The extent of the adsorption depends on a number of factors including the nature of the

support, pH, temperature, time, and enzyme concentration. In principle, though not always in practice, adsorption is reversible. Adsorbents which have been used include alumina, bentonite, calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate, carbon, cellulose, charcoal, clay, collagen, diatomaceous earth, glass, ion-exchange resins, sephadex, and silica gel. Apart from the ease of the operation, the other advantage is that the enzymes are unlikely to be inactivated because the system is mild. The disadvantage is that in cases of weak binding the enzyme may be easily washed away.

### 12.5.2.3 Immobilization by microencapsulation

Microencapsulation consists of packaging the enzyme in tiny, usually spherical capsules ranging from 5–300  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter in semi-permeable (permanent) or liquid (non-permanent) membranes. To prepare microcapsules, a high aqueous concentration of the enzyme is first prepared. The aqueous enzymes solution is then emulsified in an organic solvent or solvents with a surfactant which is soluble in the organic solvents. Two methods are then used to form microcapsules from this enzyme-surfactant emulsion.

In one method known as the interfacial polymerization technique, the enzyme solution contains the enzyme as well as one component of the membrane that will form round the microcapsule. The emulsion is stirred vigorously, and more of the organic solvent(s) containing the rest of the capsule-forming reagent is added.

In the second method, the coacervation-dependent method, the added organic solvents contain all the components of the polymer. In both cases, the enzyme droplets are formed during the vigorous stirring. The semi-permeable membrane is allowed to harden around the micro-droplets; the microcapsules are then washed and transferred.

Semi-permeable membranes have been made of cellulose nitrate, polystyrene, etc. with the coacervation method.

Microcapsule formation by the interfacial method has been produced from nylon and is widely investigated because of its application in medicine such as in urease immobilization in artificial kidneys.

The advantages of the permanent (semi-permeable) microencapsulation method:

- (i) An extremely large surface is provided by the tiny bubbles of enzymes. A microcapsule with 20  $\mu\text{m}$  diameter would for example have a surface area of 2,500  $\text{cm}_2/\text{ml}$ .
- (ii) The specificity of the microcapsule is increased by the possibility of using a membrane which will favor the diffusion of substrates of certain types.

The disadvantage is that a high concentration of enzyme is needed and only low molecular weight substances pass through.

### 12.5.2.4 Immobilization by entrapment

In the entrapment of enzymes, no reaction occurs between support and the enzyme. A cross-linked polymeric network is formed around the enzyme. Alternatively, the enzyme is placed in a polymeric substance, and the polymeric chains crosslink. Polyacrylamide gels have been widely used for this purpose, although enzymes do leak through the network in some cases.

The advantages of the entrapping method are: (i) its simplicity, (ii) the small amount of enzyme used, (iii) the unlikelihood of damage to the enzyme, and (iv) applicability to water-insoluble enzymes.

The disadvantages include leakage of enzymes and some chemical and thermal enzyme damage during gel formation.

### 12.5.3 Methods for the Immobilization of Cells

Three general methods are available for immobilizing microbial cells.

- (i) *Ionic binding to water-soluble ion-exchangers*: Cells of *E. coli* and *Azotobacter agile* bound to Dowex-1 resin have been studied, while mold spores have been bound to ion-exchange cellulose derivatives. In both cases, succinic acid oxidation and invertase activity were successfully demonstrated. However, this method is not entirely satisfactory as enzymes may leak out following autolysis during continuous enzyme reaction.
- (ii) *Immobilization in crosslinked chemicals*: Microbial cells have been immobilized by crosslinking them with bi-functional reagents such as glutaraldehyde.
- (iii) *Entrapment in a polymer matrix*: This appears to be the most widely used method of immobilizing cells. In this method, the cells are entrapped in a polymer matrix where they are physically restrained. The following matrixes have been used: polyacrylamide, collagen, cellulose triacetate, agar, alginate, and polystyrene. Methods for immobilization of cells and enzymes are given in Fig. 12.3.

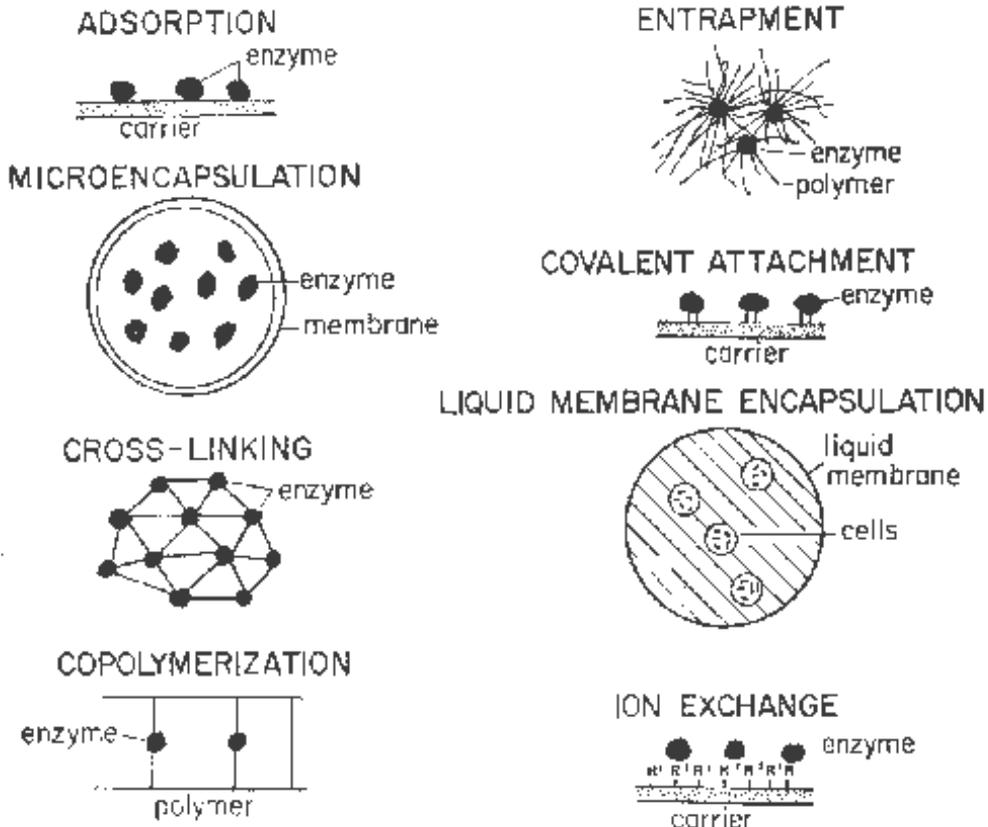


Fig. 12.3 Methods of Immobilizing Enzymes and Cells

### 12.5.3.1 Advantages of immobilized cells

Immobilized cells have the following advantages over conventional batch fermentation as well as over immobilized enzymes.

- (i) In batch fermentation, a significant proportion of the substrate is 'wasted' for the growth of the microbial population and for producing other substances other than enzymes required for the conversion at hand. Once the cells are immobilized however, they need to be offered nutrients for growth.
- (ii) When cells are immobilized, the reactions are more homogeneous and can be treated more like catalysts.
- (iii) The lag period which occurs in conventional batch fermentation is eliminated for the accumulation of products associated with non-growth phase of the cells.
- (iv) It is more feasible to run immobilized cells continuously at high dilution rates without the risk of washout which would occur in a conventional continuous culture system.
- (v) Higher and faster yield is possible because of the greater density of cells. Furthermore, toxic materials are continuously removed.
- (vi) It is possible to recharge or resuscitate the cells by inducing growth and reproduction among resting cells.
- (vii) A high capital cost is involved in installing and operating a fermenter. In systems where comparisons have been made, immobilized cells are cheaper than the conventional batch production.
- (viii) The use of immobilized cells eliminates the need for enzyme extraction and purification. Furthermore, systems involving multi-enzyme reactions can occur more easily in intact cells harboring these enzymes.
- (ix) Immobilized cells are more suited to multiple step processes.
- (x) Cofactor regeneration is not a problem.

Immobilized cells are particularly appropriate under the following conditions:

- (i) When the enzymes are intracellular: the use of immobilized cells would eliminate the need for breaking the cells for enzyme isolation.
- (ii) When extracted enzymes are unstable during or after immobilization.
- (iii) When the microorganism does not produce enzymes which can cause undesirable side reactions or when such side-reaction producing enzymes can be readily inactivated.
- (iv) When the substrates and products are not high molecular weight substances.

### 12.5.3.2 Disadvantages of immobilized cells

Some of the disadvantages of the conventional system of cultivation of organisms spill over to the immobilized cell:

- (i) The cells may produce enzymes other than the one(s) desired.
- (ii) Genetic changes, although with reduced likelihood in comparison with conventional fermentation, can also occur during immobilization.

- (iii) Immobilization may result in the loss of a specific catalytic activity due to enzyme inactivation resulting from the immobilization process, due to diffusional barriers hindering substrate access, or product removal from the organisms.
- (iv) Cells located in the center of a cell flow may be deprived of nutrients or be inactivated by accumulating toxic wastes.
- (v) Contamination by other microorganisms can occur.

## 12.6 BIOREACTOR DESIGNS USED IN BIOCATALYSIS

A variety of bioreactors is available for immobilizing enzymes and cells as shown in Fig. 12.4.

## 12.7 PRACTICAL APPLICATION OF IMMOBILIZED BIOLOGICAL CATALYST SYSTEMS

Immobilized enzymes and cells have been intensively studied in the hope that they can be used industrially. Amylases and glucoamylases used in the starch industry are so low-priced comparatively that immobilized forms can hardly compete. The only immobilized enzyme currently used on a large scale is glucose isomerase used to produce about 2 million tons of high-fructose syrups around the world. High fructose syrup competes successfully with sugar from beet or cane.

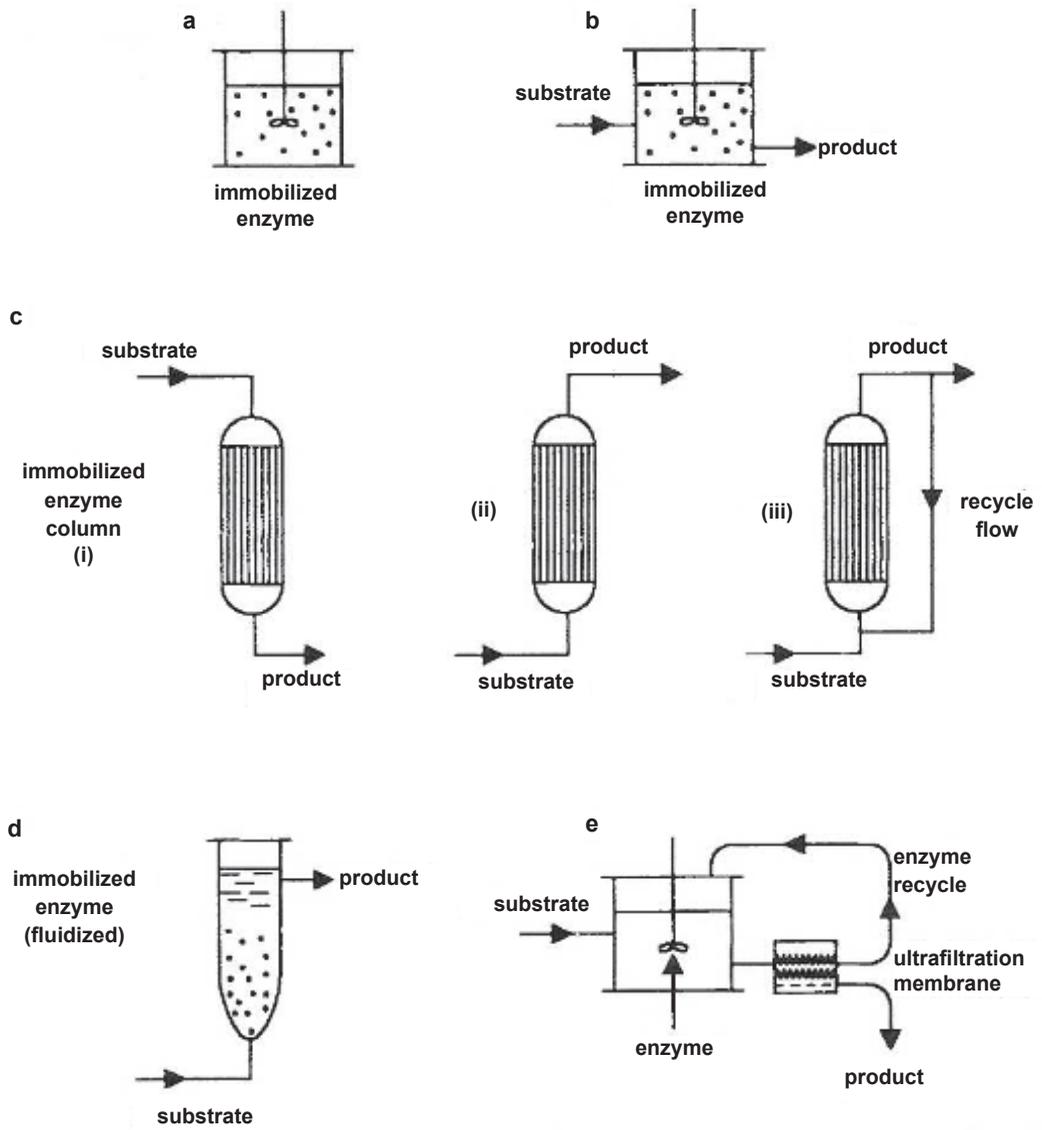
Several immobilized enzymes or whole cell processes are being applied in the Japanese pharmaceutical industry. These include L-amino acid from racemic acyl-D-L-amino acids, L-aspartic acid from ammonium fumarate, L-citrulline from L-arginine, and the production of 6-amino penicillanic acid (6-APA) for semi synthetic penicillin production. In the United States and Europe, 6-APA is produced with immobilized enzymes. In Italy, whole milk lactose hydrolysis is carried out by fiber-entrapped lactase.

Many other applications are nearing the point in their development where they are ready for commercialization: saccharification of starch by immobilized glucoamylase; cheese whey lactose hydrolysis by bound  $\beta$ -galactosidase; beer chill-proofing, steroid transformations, and protein-hydrolysis to improve digestibility.

Immobilized cells have been used industrially in Japan for the transformations mentioned above except for L-amino acid isolation from racemic mixtures. The most-widely employed use of immobilized cells however are glucose isomerization and the hydrolysis of raffinose in beet sugar using mycelial pellets of the fungus *Mortierrella* sp. Raffinose (in beet molasses) is hydrolyzed to sucrose and galactose by  $\beta$ -galactosidase (mellibiase) produced by the fungus.

## 12.8 MANIPULATION OF MICROORGANISMS FOR HIGHER YIELD OF ENZYMES

Higher yields in enzyme production were usually achieved by empirical means using selection from natural variants, mutants obtained through treatment with various mutagens, and improvement in the environmental conditions of the fermenter or semi-solid medium. With these methods, the rate of enzyme production has increased from two to five-hundred times.



- a) batch stirred fermenter
- b) continuous stirred tank
- c) continuous packed-bed
  - i) downward flow
  - ii) upward flow
  - iii) Upward flow and re-cycle
- d) continuous fluidized-bed
- e) continuous ultrafiltration

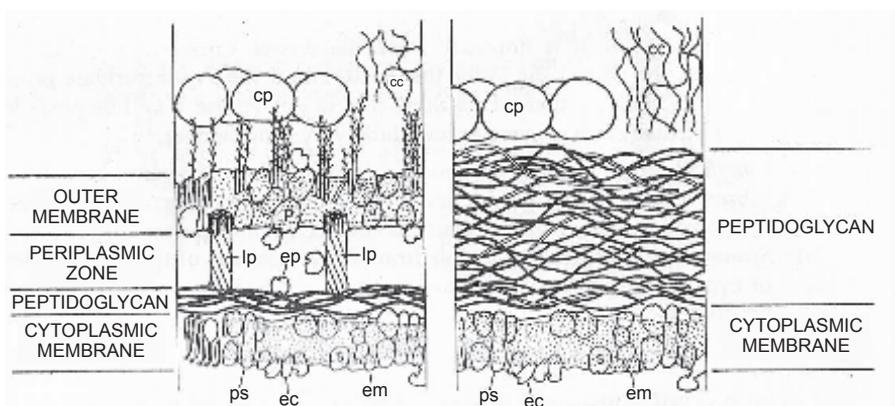
Fig. 12.4 Various Designs of Bioreactors for Use in Biocatalysis

In recent times, more knowledge has accumulated about various aspects of enzyme production including those of molecular and other dimensions, and the manipulation of industrial organisms in general.

### 12.8.1 Biological Aspects of Extracellular Enzyme Production

(i) *The nature of extracellular enzymes secretion:* Extracellular enzymes have been defined as those which are secreted into the medium outside the cell *without involving cell lysis*. This distinction is important because most extracellular enzyme-producing organisms are Gram-positive organisms. However, it has been found in recent times that some Gram-negative organisms do in fact secrete extracellular enzymes. Furthermore, many Gram-negative organisms do in fact produce and secrete enzymes across the cytoplasmic membrane. Such enzymes are held within the periplasmic zone (Fig. 12.5) of the Gram-negative cell wall and hence do not find their way to the medium. Mutants of Gram-negative cells defective in the ability to synthesize cell wall components continue to synthesize and secrete polypeptides into the environment. On account of these observations, extracellular enzymes have been redefined as those which are secreted across the cell membrane. In terms of industrial microbiology, it is an apt definition as methods for deranging the molecular arrangements of cell walls exist, which when successfully applied to Gram-negative bacteria secreting into the periplasmic space convert them to extracellular secreters. Such methods include the formation of protoplasts by the prevention of cell wall formation using suitable antibiotics, limited digestion by trypsin, and solubilization of the cell wall with a combination of a detergent (e.g. taurodeoxycholate) and a chelating agent.

(ii) *Some biochemical properties of extracellular enzymes:* Bacterial extracellular enzymes vary in molecular weight from 12,000 to 500,000 but in the main they range from 20,000 to



Left = Gram-negative wall; Right = Gram-positive wall; Dotted areas = hydrophobic zones; cc = capsular carbohydrate; cp = capsular polysaccharide; ec = cytoplasmic membrane enzymes which synthesize cell wall macro-molecules; lp = lipoprotein; p = structural and enzymatic proteins of the outer layers of the Gram-negative wall; s = structural proteins of cytoplasmic membrane; ep = enzymes in the periplasmic zone; ps = permeases.

Fig. 12.5 Generalized Structure of the Bacterial Cell Wall

40,000. Secondly, most bacterial exoproteins lack cysteine. It has been suggested that this absence of cysteine will confer the property of malleability on extracellular enzymes thus facilitating their export.

**(iii) Site of synthesis of extracellular proteins:** Even in cells actively secreting extra-cellular proteins, an examination of the cytoplasm shows a complete absence or only a trace amount of the enzymes being excreted. Since no evidence exists for the cytoplasmic synthesis of extracellular proteins, it has been suggested they are synthesized on ribosomes associated with the cells in much the same way as in eukaryotic cells. In eukaryotic cells, membrane-bound polysomes are engaged in secreting proteins for export whereas polysomes secrete non-exportable proteins.

According to the currently accepted model, synthesis takes place on the cell membrane and is secreted directly into pores in the cell membrane. Indeed, synthesis and secretion are one process, following the system in eukaryotic cells. Some evidence for this is presented in the following: In many bacteria, a considerable but variable fraction of the ribosomes is associated with the cytoplasmic membrane. In the exponential phase of *Bacillus licheniformis* for example, 96% of the ribosomes are membrane-bound. It is also known that exoenzyme synthesis is more sensitive to antibiotic inhibition than general protein synthesis. This has been attributed to the fact that the membrane-bound ribosomes are more accessible to the antibiotic.

**(iv) Control of extracellular enzyme secretion by gene cloning:** When the terminal portion of the  $\beta$ -galactosidase gene of *E. coli* was replaced with a gene that codes for a protein of the outer cell wall membrane of the bacteria, the  $\beta$ -galactosidase activity which is normally intracellular was formed extracellularly. This and other similar experiments show that in the near future, it may be possible to produce virtually any enzyme extracellularly by gene cloning.

**(v) Some methods for increasing enzyme yields:** The increased yields which have been observed in enzyme production are based on strain selection, improved environmental factors, regulatory controls, and genetic manipulation.

- (a) *Strain selection:* Strain selection from natural variants of the same species or even entirely new species has resulted in the wide array of enzymes available in some industries, e.g. the starch hydrolyzing industries.

The natural strains may then be mutagenized for increased variation in the gene pool. Strains have been selected in the above two manners for a wide variety of properties including temperature-tolerant enzymes and resistance to feedback regulation.

- (b) *Environmental factors:* Exoenzymes may be constitutive, but the majority is inducible or partially so. Inducers are therefore important in increasing the yields of many extracellular enzymes. Since many of the substrates are insoluble, they cannot enter the cell, and hence their analogues or gratuitous inducers (those that induce the enzyme but are not substrates or breakdown products) have been used. Inducers are usually cheap in order to bring down costs. Thus, corn cobs are hydrolyzed to produce xylose which acts as an inducer for glucose isomerase.

Most extracellular enzymes are produced in the idiophase, and maximum production is usually in the late log and early stationary phase. This period coincides with the period when the organism is released from catabolite repression. Increased

yields may therefore be achieved by feeding low levels of the substrate or feeding them intermittently. Yields may also be increased by increasing cell wall permeability. Surfactants may be incorporated into the medium for this purpose, although how they affect the wall permeability is not fully understood.

- (c) *Regulatory control*: Control of regulation is through induction and catabolite feedback regulations. Mutants resistant to all three have been produced with consequent boost in production. An example of inducer-resistance is in the case of the glucose isomerase producing actinomycete *Streptomyces phaeochromogenes*, the wild strain of which will not germinate on L-xylose, another form of D-xylose. It will grow on xylose only if germination is first obtained on xylose. Mutants were selected which would germinate directly on xylose, thus eliminating the need for xylose.

The bypassing of catabolite repression has led to the production of large amounts of enzymes. This has been achieved by using toxic analogues of the substrates. Thus, 2-deoxy-glucose is used as a toxic analogue when seeking for mutants able to overproduce glucosidase.

- (d) *Genetic manipulation*: As had been indicated earlier, the gene specifying the extra-cellular secretion may be cloned on those controlling the synthesis of particular enzymes thus causing the enzyme to be secreted extracellularly.

The number of copies of specific genes may be increased by gene amplification methods thus increasing enzyme yield several times. For example, plasmids specifying particular extracellular enzymes may continue to replicate while the parent chromosome is inhibited by, for example, chloramphenicol thereby permitting an amplification of the genes, sometimes up to 2,000 copies or up to 40% of the cells total DNA.

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Discuss the rationale of using microorganisms for enzyme production.
2. List the advantages of using microbes over plants in enzyme production.
3. Outline industrial uses of enzymes.
4. Discuss relevant properties of microbial enzymes for use in the detergent industry.
5. Describe the mechanism of coagulation of milk in the manufacture of cheese.
6. Describe the clarification of fruit juices with pectinases.
7. Discuss the uses of enzymes in the manufacture of beverages.
8. List medicinal uses of microbial enzymes.
9. Describe solid substrate production of microbial enzymes.
10. Describe enzyme extraction and stabilization.
11. Give an appraisal of methods of enzyme immobilization.
12. List the advantages of immobilized cells and enzymes.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

Anon. 1995. Classification and Chemical Characteristics of Immobilized Enzymes. (Technical Report), International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry. Pure and Applied Chemistry. 67, 597–600.

- Butterfoss, G.L., Kuhlman, B. 2006. Computer-Based Design of Novel Protein Structures. *Annual Review of Biophysics and Biomolecular Structure*. 35, 49–65.
- Chaplin, M.F., Bucke, C. 1990. *Enzyme Technology*. Cambridge University Press. New York, USA.
- Cheetam, S.J. 2004. Bioprocesses for the Manufacture of Ingredients for Food and Cosmetics. *Advances in Biochemical Engineering/Biotechnology*. 86, 83–158.
- Desai, M.A. 2000. *Downstream Processing of Proteins*. Humana Press Totowa, New Jersey, USA.
- Fogarty, M., Kelly, C.T. (eds.) 1990. *Microbial Enzymes and Biotechnology*. 2nd ed. Elsevier Applied Science London and New York.
- Imanaka, T. 1994. Improvement of Useful Enzymes by Protein Engineering. *In: Recombinant Microbes for Industrial and Agricultural Applications*. Y. Murooka, T. Imanaka (eds.) Marcel and Dekker. New York, USA. pp. 449–465.
- Kennedy, J.F. 1995. Principles of Immobilization of Enzymes. *In: Handbook of Enzyme Biotechnology*. A. Wiseman (ed.) 3rd ed. Ellis Horwood, London, UK. pp. 235–310.
- Mitchel, D.A., Berovic, M., Krieger, N. 2000. Biochemical Engineering Aspects of Solid State Bioprocessing. *Advances in Biochemical Engineering/Biotechnology*. 68, 61–132.
- Pasechnik, V.A. 1995. Practical Aspects of Large-scale Protein Purification. *In: Handbook of Enzyme Biotechnology*. A. Wiseman (ed.) 3rd ed. Ellis Horwood, London, UK. pp. 379–418.
- Puri, M., Banerjee, U.T. 2002. Production, Purification, and Characterization of the Debittering Enzyme Naringinase. *Biotechnology Advances*. 18, 207–217.
- Puri, M., Kaur, H., Kennedy, J.F. 2005. Covalent Immobilization of Naringinase for the Transformation of a Flavonoid. *Journal of Chemical Technology & Biotechnology*. 80, 1160–1165.
- Roy, I., Sharma, S., Gupta, M.N. 2004. Smart Biocatalysts: Design and Application. *Advances in Biochemical Engineering/Biotechnology*. 86, 159–190.
- Schugerl, K. 2000. Recovery of Proteins and Microorganisms from Cultivation Media by Foam Flotation. *Advances in Biochemical Engineering/Biotechnology*. 68, 191–233.
- Tanaka, A., Tosa, T., Kobayashi, T. 1993. *Industrial Applications of Immobilized Biocatalysts*. New York: Dekker.

# CHAPTER 13

---

## Production of Biofuel and Industrial Alcohol

---

### 13.1 BIOFUEL

Fossil energy is non-renewable. Industrialization of modern societies has increased global fossil energy demand and consumption, and consequently widespread environmental pollution due to high carbon emissions from burning of fossil fuel. Thus predictions of future scarcity, high prices as well as daily fluctuation of prices of fossil fuel necessitated intense research and development of alternative sources of fuel.

Liquid fossil fuel remains a major transportation fuel in vehicles powered by internal combustion engines. However, the international atomic energy agency estimated that as much as 13.3% of current global energy consumption is renewable energy of which 10% is bioenergy, 2.3% is hydro-energy and about 1% is from sources such as solar, wind, heat and geothermal. Well-established processes for fermentation of sugars to ethanol and esterification of fatty acids in lipids and oils, with alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, and propanol laid foundation for production of first generation liquid transportation biofuel. Ethanol is an attractive transportation fuel due to its high octane content, compatibility with fuel employed in internal combustion engines, and ease of integration with existing alcohol production and fuel distribution infrastructure. Biodiesel is also attractive as it is compatible with fuel for diesel engines and relatively easy to manufacture.

#### 13.1.1 Types of Biofuels and Feedstocks for Production of Biofuel

Biofuels or bioenergy are manufactured from biological raw materials. They include **liquid** fuels such as ethanol (bioethanol), biodiesel, and biobutanol. Biomethane and biohydrogen are collectively referred to as biogas and are **gaseous** fuels produced by processing industrial and municipal biological wastes. Wood pellets and chips are examples of biological materials employed as **solid** fuels or bioenergy. Based on chronology of development, liquid biofuels can be classified as first generation, second generation, and third generation (Table 13.1). Although biofuels such as bioethanol and biodiesel are now important fuels in modern transportation, there are increasing concerns about their use and cost-effectiveness. Most of their raw materials (feedstocks) require large acreage of land, large quantities of water for cultivation, and are major components of human

**Table 13.1** Generations of liquid biofuel, feedstocks, and production processes

<i>Generation</i>	<i>Examples</i>	<i>Feedstock</i>	<i>Process</i>
First generation	Bioethanol	<b>Starch</b> from corn, wheat, milo (sorghum) and cassava <b>Sugar</b> from sugar cane, sugar beet	Starch requires digestion to sugar using amylases, before fermentation of sugar to ethanol
	Biodiesel	<b>Oil</b> from seeds such as rapeseed, Soybean, oil palm, sunflower, groundnut, canola	Esterification of fatty acids of oil with alcohol such as methanol and ethanol
Second generation	Bioethanol Biobutanol	<b>Agricultural residues</b> such as wheat straw, corn stover (leaves, stalks, and cobs), bagasse (sugarcane waste), <b>Forestry residues</b> such as logging residues and wood, wood-processing mill residues	Hydrolysis of cellulose and hemicellulose to fermentable sugars and fermentation to alcohol. Requires pretreatment to remove lignin
Third generation	Biodiesel	<b>Oil</b> from microalgal species such as <i>Botryococcus</i> and <i>Chlorella</i>	Esterification of fatty acids of oil with alcohol such as methanol and ethanol
	Bioethanol	<b>Carbohydrates</b> from macroalgae such as <i>Spirulina</i> platensis and <i>Chlamydomonas</i> sp. as well as <i>Cyanobacteria</i>	Hydrolysis of carbohydrates to fermentable sugars and fermentation to alcohol. Requires pretreatment to remove lignin

*Constructed from Ho et al. 2014*

and animal food. Consequently, interest in cost-effective production of biofuel has moved on to biofuels from non-food feedstocks such as lignocellulosic biomass including crop and forest residues (e.g. forest thinning, sawdust, etc.), lignocellulose-rich industrial and municipal solid wastes (e.g. printing paper, cardboard boxes), algal biomass and energy crops (e.g. switchgrass, poplar, and *Miscanthus*). Different feedstocks are available for the production of alternative fuel including food crops such as sugarcane, corn, and vegetable oils for the first generation biofuel; lignocelluloses (lignocellulosic biomass) from non-human food energy crops, agricultural and forestry residues as well as municipal waste for the second generation biofuel; and algal biomass for the third generation biofuel. Biofuel feedstocks are advantageous because they are renewable, sustainable, involve recycling of carbon dioxide, reduce dependence on imported crude oil, and support environmental friendly production.

Biodiesel (fatty acid methyl esters, FAME) is a renewable biodegradable fuel and is also an excellent lubricant. Biodiesel is miscible with petroleum fuels, contains no sulfur, and has less greenhouse gas emissions. Additionally, it does not contain aromatic compounds, is non-toxic, and does not cause pollution of the environment. Nonetheless, biodiesel is less stable because it contains polyunsaturated and unsaturated fatty acids which are prone to oxidation at the unsaturated sites, and production can be affected by inadequate feedstock supply. Methanol is the major alcohol employed in current production of biodiesel. However, use of ethanol or propanol in place of methanol can potentially improve “cold flow” performance of methanol based biodiesel. Use of bioethanol as the alcohol for production of biodiesel will also support sustainable production of biodiesel.

### 13.1.2 Thermochemical Biofuel Processes

Thermochemical processes are useful for conversion of biomass to liquid hydrocarbon fuel. These include gasification and pyrolysis. In pyrolysis, thermal decomposition of biomass feedstocks in the absence of air results in the formation of bio oil and methane as well as side products. Gasification employs air or steam to convert biomass feedstock pyrolysis products to a mixture of carbon monoxide and hydrogen, known as syngas (synthesis gas). The Fischer Tropsch process is used to catalytically convert synthesis gas to liquid fuel and has the advantage of producing fuel free of greenhouse gas.

## 13.2 INDUSTRIAL ALCOHOL PRODUCTION

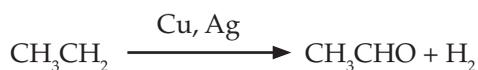
Ethyl alcohol,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$  (synonyms: ethanol, methyl carbinol, grain alcohol, molasses alcohol, grain neutral spirits, cologne spirit, wine spirit), is a colorless, neutral, mobile flammable liquid with a molecular weight of 46.47, boiling point of  $78.3^\circ\text{C}$ , and a sharp burning taste. Although known from antiquity as the intoxicating component of alcoholic beverages, its formula was not worked out until 1808. It is rarely found in nature, being found only in the unripe seeds of *Heracleum giganteum* and *H. spondylium*.

### 13.2.1 Properties of Ethanol

Some of the physical properties of ethanol are given in [Table 13.2](#).

Ethyl alcohol undergoes a wide range of reactions, which make it useful as a raw material in the chemical industry. Some of the reactions are as follows:

- (i) *Oxidation*: Ethanol may be oxidized to acetaldehyde by oxidation with copper or silver as a catalyst:



- (ii) *Halogenation*: Halides of hydrogen, phosphorous and other compounds react with ethanol to replace the  $-\text{OH}$  group with a halogen:



**Table 13.2** Physical properties of ethyl alcohol

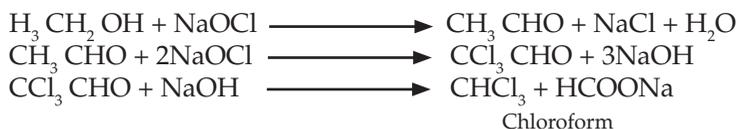
Boiling point ( $^\circ\text{C}$ )	78.2
Explosive limit in air, vol%	43–19.0
Freezing point ( $^\circ\text{C}$ )	114.1
Specific gravity at $20/20^\circ\text{C}$	0.7905
Surface tension at $20^\circ\text{C}$ dynes/cm	22.3
Vapor pressure at $20^\circ\text{C}$ mg/Hg	44

## 222 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

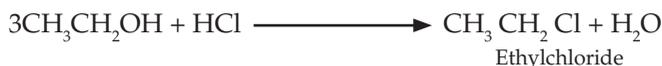
- (iii) *Reaction with metals*: Ethanol reacts with sodium, potassium and calcium to give the alcoholates (alkoxides) of these metals:



- (iv) *Haloform Reaction*: Hypohalides will react with ethanol to yield first acetaldehyde and finally the haloform reaction:



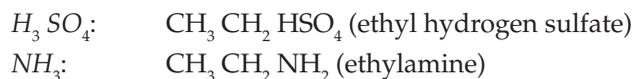
- (v) *Esters*: Ethanol reacts with organic and inorganic acids to give esters:



- (vi) *Ethers*: Ethanol may be dehydrated to give ethers:



- (vii) *Alkylation*: Ethanol alkylates add alkyl-group to a large number of compounds:



### 13.2.2 Uses of Ethanol

- (i) *Use as a chemical feedstock*: In the chemical industry, ethanol is an intermediate in many chemical processes because of its great reactivity as shown above. It is thus a very important chemical feedstock.
- (ii) *Solvent use*: Ethanol is widely used in the industry as a solvent for dyes, oils, waxes, explosives, cosmetics, etc.
- (iii) *General utility*: Alcohol is used as a disinfectant in hospitals, for cleaning and lighting in the home, and in the laboratory is second only to water as a solvent.
- (iv) *Fuel*: Ethanol is mixed with petrol or gasoline up to 10% and known as gasohol and used in automobiles.

### 13.2.3 Denatured Alcohol

All over the world and even in ancient times, governments have derived revenue from potable alcohol. For this reason when alcohol is used in large quantities, it is denatured or rendered unpleasant to drink. The base of denatured alcohol is usually 95% alcohol with 5% water; for domestic burning or hospital use denatured alcohol is dispensed as methylated spirit, which contains a 10% solution of methanol, pyridine, and coloring material. For industrial purpose, methanol is used as the denaturant. In the United States, alcohol may

be completely denatured (C.D.A.—completely denatured alcohol) when it cannot be used orally because of a foul taste or foul smelling additives. It may be specially denatured (S.D.A.—specially denatured alcohol) when it can still be used for special purposes such as vinegar manufacture without being suitable for consumption.

### 13.2.4 Manufacture of Ethanol

Ethanol may be produced by either synthetic chemical method or by fermentation. Fermentation was, until about 1930, the main means of alcohol production. In 1939, for example 75% of the ethanol produced in the US was by fermentation while in 1968, over 90% was made by synthesis from ethylene.

Due to the increase in price of crude petroleum, the source of ethylene used for alcohol production, attention has turned worldwide to the production of alcohol by fermentation. Fermentation alcohol has the potential to replace two important needs currently satisfied by petroleum, namely the provision of fuel and that of feedstock in the chemical industry.

The production of gasohol (gasoline—alcohol blend) appears to have received more attention than alcohol use as a feedstock. Nevertheless, the latter will also surely assume more importance if petroleum price continues to rise. Governments the world over have set up programs designed to conserve petroleum and to seek other energy sources. One of the most widely publicized programs designed to utilize a new source of energy is the Brazilian National Ethanol Program. Set-up in 1975, the first phase of this program aims at extending gasoline by blending it with ethanol to the extent of 20% by volume. The United States government also introduced the gasoline program based on corn fermentation in 1980 following the embargo on grain sales to the then Soviet Union.

#### 13.2.4.1 Substrates

The substrate used for ethanol production varies among countries. Thus in Brazil, sugar cane, already widely grown in the country, is the major source of fermentation alcohol. In the United States, enormous quantities of corn and other cereals are grown and these are the obvious substrates. Cassava grows in many tropical countries and since it is high yielding it is an important source in tropical countries where sugar cane is not grown. It is recognized that two important conditions must be met before fermentation alcohol can play a major role in the economy either as gasohol or as a chemical feedstock. First, the production of the crop to be used must be available to produce the crop without extensive and excessive deforestation. Secondly, the substrate should not compete with human food.

#### 13.2.4.2 Fermentation

Alcohol-resistant yeasts, strains of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* are used, and nutrients such as nitrogen and phosphate lacking in the broth are added.

#### 13.2.4.3 Distillation

After fermentation, the fermented liquor or 'beer' contains alcohol as well as low boiling point volatile compounds such as acetaldehydes, esters, and the higher boiling, fusel oils. The alcohol is obtained after several steps. First, steam is passed through the

beer which is said to be steam-stripped. The result is a dilute alcohol solution which still contains part of the undesirable volatile compounds. Secondly, the dilute alcohol solution is passed into the center of a multi-plate aldehyde column in which the following fractions are separated: esters and aldehydes, fusel oil, water, and an ethanol solution containing about 25% ethanol. Thirdly, the dilute alcohol solution is passed into a rectifying column where a constant boiling mixture, an azeotrope, distills off at 95.6% alcohol concentration.

To obtain 200° proof alcohol, such as is used in gasohol blending, the 96.58% alcohol is obtained by azeotropic distillation. The principle of this method is to add an organic solvent which will form a ternary (three-membered) azeotrope with most of the water, but with only a small proportion of the alcohol. Benzene, carbon tetrachloride, chloroform, and cyclohexane may be used, but in practice, benzene is used. Azeotropes usually have lower boiling point than their individual components and that of benzene-ethanol-water is 64.6°C. On condensation, it separates into two layers. The upper layer, which has about 84% of the condensate, has the following percentage composition: benzene 85%, ethanol 18%, water 1%. The heavier, lower portion, constituting 16% of the condensate, has the following composition: benzene 11%, ethanol 53%, and water 36%.

In practice, the condensate is not allowed to separate out, but the arrangement of plates within the columns enables separation of the alcohol. Four columns are usually used. The first and second columns remove aldehydes and fusel oils, respectively, while the last two towers are for the concentration of the alcohol. A flow diagram of conventional absolute alcohol production from molasses is given in Fig. 13.1.

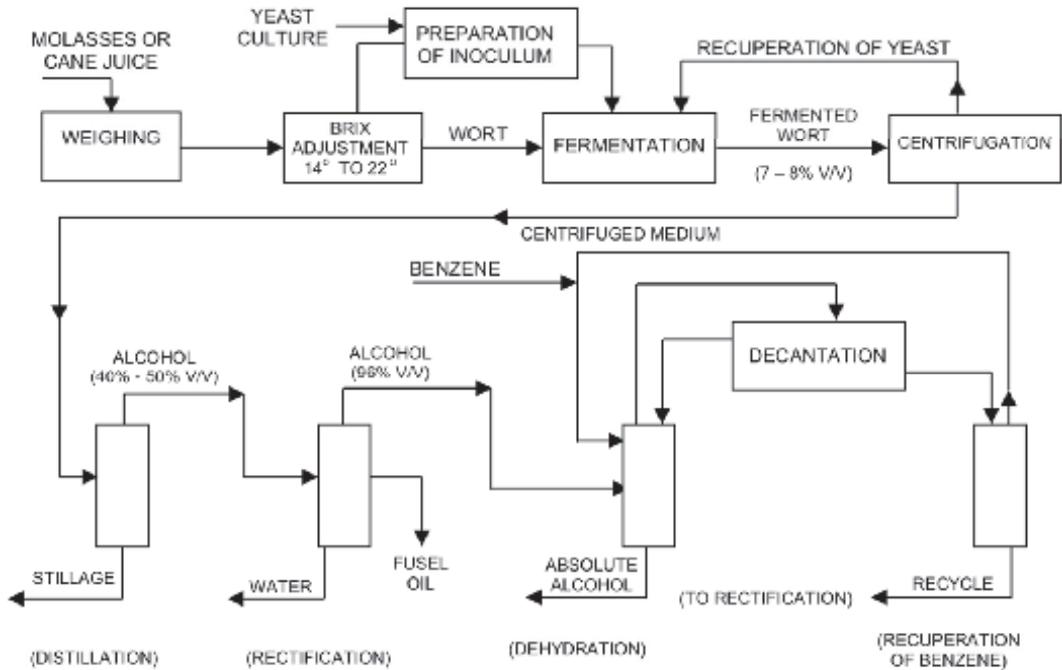


Fig. 13.1 Flow Diagram of Conventional Alcohol Production

### 13.2.5 Developments in Alcohol Production

Due to the current interest in the potential of ethanol as a fuel and a chemical feedstock, research aimed at improving the conventional method of production has been undertaken, and it is to be expected that this trend will continue. Some of the techniques aimed at improving productivity are the following:

- (i) Development of new strains of yeast of *Saccharomyces uvarum* which are able to ferment sugar rapidly, to tolerate high alcohol concentrations, flocculate rapidly, and whose regulatory system permits it to produce alcohol during growth.
- (ii) The use of continuous fermentation with recycling using the rapidly flocculating yeasts.
- (iii) Continuous vacuum fermentation in which alcohol is continuously evaporated under low pressure from the fermentation broth.
- (iv) The use of immobilized *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* in a packed column instead of in a conventional stirred tank fermenter. Higher productivity as a result of higher cell concentration was suggested as the main advantage.
- (v) In the 'Ex-ferm' process sugar cane chips are fermented directly with a yeast without first expressing the cane juice. The chips may be dried and used in the off-season period of cane production. It was suggested that there is no need to add nutrients as would be the case with molasses, since these are derived from the cane itself. A more complete extraction of the sugar, resulting in a 10% increase in alcohol yield, is also claimed.
- (vi) The use of *Zymomonas mobilis*, a Gram-negative bacterium which is found in some tropical alcoholic beverages, rather than yeast is advocated. The advantages claimed for the use of *Zymomonas* are the following:
  - (a) Higher specific rates of glucose uptake and ethanol production than reported for yeasts. Up to 300% more ethanol is claimed for *Zymomonas* than for yeasts in continuous fermentation with recycle.
  - (b) Higher ethanol yields and lower biomass than with yeasts. This deduction is based on Fig. 13.2 where, although the same quantity of alcohol is produced by the two organisms in 30–40 hours, the biomass of *Zymomonas* required for this level of production is much less than with yeast. The lower biomass appears to be due to the lower energy available for growth. *Zymomonas* utilizes glucose by the Entner-Duodoroff pathway which yields one mole of ATP/mole glucose, whereas yeasts utilize glucose anaerobically via the glycolytic pathway (Fig. 5.1) to give two ATP/mole glucose. Its use does not appear to have gained general acceptance.
  - (c) Ethanol tolerance is at least as high or even higher [up to 16% (v/v)] in some strains of the bacterium than with yeast.
  - (d) *Zymomonas* also tolerates high glucose concentration and many cultures grow in sugar solutions of up to 40% (w/v) glucose which should lead to high ethanol production.

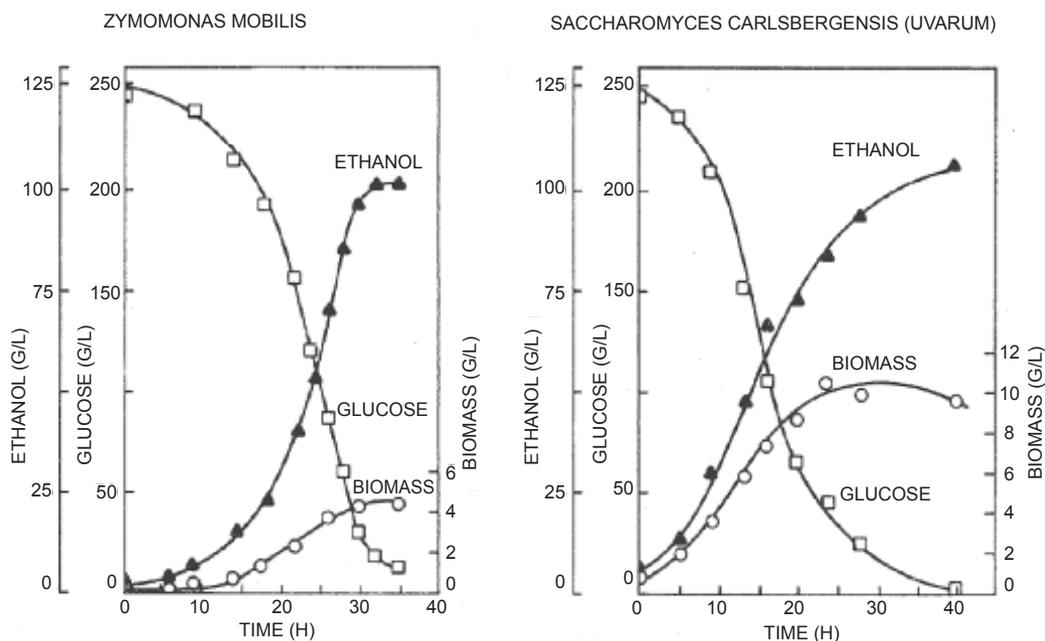


Fig. 13.2 Alcohol Production by Yeast and *Zymomonas mobilis*

- (e) *Zymomonas* grows anaerobically and, unlike yeasts, does not require the controlled addition of oxygen for viability at the high cell concentrations used in cell recycle.
- (f) The many techniques for genetic engineering already worked out in bacteria can be easily applied to *Zymomonas* for greater productivity.

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Explain why production of biofuel became more important in the last few decades.
2. Discuss expansion of feedstock options for production of biofuel.
3. List various uses and applications of ethanol.
4. What is the purpose of denaturing alcohol?
5. Compare the two manufacturing processes of ethanol.
6. What determines the choice of substrates for ethanol production?
7. Define the term azeotrope and describe ethanol distillation process.
8. List techniques designated to improve alcohol production.
9. What are the advantages of using *Zymomonas mobilis* for alcohol production?

## SUGGESTED READINGS

Agarwal, A.K. 2007. Biofuels (Alcohols and Biodiesel) Applications as Fuels for Internal Combustion Engines. *Prog Energy Combust Sci.* 33, 233–71.

- Arkoudeas, P., Kalligeros, S., Zannikos, F., Anastopoulos, G., Karonis, D., Lois, E. 2003. Study of using JP-8 Aviation Fuel and Biodiesel in CI Engines. *Energy Convers Manage.* 44, 1013–25.
- Bergthorson, J.M., Thomson, M.J. 2015. A Review of the Combustion and Emissions Properties of Advanced Transportation Biofuels and their Impact on Existing and Future Engines. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews.* 42(2015), 1393–1417.
- Bozell, J.J. The Use of Renewable Feedstocks for the Production of Chemicals and Materials—A Brief Overview of Concepts. <http://www.nrel.gov/docs/gen/fy04/36831f.pdf>.
- Energy Agency. IEA/OECD, Paris.
- Grabowski, M.S., McCormick, R.L. 1998. Combustion of Fat and Vegetable Oil Derived Fuels in Diesel Engines. *Prog Energy Combust Sci.* 24, 125–64.
- Gupta, V.K., Potumarthi, R., O'Donovan, A., Kubicek, C.P., Sharma, G.D., Tuohy, M.G. 2014. **Chapter 2—Bioenergy Research: An Overview on Technological Developments and Bioresources.** *In: Bioenergy Research: Advances and Applications.* V.K. Gupta, M.G. Tuohy, C.P. Kubicek, J. Saddler, F. Xu (eds.) Elsevier, Amsterdam. pp. 23–47.
- Hari, T.K., Yaakob, Z., Binitha, N.N. 2015. Aviation Biofuel from Renewable Resources: Routes, Opportunities and Challenges. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews.* 42, 1234–1244.
- Hemighaus, G., Boval, T., Bosley, C., Organ, R., Lind, J., Brouette, R., Thompson, T., Lynch, J., Jones, J. 2006. Alternative Jet Fuels, a Supplement to Chevron's Aviation Fuels Technical Review. [https://www.cgabusinessdesk.com/document/5719\\_Aviation\\_Addendum\\_webpdf.pdf](https://www.cgabusinessdesk.com/document/5719_Aviation_Addendum_webpdf.pdf).
- Ho, D.P., Ngo, H.H., Guo, W. 2014. A Mini Review on Renewable Sources for Biofuel. *Bioresour Technol.* 2014 Oct; 169, 742–9. doi: 10.1016/j.biortech.2014.07.022. Epub 2014 Jul 11.
- Ho, N.W.Y. 1980. *Ann. Repts. Ferm. Proc.* 4, 235–266.
- IEA, International Energy Agency. 2013. *World Energy Outlook 2013*, International.
- Kosaric, D.C.M., Ng, I.R., Steart, G.S. 1980. *Adv. Appl. Microbiol.* 26, 137–227.
- Kreutz, T.G., Larson, E.D., Liu, G., Williams, R.H. 2008. Fischer-Tropsch Fuels from Coal and Biomass. *In: 25th Annual International Pittsburgh Coal Conference.*
- Lockwood, L.B. 1979. *In: Microbial Technology.* H.J. Peppler, D. Perlman (eds.) 2nd ed. Academic Press, New York, USA. pp. 256–288.
- Moser, B.R. 2010. Camelina (*Camelina sativa* L.) Oil as a Biofuels Feedstock: Golden Opportunity or False Hope. *Lipid Technol.* 22, 270–3.
- Okeke, B.C., Hall, R.W., Nanjundaswamy, A., Thomson, M.S., Deravi, Y., Sawyer, L., Prescott, A. 2015. Selection and molecular characterization of cellulolytic-xylanolytic fungi from surface soil-biomass mixtures from Black Belt sites. *Microbiological Research.* 175, 24–33.
- Okeke, B.C. 2014. Cellulolytic and xyranolytic potential of high  $\beta$ -glucosidase producing *Trichoderma* from decaying biomass. *Applied Biochemistry and Biotechnology.* 174, 1581–1598.
- Okeke, B.C., Lu, J. 2011. Characterization of a Defined Cellulolytic and Xylanolytic Bacterial Consortium for Bioprocessing of Cellulose and Hemicelluloses. *Applied Biochemistry and Biotechnology.* 163, 869–881.
- Probstein, Ronald, F., Edwin, H.R. 2006. *Synthetic Fuels.* Mineola, New York: Dover Publications Inc.
- Sims, R.E.H., Mabee, W., Saddler, J.N., Taylor, M. 2010. An Overview of Second Generation Biofuel Technologies. *Bioresour. Technol.* 101, 1570–1580.
- Ward, W.P., Singh, A. 2003. Bioethanol Technology: Developments and Perspectives. *Advances In Applied Microbiology.* 51, 53–80.

# CHAPTER 14

## Production of Organic Acids

### 14.1 ORGANIC ACIDS

A large number of organic acids with actual or potential uses are produced by microorganisms. Citric, itaconic, lactic, malic, tartaric, gluconic, mevalonic, salicylic, gibberellic, diaminopimelic, and propionic acids are some of the acids whose microbial production have been patented.

#### 14.1.1 Production of Citric Acid

Citric acid is a tribasic acid with the structure shown in Fig. 14.1.

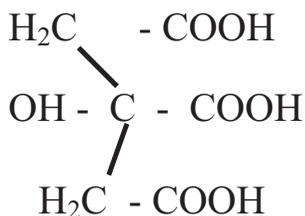


Fig. 14.1 Structure of Citric Acid

It crystallizes with the large rhombic crystals containing one molecule of water of crystallization, which is lost when it is heated to 130°C. At temperatures as high as 175°C it is converted to itaconic acid, aconitic acid, and other compounds.

#### 14.1.2 Uses of Citric Acid

Citric acid is used in the food industry, in medicine, pharmacy and in various other industries.

***Uses in the food industry***

- (i) Citric acid is the major food acidulant used in the manufacture of jellies, jams, sweets, and soft drinks.
- (ii) It is used for artificial flavoring in various foods including soft drinks.
- (iii) Sodium citrate is employed in processed cheese manufacture.

***Uses in medicine and pharmacy***

- (iv) Sodium citrate is used in blood transfusion and bacteriology for the prevention of blood clotting.
- (v) The acid is used in effervescent powders which depend for their effervescence on the CO<sub>2</sub> produced from the reaction between citric acid and sodium bicarbonate.
- (vi) Since it is almost universally present in living things, it is rapidly and completely metabolized in the human body and can therefore serve as a source of energy.

***Uses in the cosmetic industry***

- (vii) It is used in astringent lotions such as aftershave lotions because of its low pH.
- (viii) Citric acid is used in hair rinses and hair and wig setting fluids.

***Miscellaneous uses in industry***

- (ix) In neutral or low pH conditions the acid has a strong tendency to form complexes, hence it is widely used in electroplating, leather tanning, and in the removal of iron clogging the pores of the sand face in old oil wells.
- (x) Citric acid has recently formed the basis of manufacture of detergents in place of phosphates, because the presence of the latter in effluents gives rise to eutrophication (an increase in nutrients which encourages aquatic flora development).

**14.1.3 Biochemical Basis of the Production of Citric Acid**

Citric acid is an intermediate in the citric acid cycle (TCA) (Fig. 14.2). The acid can therefore be caused to accumulate by one of the following methods:

- (a) By mutation—giving rise to mutant organisms which may only use part of a metabolic pathway, or regulatory mutants; that is using a mutant lacking an enzyme of the cycle.
- (b) By inhibiting the free-flow of the cycle through altering the environmental conditions, e.g. temperature, pH, medium composition (especially the elimination of ions and cofactors considered essential for particular enzymes). The following are some of such environmental conditions which are applied to increase citric acid production:
  - (i) The concentrations of iron, manganese, magnesium, zinc, and phosphate must be limited. To ensure their removal the medium is treated with ferro-cyanide or by ion exchange resins. These metal ions are required as prosthetic groups in the following enzymes of the TCA: Mn<sup>++</sup> or Mg<sup>++</sup> by oxalosuccinic decarboxylase, Fe<sup>+++</sup> is required for succinic dehydrogenase, while phosphate is required for the conversion of GDP to GTP (Fig. 14.2).

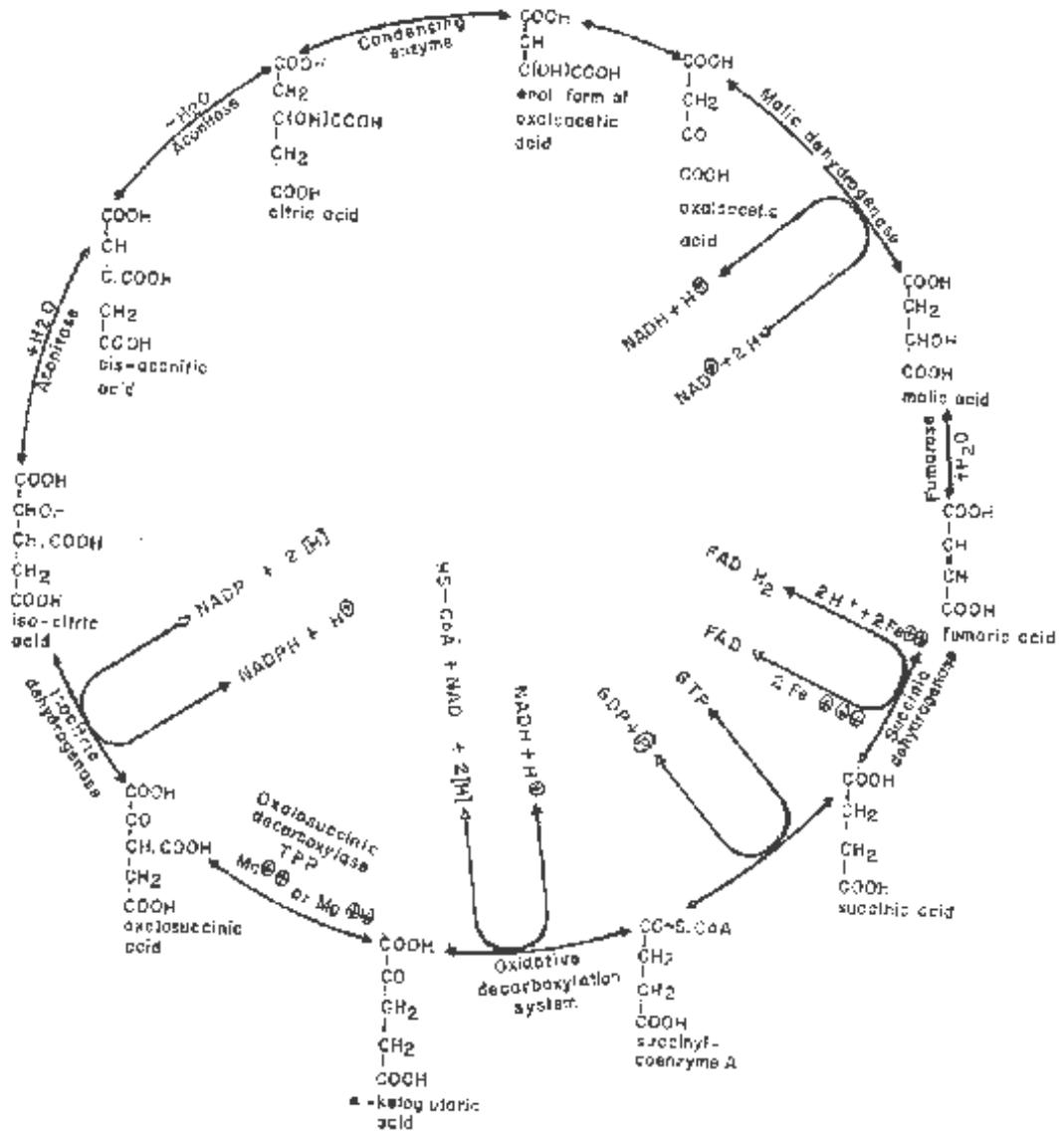


Fig. 14.2 The Tricarboxylic Acid Cycle. Citric acid can be caused to accumulate by using a mutant lacking an enzyme of the cycle or by inhibiting the flow of the cycle.

- (ii) The dehydrogenases, especially isocitrate dehydrogenase, are inhibited by anaerobiosis, hence limited aeration is done on the fermentation so as to increase the yield of citric acid.
- (iii) Low pH and especially the presence of citric acid itself inhibits the TCA and hence encourages the production of more citric acid; the pH of the fermentation must therefore be kept low throughout the fermentation by preventing the precipitation of the citric acid formed.

- (iv) Many of the enzymes of the TCA can be directly inhibited by various compounds and this phenomenon is exploited to increase citric acid production. Thus, isocitric dehydrogenase is inhibited by ferrocyanide as well as citric acid; aconitase is inhibited by fluorocitrate and succinic dehydrogenase by malonate. These enzyme antagonists may be added to the fermentation.

#### 14.1.4 Fermentation for Citric Acid Production

For a long time the production of citric acid has been based on the use of molasses and various strains of *Aspergillus niger* and occasionally *Asp. wentii*. In recent times, yeasts, especially *Candida* spp. (including *Candida guilliermondii*), have been used to produce the acid from sugar.

Paraffins became used as substrate from about 1970. In the processes described mainly by Japanese workers, bacteria and yeasts have been used. Among the bacteria were *Arthrobacter paraffineus* and corynebacteria; the yeasts included *Candida lipolytica* and *Candida oleiphila*.

Fermentation with molasses and other sugar sources can be either surface or submerged. Fermentation with paraffins however is submerged.

- (a) *Surface fermentation*: Surface fermentation using *Aspergillus niger* may be done on rice bran as is the case in Japan or in liquid solution in flat aluminum or stainless steel pans. Special strains of *Asp. niger* which can produce citric acid despite the high content of trace metals in rice bran are used. The citric acid is extracted from the bran by leaching and is then precipitated from the resulting solution as calcium citrate.
- (b) *Submerged fermentation*: As in all other processes where citric acid is made by fermentation, the fermenter is made of acid-resistant materials such as stainless steel. The carbohydrate sources are molasses decationized by ion exchange, sucrose or glucose.  $\text{MgSO}_4 \cdot 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and  $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$  at about 1% and 0.05–2% respectively are added (in submerged fermentation phosphate restriction is not necessary). The pH is never allowed higher than 3.5. Copper is used at up to 500 ppm as an antagonist of the enzyme aconitase. Addition of 1–5% of methanol, isopropanol, or ethanol to fermentations containing unpurified materials increase the yield; the yields are reduced in media with purified materials.

As high aeration is deleterious to citric acid production, mechanical agitation is not necessary and air may be bubbled through. Anti-foam is added. The fungus occurs as a uniform dispersal of pellets in the medium. The fermentation lasts for five to fourteen days.

#### 14.1.5 Extraction

The broth is filtered until clear. Calcium citrate is precipitated by the addition of magnesium-free  $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ . Since magnesium is more soluble than calcium, some acid may be lost in the solution as magnesium citrate if magnesium is added. Calcium citrate is filtered and the filter cake is treated with sulfuric acid to precipitate the calcium. The dilute solution containing citric acid is purified by treatment with activated carbon and passing through ion exchange beds. The purified dilute acid is evaporated to yield crystals of citric acid. Further purification may be required to meet pharmaceutical stipulations.

### 14.1.6 Lactic Acid

Lactic acid is produced by many organisms: animals including man produce the acid in muscle during work.

#### 14.1.6.1 Properties and chemical reactions of lactic acid

- (i) Lactic acid is a three carbon organic acid: one terminal carbon atom is part of an acid or carboxyl group; the other terminal carbon atom is part of a methyl or hydrocarbon group; and a central carbon atom having an alcohol carbon group. Lactic acid exists in two optically active isomeric forms (Fig. 14.3).
- (ii) Lactic acid is soluble in water and water miscible organic solvents but insoluble in other organic solvents.
- (iii) It exhibits low volatility. Other properties of lactic acid are summarized in Table 14.1.
- (iv) The various reactions characteristic of an alcohol which lactic acid (or its esters or amides) may undergo are xanthation with carbon bisulphide, esterification with organic acids and dehydrogenation or oxygenation to form pyruvic acid or its derivatives.
- (v) The acid reactions of lactic acid are those that form salts and undergo esterification with various alcohols.
- (vi) Liquid chromatography and its various techniques can be used for quantitative analysis and separation of its optical isomers.

Technical grade lactic acid is used as an acidulant in vegetable and leather tanning industries. Various textile finishing operations and acid dyeing of food require low cost technical grade lactic acid to compete with cheaper inorganic acid. Lactic acid is being used in many small scale applications like pH adjustment, hardening baths for cellophanes used in food packaging, terminating agent for phenol formaldehyde resins, alkyl resin modifier, solder flux, lithographic and textile printing developers, adhesive formulations, electroplating and electro-polishing baths, detergent builders.

Lactic acid was among the earliest materials to be produced commercially by fermentation and the first organic acid to be produced by fermentation. Chemical processing has offered and continues to offer stiff competition to fermentation lactic acid. Very few firms around the world produce it fermentatively, but this could change when the hydrocarbon-based raw material, lactonitrile, used in the chemical preparation becomes too expensive because of the increase in petroleum prices.



Fig. 14.3 Optical Isomers of Lactic Acid

Lactic acid exists in two forms, the D-form and the L-form. When the symbols (+) or (–) are used, they refer to the optical rotation. However optical rotation in lactic acid is difficult to determine because the pure acid has low optical properties. The acid also spontaneously polymerizes in aqueous solutions; furthermore, salts, esters, and polymers have rotational properties opposite to that of the pure acid from which they are derived. These make it difficult to use optical rotation for characterizing lactic acid.

Many organisms produce either the D- or the L-form of the acid. However, a few organisms such as *Lactobacillus plantarum* produce both. When both the D- and L-form of lactic acid are mixed it is a racemic mixture. The DL form which is optically inactive is the form in which lactic acid is commercially marketed.

#### 14.1.6.2 Uses of lactic acid

- (i) It is used in the baking industry. Originally fermentation lactic acid was produced to replace tartarates in baking powder with calcium lactate. Later it was used to produce calcium stearoyl-2-lactylate, a bread additive.
- (ii) In medicine it is sometimes used to introduce calcium in to the body in the form of calcium lactate, in diseases of calcium deficiency.
- (iii) Esters of lactic acid are also used in the food industry as emulsifiers.
- (iv) Lactic acid is used in the manufacture of rye bread.
- (v) It is used in the manufacture of plastics.
- (vi) Lactic acid is used as acidulant/flavoring/pH buffering agent or inhibitor of bacterial spoilage in a wide variety of processed foods. In contrast to other foods, it has the advantage of having a mild acidic taste.
- (vii) It is non-volatile odorless and is classified as GRAS (generally regarded as safe) by the FDA.
- (viii) It is a very good preservative and pickling agent. Addition of lactic acid aqueous solution to the packaging of poultry and fish increases their shelf life.
- (ix) The esters of lactic acid are used as emulsifying agents in baking foods (stearoyl-2-lactylate, glyceryl lactostearate, glyceryl lactopalmitate). The manufacture of these emulsifiers requires heat stable lactic acid, hence only the synthetic or the heat stable fermentation grades can be used for this application.

**Table 14.1** Physical properties of lactic acid

<i>Appearance</i>	<i>Yellow to colorless crystals or syrupy 50% liquid</i>
Melting point	16.8°C
Relative density	1.249 at 15°C
Boiling point	122° at 15 mmHg
Flash point	110°C
Solubility	Soluble in water, alcohol, furfurool Slightly soluble in ether Insoluble in chloroform, petroleum ether, and carbon disulfide

- (x) Lactic acid has many pharmaceutical and cosmetic applications and formulations in topical ointments, lotions, anti-acne solutions, humectants, parenteral solutions and dialysis applications, as an anti-caries agent.
- (xi) Calcium lactate can be used for calcium deficiency therapy and as anti caries agent.
- (xii) Its biodegradable polymer has medical applications as sutures, orthopedic implants, controlled drug release, etc.
- (xiii) Polymers of lactic acids are biodegradable thermoplastics. These polymers are transparent and their degradation can be controlled by adjusting the composition, and the molecular weight. Their properties approach those of petroleum derived plastics.
- (xiv) Lactic acid esters like ethyl/butyl lactate can be used as environment-friendly solvents. They are high boiling, non-toxic and degradable components.
- (xv) Poly L-lactic acid with low degree of polymerization can help in controlled release or degradable mulch films for large-scale agricultural applications.

#### 14.1.6.3 Fermentation for lactic acid

Although many organisms can produce lactic acid, the amounts produced are small; the organisms which produce adequate amounts and are therefore used in industry are the homofermentative lactic acid bacteria, *Lactobacillus* spp., especially *L. delbrueckii*. In recent times, *Rhizopus oryzae* has been used. Both organisms produce the L-form of the acid, but *Rhizopus* fermentation has the advantage of being much shorter in duration; furthermore, the isolation of the acid is much easier when the fungus is used.

Lactic acid is very corrosive and the fermenter, which is usually between 25,000 and 110,000 liters in capacity is made of wood. Alternatively, special stainless steel (type 316) may be used. They are sterilized by steaming before the introduction of the broth as contamination with thermophilic clostridia yielding butanol and butyric acid is common. Such contamination drastically reduces the value of the product.

During the step-wise preparation of the inoculum, which forms about 5% of the total beer, calcium carbonate is added to the medium to maintain the pH at around 5.5–6.5. The carbon sources used in the broth have varied widely and have included whey, sugars in potato and corn hydrolysates, sulfite liquor, and molasses. However, because of the problems of recovery for high quality lactic acid, purified sugar and a minimum of other nutrients are used.

*Lactobacillus* requires the addition of vitamins and growth factors for growth. These requirements along with that of nitrogen are often met with ground vegetable materials such as ground malt sprouts or malt rootlets. To aid recovery the initial sugar content of the broth is not more than 12% to enable its exhaustion at the end of 72 hours. Fermentation with *Lactobacillus delbrueckii* is usually for 5 to 10 days whereas with *Rhizopus oryzae*, it is about two days.

Although lactic fermentation is anaerobic, the organisms involved are facultative and while air is excluded as much as possible, complete anaerobiosis is not necessary.

The temperature of the fermentation is high in comparison with other fermentations and is around 45°C. Contamination is therefore not a problem, except by thermophilic clostridia.

#### 14.1.6.4 Extraction

The main problem in lactic acid production is not fermentation but the recovery of the acid. Lactic acid is crystallized with great difficulty and in low yield. The purest forms are usually colorless syrups which readily absorb water.

At the end of the fermentation when the sugar content is about 0.1%, the beer is pumped into settling tanks. Calcium hydroxide at pH 10 is mixed in and the mixture is allowed to settle. The clear calcium lactate is decanted off and combined with the filtrate from the slurry. It is then treated with sodium sulfide, decolorized by adsorption with activated charcoal, acidified to pH 6.2 with lactic acid, and filtered. The calcium lactate liquor may then be spray-dried.

For *technical grade* lactic acid, the calcium is precipitated as  $\text{CaSO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$  which is filtered off. It has 44–45% total acidity. *Food grade* acid has a total acidity of about 50%. It is made from the fermentation of higher grade sugar and bleached with activated carbon. Metals especially iron and copper are removed by treatment with ferrocyanide. It is then filtered. *Plastic grade* is obtained by esterification with methanol after concentration. High-grade lactic acid is made by various methods: steam distillation under high vacuum, solvent extraction, etc.

#### END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Discuss the methods by which accumulation of citric acid in the TCA cycles can be achieved.
2. Describe nutrient and fermentation parameters for citric acid production in submerged fermentation.
3. List the industrial uses of citric acid.
4. Compare *Rhizopus* and *Lactobacillus* as lactic acid producing organisms.
5. Describe lactic acid production by fermentation.
6. Discuss extraction of lactic acid from fermentation broth.

#### SUGGESTED READINGS

- Charrington, C.A., Hinton, M., Mead, G.C., Chopra, I. 1991. Organic Acids: Chemistry, Antibacterial Activity and Practical Applications. *Advances in Microbial Physiology*. 32, 87–108.
- Ho, N.W.Y. 1980. *Ann. Repts. Ferm. Proc.* 4, 235–266.
- Kosaric, D.C.M., Ng, I.R., Steart, G.S. 1980. *Adv. Appl. Microbiol.* 26, 137–227.
- Lockwood, L.B. 1979. *In: Microbial Technology*. H.J. Peppler, D. Perlman (eds.) 2nd ed. Academic Press, New York, USA. pp. 256–288.
- Narayanan, N., Pradip, K., Roychoudhury, P.K., Srivastava, A. 2004. L (+) Lactic Acid Fermentation and its Product Polymerization. *Electronic Journal of Biotechnology* 7, *Electronic Journal of Biotechnology* [online]. 15 August 2004, Vol. 7, no. 3 [cited 23 March 2006]. Available from: <http://www.ejbiotechnology.info/content/vol2/issue3/full/3/index.html>. ISSN 0717-3458.

# CHAPTER 15

## Production of Amino Acids by Fermentation

Amino acids have the general formula  $\text{R}-\underset{\substack{| \\ \text{NH}_2}}{\text{CH}}-\text{COOH}$  and are the main components of

which proteins are made. The amino acids found in proteins number 20, eight of which are essential for animals and must be supplied in their food, since animals cannot synthesize them.

Each of the 20 amino acids found in proteins can be distinguished by the R-group substitution on the carbon atom and can be divided into the following groups on that basis: amino acids with aliphatic R groups, non-aromatic amino acids with hydroxyl R groups, amino acids with sulfur containing R groups, amino acids with acidic R groups, amino acids with basic R groups, amino acids with aromatic R groups and amino acids with imino acids as the R groups. The nature of the R group influences the activity of the amino acid. Thus, the hydrophilic amino acids which have  $-\text{OH}$  groups in their R substituent (e.g. serine) tend to interact with the aqueous environment, are often involved in the formation of H-bonds and are predominantly found on the exterior surfaces proteins or in the reactive centers of enzymes. On the other hand, the hydrophobic amino acids (without  $-\text{OH}$  groups in the R substituent, for example methionine) tend to repel the aqueous environment and, therefore, reside predominantly in the interior of proteins. This class of amino acids does not ionize nor participate in the formation of H-bonds (Table 15.1).

All the amino acids, except glycine have two optically active isomers, the D- or the L-form. Natural proteins are usually made up of L- (or the so-called natural amino acids). Many other rare amino acids have been reported in various metabolites such as some antibiotics, other microbiological products, and in non-proteinaceous materials in plants and animals.

### 15.1 USES OF AMINO ACIDS

(i) *Use in human and animal nutritional supplementation:* Proteins are metabolized constantly in the body and most of the amino acids absorbed are used to replace body proteins. The remaining are metabolized into various body components including hormones, and nucleic acid bases. Foods such as plant proteins lacking in some essential

Table 15.1 Amino acids found in proteins

<i>Amino Acid</i>	<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Structure</i>
<b>Amino Acids with Aliphatic R-Groups</b>		
Glycine	Gly - G	$\text{H}-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
Alanine	Ala - A	$\text{CH}_3-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
* Valine	Val - V	$\text{H}_3\text{C}-\underset{\text{H}_3\text{C}}{\text{C}}-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
* Leucine	Leu - L	$\text{H}_3\text{C}-\underset{\text{H}_3\text{C}}{\text{C}}-\text{CH}_2-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
* Isoleucine	Ile - I	$\text{H}_3\text{C}-\text{CH}_2-\underset{\text{H}_3\text{C}}{\text{C}}-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
<b>Non-Aromatic Amino Acids with Hydroxyl R-Groups</b>		
Serine	Ser - S	$\text{HO}-\text{CH}_2-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
* Threonine	Thr - T	$\text{H}_3\text{C}-\underset{\text{HO}}{\text{C}}-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
<b>Amino Acids with Sulfur-Containing R-Groups</b>		
Cysteine	Cys - C	$\text{HS}-\text{CH}_2-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
* Methionine	Met-M	$\text{H}_3\text{C}-\text{S}-(\text{CH}_2)_2-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
<b>Acidic Amino Acids and their Amides</b>		
Aspartic Acid	Asp - D	$\text{HOOC}-\text{CH}_2-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
Asparagine	Asn - N	$\text{H}_2\text{N}-\underset{\text{O}}{\text{C}}-\text{CH}_2-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
Glutamic Acid	Glu - E	$\text{HOOC}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
Glutamine	Gln - Q	$\text{H}_2\text{N}-\underset{\text{O}}{\text{C}}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
<b>Basic Amino Acids</b>		
Arginine	Arg - R	$\text{HN}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$ $\text{C}=\text{NH}$ $\text{NH}_2$
* Lysine	Lys - K	$\text{H}_2\text{N}-(\text{CH}_2)_4-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
Histidine	His - H	$\text{HN}-\text{CH}_2-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$ 
<b>Amino Acids with Aromatic Rings</b>		
* Phenylalanine	Phe - F	 - $\text{CH}_2-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
Tyrosine	Tyr - Y	$\text{HO}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4-\text{CH}_2-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
* Tryptophan	Trp-W	 - $\text{CH}_2-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\text{C}}-\text{COOH}$
<b>Imino Acids</b>		
Proline	Pro - P	 - $\text{COOH}$

\* Essential

amino acids are fortified with their addition. Most cereals are particularly low in lysine, the addition of which greatly improves the quality of the food as determined by the PER (protein equivalency ratio). The PER is a means of comparing the amino acid content of protein with that of hen's egg or human milk.

Animal feeds made from inexpensive plant proteins can be greatly improved with only a small quantity of the limiting amino acids, resulting in higher growth rates in the animals. L-lysine and DL-methionine are widely used as feed improvers.

**(ii) Flavor and taste enhancement in foods:** Amino acids influence the taste of foods. Some are very sweet; for example glycine is as sweet as sugar and is sometimes used in soft drinks and soups. The amino acid is present in large amounts in shrimps to which it confers its sweet taste. The peptide, L-aspartyl-L-phenylalanine methyl ester is particularly sweet. Well-known sweeteners such as Aspartame, Sweet and Low, and Splenda contain a dipeptide formed from aspartic acid and phenylalanine. Other amino acids such as valine are bitter. It is interesting that while the L-isomers of leucine, phenylalanine, tyrosine, and tryptophan are bitter, the D-isomers are sweet. The combination of various amino acids influence the taste and flavor of foods. Thus, cheese flavor results from the combined effect of glutamic acid as well as that of bitter amino acids such as valine, leucine, and methionine.

**(iii) Medical uses:** The most common application of amino acids in medicine is in transfusions administered when the oral consumption of proteinaceous food is not possible such as after surgery. In the past, only essential amino acids were used in transfusion; nowadays, non-essential ones are added.

Various amino acids are used for ammonia detoxification in blood in liver diseases, in the treatment of heart failure, in cases of peptic ulcer and male sterility, etc. [Table 15.2](#) summarizes some of these uses.

In addition derivatives of amino acids are widely used in medicine as discussed below. Methyl dopa (L-methyl-3, 4 dihydroxy-phenylalanine) is widely used as an anti-hypertensive with relatively few side effects. Dopa is used in treating Parkinson's disease.

A derivative of serine, cycloserine, is an antibiotic produced by a streptomycete and used for the treatment of tuberculosis.

**(iv) Use as industrial synthetic raw materials:**

- (a) *Surface-active agents:* A surface-active agent has a water soluble (hydrophilic) as well as a water-repellent (hydrophobic) end. The hydrophilic end is dissolved in the water and consequently, the surface tension of the water is lowered. Surface active agents can be prepared from amino acids by introducing long-chain lipophilic groups to one of the two hydrophilic groups ( $-\text{COOH}$ , or  $-\text{NH}_2$ ) of amino acids. The resulting surface-active agents are either cationic (positive charge) or anionic (negative charge). As they lower the surface tension like soap, they foam just like soap. Some are even more effective than soap as cleansing agents, and some also have a strong bacteriostatic action. Thus, sodium lauryl sarcosinate is used in toothpaste and shampoo because it has a bacteriocidal as well as foaming action. These derivatives are also used as fungicides and pesticides.
- (b) *Production of polymers from amino acids:* Polymers derived from amino acids are used in making synthetic leather, fire-resistant fabrics and anti-static materials.
- (c) *Use as cosmetics:* Amino acids exhibit a buffering action that help maintain normal skin function by regulating pH and a protective action against bacteria. Detergents

**Table 15.2** Therapeutic uses of some amino acids

<i>Amino Acid</i>	<i>Use</i>
Ornithine	Used for treating cases of hyperammonemia (excessive ammonia in blood) because it increases urease activity in the liver, thus enhancing urease production.
Arginine	More common than ornithine. 1. Use for ammonia detoxification described above. 2. Arginine is the main component of spermatic proteins and hence administered in cases of male sterility due to low number or weak spermatozoa ( <i>Sterilitas virilis</i> ).
Aspartic acid	1. Used for ammonia detoxification combined with ornithine. 2. Used as carrier for $K^+$ and $Mg^{++}$ in form of potassium or magnesium aspartate in cases of heart failure, fatigue, etc.
Cysteine and cystine	1. Protect SH-enzymes in the liver from enzyme inhibitors; used for dealing with poisons generally including cyanide poisoning. 2. L-cysteine is used in bronchitis and nasal catarrh.
Glutamic acid	Important in brain metabolism hence various analogues of glutamic acid are used in treating various neuropathic diseases.
Glycine	Rarely used as a drug, but only as a sweetener in medicines.
Histidine	An amino acid essential for infants but not for adults, it is used in adults for gastric and duodenal ulcers and is administered in cases of anaemia because it helps in hemoglobin regeneration.
Methionine	A sulfur-containing amino acid, it is important in the metabolism of various sulfur-containing compounds in the body. It is also used for detoxification in poisoning by arsenic, chloroform, and benzene derivatives. A derivative of methionine, Vitamin U, is used as an anti-ulcer drug, because it neutralizes histamine which is known to induce ulcer formation.
Tryptophan	Used as an anti-depressant.

(surface active agents) derived from amino acids are less irritating than soaps because the pH of 5.5–6.0 is closer to that of the skin, whereas soap is slightly alkaline. Examples for the addition of amino acids to shampoos are anti-dandruff shampoos containing cysteine and the employment of thioglycolic as a reducing agent for the cold waving of hair.

## 15.2 METHODS FOR AMINO ACID PRODUCTION

The beginning of the development of the amino acid industry can be put at 1908 when Kikunae Ikeda identified and isolated monosodium glutamate (MSG), the sodium salt of glutamic acid, as the flavoring agent in 'kombu', a traditional seasoning agent used in Japan, and derived from some marine algae. The following year, the Ajinomoto Company started producing MSG by extraction from the acid hydrolysate of wheat gluten or defatted soy. Glutamic acid, lysine, and methionine are the most produced amino acids globally.

(i) **Protein hydrolysis:** Protein hydrolysis was the original method of amino manufacture. Hair, keratin, blood meal, and feathers are hydrolyzed using acid and the amino acid extracted. Cysteine and cystine are still produced by isolating them from chemically hydrolyzed keratin protein in hair and feathers while proline and hydroxyproline are precipitated from gelatin hydrolysates.

(ii) **Chemical synthesis:** Glycine, L-alanine, and DL-methionine are produced by chemical synthesis. Chemical synthesis can only produce the D, L-(racemic) forms of amino acids and an additional step involving the use of an immobilized enzyme, aminoacylase, produced by *Aspergillus niger* is necessary to obtain the biologically active L-form. This step is expensive and therefore few amino acids are prepared by chemical synthesis. Amino acids produced by chemical synthesis are glycine and methionine which is to have the same effect as an animal feed additive whether in the L- or in the D, L-form.

(iii) **Microbiological methods:** Microbiological methods are of three types:

1. Semi-fermentation;
2. Use of microbial enzymes or immobilized cells;
3. Direct fermentation.

### 15.2.1 Semi-Fermentation

In this process, the metabolic intermediate in the amino acid biosynthesis or its precursor is added to the medium, which contains carbon and nitrogen sources and other nutrients required for growth and production; the metabolite is converted to the amino acid during fermentation. Sometimes, the intermediate could be another amino acid. Examples of the commercial production of amino acids by semi-fermentation are L-serine production from glycine and methanol using the methane-utilizing bacterium *Hyphomicrobium* sp. or *Pseudomonas* sp. Other examples are the production of L-tryptophan from anthranilic acid or indole using *E. coli* and *B. subtilis*. L-isoleucine production from DL- $\alpha$ -aminobutyric acid and ethanol by *Brevibacterium* sp. have been done commercially by this process.

### 15.2.2 Enzymatic Process

Chemically synthesized substrates can be converted to the corresponding amino acids by the catalytic action of an enzyme or microbial cells as an enzyme source. Often, the enzymes or the cells may be immobilized. L-alanine production from L-aspartic acid, L-aspartic acid production from fumaric acid, L-cysteine production from DL-2-aminothiazoline-4-carboxylic acid (Fig. 15.1). Others are D-phenylglycine (and D-*p*-hydroxyphenylglycine) production from DL-phenylhydantoin (and DL-*p*-hydroxyphenylhydantoin), and L-tryptophan production from indole and DL-serine have been in operation as commercial processes.

### 15.2.3 Production of Amino Acids by Direct Fermentation

The most important method for producing amino acids microbiologically is by direct fermentation. What method is used in any particular situation depends on factors such as process economics, the available raw materials, market size, the environmental regulation operating in the place of production, etc.



**Table 15.3** Amino acids produced from wild type and mutant strains of bacteria

<i>Wild-type</i>		<i>Auxotrophic Mutants</i>		<i>Regulatory Mutants</i>	
L-glutamic acid	1	L-citrulline	1	L-arginine	1,2,3
L-valine	1	L-leucine	1	L-histidine	1,3,5
		L-lysine	1	L-isoleucine	1,3,5
		L-ornithine	1	L-leucine	5,6
		L-proline	3	L-lysine	3
		L-threonine	4	L-methionine	1
		L-tyrosine	1	L-phenylalanine	1,3
				L-threonine	1,3
				L-tryptophan	1,3
				L-tyrosine	1,3
				L-valine	6

1 = *Corynebacterium glutamicum*                      2 = *Bacillus subtilis*  
3 = *Brevibacterium flavum*                        4 = *Escherichia coli*  
5 = *Serratia marcescens*                         6 = *Brevibacterium lactofermentum*

be noted that besides glucose, hydrocarbons have served as carbon sources for glutamic acid production. The optimal temperature is 30° to 35°C, and a high degree of aeration is necessary.

(iii) *Biochemical basis for glutamic acid production:*

- Glutamic acid production is greatest when biotin is limiting. When biotin is optimal, growth is luxuriant and lactic acid instead of glutamic acid is excreted. The optimal level of biotin is 0.5 mg per gram of dry cells.
- The isocitrate-succinate part of the TCA cycle (Fig. 15.2) is needed for growth. It is only after the growth phase that glutamic acid production becomes optimal.
- An increase in the permeability of the cell is necessary so as to permit the outward diffusion of glutamic acid, essential for high glutamic acid productivity. This increased permeability to the acid can be achieved in the following ways: (i) ensuring biotin deficiency in the medium (ii) treatment with fatty acid derivatives, (iii) ensuring oleic acid deficiency in mutants requiring oleic acid (C<sub>16</sub>-C<sub>18</sub>), and (iv) addition of penicillin during growth of glutamic acid bacteria. Cells treated in one of the first three ways above have cell membranes in which the saturated to unsaturated fatty acid ratio is abnormal, therefore the permeability barrier is destroyed and glutamic acid accumulates in the medium. The major factor in glutamic acid production by wild type organism is thus altered permeability. Treatment with penicillin prevents cell-wall formation. Cell wall inhibiting antibiotics such as penicillin and cephalosporin have enabled the use of molasses which are rich in biotin for glutamic acid production.

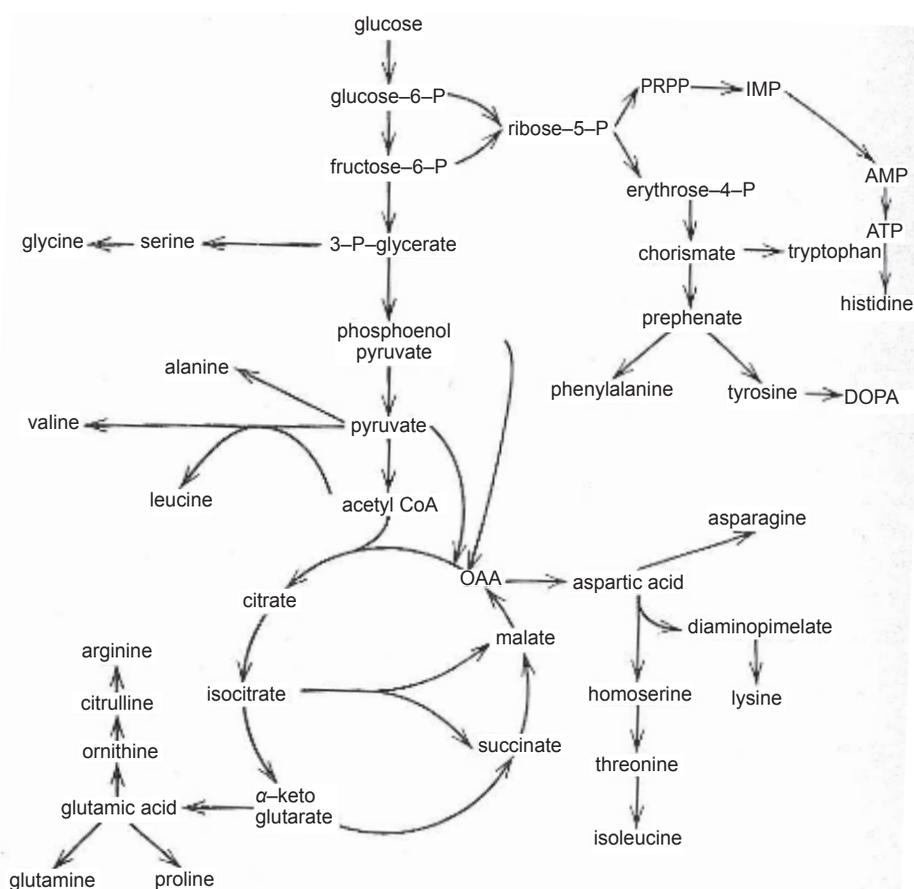


Fig. 15.2 Metabolic Pathways Involved in the Biosynthesis of Amino Acids from Glucose

## 15.4 PRODUCTION OF AMINO ACIDS BY MUTANTS

After wild type strains of *C. glutamicum* and of other bacteria were found to accumulate glutamic acid, efforts to find in nature bacteria able to yield high amounts of other amino acids failed. The reason for this is that microorganisms avoid over-production of amino acids, producing only the quantity they require. To induce the organism to overproduce, regulatory mechanisms must be disorganized as discussed in [Chapter 6](#). Two major means of regulating amino acid synthesis are feedback inhibition and repression. Auxotrophic mutants and regulatory mutants are two means by which the organisms' tendency not to overproduce can be disorganized. In order to overproduce an amino acid which is an intermediate in a synthetic pathway, a mutant auxotroph is produced whose pathway in the synthesis is blocked. When this mutant is cultivated, limiting nutrient feedback and/or repression would have been removed and an overproduction of the amino acid will occur. The mutants used for the production of amino acids other than glutamic acid are produced from L-glutamic acid producing bacteria. These bacteria assimilate carbon efficiently and do not degrade the amino acid they excrete.

### 15.4.1 Production of Amino Acids by Auxotrophic Mutants

Table 15.3 shows the amino acids produced by the use of auxotrophic mutants. The first to be produced was L-lysine using limiting concentrations of either L-homoserine or L-methionine plus L-threonine with a mutant strain of *Corynebacterium glutamicum*. In the wild type of this organism concerted feedback inhibition is performed by both lysine and threonine. Inhibition does not occur when only one is present. In this particular mutant, absence of biosynthetic homoserine derived from aspartic acid causes lysine to accumulate (Fig. 15.3).

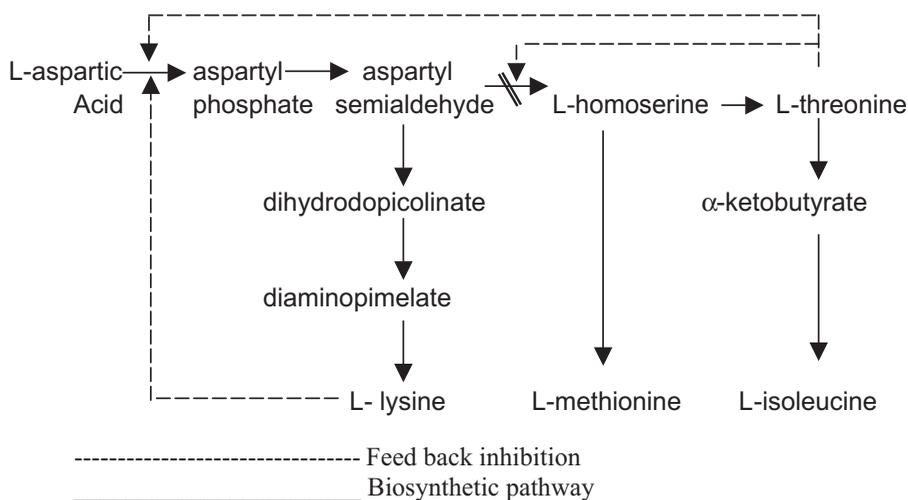


Fig. 15.3 Accumulation of Lysine in a Mutant Strain of *Corynebacterium glutamicum*

### 15.4.2 Production of Amino Acids by Regulatory Mutants

Regulatory mutants have a feedback-insensitive key enzyme and hence continue to overproduce the required amino acid. In order to obtain such mutants, mutations are induced to produce organisms whose growth is not inhibited by analogues of the amino acid to be overproduced. A good example is the case of lysine production by *Brevibacterium flavum*. In this organism, the L-lysine pathway is regulated at aspartate kinase which is the only enzyme sensitive to feedback inhibition by lysine. Mutants resistant to lysine analogues therefore overproduce the amino acid (Fig. 15.4).

## 15.5 IMPROVEMENTS IN THE PRODUCTION OF AMINO ACIDS USING METABOLICALLY ENGINEERED ORGANISMS

The use of recombinant DNA technology has enabled genetic modifications which have further improved existing production strains through metabolic engineering. Metabolic engineering involves the introduction of genes which will enhance the production of a metabolic pathway. The pathways through which amino acids are made by the organism are shown in Fig. 15.2. The genes limiting the production of the amino acid are enhanced by gene amplification, thus leading to a more rational improvement of the organism.

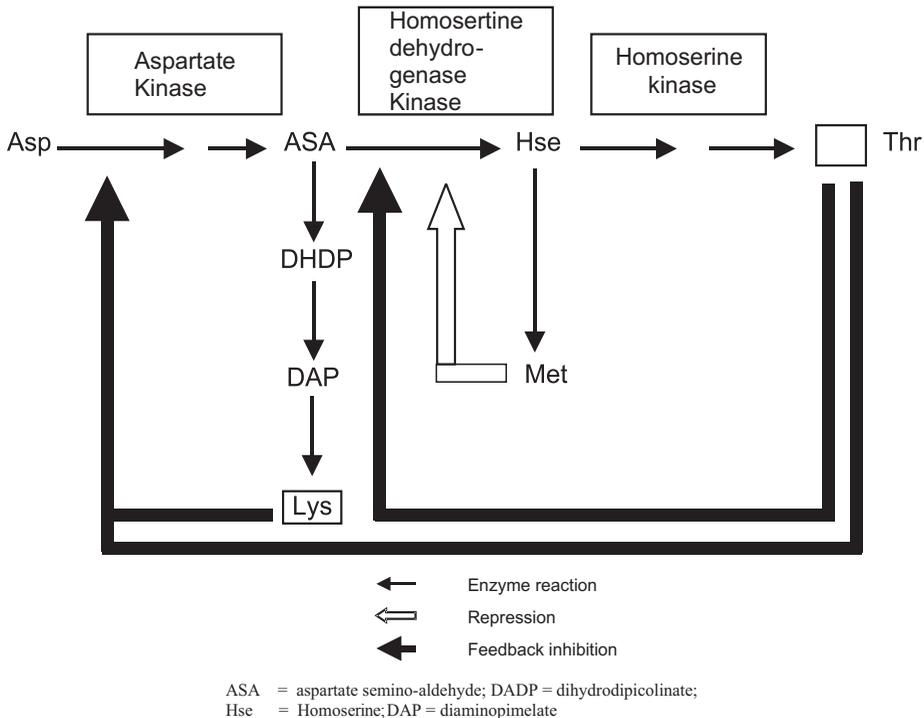


Fig. 15.4 Lysine Biosynthesis in *Brevibacterium flavum* and *Corynebacterium glutamicum*

Many examples exist of improvements in amino acid production through cloning of genes (Table 15.4). Among the pathways which have been targeted for improvement through gene cloning are:

- (i) the terminal pathways of the amino acid synthesis
- (ii) the central metabolic pathway for producing the amino acid
- (iii) the transport process for secreting amino acid

### 15.5.1 Strategies to Modify the Terminal Pathways

The strategies for modifying the terminal pathways are indicated in Fig. 15.5.

1. *Amplification of rate limiting enzyme*: The gene coding for the rate limiting enzyme in the biosynthetic pathway is amplified. Large increases have been observed when this technique was applied to L-phenylalanine production in *Corynebacterium glutamicum*.
2. *Amplification of branch-point enzyme*: The gene coding for the branch-point enzyme is amplified to redirect the common intermediate to another amino acid. It has been used successfully in converting L-lysine to L-tryptophan and L-tyrosine to L-phenylalanine.
3. *Introduction of a different enzyme able to produce the same end amino acid*: The gene for a different enzyme for the same end amino acid is introduced. The enzyme creating

**Table 15.4** Improvements in amino acid production through the cloning of different genes

<i>Amino acid produced</i>	<i>Microorganisms</i>	<i>Gene donor</i>	<i>Cloned gene or enzyme</i>	<i>Yield mg/mL</i>
L-alanine	<i>E. coli</i>	<i>B. stearothermophilus</i>	Ala dehydrogenase	
D-alanine	<i>E. coli</i>	<i>Ochrobactrum anthropi</i>	D-aminopeptidase	200
L-histidine	<i>C. glutamicum</i>	<i>C. glutamicum</i>	His G, D, C, B	15
	<i>S. marcescens</i>	<i>S. marcescens</i>	His G, D, B	43
L-isoleucine	<i>C. glutamicum</i>	<i>C. glutamicum</i>	Hom dehydrogenase	11
	<i>B. flavum</i>	<i>E. coli</i>	ilv A	21
L-lysine	<i>C. glutamicum</i>	<i>C. glutamicum</i>	Lys A, dap A, B, D, Y	
	<i>C. glutamicum</i>	<i>E. coli</i>	Asp A	
L-phenylalanine	<i>C. glutamicum</i>	<i>C. glutamicum</i>	aro F, chorismate mutase, PRDH	28
	<i>C. glutamicum</i>	<i>E. coli</i>	aro G, Phe A	
	<i>B. lactofermentum</i>	<i>B. lactofermentum</i>	aro F, E, L, PRDH	21
L-proline	<i>S. marcescens</i>	<i>S. marcescens</i>	Pro A, B	75
L-threonine	<i>E. coli</i>	<i>E. coli</i>	Thr A, B, C	55
	<i>C. glutamicum</i>	<i>C. glutamicum</i>	hom dehydrogenase, hom kinase, Thr C	51
	<i>B. lactofermentum</i>	<i>B. lactofermentum</i>	ppc, hom dehydrogenase, hom kinase	33
	<i>B. flavum</i>	<i>E. coli</i>	Thr B, C	27
L-tryptophan	<i>S. marcescens</i>	<i>E. coli</i>	ppc	60
	<i>E. coli</i>	<i>E. coli</i>	Trp A, E, R, tna A	40
	<i>C. glutamicum</i>	<i>C. glutamicum</i>	Trp E, aro F, chorismate mutase, PRDH	45
L-tyrosine	<i>C. glutamicum</i>	<i>E. coli</i>	Aro F	9

the bottle neck is thus bypassed. This has been used for increased L-isoleucine production in *Corynebacterium glutamicum*.

4. *Introduction of a more functional enzyme than the native one*: Introduction of an enzyme which is more active than the native one, thereby enhancing the production of the amino acid. This has enhanced L-alanine production by *Corynebacterium glutamicum*, when L-alanine dehydrogenase from *Arthrobacter oxydans* was engineered into it.
5. *Amplification of the first enzyme in the terminal pathway*: The first enzyme in a pathway diverging from central metabolism is amplified to increase the flow in that pathway. This strategy has been applied to obtain increased yield of L-tryptophan by *Corynebacterium glutamicum*.

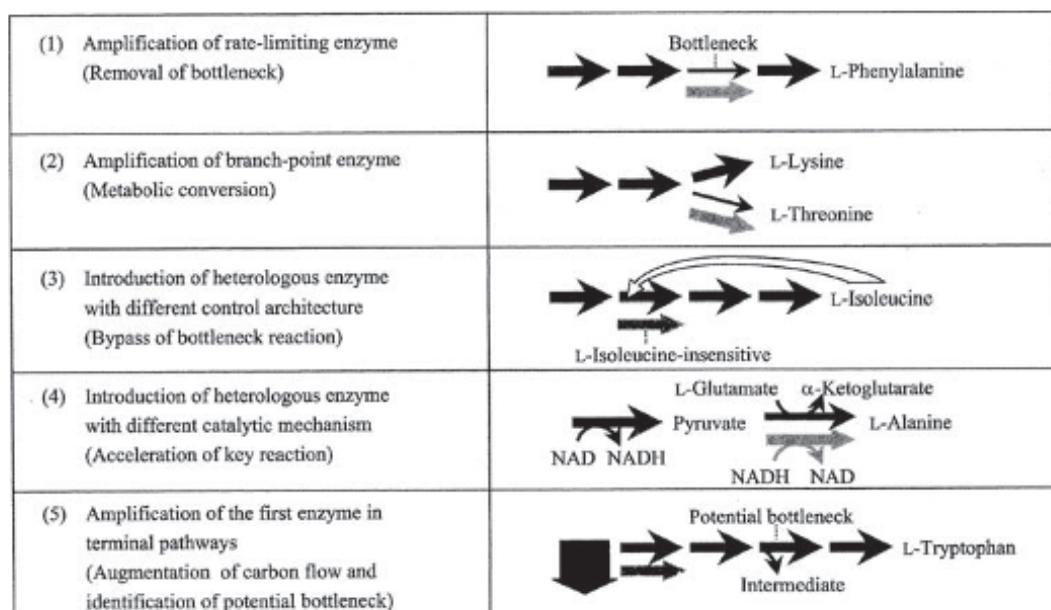


Fig. 15.5 Strategies to Modify Terminal Pathways for the Improved Production of Amino Acids (Ikeda 2003)

### 15.5.2 Strategies for Increasing Precursor Availability

A major aim of metabolic engineering for increased amino acid production is to channel as much carbon as possible from sugar into the production of a desired amino acid. After bottlenecks in the terminal pathway are removed, the main factor limiting increased production is the shifting of intermediates to the central metabolic pathway. The complete genetic sequence of *Corynebacterium glutamicum* is available. One strategy is to amplify the genes for the enzymes leading to the formation of aromatic amino acids erythrose 4-P and to L-histidine through ribose 5-P (Fig. 15.6).

### 15.5.3 Metabolic Engineering to Improve Transport of Amino Acids Outside the Cell

The aim of strain improvement is to prevent feedback inhibition when the amino acid accumulates intracellularly. One manner in which feedback inhibition can be avoided is through increased efflux of the amino acid. A gene which codes for increased efflux has been introduced into *E. coli* resulting in a vastly increased production of L-cysteine.

## 15.6 FERMENTOR PRODUCTION OF AMINO ACID

### 15.6.1 Fermentor Procedure

Starting from shake flasks the inoculum culture is grown in shake flasks and transferred to the first seed tank (1,000–2,000 liters) in size. After suitable growth, the inoculum is transferred to the second seed tank (10,000–20,000 liters) which serves as inoculum for the production tank (50,000–500,000 liters).

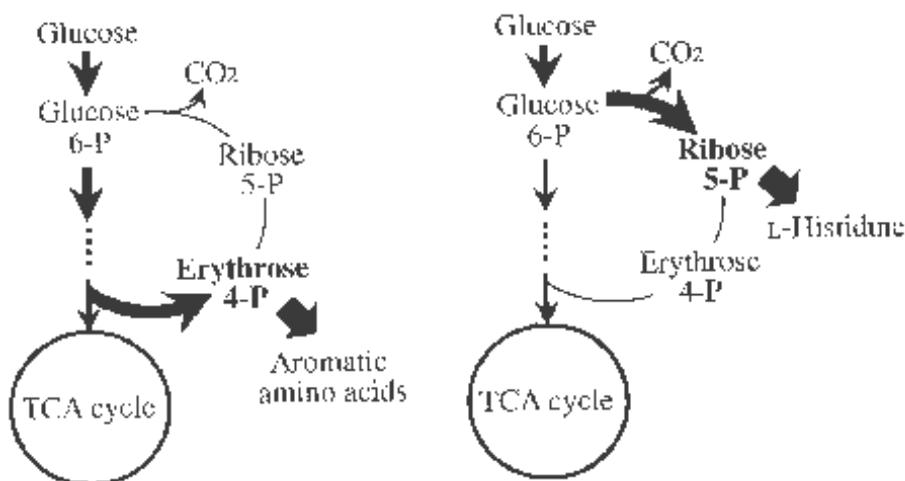


Fig. 15.6 Strategies for Increasing Precursor Availability for the Production of Aromatic Amino Acid and L-Histidine in *Corynebacterium glutamicum*

The fermentation is usually batch or fed-batch. In batch cultivation, all the nutrients are added at once at the beginning of the fermentation, except for ammonia which is added intermittently to help adjust the pH, and fermentation continues until sugar is exhausted. In a fed-batch process, the fermenter is only partially filled with medium and additional nutrients added either intermittently or continuously until an optimum yield is obtained. The fed-batch appears preferable for the following reasons:

- Most amino acid production requires high sugar concentrations of up to 10%. If all were added immediately, acid would be quickly produced which will inhibit the growth of the microorganisms and hence reduce yield.
- Where auxotrophic mutants are used, excess supply of nutrients leads to reduced production due to overgrowth of cells or feedback regulation by the nutrient.
- During the lag phase of growth, the oxygen demand of the organism may exceed that of the organism leading to reduced growth.

### 15.6.2 Raw Materials

The main raw materials used are cane or beet molasses and starch hydrolysates from corn or cassava as glucose. In the US, the preferred carbon source is corn syrup from corn, whereas in Europe and South America it is beet molasses.

As a nitrogen source, inorganic sources such as ammonia or ammonium sulfate are generally used.

Phosphates, vitamins, and other necessary supplements are usually provided with corn steep liquor.

### 15.6.3 Production Strains

Apart from the glutamic acid bacteria already discussed, *E. coli* and *Bacillus subtilis* are also good amino acid producing organisms. The glutamic acid bacteria previously classified

as four different species are now regarded one species. The optimum temperature of *C. glutamicum* is 30°C whereas that of *E. coli* is higher. Hence, *E. coli* may be preferred for production in tropical countries.

Production strains for amino acids are generally classified as wild-type, capable of producing amino acids under defined conditions but generally low-yielding in quantity, auxotrophic, or as regulatory mutants, in which feedback regulations are bypassed by partially starving them of their requirements or by removal of metabolic controls through mutation and by genetically modifying the organism by amplifying genes coding for rate-limiting enzymes. The strains used here belong to the last two categories and have been developed using classical mutation methods or through genetic engineering. The selection of the strain is not only for high yields but also for those least producing undesirable side products. For instance, when branched chain amino acids are produced, it is essential that other branched chain amino acids do not occur as this increases the cost of separation and extraction.

#### 15.6.4 Downstream Processing

After fermentation, the cells may be filtered using a rotary vacuum filter. Filtration can be improved by using filter aids. These are usually kieselguhr filter aids based on diatomaceous earth which improve the porosity of a resulting filter cake leading to a faster flow rate. Before filtration, a thin layer is used as a pre-coat of the filter (normally standard filters).

The extraction method of the amino acid from the filtrate depends on the level of purity desired in the product. However two methods are generally used: the chromatographic (ion exchange) method or the concentration-crystallization method.

**Crystallization:** Due to the amphoteric character (contains both acidic and basic groups) of amino acids, their solubility is greatly influenced by the pH of the solution and usually show minima at the isoelectric point (zero net charge). Since temperature also influences the solubility of amino acids and their salts, lowering the temperature can be used in advance as a means of obtaining the required product. Precipitation of amino acids with salts, like ammonium and calcium salts, and with metals like zinc are also commonly used. This is followed by acid (or alkali) treatment to obtain the free or acid form of the amino acid.

**Ion exchange** resins have been widely used for the extraction and purification of amino acids from the fermentation broth. The adsorption of amino acids by ion exchange resins is strongly affected by the pH of the solution and by the presence of contaminant ions. There are two types of ion exchange resins; cation exchange resins and anion exchange resins. Cation exchange resins bind positively charged amino acids (the pH of the solution is lower than the isoelectric point (IEP) of the amino acid), whereas anion exchange resins bind negatively charged amino acids (pH of the solution is higher than IEP). Elution of the bound amino acid(s) is done by introducing a solution containing the counter-ion of the resin. In general, ion exchange as a tool for separation is only used when other steps fail, because of its tedious operation, small capacity, and high costs.

#### END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Describe the relevance of supplementation of human and animal foods with amino acids.

2. List methods of amino acid production.
3. Briefly describe three types of microbiological methods of amino acid production.
4. Describe the properties of *Corynebacterium glutamicum* which make it a novel organism for glutamic acid production.
5. Why is it necessary to increase cell permeability for improved glutamic acid production?
6. Discuss a method by which overproduction of amino acid is achieved.
7. Explain how enzymes can be utilized to modify terminal pathways of amino acid synthesis.
8. What are the advantages of the fed-batch fermentation over the batch fermentation in production of amino acids?

### SUGGESTED READINGS

- Araki, K. 2003. Amino Acids Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology. 2, 554–618.
- Currell, B.R.C., Mieras, V.D., Biotol Partners. 1997. Biotechnological Innovations in Chemical Synthesis Elsevier.
- Ikeda, M. 2003. Amino Acid Production Processes. Advances in Biochemical Engineering/Biotechnology. 79, 1–35.
- Kelle, R., Hermann, T., Bathe, B. 2005. L-Lysine. In: Handbook of *Corynebacterium glutamicum*. L. Eggelin, M. Bott (eds.) Taylor and Francis, Boca Raton, FL, USA. pp. 465–488.
- Kimura, E. 2003. Metabolic Engineering of Glutamate Production. Advances in Biochemical Engineering/Biotechnology. 79, 37–57.
- Mueller, U., Huebner, S. 2003. Economic Aspects of Amino Acid Production. Advances in Biochemical Engineering/Biotechnology. 79, 137–170.
- Okafor, N., Okeke, B.C., Umeh, C., Ibenegbu, C. 1999. Secretion of lysine in a broth medium by lactic acid bacteria and yeasts associated with “garri” production using a synthetic gene. Letters in Applied Microbiology. 28, 419–422.
- Pfefferle, W., Mockel, B., Bathe, B., Marx, A. 2003. Advances in Biochemical Engineering/Biotechnology. 79, 59–112.
- Sano, K. 1994. Host—Vector Systems for Amino Acid-Producing Coryneform Bacteria. Improvement of Useful Enzymes by Protein Engineering. In: Recombinant Microbes for Industrial and Agricultural Applications. Y. Murooka, T. Imanaka (eds.) Marcel and Dekker, New York, USA. pp. 485–507.

# CHAPTER 16

---

## Mining Microbiology

### Bioleaching by Microorganisms

---

#### 16.1 BIOLEACHING

The term bioleaching refers to the conversion of an insoluble metal (generally a metal sulfide, e.g. CuS, NiS, ZnS) into a soluble form (usually the metal sulfate, e.g. CuSO<sub>4</sub>, NiSO<sub>4</sub>, ZnSO<sub>4</sub>). When the metal is extracted into water; this process is called bioleaching. The term bio-oxidation is usually used to refer to processes in which the recovery of a metal is enhanced by microbial decomposition of the mineral, but the metal being recovered is not solubilized. An example is the recovery of gold from arsenopyrite ores, where the gold remains in the mineral after bio-oxidation and is extracted by cyanide in a subsequent step. The term bioleaching is clearly inappropriate when referring to gold recovery (although arsenic, iron, and sulfur are bioleached from the mineral). Bio-mining is a general term that may be used to refer to both processes.

Bacterial leaching of metals is a process in which the ores of the metals, usually their sulfides, are solubilized by bacterial action. Basically, the process is a chemical oxidation following the equation



where M is a bivalent metal. The solution collected after the solubilization is processed to recover the metal. In the case of insoluble sulfides such as is the case with lead sulfide, the fact of insolubility may be used to separate it from the dissolved metals.

Bacterial leaching has been practiced by man over many centuries without any understanding of the microbiological basis of the process. It was used for mining copper by the Romans in Wales, in Rio Tinto, Spain, in the 18th century, and in the USA in this century. Indeed, about 12% of copper produced in the USA is obtained by bacterial leaching of low grade ores.

## 16.2 COMMERCIAL LEACHING METHODS

### 16.2.1 Irrigation-Type Processes

The irrigation-type processes can be grouped into three: the dump, the heap, and the *in situ* methods. The most widely used methods are dump and heap leaching. The metal most commonly bioleached in the irrigation methods is copper.

#### 16.2.1.1 Dump leaching

In this method, large quantities of low-grade ore are placed in valleys with impermeable grounds. The dumps are shaped by bulldozers into cones which may be as high as 600 ft with 600 ft diameter at the base. Acid solutions usually  $H_2SO_4$ , known as leach solutions, are then sprayed into or flooded over the dumps or injected into them through steel pipes. The acid provides the low pH required by the microorganisms whose activities are responsible for dissolving the ores. Liquid collected at the bottom of the dump contains dissolved metal which is recovered after processing.

In some processes, the dumps are subjected to preconditioning, irrigation, rest, and conditioning, each of which may extend to a year. The irrigation is done with iron- and sulfate-rich recycled wastewater from which the copper has been removed. Microorganisms growing in the dump bring about the reactions which cause the insoluble copper sulfide to become soluble copper sulfate. The copper sulfate is collected from the bottom of the dump, and the copper is recovered by solvent extraction and electrolysis. One of the best-known dump leaching sites is the Kennecott Copper mine in Bingham Canyon, Utah, USA.

#### 16.2.1.2 Heap leaching

Heap leaching is very similar to dump leaching but more efficient due to the use of smaller particles and a smaller scale of operation. The ores are crushed to make them finer and then stacked in much smaller heaps of about a height of 6 to 50 ft. Aeration pipes may be included to permit forced aeration to speed up the process. To further speed up the reaction, inorganic ammonium salts and phosphates may be added. The heaps are placed in mounds on drainage pads or in concrete tanks with false bottoms through which liquid collects in a dump. Tanks have capacities of about 12,000 tons, and the operation can be complete in months rather than years. An example of a large modern heap plant is located in Quabrada Blanca in northern Chile.

Heap bioleaching may also be used to mine gold in low grade gold ores. In this case, the ore is initially flooded with acid-ferric iron. Thereafter, it is treated with recycled heap effluent. After the ore is sufficiently broken down, the ore is mixed with lime and the gold extracted with cyanide.

#### 16.2.1.3 *In situ* Mining

In *in situ* irrigation bioleaching, the ore is not brought to the surface but extracted *in situ*. In some instances, injection wells are used to introduce acidified leaching fluids into the mineral deposit. It percolates and collects in disused mines or in a specially prepared catchment location. The geology of the location must have a suitable impermeable layer.

The mining of uranium is generally done *in situ* in the mine. The uranium ore (uranite) is not attacked by acid producing bacteria. However, it is solubilized when it is oxidized from the tetravalent form which is insoluble to the soluble hexavalent form by chemical oxidants such as ferric iron,  $\text{MnO}_2$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ , chlorates, or nitric acid. In uranium leaching mediated by bacteria, the role of the bacteria is to produce ferric iron which then oxidizes the uranite to make it soluble.

### 16.2.2 Stirred Tank Processes

Stirred tank bioreactors are highly aerated tanks much like the fermenters already discussed except that the sterility maintained in fermenters used for antibiotics, for example, is not necessary in these bioreactors. They are expensive to construct and maintain and used only for high value minerals such as gold.

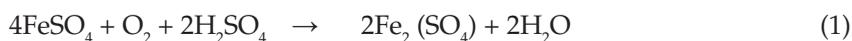
They are usually arranged in series and function as continuous fermenters. The tanks in the first stage are usually arranged parallel, so that the fermentation broth is retained long enough for the cell numbers to reach a steady state without being washed out. The mineral ore is suspended in water to which fertilizer grade  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$  and  $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$  are added. The pH is adjusted 1.5–2.0. The bioreactor is vigorously aerated using air spargers and baffles. The released heat is removed by a jacket of cold water. Systems using aerated bioreactors use pretreatments for the recovery of gold, especially where the gold is finely divided in a mixture of pyrite and arsenopyrite (i.e. iron ores mixed with arsenic). Such ores are known as recalcitrant ores. Normally, gold is recovered from rich ores by treatment with cyanide. However, because gold forms only a small proportion of recalcitrant arsenopyrite ores, the ores are pretreated in the aerated bioreactors. During the pretreatment which lasts for about four days, microbes oxidize the arsenopyrite which is decomposed into iron and sulfate releasing the gold and is then treated with cyanide. Stirred bioreactors are used to pretreat gold ores in many countries around the world including Australia, Brazil, Ghana, and Peru. The Ghana plant in Sensu is perhaps the largest fermentation plant in the world with 24 tanks each with a capacity of 1 million liters.

Aerated bioreactors are used for other minerals in France and Uganda (cobalt) and South Africa (nickel).

## 16.3 MICROBIOLOGY OF THE LEACHING PROCESS

The primary bio-mining microorganisms involved in ore leaching have several properties in common:

- (i) They are Gram-negative specialized chemolitho-autotrophic microbes able to use ferrous iron and reduced inorganic sulfur compounds or both as electron donors.
- (ii) They are able to fix carbon with energy derived from the oxidation of inorganic compounds such as ferrous iron, sulfur, and sulfides according to the following equations:



- (iii) They are acidophilic and will thrive under very acidic conditions at pH ranges of 1.5–2.0.

- (iv) Although they can use electron acceptors other than oxygen, they grow best in highly aerated solutions.
- (v) Some are able to fix atmospheric nitrogen, when the oxygen supply is limited.
- (vi) Some are obligate autotrophs, while others are facultative autotrophs and able to grow in the presence of organic matter.
- (vii) The organisms are usually found naturally in waters in contact with exposed sulfides or in mines.

The organisms involved are the following:

- (a) *Acidothiobacillus*: Organisms belonging to this genus were previously classified as *Thiobacillus*. Following 16S rRNA analysis, they have been reclassified as *Acidothiobacillus* to accommodate the very acidophilic members of the genus. These include *Acidothiobacillus ferrooxidans* (formerly *Thiobacillus ferrooxidans*) which is the most intensively studied and, until recently, was thought to be the sole microorganism involved. It is an obligate autotroph and obtains its energy for the fixation of CO<sub>2</sub> from the oxidation of ferrous irons, sulfides, and other sulfur compounds such as thiosulfate.
- (b) *Leptospirillum ferrooxidans*: This grows only in soluble ferrous iron and not on sulfur or mineral sulfides.
- (c) *Acidothiobacillus thiooxidans* (formerly *Thiobacillus thiooxidans*): It cannot oxidize iron but grows on elemental sulfur and soluble compounds including those generated in the leaching systems of *T. ferrooxidans*.
- (d) *Other bacteria*: *Thiobacillus organosporus* is facultatively chemolithotrophic (i.e. while it is autotrophic, it will also grow when organic compounds are available to it). It oxidizes sulfur but not iron or sulfides. Mixed with other organisms, e.g. *Leptospirillum ferrooxidans*, it will degrade iron sulfides which neither can do alone.

Unlike in other industrial microbiology processes, there is no conscious attempt to use pure cultures. The highly acidophilic organisms create conditions which are unsuitable for other organisms.

## 16.4 LEACHING OF SOME METAL SULFIDES

- (i) *Copper sulfides*: One of the world's main sources of copper is the iron-copper sulfide chalcopyrite (CuFe<sub>2</sub>S<sub>2</sub>). Chalcopyrite, with the addition of water and sulfur dioxide is leached by bacterial action to result in copper sulfate and by-products. Other copper sources are chalcocite (Cu<sub>2</sub>S) and covellite (CuS). Chalcocite is leached by bacterial action and the addition of sulfuric acid.
- (ii) *Uranium extraction*: Bacteria especially *T. ferrooxidans*, oxidize ferrous sulfate to ferric sulfate (Equation I). The latter then reacts with uranium ores. The tetravalent form in the ore is insoluble in the leach solution while the oxidized hexavalent form is. There is thus a two-stage action which seems especially appropriate as the uranyl ion is toxic to most strains of *T. ferrooxidans*.
- (iii) *Cobalt and nickel sulfides leaching*: The major nickel bearing sulfide ore is usually pentlandite which contains about 1% of nickel. The reaction for leaching with *T. ferrooxidans* involves the addition of oxygen (oxidation) and sulfuric acid to result in nickel sulfate.

- (iv) *Zinc and lead sulfide leaching*: Zinc and lead sulfides respectively may be oxidized by *T. ferrooxidans*.

## 16.5 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS AFFECTING BACTERIAL LEACHING

The determination of these factors was performed mainly with *T. ferrooxidans*:

- (i) *Temperature*: The optimum temperature for the bacterial solubilization of metals lies between 25°C and 45°C for different strains of *T. ferrooxidans*. Above 55°C, the activity is mainly chemical.
- (ii) *pH*: *T. ferrooxidans* is acidophilic and has been studied at pH values ranging from 1 to 5. The optimum pH values for acting on many minerals lie between pH 2.3 and 2.5.
- (iii) *Nutrient status of the leaching medium*: Like any other bacterium, the iron-oxidizing thiobacilli must have the appropriate nutrients in the leaching medium. The energy source is ferrous sulfate, but minerals containing iron or sulfur may be utilized. The carbon is obtained from CO<sub>2</sub> of the air. It also needs nitrogen, potassium, magnesium, phosphate, and calcium. Most of these are available from the surrounding rocks. Where the deficiency of one or more of them is established, it must be replaced in the leaching solution for optimum productivity. The thiobacilli are strict aerobes and oxygen deficiency leads to limitations in leaching productivity.
- (iv) *Particle size*: In general, the finer the particle size of the ore, the greater the extraction of the leaching solution. Below a certain particle size however, especially in the case of low grade ores, the ratio of the mineral to unwanted part of the ore increases and productivity falls.

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Define bioleaching, bio-oxidation and biomining.
2. Describe biomining processes.
3. Distinguish between dump leaching and heap leaching.
4. Discuss the microbiology of bioleaching.
5. List factors that influence the efficiency of bacterial bioleaching using an organism such as *Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans*.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Kelly, D.P., Norris, P.R., Brierley, C.L. 1979. *In: Microbial Technology: Current State, Future Prospects*. A.T. Bull, D.C. Ellwood, C. Ratledge (eds.) Cambridge University Press, Cambridge. UK. pp. 263–308.
- Lundgren, D.G. 1980. Ore Leaching by Bacteria. *Ann. Rev. Microbiol.* 24, 263–283.
- Rawlings, D.E. 2002. Heavy Metal Mining Using Microbes. *Annual Review of Microbiology.* 56, 65–91.
- Zajic, J.E. 1969. *Microbial Biogeochemistry*. Academic Press.



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

## **Section E**

# Use of Whole Cells for Food Related Purposes



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

---

## Single Cell Protein Production

---

The term 'Single Cell Protein' (SCP) is a euphemism for protein derived from microorganisms. It was coined by Professor Wilson of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology to replace the less inviting 'microbial' or 'bacterial' protein or 'petroprotein' (for cells grown specifically on petroleum). The term has since become widely accepted. In the 1950s and 1960s, concern grew about the 'food gap' between the industrialized and the less industrialized parts of the world, especially considering the rapid and continuing population growth in the latter. As a result of this concern, alternate and unconventional sources of food were sought. It was recognized that protein malnutrition is usually far more severe than that of other foods. The hope was that microorganisms would help meet this world protein deficiency, after the limitations of conventional sources of proteins were recognized including: (a) possible crop failure due to unfavorable climatic conditions in the case of plants, (b) the need to allow a time lapse for the replenishment of stock in the case of fish, (c) the limited land available for farming in the case of plant production. On the other hand, the production of SCP has a number of attractive features: (a) it is not subject to the vicissitudes of the weather and can be produced every minute of the year; (b) microorganisms have a much more rapid growth than plants or animals. Thus, a bullock weighing 10,000 pounds would synthesize less than 1 lb (or 1/10,000 of its weight) of protein a day, while 10,000 pounds of yeasts would produce over 50 tons (or over 100 times) of their own weight of protein a day; and (c) waste products can be turned into food in the production of SCP.

However, SCP also has some disadvantages. One of the most obvious is that many developing countries where protein malnutrition actually exists lack the expertise and/or the financial resources to develop the highly capital intensive fermentation industries involved. Other criticisms of SCP are that microorganisms contain high levels of RNA and that its consumption could lead to uric acid accumulation, kidney stone formation, and gout.

Microorganisms have been consumed in large amounts, either wholly or as part of a meal or alcoholic beverage, by man for centuries, although he was not always aware of this. In many tropical countries, palm wine and sorghum beers which have high

suspensions of bacteria and yeast have been consumed for centuries. Fermented milks and yoghurts which have been consumed from ancient times up to the present day contain large amounts of bacteria and yeasts ( $10^{12}$ – $10^{14}$ /ml). In Chad (Central Africa), the blue-green alga, *Spirulina* has been eaten for centuries, and it has also been consumed by the Aztecs of South America.

The organized and deliberate cultivation of microorganisms for food however is relatively recent. During the First World War (1914–1918), baker's yeasts, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, were grown on a molasses-ammonium medium. Development continued in between the wars, and during the second World War (1939–1945), *Geotrichum lactis* (*Oidium lactis*), *Endomyces vernalis*, and *Candida utilis* were grown for food.

## 17.1 SUBSTRATES FOR SINGLE CELL PROTEIN PRODUCTION

### 17.1.1 Hydrocarbons

Patterns in the utilization of hydrocarbons by microorganisms have been summarized in the so-called Zobell's rules and shown in a modified form below:

- a. Aliphatic hydrocarbons are assimilated by strains of yeasts in many genera. Other classes of hydrocarbons, including aromatics may be oxidized but are not usually efficiently assimilated.
- b. n-Alkanes of chain length shorter than n-nonane are not usually assimilated, but may be oxidized. Yield factors increase but the rate of oxidation decreases with increasing chain length from n-nonane.
- c. Unsaturated compounds are degraded less readily than saturated ones.
- d. Branched chain compounds are degraded less readily than straight chain chemical compounds.

#### 17.1.1.1 Gaseous hydrocarbons

Natural gas is plentiful over the world and when present, it is cheap. Its composition is 82–90% methane, 4–8% ethane, 2–3% propane, and less than 1% other gases such as isobutene, n-butane, isopentane, n-pentane, heptanes plus CO<sub>2</sub>, and nitrogen. Perhaps its greatest advantage is the absence of residual hydrocarbon in the single cell protein produced from it, unlike the case with liquid hydrocarbons. One of its major disadvantages is that it is highly flammable.

Methane is the most widely studied gaseous hydrocarbon for SCP production. Single cultures in methane are usually very slow growing. Single cell protein production from methane has used continuous cultures and a mixed population of microorganisms. The advantages of mixed cultures in methane are higher growth rate, higher yield coefficient, greater stability resistance to contaminations, and a reduction in foam production. It has been suggested that the various members of a four-organism mixture had the following functions: the unnamed methane bacterium utilizes methane slowly alone and produces methanol. *Hyphomicrobium* utilizes the methanol, whereas the other members, *Flavobacterium* and *Acinetobacter* (which do not grow on methane), remove waste products. The result is a fast growing mixture.

### 17.1.1.2 Liquid hydrocarbons

The major source of liquid hydrocarbons is crude petroleum. These hydrocarbons were first studied as a source of microbial vitamins and lipids. Later, these studies were extended in the late 1940s to the feeding of whole paraffin-grown bacterial and yeast cells to rats. The first important move to grow cells on paraffin on a commercial scale was for 'dewaxing', i.e. removal of higher n-alkanes from crude petroleum fractions (see below). With the concern for world shortage of food, protein production soon became the goal.

Crude petroleum is highly variable in composition, differing from one part of the world to the other. However, most crude petroleum oils are made up of 90–95% hydrocarbons which are most often saturated. During petroleum refining, the crude oil is first distilled at atmospheric pressure in a process known as 'topping'. The components left after topping contain large quantities of normal alkanes with carbon atoms longer than  $C_8$ . Such higher alkanes are crystalline solids at room temperature. It was this removal (or dewaxing of solid n-paraffin or waxes) which first attracted the use of microorganisms. After topping, further distillation is done under vacuum. The petroleum hydrocarbons which have been used to grow SCP are diesel oil, gas oil, fuel oil, n-alkanes, n-hexadecane, and n-dodecane.

British Petroleum (BP) pioneered the use of petroleum fractions in SCP production and by 1973 had the largest number of patents in the field. Soon after, many other oil companies and governments all over the world set up research and pilot plants.

In BP's plant in Scotland, a material from the distillation column is passed through a molecular sieve so that only the part readily assimilated by microorganism, i.e. n-paraffin (specifically 97.5–99%  $nC_{10}$ – $C_{33}$  boiling range 30–33°C) is allowed into the fermentor under aseptic conditions. In the other plant in Lavera in the South of France, which was not aseptic, gasoil was used untreated (i.e. not passed through a molecular sieve). About 10% of the gas oil was used and the remaining 90% returned to the refinery. Solvent extraction was used to remove the last traces of oil from the yeast creams (*Candida tropicalis*) including the 0.5 ton yeast lipids. By 1963, five tons dry weight of yeast was produced by this method per day.

Since the oil boycott of 1973–1974, crude oil prices have risen sharply and the initial attraction to the use of crude oil as a substrate for SCP has been eroded.

### 17.1.2 Alcohols

While work on SCP production from n-paraffin and gas oil was in progress, alternatives to petroleum based substrates were sought. Methanol and ethanol are such alternatives.

#### 17.1.2.1 Methanol

Methanol is produced by the oxidation of paraffin in the gas or liquid phase or by the catalytic reduction by hydrogen of CO and  $CO_2$ , either singly or mixed. The catalysts are mixed zinc and chromium oxides. The source of the feed gas is natural gas, fermentation or fuel gas.

Methanol is suitable as a substrate for SCP for the following reasons: (a) it is highly soluble in water and this avoids the three-phase (water-paraffin-cell) transfer problems inherent in the use of paraffin, (b) the explosion hazard of methanol is minimized in comparison with methane-oxygen mixtures, (c) it is readily available in a wide range of hydrocarbon sources ranging from methane to naphtha, (d) it can be readily purified in a

process which avoids the carry-over of the most toxic polycyclic aromatic compounds, (e) it requires less oxygen than methane for metabolism by microorganisms and hence a lower cooling load, and (f) it is not utilized by many organisms.

The use of methanol as a SCP substrate has received attention by oil companies in Italy, Germany, Norway, Sweden, Israel, the United Kingdom, and the United States. One of the most advanced is a project of the Imperial Chemical Industries (ICI) in Billingham in the UK, which using the bacterium, *Methylophilus methylotropha* was annually produced several tons of proprietary 'Pruteen' utilizing the loop fermentor ('pressure cycle fermentor').

Over 20 species from the genera *Hansenula* (*Hansenula polymorpha*), *Pichia*, *Torulopsis*, and *Candida* have been shown to grow on methanol.

### 17.1.2.2 Ethanol

Ethanol may be produced by the fermentative activity of yeasts. In the synthetic process, it is produced by the hydration of ethylene which itself is obtained during petroleum refining from coke oven gas, the vapor-phase cracking of petroleum, or the propane-butane cut of stabilizer gas. Ethylene is absorbed by concentrated  $H_2SO_4$  to form ethyl hydrogen sulfate. The dilution of the acid with water causes hydrolysis to ethyl alcohol and  $H_2SO_4$ . The alcohol is then distilled off.

Although ethanol can be utilized ordinarily by many bacteria and yeasts, as a substrate for SCP, it is largely used by yeasts. Ethanol has the following advantages:

(a) Since it is already consumed in alcoholic beverages, it is not quite as suspect substrate for SCP as are hydrocarbons. (b) It is like methanol highly miscible with water and hence more easily available than the three-phase paraffin system. (c) Ethanol in contrast to methane can be more safely stored and transported. (d) Unlike methanol, it is non-toxic and can be handled more easily. (e) Ethanol is partially oxidized. For these reasons, the fermentation of ethanol for SCP production requires comparatively less oxygen and hence releases considerably less heat than if it were unsaturated.

The major disadvantage in using ethanol for SCP production is that it is expensive, even when produced by the catalytic method described above. Despite this advantage, yeast produced from ethanol is being produced and marketed as a flavor enhancer in baked foods, pizzas, sauces, etc. in the United States by the Amoco Oil Company in a plant which will ultimately produce 15 million lbs *per annum*. The yeast used is *Candida utilis*.

In Japan, the Mitsubishi Oil Company has developed strains of *Candida acidothermophilum* which grow at a lower pH value and higher temperature than *Candida utilis*. These properties should help reduce costs by minimizing the need for asepticity and cooling as also is the use of unpurified ethanol derived from the process described above. The pilot plant production is 100 tons *per annum*. In Spain, *Hansenula anomala* is used. Ethanol-based SCP is also produced in the Czech Republic and the USSR. In Switzerland, a joint project between Nestle (the food Company) and Exxon (the US Oil Company) utilizes a bacterium *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus* rather than a yeast. Unlike many other plants, it is directed primarily towards human consumption, hence reduction in the nucleic acid content is important.

### 17.1.3 Waste Products

In recent times, petroleum prices have continued to soar; it is therefore unlikely that petroleum-based substrates such as synthetically produced methanol and ethanol, gas

oil, etc. will be used for SCP in the future. Attention is being turned more and more to substrates derived from plants which are renewable during photosynthesis. Usually, these are obtained as waste products from various sources.

SCP production from waste material may be discussed under the following general headings:

(i) *Plant/wood wastes*: These are cellulose containing materials. The major difficulty with them is that cellulose is crystalline and highly resistant to fermentation without prior treatment. When lignin is present, the resistance is even greater as it protects cellulose from direct attack. Therefore, manufacturing processes such as sulfite pulping which must necessarily break down lignin, yield wastes which are comparatively easy to handle.

Plant wastes containing cellulose include corn cobs, plant stems, leaves, stalks, husks, etc. For them to be used for SCP production, they usually have to be treated in some form such as ball-milling, acid, alkali, sodium chlorate, or liquid ammonia treatment. The material may then be digested by a chemical means or by the use of microorganisms. Cellulosic agricultural wastes are available in large amounts all over the world. Any process which aims at utilizing them must take into account the cost of collecting and storing them as well as the fact that they vary widely in their content of cellulose and other materials. Unfortunately, the tropical countries of the world which have large amounts of plant wastes and which are also the areas most critically hit by protein shortage usually do not have the manpower, financial means to purchase, or expertise to run fermentation equipment. The procedure being pursued by Tate and Lyle Ltd., the British sugar manufacturing company, is the use of labor-intensive methods employing fermentor and other equipment fashioned from relatively cheap materials. Many developing countries in Africa, Asia, and South America can adopt these methods and produce SCP locally from agricultural wastes.

(ii) *Starch-wastes*: Starch-containing wastes from rice, potatoes, or cassava manufacturing industries are relatively easy to utilize in SCP production in comparison with cellulosic agricultural wastes. Starch hydrolysis is relatively easily achieved with either whole microbial cells or enzyme. In the Symba Process, two yeasts are used symbiotically: *Endomycopsis fibuligera* hydrolyses starch to the sugars glucose and maltose with alpha- and beta-amylases. *Candida utilis* then utilizes these sugars for growth.

(iii) *Dairy wastes*: Whey is a by-product of the dairy industry resulting from the coagulation of milk protein in cheese manufacture. It is a liquid rich in lactose which can be obtained in concentrated forms from cheese manufacturers and can then be suitably diluted to give the desired lactose concentration. *Saccharomyces fragilis* is grown in it for a high-quality edible food yeast. The process can be adjusted to produce either SCP or alcohol. Due to the cost of aeration, the authors recommend the concomitant manufacture of SCP and alcohol under anaerobic conditions.

(iv) *Wastes from chemical industries*: Various substrates from chemical industries can be utilized for SCP production, provided they contain sufficient amounts of utilizable carbon sources. Thus, *C. lipolytica* or *Trichosporon cutaneum* can be used for SCP production in oxanone water, a waste mixture of organic acids from the caprolactam used for the manufacture of nylon.

(v) *Miscellaneous substrates*: Molasses, the by-product of the sugar industry, is a well-known raw material for microbial industries. Its use for food yeast production, a form of SCP, will be described in the next chapter.

A wide variety of substrates may be, and have been, used for SCP production. These include coffee wastes, coconut wastes, palm-oil wastes, citrus waste, etc.

## 17.2 MICROORGANISMS USED IN SCP PRODUCTION

A list of selected organisms currently used in SCP production is given in [Table 17.1](#). New organisms may be discovered or new strains may be developed from existing strains.

In addition to the properties required in industrial organisms in general, organisms to be used in SCP production should have the following properties:

- (a) *Absence of pathogenicity and toxicity*: It is obvious that the large-scale cultivation of organisms which are pathogenic to animals or plants could pose a great threat to health. The organisms should also not contain or produce toxic or carcinogenic materials.
- (b) *Protein quality and content*: The amount of protein in the organisms should be high and contain as much as possible the amino acids required by man.
- (c) *Digestibility and organoleptic qualities*: The organism should not only be digestible, but it should possess acceptable taste and aroma.
- (d) *Growth rate*: It must grow rapidly in a cheap, easily available medium.
- (e) *Adaptability to unusual environmental conditions*: In order to eliminate contaminants and hence reduce the cost of production, environmental conditions which are antagonistic to possible contaminants are often advantageous. Thus, strains which grow at low pH conditions or at high temperature are often chosen.

The heterotrophic microorganisms currently used are bacteria (including actinomycetes) and fungi (molds and yeasts); protozoa have not been used in SCP production. Of the substrates currently in use, the gaseous hydrocarbons (methane, propane, butane) are almost exclusively attacked by bacteria. Liquid hydrocarbons (n-paraffin, gas oil, diesel oil) and alcohols are utilized by both bacteria and yeasts. Of the carbohydrates, sugar is readily utilized by all the classes of microorganisms; a large number of them can also utilize starch. Unless pretreated, cellulose is not generally utilized directly by many microorganisms. Cellulose and other materials in peanut shells, carob beans, spoiled fruits, corn and pea wastes, sugarcane bagasse, palm, and cassava wastes have been used to make SCP using the molds *Trichoderma* sp., *Gliocladium* sp., *Geotrichum* sp., *Fusarium*, and *Aspergillus*. *Paecilomyces variotii* is used in the Pekilo sulfite liquor SCP method. Fungi have the advantage that they are lower in RNA content and are easily harvested.

## 17.3 USE OF AUTOTROPHIC MICROORGANISMS IN SCP PRODUCTION

Autotrophic organisms include the photosynthetic bacteria and algae. Most of the work on SCP production by autotrophic microbes seems to be limited to the algae due to the fact that photosynthetic bacteria require anaerobic conditions for photosynthesis which are difficult to provide and maintain.

The annual production of the oceans and seas of the world which harbor the bulk of the world's algae is very high; about  $550 \times 10^9$  tons. Man consumes algae through fish for which the algae serve as food. The algae themselves are rich in protein and could be

**Table 17.1** Organisms and substrates which have been used for single cell protein production

<i>Gaseous hydrocarbons</i>	<i>Bacteria</i>	<i>Fungi</i>
i) Methane	<i>Methanomonas</i> sp. <i>Methylococcus capsulatus</i> <i>Pseudomonas</i> sp. <i>Hyphomicrobium</i> sp. Mixed <i>Acinetobacter</i> sp.	
ii) Propane	<i>Flavobacterium</i> sp. <i>Arthrobacter simplex</i>	
iii) Butane	<i>Nocardia paraffinica</i> <i>Nocardia paraffinica</i>	
<i>Liquid Hydrocarbons:</i>		
i) n-Alkanes (C <sub>10</sub> -C <sub>30</sub> )	<i>Mycobacterium phlei</i> <i>Nocardia</i> sp.	<i>Candida guilliermondi</i> <i>Candida lipolytica</i>
ii) n-Alkanes (carbon length unspecified)		<i>Candida kofuensis</i> <i>Candida tropicalis</i>
iii) Liquefied petroleum gas		<i>Candida lipolytica</i> <i>Candida rigida</i>
iv) Gas oil	<i>Acinetobacter</i> <i>Pseudomonas</i>	<i>Candida tropicalis</i> <i>Candida lipolytica</i>
v) Diesel oil	<i>Acromobacter delcavate</i>	
<i>Alcohols</i>	<i>Methylomonas Methanolica</i>	<i>Torulopsis methansoba</i>
<i>Methanol</i>	<i>Methyliphilus (Pseudomonas)</i> <i>methylotrophus</i>	<i>Torulopsis methanolove</i> <i>Candida boidinii</i>
<i>Ethanol</i>	<i>Methylomonas clara</i>	<i>Hansenula polymorpha</i> <i>Candida ethanomorphium</i>
<i>Plant/Wood Wastes</i>		
Sulphite liquor	<i>Thermomonospora fusca</i>	<i>Paecylomyces variotii</i>
Cellulose pulping fines	<i>Brevibacterium</i> sp.	<i>Candida utilis</i>
Wheat bran	<i>Rhodopseudomonas glatinosa</i>	
Wastes from carb, Palms, papaya, etc.		<i>Fusarium</i> sp. <i>Aspergillus</i> sp.
<i>Starch Wastes</i>		
Potato hydrolysate		<i>Rhodotorula rubra</i>
Tapioca (Cassava) starch		<i>Candida tropicalis</i>
<i>Dairy Wastes</i>		
Whey		<i>Endomycopsis fibuligera</i> <i>Kluyveromyces fragilis</i> <i>Trichosporon cutaneum</i>
<i>Sugar Wastes</i>		
Molasses		<i>Candida utilis</i>
<i>Chemical Industries Wastes:</i>		
Oxanone Waste Water		<i>Trichosporon cutaneum</i> <i>Candida pseudotropicalis</i>
Waste polyethylene		

harvested for this purpose. However, the concentration of algae in marine water is only 3 mg/liter whereas for economic viability the harvest should be at least 250 mg/liter. This is an important reason for the cultivation of algae and their production in high concentrations.

Another reason is that, when given adequate conditions, 20 tons (dry weight) of algae having a protein concentration of 50% can be produced per acre of pond *per annum*. In terms of the yield of digestible protein, this is 10–15 times greater than the soy bean and 25–50 times more than the same area planted with corn. From the view point of energy, the yield per acre of algae in terms of dietary energy is eight times as great as sugar beet and between 22 and 45 times as great as that of corn and potato respectively.

Third, much less water is required for the same amount of protein (Table 17.2).

Feeding tests in animals (using the green algae *Scenedesmus* and *Chlorella*) showed that in general, algae had beneficial effects if fed to animals in small amounts at a time. Feeding large amounts for long periods was more successful if they were supplemented by proteins from other sources. Humans consuming foods containing algae did so for periods of up to 20 days with only minor abdominal upset, probably due to the novelty of the foods. For the highest algal yields, carbon dioxide is supplied to algae growing in day light. Where natural saline water rich in bicarbonates is available, such as in Chad Republic or in Lake Texcoco in Mexico, supplementation with CO<sub>2</sub> is not necessary.

Effluents emanating from sewage treatment with their rich content of minerals would be ideal for growing algae for animal feeding. The resulting algae should be heat-treated to avoid any possibility of pathogen transmission.

With the advantages of algae cultivation mentioned earlier, particularly the comparatively low capital investment, the digestibility by ruminants and other animals, the possibility of integrating waste disposal with algae production, and above all, the availability of sunlight and warm temperatures throughout the year, the tropics should be the ideal place for algae cultivation for animal feeding.

The production cost of protein per kilogram is very favorable for SCP when compared with other protein sources.

## 17.4 SAFETY OF SINGLE CELL PROTEIN

Single cell protein met very strong opposition in some countries. The Japanese government was concerned with the possibility of the presence of carcinogenic compounds in petroleum-grown SCP with its limited and non-renewable nature and because it was not conventional. The oil companies which had been working on the SCP from petroleum-derived substrates switched over to working with non-petroleum substrates. In Italy, the concern was over the safe content of nucleic acid in SCP, the polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, fatty acids containing odd-numbered carbon skeletons, and the presence of n-paraffin carried over

**Table 17.2** Comparison of water use for food production by some conventional crops and by algae

	<i>Annual Protein Yield (lb/Acre)</i>	<i>Annual Water Consumption Acre/Feet/Acre</i>	<i>lb Protein/ Acre Food</i>
Soya bean	576	2.0	288
Corn	240	2.0	120
Wheat	135	1.5	90
Algae	20,000	4.0	5,000

from protein-grown yeasts fed to farm animals. However, evidence in support of the overall safety of SCP has been presented, and it is likely that SCP will eventually receive official approval.

The two examples given above are typical of the concern shown by the public and organizations in many parts of the world, including some specialized agencies of the United Nations, namely the World Health Organization (WHO), the Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO), and the United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund (UNICEF). The concern for the nutritional completeness and toxicological safety of novel protein foods designed for developing countries (solvent and heat-extracted soy proteins, synthetic amino acids, flours from groundnut and cotton seed, fish and leaf proteins, and microbial protein, etc.) led the WHO in 1955 to form the Protein Advisory Group (PAG). WHO was joined by the two other above-mentioned organizations in sponsoring the Protein Advisory Group (PAG) in 1960. The PAG on SCP concluded that low levels of residual alkanes, the presence of odd-number fatty acids, or polycyclic hydrocarbons which are all derived from petroleum do not constitute a danger in terms of carcinogenicity or toxicity. It has also developed guidelines for the production and nutritional and safety standards of SCP for human consumption. The International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) has a Fermentation Section which has prepared a set of standards and specifications relating to the feeding of SCP to farm animals, since these are ultimately consumed by man.

#### 17.4.1 Nucleic Acids and their Removal from SCP

An area of concern in SCP feeding is the consumption of high levels of nucleic acid. Man has lost the enzyme uricase which oxidizes uric acid to the soluble and excretable allantoin. When nucleic acid is eaten by man, it is broken up by nucleases present in the pancreatic juice and converted into nucleosides by intestinal juices before absorption. Guanine and adenine are converted to uric acid, which as had been pointed out earlier cannot be converted to the soluble and excretable allantoin. As a result, when foods rich in nucleic acid are consumed in large amounts, an unusually high level of uric acid occurs in the blood plasma. Owing to the low solubility of uric acid, uric acid crystals may be deposited in various tissues in the body including the kidneys and the joints, and the diseases known as kidney stones and gout may respectively result. In June 1970, the PAG working group of SCP established the upper limit of 2 g nucleic acid per day in addition to the quantity present in the usual diet for adults.

Some ordinary foods are high in nucleic acid (mostly RNA): liver, sardines, and caviar contain 2.2 and 5.7 g of nucleic acids per 100 g of proteins, respectively. With SCP, comparable figures vary from 8 to 25. The proportion of nucleic acids in total cell content of various microorganisms is as follows: molds 2.5–6%; algae 4–6%; yeasts 6–11%; bacteria up to 16%.

Various ways have been devised for the removal of nucleic acids from SCP:

- (a) *Growth and cell physiology method*: The RNA content of cells is dependent on growth rate: the higher the dilution rate (in continuous cultures) the higher the RNA/protein ratio. In other words, the higher the growth rate the higher the RNA content. The growth rate is therefore reduced as a means of reducing nucleic acid. However, it must be considered that high growth is one of the requirements of reducing costs in SCP.

- (b) *Extraction with chemicals*: Dilute bases such as NaOH or KOH will hydrolyze RNA easily. Hot 10% sodium chloride may also be used to extract RNA. The cells usually have to be disrupted before using these methods. In some cases, the protein may then be extracted, purified, and concentrated.
- (c) *Use of pancreatic juice*: RNAase from heat-stable bovine pancreatic juice has been used to hydrolyze yeast RNA at 80°C at which temperature the cells are more permeable.
- (d) *Activation of endogenous RNA*: The RNAase of the organism itself may be activated by heat-shock or by chemicals. The RNA content of yeasts has been reduced in this way.

## 17.5 NUTRITIONAL VALUE OF SINGLE CELL PROTEIN

The nutritional value of SCP depends on the composition of the microbial cells used, especially their protein, amino acid, vitamin, and mineral contents. To some extent, these also depend on the conditions of growth of the organism. The FAO has set up reference values for the amino acid content of proteins. On this basis, SCP derived from bacteria and yeasts is deficient in methionine. Glycine and methionine are sometimes deficient in molds. These can be improved by supplementation with small amounts of animal proteins.

### END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Define Single Cell Protein (SCP) and explain why microbes are considered attractive as protein source.
2. Give examples of microorganisms that can be used for protein production and list properties expected from candidate microorganisms for SCP production.
3. List substrates for single cell protein production. Recommend two substrates and give reasons for your choice.

### SUGGESTED READINGS

- Boze, H., Moulin, G., Galzy, P. 1991. Production of Microbial Biomass. *In*: Biotechnology. G. Reed, T.W. Nagodawitana (eds.) VCH Weinheim Germany. pp. 167–220.
- Caron, C. 1991. Commercial Production of Baker's Yeast and Wine Yeast. *In*: Biotechnology. G. Reed, T.W. Nagodawitana (eds.) VCH Weinheim Germany. pp. 321–350.
- Flickinger, M.C., Drew, S.W. (eds.) 1999. Encyclopedia of Bioprocess Technology—Fermentation, Biocatalysis, and Bioseparation, Vol. 15. John Wiley.
- Litch Field, J. 1994. Foods, Nonconventional. Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology 10.
- Scrimshaw, N.S., Murray, E.B. 1991. Nutritional Value and Safety of Single Cell Protein. *In*: Biotechnology. H.J. Rehm (ed.) 2nd ed. VCH Weinheim Germany. pp. 221–240.

# CHAPTER 18

## Yeast Production

Yeasts have been utilized by man since ancient times—specifically, when he first learnt that fruit juices developed into intoxicating drinks and that the dough produced from his ground cereal can be leavened. Today, yeasts which are produced and used in all six continents of the world form the single most produced microorganism in terms of weight. Baker's yeast is manufactured by six major companies in the United States. These companies are Universal Foods (Red Star Yeast), Fleischmann's, Gist-brocades, Lallemand (American Yeast), Minn-dak, and Columbia. There are 13 manufacturing plants owned by these companies.

The purpose for which yeasts are used and the types of yeasts employed for each purpose are given in [Table 18.1](#). Of these, the production of baker's yeasts has received the greatest attention followed by food and fodder yeasts. Due to recent interest in the production of single cell protein, food and fodder yeasts may become as important as baker's yeasts in terms of total quantity produced.

**Table 18.1** Major uses of yeasts

<i>Use</i>	<i>Yeasts involved</i>
1. Bakery	<i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i>
2. Beer brewing	<i>S. uvarum</i> ( <i>S. cerevisiae</i> ), <i>S. cerevisiae</i>
3. Food yeasts and feed yeasts	<i>Candida tropicalis</i> , <i>Candida pseudotropicalis</i> <i>Candida utilis</i> , <i>S. cerevisiae</i> <i>Kluyveromyces fragilis</i> ( <i>S. fragilis</i> )
4. Feed yeasts	<i>Candida lipolytica</i>
5. Wine making	<i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i> var. <i>ellipsoides</i>
6. Wine making (sparkling wines)	<i>S. bayanus</i>
7. Industrial alcohol/spirits	<i>S. cerevisiae</i> ( <i>S. fragilis</i> with whey)
8. Yeast-products (autolysates, biochemicals)	<i>S. cerevisiae</i>

## 18.1 PRODUCTION OF BAKER'S YEAST

The use of yeasts in bread making is an ancient art, although man did not always recognize the mechanism of the rise of dough. It is of interest to give a brief historical account of the development of the yeast industry. The dough of leavened bread was probably raised by a mixture of yeasts and lactic acid bacteria. A small piece of successful dough was used as the inoculum for the next batch providing a type of early continuous culture. This system has since been largely abandoned except in a special type of sour bread produced in San Francisco, California, United States.

From about the Middle Ages, bakery yeasts were obtained from winemaking and brewing. But the quality of the yeast was variable, and in the case of yeast obtained from beer, the product was bitter because of the hops in the beer. This period lasted until the latter part of the 19th century when the work of Pasteur from 1855 to 1857 elucidated the nature of yeasts.

The first major step in the development of baker's yeast technology probably was the so-called Vienna process introduced about 1860 in which grain mash meant for anaerobic alcohol production was gently aerated so that a good quantity of yeast was obtained. Thus, 'two birds were killed with one stone': yeasts and alcohol were obtained in one operation, even if the quantities were less than if either one or the other alone were sought. The work of Pasteur later led to more vigorous aeration, thus yielding more cells and less alcohol. As a result of grain shortages resulting from World War I, a shift was made from the use of grain to the use of beet molasses supplemented by ammonia and phosphate.

The next major step in the development of baker's yeast technology was the introduction of *fed-batch* or incremental addition of nutrients rather than the introduction of all nutrients at the beginning as is the case in the classical batch method. The essence of this system known as the *Zulaut* method is still used today in baker's yeast manufacture and ensures that an excess of molasses sugar which might lead to alcohol production is avoided.

Another important development, the production of dried active yeast instead of the compressed yeast normally used in temperate countries, was necessitated by the need to provide troops fighting in far off lands a means of producing bread.

Today's production methods for baker's yeast do not allow alcohol production because of the vigorous aeration used. Furthermore, the yield has increased from 3% in the mid-19th century through 13% early in this century to the present-day yield of over 50% dry weight of yeast.

### 18.1.1 Yeast Strain Used

Nowadays, specially selected strains of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* are used for baking. For some time, two strains of baker's yeasts were available: one was highly active but had poor stability during storage; the other had poor activity but was highly stable in storage. Successful breeding programs were then undertaken to produce new strains from them.

New large-scale factory processes for bread-making used in Western countries (the Chorleywood Bread Process) involving sophisticated plants and computerization have led to new demands in traditionally used yeasts. These new demands include the fermentation of more complex sugars, high initial fermentation ability, faster adaptation to maltose fermentation, and ability to reconstitute rapidly when prepared in the active dry form. Yeast strains used for the modern fast-rising dough have been developed with the following traditional and new physiological properties in mind:

- (a) ability to grow rapidly at room temperature of about 20–25°C;
- (b) easy dispensability in water;
- (c) ability to produce large amounts of CO<sub>2</sub> in flour dough rather than alcohol;
- (d) good keeping quality, i.e. ability to resist autolysis when stored at 20°C;
- (e) high potential glycolytic activity;
- (f) ability to adapt rapidly to changing substrates;
- (g) high invertase and other enzyme activity to hydrolyze the higher glucofructans rapidly;
- (h) ability to grow and synthesize enzymes and coenzymes under the anaerobic conditions of the dough;
- (i) ability to resist the osmotic effect of salts and sugars in the dough;
- (j) high competitiveness, i.e. high yielding in terms of dry weight per unit of substrate used.

### 18.1.2 Culture Maintenance

The specially selected baking strains of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* are apt to mutate, and therefore, proper storage is most important. Of the various methods used, storage in liquid nitrogen and the oil culture method in which sterile oil is placed over a slant of yeast and refrigerated at 4°C are most widely used.

### 18.1.3 Factory Production

#### 18.1.3.1 Substrate

The substrate usually used for baker's yeast production is molasses. Where these are not available or are too expensive, any suitable sugar-containing substrate, e.g. corn steep liquor, may of course be used. In the Soviet Union for example, sulfite liquor is used for both alcohol and baker's yeast production.

Beet and cane molasses, when they are simultaneously available, are treated separately: clarified, pH adjusted, and sterilized. They are then mixed in equal amounts so that the nutritional deficiency of one type is made up by the other. Cane sugar is particularly richer in biotin, pantothenic acid, thiamin, magnesium, and calcium, while beet molasses is much richer in nitrogen. However, molasses composition is not constant and varies with the geographical area of growth, the factory extraction of the sugar, and other factors. When only one type of molasses is available, deficiencies are made up by adding appropriate nutrients.

The molasses is clarified to remove inert colored material arising from colloidal particles which can impart undesirable color to the yeast. Clarification may be achieved by precipitation with alum or calcium phosphate or by poly-electrolyte flocculating agents such as alginates and polyacrylamides. Clarification also helps reduce foaming. 'Sterilization' is achieved by heating at 100°–110°C for about an hour, after the pH has been adjusted to pH 6–8 to prevent caramelization of the sugar.

Phosphorus, ammonium, and smaller amounts of magnesium, potassium, zinc, and thiamin are added for maximum productivity to the mixed molasses. Antifoam is sometimes added.

### 18.1.3.2 Fermenter processes

The fermenter for baker's yeast propagation is nowadays made of stainless steel. The trade fermenter (i.e. the final fermenter) may be anything from 75 to 225 cubic meters. Of this, about 75% is occupied by the medium, the unused space being allowed for foaming. Generally, baker's yeast fermenters are aerated only by spargers which arrangement allows for large volumes of air to pass through per unit time: about one volume of air per volume of broth per minute. It is most important that aeration remains high and constant. When the oxygen falls below 0.2 ppm, anaerobic conditions set in and alcohol is formed.

The aeration through sparger holes is started as soon as mixing begins in the steam sterilized fermenter. Water, mineral nutrients, yeasts, and the blended molasses containing 1% glucose are mixed. The amount of blended molasses added is calculated so that the total sugar in the fermenter does not exceed 0.1%. Molasses is added incrementally during the course of the fermentation as it is used up by the yeast beyond the 0.1% ceiling. The pH is maintained at pH 4–6 by the addition of alkali and the temperature at 30°C by cooling. The amount of molasses to be added at predetermined intervals is determined by experimentation. Automatic sensors and self-adjusting equipment for temperature pH, aeration, sugar, etc. are built into some modern fermenters. Due to the development of large amounts of heat, the cooling of the fermenter is very important. One pound dry weight of yeast would require 4.3 lb of molasses, 0.9 lb of ammonia, 0.3 lb of  $\text{NH}_4\text{H}_2\text{PO}_4$ , 1.1 lb of  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$ , and 60 lb of air.

### 18.1.3.3 Harvesting the yeast

The period of fermentation in the trade or production fermenter varies from 10 to 20 hours depending on how much yeast is pitched into it. Cells form from 3.5% to 5% dry weight of the broth. In some processes, aeration is allowed to continue for 30–60 minutes at the end of the feeding to allow unused nutrients to be used up and budding cells to divide so that most cells are 'resting' at the beginning of the budding cycle. This ensures that the cells divide somewhat 'synchronously' when growth resumes.

The fermentation broth is cooled and cells concentrated in centrifugal separators; they are washed by re-suspension in water and centrifugation until they are lighter in color. The yeast cream resulting from this treatment contains 15–20% yeast cells. It is further concentrated by passing over a rotary vacuum filter or through a filter press. Sometimes the Mautner process is used to ensure a friable dry cream during vacuum filtration. This process consists of adding 0.2–0.6% (w/v) sodium chloride before filtration causing cell shrinking by osmosis. Excess salt is removed during filtration by spraying water over the filtered yeast, so that the cells swell again. The resulting product has a dry matter content of 28–30%.

The yeast may then be packaged as compressed yeast or active dry yeast. It may also be converted into dried yeast for human or animal feeding.

### 18.1.3.4 Packaging

Baker's yeasts may be packaged as moist (compressed) yeasts or as dried active yeast.

- (i) *Compressed yeast*: The yeast product obtained after harvesting is mixed with fine particles of ice, starch, fungal inhibitors, and processed vegetable oils (e.g. glyceryl monostearate) which all help to stabilize it. It is then compressed into blocks of

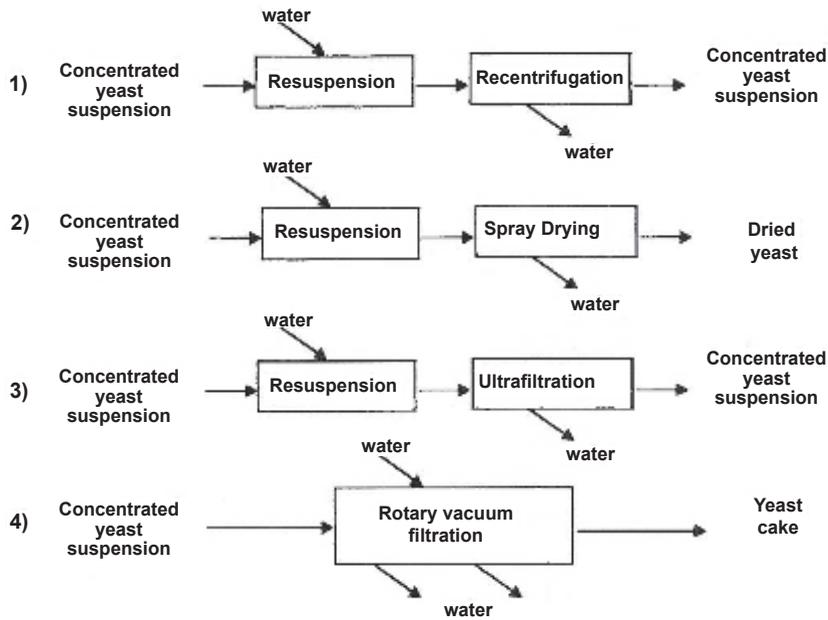


Fig. 18.1 Various Methods for Packaging Yeasts

small (1–5 lbs) blocks for household use or large (up to 50 lbs) for factory bakery operations, stored at  $-7$  to  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ , and transported in refrigerated vans.

- (ii) *Active dry yeast*: Due to its stability, dry yeast can be used in areas or countries where refrigeration is not available. In many developing countries, baker's yeast is imported from abroad in the form of active dry yeast. For active dry yeast production, special strains better suited for use in dry conditions may be used. It has been found that when regular strains are used, they perform better as dry yeasts when they are subjected to a number of treatments. These treatments include raising the temperature to  $36^{\circ}\text{C}$  (from about  $30^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) towards the end of the fermentation, addition of alcohol-containing spent broth (resulting from centrifugation or finished yeast fermentation), and synchronization of budding by alternate feeding and starving.

Yeast cream of 30–38% content from filter pressing is extruded through a screen to form continuous thread-like forms. These are then chopped fine and dried using a variety of driers: tray driers, rotary drum driers, or fluidized-bed driers. The final product has a moisture content of about 8% and may be packaged in nitrogen-filled tins. Sometimes, anti-oxidants may be added to the yeast emulsion to further ensure stability.

## 18.2 FOOD YEASTS

Yeasts are used for food by man for the following reasons: to provide protein, to impart flavor, and to supply vitamins, especially B-vitamins. Food yeasts are sometimes prescribed medically when a deficiency of B-vitamins exists in a patient. Food yeasts have several synonyms: dried yeast, inactive dried yeast, dry yeast, dry inactive yeast, dried torula yeast, *Saccaromyces siccum*, sulfite yeast, wood sugar yeast, and xylose yeast.

As food yeasts are consumed by man, stringent standards are imposed on the product by governmental agencies, professional bodies, and manufacturers. The International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) requires that any organism to be used as food yeast belonging to the family *Cryptococcaceae* should be unextracted, should have a fat content of not more than 20%, should not contain inert fillers not indigenous to the yeasts, and should be free of *Salmonella*. The IUPAC has also set upper limits for bacterial and fungal counts, lead, and arsenic as well as lower limits for protein, thiamin, riboflavin, and niacin.

Too high a consumption of yeasts is detrimental to health because of the high RNA content of yeasts, which the kidneys are unable to dispose of.

### 18.2.1 Production of Food Yeast

While baker's yeasts are usually produced from molasses using special strains of *S. cerevisiae*, food yeasts are produced from a wide variety of yeasts and substrates.

#### 18.2.1.1 Yeasts used as food yeasts

Yeasts used as food yeasts are *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, *Saccharomyces carlbergiensis*, *Saccharomyces fragilis*, *Candida utilis*, and *Candida tropicalis*. Only *Saccharomyces fragilis* (imperfect stage *Candida pseudotropicalis*) can utilize lactose, hence it is used for the fermentation of whey. Ethanol may be used as substrate for food yeast production, however, it is used only by *Saccharomyces fragilis* and *Candida utilis*. *Candida utilis* is the most versatile of all the yeasts and will utilize a wider range of carbon and nitrogen sources than any other yeast, hence it is most widely used in food yeast preparations.

#### 18.2.1.2 Substrates used for food yeast production

The most commonly used substrates are molasses, sulfite liquor, wood hydrolysate, and whey. Since interest developed in single cell protein, other unconventional sources have been developed. These include hydrocarbons, alcohol, and wastes of various types.

- (i) *Molasses*: Baker's yeast grown on molasses as described above may, after separation from the spent liquor by centrifugation, be dried to yield food yeast. Drum-drying, spray-drying, or fluidized bed drying may be used to reduce the moisture content to only about 5%. Sometimes food yeast is grown on molasses for that purpose *per se*. Thus, *Candida utilis* is grown fed-batch in Taiwan in Waldhof fermenters. The fed-batch method using molasses is also used in South Africa.

Recently, food yeasts using *Candida utilis* in continuous culture in molasses have been grown in Cuba and Eastern Europe.

- (ii) *Sulfite liquor*: The impetus to produce food and fodder yeast from sulfite liquor derived from an attempt to reduce the pollution which would arise if the wastes containing fermentable substrates were discharged directly into a stream.

The use of continuous fermentation was attractive because the sulfite is produced almost continuously in the operation of the pulp factory. In general, a Waldhof-type fermenter is used for the continuous production of yeasts from sulfite waste. Liquors from various sources are usually blended. Thereafter, the sulfite containing compounds are removed either by precipitation with lime, by aeration, or by passing

steam through it (steam stripping). The pH is adjusted from about 2 to 5.5 using ammonia. The lowest pH consistent with high yield is usually preferred in order to lessen the chances of contamination.

Ammonium, phosphate, and potassium are monitored and supplied continuously. The versatile and hardy yeast *Candida utilis* is usually used, so biotin is not added. The yeast is harvested continuously and recovered by removing liquor at the same rate as it is introduced. The effluent liquor containing about 1% cell is concentrated to an 8% concentration by centrifuging. It is usually washed with water by diluting and centrifuging to remove lignosulfonic acid. Yield from sulfite liquor, whose assimilable matter content is usually low, may be increased by the addition of new carbon sources, e.g. acetic acid and ethanol. The liquor may be re-hydrolyzed with  $H_2SO_4$  thereby increasing the sugar content from 4% to about 24%. In some cases, addition of nutrients to the liquor, e.g. yeast hydrolysate or corn steep liquor, leads to an increased yield of about 5%.

- (iii) *Production of food yeast from whey*: The effluent which drains from the coagulum from milk during cheese manufacture is known as whey. It contains approximately 4% sugar (lactose), 1% minerals, and some of the lactic acid which enabled the coagulation of the milk protein. In countries where a lot of cheese is produced, whey is a waste product, but it is sometimes turned into good use in the production of alcohol or yeasts. Very few yeasts metabolize lactose. Some examples include *Saccharomyces lactis*, *Kluyveromyces fragilis*, and its imperfect or asporogeneous stage *Candida pseudotropicalis*. The whey is diluted, fortified with ammonia, phosphate, minerals, yeast extract, and then pasteurized at 80°C for about 45 minutes. It is then inoculated with yeasts at pH 4.5 at an incubation temperature of 30°C. Any of the above yeasts could be used, but in the United States, the preference is for *K. fragilis*. In many establishments, the fermentation is continuous and sugar, pH, and minerals are monitored automatically. The yeast is recovered by centrifugation and may be drum or spray dried.

### 18.3 FEED YEASTS

Feed yeasts are the same as food yeasts described above. The only difference is that less rigid standards are imposed on the production of feed yeasts. Thus, feed yeasts intended for animal feeding are usually obtained by drying out the whole fermentation broth, often without washing.

Several thousand tons of yeasts are recovered from breweries around the world annually. To be used as food yeasts, such yeast is 'debittered' of hop resins by repeated washing with dilute alkali until the bitterness no longer exists. It is then slightly acidified to about pH 5.5. Cells are recovered by centrifugation and spray- or drum-dried.

### 18.4 ALCOHOL YEASTS

Alcohol yeasts are those to be used in beer brewing, wineries, and distilleries for spirits or industrial alcohol. In the production of alcohol yeasts, the aim is cell production. The methods are generally similar to those already described for baker's yeasts. Beginning from a lyophilized vial or tube, contamination is checked in a plate. A single colony (or preferably a single spore by micromanipulation) is picked and multiplied in sequentially increasing amounts.

The yeasts used are specially selected strains of the following:

Brewing: *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, *Saccharomyces carlbergiensis*, *S. uvarum*.

Wine: *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, *S. bayanus*, *S. beticus*, *S. ellipsoideus*.

Distillery: *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*.

The medium used in the multiplication of the yeast is made of materials to be found in the final fermentation. Thus, for growing brewery yeasts, wort is used, for distiller's yeast, a rye-malt medium is used, and for wine, grape juice is used.

Alcohol yeasts are usually recovered and reused for several rounds of fermentation before being discarded.

## 18.5 YEAST PRODUCTS

Various products used in the food, pharmaceutical, and related industries may be produced from yeasts.

Yeast extracts are used in the preparation of soups, sausages, and gravies to which they impart a meaty flavor. The extracts may be obtained by autolyzing the yeasts and thereafter spray-drying or drum-drying with or without extracting soluble materials from the autolysate.

The extract may also be obtained by hydrolyzing the yeast cells in acid solution. It is neutralized with sodium hydroxide, filtered, decolorized through charcoal and concentrated to syrup or spray-dried. Yeast products are usually fortified with the flavoring compound mono-sodium glutamate, extracts of animal or vegetable protein, or with yeast cells.

Yeast extracts are consumed for dietary purposes on pharmaceutical grounds as a source of vitamins, mainly vitamin B<sub>12</sub>.

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Give examples of different uses of yeast and examples of yeasts employed for yeast production.
2. What are the major steps in the development of baker's yeast technology?
3. List the physiological properties of yeast strains employed in the baking industry.
4. Evaluate substrates used in yeast production.
5. What are the benefits of the use of yeast as food; and explain the disadvantage of high consumption of yeast.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Boze, H., Moulin, G., Galzy, P. 1991. Production of Microbial Biomass. *In: Biotechnology*. G. Reed, T.W. Nagodawitana (eds.) VCH Weinheim Germany. pp. 187–220.
- Burrows, S. 1979. *In: Microbial Biomass*. A.H. Rose (ed.) Academic Press, New York, USA. pp. 32–64.
- Caron, C. 1991. Commercial Production of Baker's Yeast and Wine Yeast. *In: Biotechnology*. G. Reed, T.W. Nagodawitana (eds.) VCH Weinheim Germany. pp. 321–350.
- Flickinger, M.C., Drew, S.W. (eds.) 1999. Encyclopedia of Bioprocess Technology—Fermentation, Biocatalysis, and Bioseparation, Vol. 1–5. John Wiley, New York, USA.
- Scrimshaw, N.S., Murray, E.B. 1991. Nutritional Value and Safety of Single Cell Protein. *In: Biotechnology*. G. Reed, T.W. Nagodawitana (eds.) VCH Weinheim Germany. pp. 221–240.

# CHAPTER 19

---

## Production of Microbial Insecticides

---

Insects are major pests for crops. Enormous losses occur when they attack various plant parts, often transmitting various diseases in the process. Even after harvest, insects attack stored plant or animal foods. Insects are also vectors of various animal and human diseases.

Over the past decade or so, there has been a shift from the sole use of chemical control towards integrated control which employs other methods along with chemical control. The reasons for this include non-specificity of chemical insecticides leading to the destruction of pests as well as their natural predators, resistance to chemical insecticides, and concern for the environment and human health, since the insecticides enter drinking water from soil and are potentially toxic or carcinogenic. Furthermore, the cost of chemical insecticides manufactured from petroleum hydrocarbon will increase with increase in cost of petroleum hydrocarbon.

### 19.1 ALTERNATIVES TO CHEMICAL INSECTICIDES

- (a) *Predators*: Among vertebrates, one of the best known is the use of fish, especially *Gambusia affinis*, to eat mosquito larvae. Invertebrate predators include other larger insects, e.g. wasps, while plant predators include *Utricularia* (a bladder wort).
- (b) *Genetic manipulations*: These include the production (by chemicals or by irradiation) of large numbers of sterile males, whose mating does not result in fertile eggs.
- (c) *The use of hormones or hormone analogs*: Pheromones are synthetic compounds which act as sex attractants. The insects attracted are destroyed.
- (d) *The use of pathogens*: Pathogens of insects are found among bacteria, fungi, protozoa, viruses, and nematodes. The idea of using pathogens to control insects originated from studies of the diseases of the silkworm *Bombyx mori*.

### 19.2 BIOLOGICAL CONTROL OF INSECTS

Biological control has been studied or practiced to a large extent in relation to agriculture, food production, and forestry. Its study and use in the control of insect vectors of disease such as mosquitoes has been small in comparison. In 1976, the World Bank in collaboration with the United Nations Development Program (UNDP) and the World Health

Organization (WHO) put into operation a Special Program for Research and Training in Tropical Diseases. The diseases were malaria, trypanosomiasis, filariasis, leishmaniasis, schistosomiasis, and leprosy. Of these, the first four are transmitted by insect vectors. The WHO, which administered the program, also studied biological control with respect to the insect-borne disease and ranked the organisms to be used in order of effectiveness from time to time. The organisms included bacteria, fungi, nematodes, and fish, while targets are mainly mosquitoes, the vectors of malaria and yellow fever, and black flies (*Simulium* spp.), vectors of onchocerciasis (river blindness). For agricultural, biological control however, some viruses pathogenic to insects are also used.

### 19.2.1 Desirable Properties in Organisms to be Used for Biological Control

The following characteristics are desirable in microorganisms to be used in the biological control of insects:

- (a) The agent should be highly virulent for the target insect but should kill no other insects.
- (b) The killing should be done quickly so that in the case of crops, damage is kept as low as possible, and in the case of vectors of disease, before extensive transmission of the disease occurs.
- (c) The killing ability should be predictable.
- (d) The agent should be safe and not harmful to man, animals, or crops.
- (e) It should be technically amenable to cheap industrial production.
- (f) When produced, it should be stable under the conditions of use such as under the high temperature and ultraviolet light of ordinary sunlight.
- (g) It should be viable over reasonably long periods to permit storage and transportation as necessary.
- (h) It should ideally persist or recycle and/or be able to search for its host.

### 19.2.2 Candidates Considered as Biological Control Agents

(i) *Bacteria*: A large number of bacteria are pathogenic to insects including *Bacillus* spp., *Pseudomonas* sp., *Klebsiella* sp., and *Serratia marcescens*. In practice, spore formers have been developed commercially because they survive more easily in the environment than vegetative cells, and are also amenable to mass production. The four bacilli which have been produced for control purposes are:

- (a) *Bacillus thuringiensis*: *B. thuringiensis* (commonly known as 'Bt') is an insecticidal bacterium, marketed worldwide for control of many important plant pests, mainly caterpillars of the Lepidoptera (butterflies and moths), but also mosquito larvae, and simuliid blackflies, the vectors of river blindness in Africa. Bt products represent about 1% of the total 'agrochemical' market (fungicides, herbicides, and insecticides) across the world. The commercial Bt products are powders containing a mixture of dried spores and toxin crystals. They are applied to leaves or other environments where the insect larvae feed. The toxin genes have also been genetically engineered into several crop plants. The method of use, mode of action, and host range of this biocontrol agent differ markedly from those of *Bacillus popilliae*.

It is a complex of several organisms regarded by some as being variants of *B. cereus*. There are 19 serotypes based on some flagellar or H-antigens. Serotype H3 and H3A are used in the United States on alfalfa, cotton, tobacco, spinach, potatoes, tomatoes, oranges, and grapes. Serotype H14 attacks mosquitoes and blackflies. *Bacillus thuringiensis* produces at least three toxins, a Phospholipase C, a water-soluble heat stable  $\beta$ -exotoxin potentially toxic to mammals, and a crystalline  $\delta$ -toxin or parasporal body which is enclosed within the sporangium.

The crystalline  $\delta$ -toxin is the active principle against most insects. The spores and crystals are released into the medium in most strains of *B. thuringiensis* following the lysis of the sporangium.

- (b) *Bacillus moritai*: This is used in Japan for the same purpose as *B. thuringiensis* serotypes H3 and H3A.
- (c) *Bacillus popilliae*: This is an obligate pathogen of the Japanese beetle *Popilla japonica* against which it is used. Since it is an obligate parasite, it is produced in the larvae of the beetle.
- (d) *Bacillus thuringiensis* var. *israelensis* (also known as serotype H14). It has proved very effective in killing mosquito larvae and the black fly (*Simulium* spp.). It has a nearly 100% kill of mosquito larvae and shows no adverse effect on non-target organisms. Unlike classical *Bacillus thuringiensis*, it does not produce a beta-toxin. Its killing effect is therefore based principally on its crystalline delta-toxin ( $\delta$ -toxin), which is resistant to both heat (surviving 80°C for 10 minutes and 60°C for 20 minutes) and ultraviolet light.
- (e) *Bacillus sphaericus*: *Bacillus sphaericus* is highly specific for mosquito larvae as *Bacillus thuringiensis* var. *israelensis* (*B.t.i.*). However, whereas the lethality of *B.t.i.* resides in toxic protein crystals formed during sporulation of the organism, the toxin of *B. sphaericus* resides in the cell wall of the organism. The toxin of *B. sphaericus* works slowly (8–40 hours) compared with that of *B.t.i.* (2–10 hours). However, *Bacillus sphaericus* has the advantage of being able to lay dormant in muds or sewage ponds and to recycle as susceptible mosquito larvae appear.

(ii) *Viruses*: A large number of viruses have been isolated from insects. The advantage of viruses as biological control agents is that they are specific. Seven groups of insect-pathogenic viruses have been identified. The most useful of them for biological control purposes are the baculoviruses, which are easily recognizable because the virus particles are included within a proteinaceous inclusion body large enough to be seen under a light microscope. These inclusion bodies, polyhedrons and granules, are found in the nucleus of the host cells, hence they are nuclear polyhedroses and granuloses.

The baculoviruses are the best candidates for insect control because they are (a) effective in controlling insect populations, (b) restricted to a host range of invertebrates, (c) relatively easy to produce in large quantities, and (d) stable under specific conditions because of the inclusion bodies.

Several experimental preparations are available, and at least two have been produced on a commercial scale. The preparations are ingested, when the insects consume leaves and other plant parts on which the virus particles have been sprayed. After ingestion, the polyhedral inclusion bodies dissolve within the mid-gut, and the released virions pass through the mid-gut epithelial cells into the hemocoel. Death of the larvae occurs four to nine days after ingestion.

**Table 19.1** Scheme for screening and evaluating the efficacy, safety, and environmental impact of biological agents for control of disease vectors designed by the WHO

Stage I	Stage II	Stage III	Stage IV	Stage V
<i>Laboratory</i>	<i>Laboratory</i>	<i>Preliminary field trials</i>	<i>Laboratory</i>	<i>Large-scale field trials</i>
A. Identification and characterization	A. Mammalian infectivity tests to ensure safety to laboratory and field personnel	Strictly regulated ponds tests under WHO supervision to determine efficacy against disease vectors under natural conditions	A. More detailed tests on mammalian infectivity using appropriate techniques	To be conducted under WHO auspices. Not presently defined, and will vary according to target vector, habitat(s), mode of application, etc.
B. Assessment against selected target vectors species	B. Preliminary assessment against certain non-target species	Results of Review of stages I and II	<i>Laboratory and field trials</i> B. Detailed studies on non-target range especially other fauna in habitats where stage V trials may be conducted	Review of stages I, II, III and IV by informal consultation group
C. Preliminary evaluation of ease of rearing			<i>Formulation</i> C. Studies on stability of suitable formulations and delivery system	

(iii) *Fungi*: All the four major groups of fungi, *Phycomycetes*, *Ascomycetes*, *Fungi Imperfecti*, and *Basidiomycetes* contain members pathogenic to insects. The great difficulty with using fungi for biological control is that environmental conditions including temperature and humidity must be adequate for spore germination and insect cuticle penetration by the hyphae. Since these environmental conditions are not always assured, the result is that fungi are used for biological control only in a few countries especially the USSR. Fungi, which have been most widely used are *Beauveria bassiana* and *Metarrhizium anisopliae*. Others are *Hirsutella thompsonii*, *Verticillium* and *Aschersonia aleyrodis*. *H. thompsonii* is being developed commercially as acaricide, for killing mites which attack plants, although a large number of other fungi attack mites. *H. thompsonii* has been found particularly active against mites which attack citrus. It is applied as the conidial powder, and maximum effectiveness occurs at 27°C under moist conditions or at relative humidity of 79–100%. *Coelomomyces* spp. are very effective against mosquitoes but their production is difficult because of the need of a secondary host. Most effective and specific against mosquitoes are *Culicinomyces* spp. which were isolated in Australia and produced a mortality rate on mosquitoes of 90–100%. *Tolyptocladium cylindrosporum* is essentially like *Culicinomyces* in being highly specific for mosquitoes. *Lagenidium giganteum* and *Leptolegnia* sp. have been shown to have high mortality for mosquitoes. All the above (except *Coelomomyces*) can be mass-produced by fermentation. *Beauveria* and *Metarrhizium* already discussed have broad activity against mosquitoes.

(iv) *Protozoa*: In contrast to the rapid action of viruses and spore-forming bacteria, killing by protozoa is slow and may take weeks. Furthermore, they are difficult to produce being accomplished only *in vivo*. Nevertheless, protozoans have been successfully produced and used experimentally to control stored product pests (*Matosia trogoderma*), mosquitoes (*Nosema algerae*), and grasshoppers (*Nosema pyrausta*).

*Vavra vilivis* is also effective against mosquitoes and has properties similar to those of *Nosema algerae*. Studies sponsored by the WHO are favoring the use of *N. algerae* due to spore-longevity, ease of spore-production under laboratory and especially cottage industry conditions, and the probable impact on disease transmission by reducing the longevity of infected female mosquitoes.

### 19.2.3 *Bacillus thuringiensis*—Insecticidal Toxin

*B. thuringiensis* strains produce two types of toxin. The main types are the Cry (crystal) toxins, encoded by different cry genes which are used to classify the different types of Bt. The second type is the Cyt (cytolytic) toxins which can augment the Cry toxins enhancing the effectiveness of insect control. Over 50 of the genes that encode the Cry toxins have now been sequenced and enable the toxins to be assigned to more than 15 groups on the basis of sequence similarities. Table 19.2 shows the state of such a classification in 1995.

Cry toxins are encoded by genes on plasmids of *B. thuringiensis*. There can be five or six different plasmids in a single Bt strain, and these plasmids can encode different toxin genes. The plasmids can be exchanged between Bt strains by a conjugation-like process resulting in a potentially wide variety of strains with different combinations of Cry toxins. In addition to this, Bt contains transposons which are transposable genetic elements that flank genes and that can be excised from one part of the genome and inserted elsewhere. All these properties increase the variety of toxins produced naturally by Bt strains and provide the basis for commercial companies to create genetically engineered strains with novel toxin combinations.

**Table 19.2** Bt toxins and their classification

<i>Gene</i>	<i>Crystal shape</i>	<i>Protein size (kDa)</i>	<i>Insect activity</i>
cry I [several subgroups: A(a), A(b), A(c), B, C, D, E, F, G]	bi-pyramidal	130–138	lepidoptera larvae
cry II [subgroups A, B, C]	cuboidal	69–71	lepidoptera and diptera
cry III [subgroups A, B, C]	flat/irregular	73–74	coleoptera
cry IV [subgroups A, B, C, D]	bi-pyramidal	73–134	diptera
cry V–IX	various	35–129	various

### Mode of Action of Bt Toxin

The toxin of Bt is lodged in a large structure, the parasporal structure, which is produced during sporulation. The parasporal crystal is not the toxin. However, once it is solubilized, a protoxin is released.

The crystals are aggregates of a large protein (about 130–140 kDa) that is actually a protoxin which must be activated before it has any effect. The crystal protein is highly insoluble in normal conditions, so it is entirely safe to humans, higher animals, and most insects. However, it is solubilized in reducing conditions of high pH (above about pH 9.5), the conditions commonly found in the mid-gut of lepidopteran larvae. For this reason, Bt is a highly specific insecticidal agent.

Once it has been solubilized in the insect gut, the protoxin is cleaved by a gut protease to produce an active toxin of about 60 kDa. This toxin is termed delta-endotoxin. It binds to the mid-gut epithelial cells, creating pores in the cell membranes and leading to equilibration of ions. As a result, the gut is rapidly immobilized, the epithelial cells lyse, the larva stops feeding, and the gut pH is lowered by equilibration with the blood pH. This lower pH enables the bacterial spores to germinate, and the bacterium can then invade the host causing lethal septicemia.

## 19.3 PRODUCTION OF BIOLOGICAL INSECTICIDES

Microbiological insecticides are produced in one of three ways: submerged fermentation, surface or semi-solid fermentation, and *in vivo* production. The first two are for facultative pathogens, and the third is for obligate pathogens.

### 19.3.1 Submerged Fermentations

These have been used for the production of *Bacillus* spp. (excluding production of *B. popillae* which is produced *in vivo*) and, to a lesser extent, fungi.

*Medium:* In fermentation for *Bacillus thuringiensis*, the active principle sought is the delta toxin found in the crystals. Media for submerged fermentation have been compounded by various workers in a number of patents. In one such preparation, the initial growth in a shake flask occurred in nutrient broth; in the second, beet molasses (1%), corn steep liquor (0.85%), and CaCO<sub>3</sub> (0.1%) were used in a seed fermenter. A typical medium for production would be beet molasses (1.86%), pharmamedia (1.4%), and CaCO<sub>3</sub> (0.1%). Other production media contain corn starch (6.8%), sucrose (0.64%), casein (9.94%), corn

steep liquor (4.7%), yeast extract (0.6%), and phosphate buffer (0.6%). A third medium contained soy bean meal (15%), dextrose (5%), corn starch (5%),  $\text{MgSO}_4$  (0.3%),  $\text{FeSO}_4$  (0.02%),  $\text{ZnSO}_4$  (0.02%), and  $\text{CaCO}_3$  (1.0%). These media were used for agricultural strains of *B. thuringiensis* but could without a doubt also be used for *B. thuringiensis* var. *israelensis*. *Bacillus thuringiensis* var. *israelensis* and *Bacillus sphaericus* do not require carbohydrates for growth, are easy to grow, and produce materials which will kill the larvae of mosquitoes in a variety of proteinaceous materials such as commercial powders of soy products, dried milk products, blood and even materials from primary sewage tanks.

*Extraction:* At the end of the fermentation, the active components of the broth are recovered by centrifugation, vacuum filtration with filter aid or by precipitation. Precipitation has been done with  $\text{CaCl}_2$  and the acetone method yields products of very high potency. The fermentation broth may readily be diluted and used directly.

### 19.3.2 Surface Culture

Surface culture techniques are used for fungi and for spore formers. The organisms after shake-flask growth are cultured in a seed tank from where the broth is transferred to flat bins with perforated bottoms. The semi-solid medium is a mixture of an agricultural by-product such as bran, an inert product such as kieselguhr, soy bean meal, dextrose, and mineral salts. The use of this medium increases the surface area and hence aeration because of the thinness of its spread in the bins. Hot air is passed through the perforations to dry the material. It is ground, assayed, and compounded to any required strength with inert material. Submerged cultures in which the hyphae are used have been carried out with good results in the United States using *Hirsutella thompsonii*.

### 19.3.3 *In vivo* Culture

*In vivo* culture methods are used for producing caterpillar viruses, mosquito protozoa, and *Bacillus popillae*. The method is labor-intensive and could be easily applied for suitable candidates in developing countries where expertise for submerged culture production is usually lacking.

Once the organism has been obtained in a sufficient quantity to last for several years, it is lyophilized and stored at low temperature. The viruses are introduced into the food of the larvae and the dead larvae are crushed, centrifuged to remove large particles, and the rest are dried. The amount of viruses in each larva is variable but the virus content of between one and one hundred caterpillars should be sufficient to treat one acre in the case of cotton moths. Usually, separate facilities are used for rearing the caterpillars, for infecting them, and for the extraction of the virus particles. The preparation is then bio-assayed and mixed with a suitable carrier.

## 19.4 BIOASSAY OF BIOLOGICAL INSECTICIDES

A reference standard must be set up to which various preparations can be compared. The standard will differ with each particular bioinsecticide. Thus, standards do exist for *Bacillus thuringiensis* serotypes H3 and H3A used against caterpillars and for *B. thuringiensis* var. *israelensis* against mosquito 'IPS82'. Both standards are prepared and deposited at the Institute Pasteur in Paris. In the simplest terms, a standard is based on the  $\text{LD}_{50}$ . The dose of the insecticide which will kill 50% of the population must be clearly defined, the age and

type of insect to be used, the food of the insect, the temperature conditions, and a host of other parameters.

## 19.5 FORMULATION AND USE OF BIOINSECTICIDES

The formulation of the bioinsecticides is extremely important. An insecticide shown to be highly potent under laboratory experimental conditions may prove useless in the field, unless the formulation has been correctly done. Since microorganisms themselves cannot be patented, industrial firms producing bioinsecticides depend for their profits on the efficiency of their formulation (i.e. the inert material which ensures adequate presentation of the larvicide to the target insect). The inert material is referred to as a carrier or an extender. Carriers or extenders are the *solids* or *liquids* in which the active principle is diluted. When the carrier is a liquid and the active principle is dissolved in it, the application is a spray. There are thus two types of formulation: (a) powders and dusts, (b) flowable liquid. Which of the two is manufactured, depends to a large extent on the method of production and intended use of the insecticide.

### 19.5.1 Dusts

Semi-solid preparations based on waste plant products usually are compounded as dusts or powders, because making them into liquid causes the bran to absorb water and prevent free flow thus leading to the clogging of conventional liquid applicators. The advantage of dusts is greater stability of the preparation. They are also useful when the insecticide is intended to reach the underside of low lying crops such as cabbages. Heavy rains unfortunately wash off dusts. They may also lead to inhalation of the bioinsecticides by the persons applying them. Diluents which have been used in commercial dust of *Bacillus thuringiensis* are celite, chalk, kaolin, bentonite, starch, and lactose. Lactose has also been used for diluting virus insecticide dusts. When the active principle is *absorbed* on to the extender (or filler), the extender is referred to as a *carrier*.

If the extender or carrier is attractive to the insect as a food, oviposition site, etc. then the extender or filler is known as *bait*. Baits for *Bacillus thuringiensis* include ground corn meal, and for protozoa, cotton seed oil, honey, and hydroxyethyl cellulose.

### 19.5.2 Liquid Formulation

Liquid formulations are usually made from water in which both the crystal and spores are stable. Sometimes, oils and water/oil emulsions may be used. When liquids other than water are used, it must be ascertained that they do not inactivate the active agent. Emulsifiers may be added to stabilize emulsions, when these are used. Some emulsifiers which have been used for *B. thuringiensis* and viruses are Tween 80, Triton B 1956, and Span 20.

The nature of the surface on which the insecticide is applied and which may be oily, smooth, or waxy may prevent the liquid from wetting the sprayed surface. *Spreaders* or wetting agents which are surface-tension reducers may be added. Wetting agents may be added to dusts to produce *wettable-powders* which are more easily suspended in water. Some wetting agents and spreaders which have been used for agricultural *Bacillus thuringiensis* include alkyl phenols Tween 20 and Triton X114, and for viruses, Triton X100 and Arlacel 'C' which are all commercial surface-tension reducing agents.

To prevent run-off of liquids or wettable powders, *stickers* or *adhesives* are added to hold the insecticide to the surface. Stickers which have been used for bacteria and viruses include skim milk, dried blood, corn syrup, casein, molasses, and polyvinyl chloride latexes.

*Protectants* are often added to insecticides which protect the active agent from the effect of ultraviolet light, oxidation, desiccation, heat, and other environmental factors which reduce the effectiveness of the active agent. These are usually trade secrets and their composition is not disclosed. Dyes combined with proteins such as brewer's yeast plus charcoal, skim milk plus charcoal, and albumin plus charcoal have also been proven effective in protecting virus preparations from the effect of the ultraviolet light of the sun. Micro-encapsulation of bioinsecticides with carbon also affords protection.

## 19.6 SAFETY TESTING OF BIOINSECTICIDES

Many individuals on first learning of the use of microorganisms to control insect pests and vectors of disease express fear about the effect of these entomopathogens or their effective components (e.g. crystals of *B. thuringiensis*). For this reason, animal tests including feeding by mouth, inhalation, intraperitoneal, intradermal and intravenous inoculations, and teratogenicity and carcinogenicity tests are done.

Tests conducted on the following agricultural entomopathogens in the United States, Russia, and Japan have shown them non-toxic for man, other animals, or plants: Bacteria (*Bacillus popilliae*, *B. thuringiensis*, *B. moritai*), three protozoa (*Nosema locustae*, *N. algerae*, *N. troqodermae*) and two fungi (*Beauveria bassiana*, *Hirsutella thompsonii*).

Tests sponsored by the WHO and carried out in France and the United State have shown the following useful or potentially useful entomopathogens to be safe. *Bacillus sphaericus* strain SS11-1, *B. sphaericus* strain 1593-4; *B. sphaericus* strain 1404-9, *Bacillus thuringiensis* var. *israelensis* (serotype H14) strain WHO/CCBC 1897; *Metarhizium anisopliae*, *Nosema algerae*.

## 19.7 SEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT OF NEW BIOINSECTICIDES

The World Health Organization has for some years followed the scheme given in [Table 19.1](#) for the screening, evaluation, safety, and environmental impact of entomopathogens to be used for biological control. It has been estimated that it will take five to seven years to develop an entomopathogen into a biological insecticide; it will take less than five years if some information on safety already exists on safety of a related bioinsecticide. The cost of developing a biological insecticide is between 20% and 50% less than that of developing a chemical insecticide.

### END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Discuss the need for alternative pesticides and give examples.
2. Explain integrated pest control.
3. List the desirable properties of biological control agents.
4. Compare and contrast the toxins of *Bacillus thuringiensis* and other *Bacillus* species as bioinsecticides.
5. Why are viruses attractive as biological control agents?
6. Describe bioassay of biological insecticides.
7. Discuss formulation and field application of bioinsecticides.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Glare, R.E., Callaghan, M. 2000. *Bacillus thuringiensis*: Biology, Ecology and Safety. Wiley Chichester UK.
- Knowles, B.H. 1994. Mechanism of Action of *Bacillus thuringiensis* Insecticidal Delta-endotoxins. *In*: Advances in Insect Physiology. P.D. Evans (ed.) Vol. 24 Academic Press. London: UK. pp. 275–308.
- Obeta, J.A.N., Okafor, N. 1983. Production of *Bacillus sphaericus* Strain 1593 Primary Powder on Media made from Locally Obtainable Nigerian Agricultural Products. Canadian J. Microbiol. 29, 704–709.
- Obeta, J.A.N., Okafor, N. 1984. Medium for the Production of the Primary Powder of *Bacillus thuringiensis* Sub-species *israelensis*. Appl. Environ. Microbiol. 47, 863–867.
- World Health Organization. 1979a. Report of a Meeting on Standardization and Industrial Development of Microbial Control Agents. TDR/BCV/79.01.
- World Health Organization. 1979b. Progress Report: Mammalian Safety Tests on the Entomocidal Microbials Contract V2/181/113/(A): WHO/TDR/VBC.
- World Health Organization. 1979c. Proposals for the Adoption of a Standardized Bioassay Method for the Evaluation of Insecticidal Formulations Derived from Serotype H14 of *Bacillus thuringiensis* (Barjac de. H., and Larget, I.) WHO/VBC/79.744. Geneva.
- World Health Organization. 1980. Annual Rept. Scientific Working Group on Biological Control of Vectors, July 1979–June 1980. WHO Geneva, Switzerland.
- Yousten, A.Y., Federici, B., Roberts, D.W. 1991. Microbial Insecticides. *In*: Encyclopedia of Microbiology Vol. 2, Academic Press Sandiego, USA. pp. 521–531.

## CHAPTER 20

---

# Production of *Rhizobium* Biofertilizer

---

Nitrogen is a key element in the nutrition of living things because of its importance in nucleic acids and in proteins. Gaseous nitrogen is present in abundance in the Earth's atmosphere forming about 80% of atmospheric gases. Unfortunately, most living organisms cannot utilize gaseous nitrogen but require it in a fixed form, meaning it forms a compound with other elements. Nitrogen can be fixed both chemically and biologically. Chemical fixation is employed in the production of nitrogenous chemical fertilizers which are used to replace nitrogen removed from the soil by plants. The ability to carry out biological fixation is found only in bacteria and blue-green algae. Some of these organisms fix nitrogen in the free-living state and thereby contribute to the improvement of the nitrogen status of the soil. Others do so closely associated (in symbiosis) with higher plants. In some of these associations, the organisms live on the surface of the plant roots and fix the nitrogen there. In some others, the microorganism penetrates the roots and forms outgrowths known as nodules within which the nitrogen is fixed. Of the nodule-forming nitrogen fixing associations between plant and micro-organisms, the most important are the legume-bacteria associations. There are about 1,200 legumes species, and their nodulation is important because about 100 of them are used for food in various parts of the world.

Apart from serving as food for man and animals, the legumes provide nitrogenous fertilization to the soil for better growth of crops in general. The importance of soil fertilization can be seen from the fact that 100 kg of symbiotically-fixed nitrogen has been estimated to be equivalent to an application of 50 kg of ammonium sulfate fertilizer.

The bacteria which form nitrogen-fixing nodules with legumes are members of the genus *Rhizobium*. Inoculation of legumes with rhizobia started as long ago as 1896. Today, there are thriving industries producing rhizobia inoculants in most parts of the world. The inoculation of rhizobia into soils or on seeds is done where the specific rhizobia which will form nodules with a given legume are absent in the soil, because the legume is new to the area, or where because of a lapse of many years without the legume, the soil may become deficient in effective strains of rhizobia.

The need for legume inoculation has become more urgent in recent years because of the rise in the cost of chemical fertilizers, the inefficient use of chemical fertilizers by agricultural crops, and the short-term and long-term environmental consequences of unused nitrate fertilizers which find their way into, and cause the pollution of, drinking water.

Finally, the problem of providing more protein for an ever-rising world population has been compounded by the fact that areas of the world where protein shortage is most acute are just those least able to afford the plants for the manufacture of chemical nitrogenous fertilizers. By contrast, investment in rhizobium inoculant production is relatively cheap and the manufacture unsophisticated in comparison with chemical factories.

## 20.1 BIOLOGY OF *RHIZOBIUM*

### 20.1.1 General Properties

Members of the genus *Rhizobium* are aerobic, Gram-negative, relatively large rods which are motile and have peritrichuous flagellation. Older cells contain prominent granules of poly- $\beta$ -hydroxybutyrate which give them a banded appearance. Within nodules, they form irregularly shaped cells known as 'bacteroids'; no fixation occurs in the absence of bacteroids. At the end of the growing season, the nodules disintegrate, releasing bacterioids which, once in the soil, revert to rod-shaped cells and can survive there, sometimes for years. They invade roots of appropriate legumes and form new nodules when appropriate legumes are planted.

### 20.1.2 Cross-Inoculation with Groups of Rhizobia

The most distinctive feature of *Rhizobium* spp. is their ability to form nodules with legumes. Different rhizobia will form nodules only with certain legumes. A group of legumes with which a particular rhizobia bacterium will form nodules is known as a cross-inoculation group. Over 20 cross-inoculation groups have been set-up out of which seven are well-known (Table 20.1). Rhizobia which lack a more suitable group get lumped into the 'cowpea

**Table 20.1** Cross-inoculation groups of the genus *Rhizobium*

<i>Cross Inoculation Group</i>	<i>Rhizobium species</i>	<i>Legume host</i>
1. Clover group	<i>R. Trifolii</i>	<i>Trifolium</i> (clover)
2. Alfalfa group	<i>Rhizobium meliloti</i>	<i>Medicago</i> (alfalfa) <i>Melilotus</i> (sweet clover)
3. Bean group	<i>R. phaseoli</i>	<i>Phaseolus</i> (Beans)
4. Pea group	<i>R. leguminosarum</i>	<i>Pisum</i> (pea); <i>Vivia</i> (Vetch) <i>Lathyrus</i> (sweet pea)
5. Lupine group	<i>R. lupini</i>	<i>Lens</i> (Lentil) <i>Lupinus</i> (lupines)
6. Soybean group	<i>R. japonicum</i>	<i>Ornithopus</i> (Serradella)
7. Cowpea group		<i>Glycine</i> (soy bean) <i>Vigna</i> (cowpea); <i>Grotolaria</i> ( <i>Crotolaria</i> ) <i>Pueraria</i> (Kudzu) <i>Arachis</i> (Peanut) <i>Phaseolus</i> (lima beans)

rhizobia' group. The group has also been reclassified using numerical taxonomy, DNA base composition and homology, serology, phage susceptibility, patterns of isoenzymes, etc.

### 20.1.3 Desirable Properties in Strains to be Selected for Use as *Rhizobium* Inoculants

Before the production of a rhizobial inoculant is done, the strain of the organism which will yield the highest amount of fixed nitrogen in a given legume and a given environment (or the most effective strain) is selected on the following basis.

- (i) *Effectiveness*: 'Effectiveness' is a term used to describe the overall ability of a given rhizobial strain to form nodules with a particular legume in a given environment and fix useful quantities of nitrogen. Effectiveness itself is based on nitrogen-fixing ability, invasiveness, and competitiveness.

*Nitrogen-fixing ability* is an important factor as not all nodules fix nitrogen, or do so to the same extent. Nitrogen-fixing nodules are usually comparatively few in number, relatively large, and pink in color. *Invasiveness* (also referred to as infectiveness) is a measure of the ability of the *Rhizobium* to invade and nodulate the roots in a high proportion of the plants to which it is applied. *Competitiveness* is related to invasiveness and is a measure of the ability of the rhizobium strain to produce a large number of nodules in the presence of other infective or invasive strains.

- (ii) *Ability to perform in the environment of a particular soil*: When effectiveness is a measure of properties inherent in the bacterium itself, other factors relate to performance in the soil. These are:
  - (a) ability to fix nitrogen in the presence of fertilizers used in the soil;
  - (b) tolerance of insecticide and seed disinfectants;
  - (c) resistance to bacteriophages common in the soil;
  - (d) adequate performance under the pH, aeration, and the mineral status of the soil.
- (iii) *Growth and Survival in the carrier*: The ability of the organism to survive and multiply in the carrier (i.e. the inert support for distributing the bacteria) is important; otherwise an adequate organism may be inhibited by the carrier.

### 20.1.4 Selection of Strains for Use as Rhizobial Inoculants

Methods available for assessing the performance of a rhizobium strain before choosing it as an inoculant are discussed below:

- (i) *The agar method*: Seeds sterilized with mercuric chloride, sulfuric acid, and alcohol are washed with sterile water and allowed to germinate in contact with the rhizobia being assessed. One seedling each is placed on nitrogen free slants of agar containing appropriate mineral salts in a large test tube (approx. 5 cm x 20 cm). The surface of the agar is flooded with a heavy suspension of the rhizobium to be tested. Control slants with nitrate and without rhizobia are prepared. The nitrogen-fixing ability of the system is assessed by harvesting the seedlings and determining their dry weight and nitrogen contents when compared to the control after an appropriate period of growth. Alternatively, all the nodules may be excised from the various test groups

and assessed indirectly for nitrogen fixation by the acetylene reduction method. Nodules are exposed to acetylene, and thereafter, the gases are checked in a gas chromatograph for ethylene production. The ability of nodules, free-living bacteria, or other biological systems to fix nitrogen is determined from the extent of acetylene-ethylene conversion.

- (ii) *Soil cores*: Undisturbed soil cores from the field may be planted with germinated seedlings and inoculated with a culture of rhizobium in a glass house. Assessment of nitrogen fixation may then be done as described above.
- (iii) *Field assessment*: For field assessment, the material in which the rhizobium is carried should have been selected and the experiment laid out in such a way that (a) uninoculated plots are tested for the presence of naturally occurring rhizobia, (b) plots are inoculated with the organism being tested, and (c) plots are inoculated with the test organism and simultaneously supplied with nitrogen fertilizers. The plants are then harvested and checked for dry weight and nitrogen content.

While soil agar and soil tube tests are useful for rapid screening, there is no substitute for field testing using the expected final carrier in soil as similar as possible to that in which the rhizobium is destined to grow.

## 20.2 FERMENTATION FOR RHIZOBIA

- (i) *The inoculum*: The inoculum is prepared from a stock culture preferably stored in sterile soil or on agar overlain with oil. The organisms used in preparing the inoculum are preferably those able to form nitrogen-fixing nodules with several legumes (i.e. the so-called 'broad-spectrum' strains). Where these are not available, a mixture of several strains effective in a wide range of legumes are used. In this way, the need to prepare a large number of small amounts of the inoculant is obviated. The inoculum added is preferably about 1.0% of the total volume and should have a density of  $10^6$ – $10^7$  organisms per ml.
- (ii) *Medium*: Rhizobia are not very demanding of nutritional requirements. Most industrial media used consist of yeast extract or yeast hydrolysate, a carbohydrate source, and mineral salts. In some media, yeast extracts supply all the nitrogen, vitamins (especially biotin), and minerals required by the bacteria. Corn steep liquor and hydrolyzed casein are sometimes used to supplement yeast extract. In some media, one or more of potassium phosphate, magnesium sulfate, ferric chloride, and sodium chloride may be added. For fast growers, the carbohydrate source is usually sucrose, while for slow growers, it may be mannitol, galactose, or arabinose. Fast growers (e.g. *Rhizobium meliloti*) have large gummy colonies which form in three to five days. Slow growers (e.g. *Rhizobium japonicum*) have small colonies taking 7 to 10 days to develop. The former are peritrichously flagellated, while the latter are sub-polarly flagellated.
- (iii) *Aeration*: Rhizobia are aerobic organisms; nevertheless, rhizobia will grow quite well in an unaerated fermenter if there is a broad enough surface area to permit oxygen diffusion. Very low aeration, as low as 0.5 liters/hour, has been found satisfactory. In large fermenters, air sparging without agitation is usually satisfactory.
- (iv) *Time and temperature*: The temperature used is about 20°C and while fast growers attain high numbers (in excess of  $140 \times 10^9$ /ml) in about two to three days, slow

growers in medium specially designed to facilitate their growth attain slightly less than this number in three to five days.

- (v) *The fermenter*: Fermenters used for rhizobium culture are small in comparison with those used for antibiotics. The larger sizes range from 1,000 to 2,000 liters. Ordinarily, they range from 5 liters through 40 liters to about 200 liters and are also usually quite unsophisticated compared with those used for producing antibiotics.

## 20.3 INOCULANT PACKAGING FOR USE

After the fermentation of the organism, it is packaged for delivery in either of two forms: (a) as a coating on the seeds (or seed inoculants) from which the rhizobia develop at planting and invade the roots, or (b) as direct application into soil with the seeds introduced shortly before or after soil inoculants.

### 20.3.1 Seed Inoculants

Seed inoculants are more commonly used than soil inoculants. In seed inoculation, the rhizobia may be offered as a liquid or broth, frozen concentrates, or as a freeze-dried or oil-dried preparation. No specific carrier is used for these preparations. Although gum Arabic, milk, and sucrose are sometimes added to these essentially liquid preparations, they still do not offer sufficient protection against the bacteria from the environment. The bacteria therefore die out quickly. By far, the most common preparations are offered with carriers.

A carrier is the material which binds the rhizobium to the seed. Carriers should have a high water-holding capacity, provide a nutritive medium for the growth of rhizobia, protect the bacteria from harmful environmental effect, e.g. sunlight, favor their survival on the seeds and in the soil, and they should not be toxic to the bacteria. The most widely used carrier is peat. Other locally available materials may be used.

#### (i) *The use of peat as a carrier*

Peat is the first stage in the formation of coal, which when freshly obtained is moist. It must be dried and milled or shredded. Peats vary in their properties and each must be studied and undesirable properties rectified before final use. For example, peats mined in some parts of the world have a high content of sodium chloride, which must be removed by leaching with water before the peat is used. Peats are also usually acid, and finely ground  $\text{CaCO}_3$  up to about 5% is used to raise the pH to about 6.8.

The survival rate of rhizobia in unsterilized carriers is low because of competition and antagonism from resident organisms. The peat is therefore usually sterilized by hot air, steam (including autoclaving), gamma irradiation, and chemical sterilants. Hot air and steam seem to be favored, as gamma-irradiation facilities are not always easily accessible and the post-treatment removal of chemical sterilants may sometimes be difficult. Care must be taken to ensure that materials toxic to the rhizobia are not released by the use of excessive temperatures.

In order to introduce the organism into a carrier, two methods are used. In the United States, the broth containing a heavy growth of rhizobium in excess of  $10^9$ /ml is mixed with  $\text{CaCO}_3$  and sprayed onto sterilized ground peat. It is then incubated in thin layers at 26–28°C for two to three days to allow the heat generated during the wetting of the peat to

dissipate. Thereafter, it is ground and bagged; adequate numbers are reached in the peat in three to five weeks for fast growers and in about twice as long for slow growers. At the end of this period, the preparation is refrigerated until it is used. In other parts of the world, the broth is inoculated into bottles or polythene bags containing sterile peat or a peat/soil mixture. They are shaken for 24 hours and allowed to grow for one to two weeks at 26–30°C and thereafter stored at 2–4°C. For seed inoculation, the rhizobium in broth or with a carrier is brought in contact with the seeds, which then become coated with the organisms.

### (ii) Use of other carriers

A wide range of materials have in fact been tried with success including lignite, coal, charcoal, bagasse, coir dust, composted straw plus charcoal, ground wheat straw, rice husk, and ground talc.

The essential requirement is that the carrier, regardless if it is peat or any other substance(s), must be shown to be suitable both in laboratory experimentation and also in the field.

## 20.3.2 Soil Inoculants

The following describes conditions when seed inoculation is not efficient:

- (a) In some epigeal legumes, for example soybeans, the seed coat of the seedling is lifted out of the ground during the emergence of the cotyledons (seed leaves). Under this condition, the rhizobia clinging to the seed coat are not deposited in the soil.
- (b) Seeds coated with fungicides or insecticides cannot be successfully inoculated with rhizobia.
- (c) With legumes having small seeds and therefore only a limited number of rhizobia are introduced, heavy soil inoculation is practiced, especially if very aggressive but ineffective rhizobia exist in the soil.
- (d) Finally, fragile seeds such as peanuts (groundnuts) may break following prior wetting during seed inoculation.

Besides the above difficulties, soil inoculation has the additional advantage of relative ease of application. Furthermore, it may be used to inoculate the growing plant in situations where earlier inoculation failed.

Rhizobia may be inoculated into soil using one of two ways:

- (a) Frozen concentrate obtained from centrifugation is thawed and diluted with water and applied to soil, or
- (b) free-flowing granules made from peat-rhizobium preparations may be applied to soil.

## 20.4 QUALITY CONTROL

It is important that the number and nitrogen-fixing qualities of the inoculant meet the expectation of the user at the time of application. The number of rhizobia required for effective nodulation depends on a large number of factors including the size of the seed, the presence or absence of competing rhizobia in the soil, weather conditions, the temperature moisture, and type of soil. Nevertheless, the accepted standard is a minimum of 1,000 cells of *Rhizobium* per seed, except in the case of soybean where the minimum is 10.

In some countries such as Australia, a government or university body supervises all stages of the production of inoculants. In other countries, notably the United States, the control is left to the producing companies. In either case, the performance of the inoculants in the hands of the farmer is the ultimate test. Wherever rhizobia are inoculated, some means of ensuring the quality of the product must exist.

Once the material has been prepared and the maximum number possible in the preparation attained, quality is most easily maintained by storing it under refrigeration until use, provided that adequate content and some aeration is maintained in the package. A system of expiration date based on experience is often indicated on the package.

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Distinguish chemical and biological nitrogen fixation in agriculture.
2. Explain cross-inoculation groups of *Rhizobium*.
3. List the general properties of desirable *Rhizobium* strains.
4. Discuss medium and fermentation parameters for industrial scale production of *Rhizobium* inoculants.
5. List carriers employed in packaging *Rhizobium* inoculants.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Brockwell, J. 1977. *In: A Treatise on Dinitrogen Fixation: Section IV: Agronomy and Ecology*. R.W.F. Hardy, A.H. Gibson (eds.) Wiley, New York, USA. pp. 277–309.
- Flickinger, M.C., Drew, S.W. (eds.) 1999. *Encyclopedia of Bioprocess Technology—Fermentation, Biocatalysis, and Bioseparation*. Vol. 1–5. John Wiley, New York, USA.
- Temprano, F.J., Albareda, M., Camacho, M., Daza, A., Santamaria, C., Rodríguez-Navarro, D.N. 2002. Survival of Several *Rhizobium/Bradyrhizobium* Strains on Different Inoculant Formulations and Inoculated Seeds. *International Microbiology*. 5, 81–86.

---

## Production of Fermented Foods

---

### 21.1 INTRODUCTION

Fermented foods may be defined as foods which are processed through the activities of microorganisms but in which the weight of the microorganisms in the food is usually small. The influence of microbial activity on the nature of the food, especially in terms of flavor and other organoleptic properties, is profound. For example, yeasts form a small proportion by weight on bread, but are responsible for the flavor of bread; hence, bread is a fermented food.

Fermented foods have been known from the earliest period of human existence and exist in all societies. Fermented foods have several advantages:

- (a) Fermentation serves as a means of preserving foods in a low cost manner; thus, cheese keeps longer than the milk from which it is produced.
- (b) The organoleptic properties of fermented foods are improved in comparison with the raw materials from which they are prepared; cheese, for example, tastes very different from milk from which it is produced.
- (c) Fermentation sometimes removes unwanted or harmful properties in the raw material; thus, fermentation removes flatulence factors in soybeans and reduces the poisonous cyanide content of cassava during garri preparation (see below).
- (d) The nutritive content of the food is improved in many items by the presence of the microorganisms; thus, the lactic acid bacteria and yeasts in garri and the yeasts in bread add to the nutritive quality of these foods.
- (e) Fermentation often reduces the cooking time of the food as in the case of fermented soy bean products or ogi, the weaning West African food produced from fermented maize.

Fermented foods are influenced mainly by the nature of the substrate and the organisms involved in the fermentation, the length of the fermentation, and the treatment of the food during the processing. The fermented foods discussed in this chapter are arranged according to the substrates used.

## 21.2 FERMENTED FOOD FROM WHEAT: BREAD

Bread has been known to man for many centuries, and excavations have revealed that bakers' ovens were in use by the Babylonians about 4,000 B.C. Today, bread supplies over half of the caloric intake of the world's population including a high proportion of the intake of Vitamins B and E. Bread is therefore a major food of the world.

### 21.2.1 Ingredients for Modern Bread-making

The basic ingredients in bread-making are flour, water, salt, and yeasts. However in modern bread-making, a large number of other components and additives are used as knowledge of the baking process has grown. These components include 'yeast food', sugar, milk, eggs, shortening (fat) emulsifiers, antifungal agents, anti-oxidants, enzymes, flavoring, and enriching ingredients. The ingredients are mixed together to form dough which is then baked.

#### 21.2.1.1 Flour

Flour is the main ingredient of bread and is produced by milling the grains of wheat, various species and varieties of which are known. For flour production, most countries use *Triticum vulgare*. A few countries use *T. durum*, but this yellow colored variety is more familiarly used for semolina and macaroni in many countries. The chief constituents of flour are starch (70%), protein (7–15%), sugar (1%), and lipids (1%).

In bread-making from *T. vulgare*, the quality of the flour depends on the quality and quantity of its proteins. Flour proteins are of two types. The first type of flour which makes up for about 15% of the total is soluble in water and dilute salt solutions and non-dough forming. It consists of albumins, globulins, peptides, amino acids, and enzymes. The remaining 85% are insoluble in aqueous media and are responsible for dough formation. They are collectively known as gluten. It also contains lipids.

Gluten has the unique property of forming an elastic structure when moistened with water. It forms the skeleton which holds the starch, yeasts, gases, and other components of dough. Gluten can be easily extracted by adding enough water to flour and kneading it into dough. After allowing the dough to stand for an hour, the starch can be washed off under running tap water leaving a tough, elastic, sticky, and viscous material which is the gluten. Gluten is separable into an alcohol soluble fraction which forms one third of the total and known as gladilins and a fraction (two thirds) that is not alcohol-soluble known as glutenins. Gladilins are of lower molecular weight than glutenins; they are more extensible but less elastic than glutenins. Gladilins are soluble in acids and bases, whereas glutenins are not. The latter will also complex with lipids, whereas gladilins do not. 'Hard' wheat with a high content of protein (over 12%) is best for making bread because the high content of glutenins enables a firm skeleton for holding the gases released during fermentation. 'Soft' wheat with low protein content (9–11%) is best for making cakes.

#### 21.2.1.2 Yeast

The yeasts used for baking are strains of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. The ideal properties of yeasts used in modern bakeries are as follows:

- (a) Ability to grow rapidly at room temperature of about 20–25°C;

- (b) Easy dispersal in water;
- (c) Ability to produce large amounts of CO<sub>2</sub> rather than alcohol in flour dough;
- (d) Good keeping quality, i.e. ability to resist autolysis when stored at 20°C;
- (e) Ability to adapt rapidly to changing substrates available to the yeasts during dough making.
- (f) High invertase and other enzyme activity to hydrolyze sucrose to higher glucofructans rapidly;
- (g) Ability to grow and synthesize enzymes and coenzymes under the anaerobic conditions of the dough;
- (h) Ability to resist the osmotic effect of salts and sugars in the dough;
- (i) High competitiveness, i.e. high yielding in terms of dry weight per unit of substrate used.

The amount of yeasts used during baking depends on the flour type, the ingredients used in the baking, and the system of baking used. Very 'strong' flours (i.e. with high protein levels) require more yeast than softer ones. High amount of components inhibitory to yeasts, e.g. sugar (over 2%), antifungal agents, and fat, usually require high yeast additions. Baking systems which involve short periods for dough formation need more yeast than others. In general however, yeast amounts vary from 2–2.75% (and rarely up to 3.0%) of the flour weight. The roles of yeasts in bread-making are leavening, flavor development, and increased nutritional values.

*Yeast 'food'*: In general, the 'foods' contain a calcium salt, an ammonium salt, and an oxidizing agent. The bivalent calcium ion has a beneficial strengthening effect on the colloidal structure of the wheat gluten. The ammonium is a nitrogen source for the yeast. The oxidizing agent strengthens gluten by its reaction with the proteins' sulfhydryl groups to provide cross-links between protein molecules and thus enhances its ability to hold gas releases during dough formation. Oxidizing agents which have been used include iodates, bromates, and peroxide. A common yeast food has the following composition: calcium sulfate, 30%, ammonium chloride, 9.4%, sodium chloride, 35%, potassium bromate, 0.3%. Starch (25.3%) is used as a filler.

### 21.2.1.3 Sugar

Sugar is added (a) to provide carbon nourishment for the yeasts additional to the amount available in flour sugar, (b) to sweeten the bread, and (c) to afford more rapid browning (through sugar caramelization) of the crust and hence greater moisture retention within the bread. Sugar is supplied by the use of sucrose and/or fructose corn syrups (regular and high fructose), depending on availability.

### 21.2.1.4 Shortening (Fat)

Animal and vegetable fats are added as shortenings in bread-making at about 3% (w/w) of flour in order to yield (a) increased loaf size, (b) a more tender crumb, and (c) enhanced slicing properties. While the desirable effects of fats have been clearly demonstrated, their mode of action is as yet a matter of controversy among bakery scientists and cereal chemists. Butter is used only in the most expensive breads; lard (fat from pork) may be used, but vegetable fats, especially soy bean oil, are now common due to their basically guaranteed supply.

### 21.2.1.5 Emulsifiers (Surfactants)

Emulsifiers are used in conjunction with shortening and ensure a better distribution of the latter in the dough. Emulsifiers contain a fatty acid, palmitic or stearic acid, which is bound to one or more poly-functional molecules with carboxylic, hydroxyl, and/or amino groups, e.g. glycerol, lactic acid, sorbic acid, or tartaric acid. Sometimes, the carboxylic group is converted to its sodium or calcium salt. Emulsifiers are added as 0.5% of the flour weight. Commonly used surfactants include: calcium stearyl-2-lactylate, lactic stearate, and sodium stearyl fumarate.

### 21.2.1.6 Milk

Milk used in bread-making must be heated to high temperatures before being dried; otherwise, for reasons not yet known, the dough becomes sticky. Milk is added to make the bread more nutritious, to help improve the crust color, presumably by sugar caramelization, and because of its buffering value. Due to the rising cost of milk, skim milk and blends made from various components including whey, buttermilk solids, sodium or potassium caseinate, soy flour, and/or corn flour. The milk substitutes are added in the ratio of 1–2 parts per 100 parts of flour.

### 21.2.1.7 Salt

About 2% sodium chloride is usually added to bread. It serves the following purposes:

- (a) It improves taste.
- (b) It stabilizes yeast fermentation.
- (c) It has a toughening effect on gluten.
- (d) It helps to delay proteolytic activity which may be related to its effect on gluten.
- (e) It participates in the lipid binding of dough.

Due to the retarding effect on fermentation, salt is preferably added towards the end of the mixing. For this reason, flake-salt which has enhanced solubility is used and is added towards the end of the mixing. Fat-coated salt may also be used; the salt becomes available only at the later stages of dough formation or at the early stages of baking.

### 21.2.1.8 Water

Water is needed to form gluten, to permit swelling of the starch, and to provide a medium for the various reactions that take place in dough formation. Water is not softened for bread-making, because calcium is added for reasons already discussed. Water with high sulfide content is undesirable because gluten is softened by the sulfhydryl groups.

### 21.2.1.9 Enzymes

Sufficient amylolytic enzymes must be present during bread-making to breakdown the starch in flour into fermentable sugars. Since most flours are deficient in alpha-amylase, flour is supplemented during the milling of the wheat with malted barley or wheat to provide this enzyme. Fungal or bacterial amylase preparations may be added during

dough mixing. Bacterial amylase from *Bacillus subtilis* is particularly useful because it is heat-stable and partly survives the baking process. Proteolytic enzymes from *Aspergillus oryzae* are used in dough making, particularly in flours with excessively high protein contents. Ordinarily however, proteases have the effect of reducing the mixing time of the dough.

#### 21.2.1.10 Mold-inhibitors (antimycotics) and enriching additives

The spoilage of bread is caused mainly by the fungi *Rhizopus*, *Mucor*, *Aspergillus*, and *Penicillium*. Spoilage by *Bacillus mesenteroides* (ropes) rarely occurs. The chief anti-mycotic agent added to bread is calcium propionate. Others used to a much lesser extent are sodium diacetate, vinegar, mono-calcium phosphate, and lactic acid.

Bread is also often enriched with various vitamins and minerals including thiamin, riboflavin, niacin, and iron.

### 21.2.2 Systems of Bread-making

Large-scale bread-making is mechanized. The processes of yeast-leavened bread-making may be divided into:

- (a) *Pre-fermentation (or sponge mixing)*: At this stage, a portion of the ingredients is mixed with yeast either with or without flour to produce an inoculum. During this procedure, the yeast becomes adapted to the growth conditions of the dough and rapidly multiplies.
- (b) *Dough mixing*: The remaining ingredients are mixed together with the inoculum to form the dough. This is the stage when maximum gluten development is sought.
- (c) *Cutting and rounding*: The dough formed above is cut into specific weights and rounded by machines.
- (d) *First (intermediate) proofing*: The dough is allowed to rest for about 15 minutes usually at the previously used temperature, i.e. at about 27°C. This is done in equipment known as an overhead proofer.
- (e) *Molding*: The dough is flattened to a sheet and then molded into a spherical body and placed in a baking pan which will confer shape to the loaf.
- (f) *Second proofing*: This consists of holding the dough for about 1 hour at 35–43°C and in an atmosphere of high humidity (89–95%).
- (g) *Baking*: During baking, the proofed dough is transferred, still in the final pan, to the oven where it is subjected to an average temperature of 215–225°C for 17–23 minutes. Baking is the final of the various baking processes.
- (h) *Cooling, slicing, and wrapping*: The bread is removed from the pan, cooled to 4–5°C, and wrapped in waxed paper or plastic bags.

#### *The Three Basic Systems of Bread-making*

There are three basic systems of baking. All three are essentially similar and differ only in the presence or absence of pre-fermentation. Where pre-fermentation is present, the formulation of the pre-ferment may consist of a broth or it may be a sponge (i.e. includes flour). All three basic types may be sponge. All three basic types may also be batch or continuous.

**(i) Sponge doughs:** This system or modification of it is the most widely used worldwide. In the sponge-dough system of baking, a portion (60–70%) of the flour is mixed with water, yeast, and yeast food in a slurry tank during pre-fermentation to yield a spongy material resulting from bubbles caused by alcohol and CO<sub>2</sub> (hence the name). If enzymes are used, they may be added at this stage. The sponge is allowed to rest at about 27°C and a relative humidity of 75–80% for 3.5 to 5 hours. During this period, the sponge dough rises five to six times because of the volatile products released by this yeast and then usually collapses spontaneously. During the next (or dough) stage, the sponge is mixed with the other ingredients. The result is a dough which follows the rest of the scheme described above. The heat of the oven causes the metabolic products of the yeast, CO<sub>2</sub>, alcohol, and water vapor, to expand to the final size of the loaf. The protein becomes denatured beginning from about 70°C. The denatured protein soon sets and imposes fixed sizes to the air vesicles. The enzymes alpha- and beta-amylases are active for a while as the temperature passes through their optimum temperatures which are 55–65°C and 65–70°C respectively. At temperatures of about 10°C beyond their optima, these two enzymes become denatured. The temperature of the outside of the bread is about 195°C but the internal temperature never exceeds 100°C. At about 65–70°C, the yeasts are killed. The higher outside temperature leads to browning of the crust, a result of reactions between the reducing sugars and the free amino acids in the dough. The starch granules which have become hydrated are broken down only slightly by the amylolytic enzymes before they become denatured to dextrin and maltose by alpha-amylase and beta-amylase, respectively.

**(ii) The liquid ferment system:** In this system, water, yeast, food, malt, sugar, salt, and occasionally milk are mixed during the pre-fermentation at about 30°C and left for about 6 hours. After that, flour and other ingredients are added and mixed to form a dough. The rest is as described above.

**(iii) The straight dough system:** In this system, all the components are mixed at the same time until a dough is formed. The dough is then allowed to ferment at about 28–30°C for 2–4 hours. During this period, the risen dough is occasionally knocked down to cause it to collapse. Thereafter, it follows the same process as those already described. The straight dough is usually used for home bread making.

### *The Chorleywood Bread Process*

The Chorleywood Bread Process is a unique modification of the straight dough process which is used in most bakeries in the United Kingdom and Australia. The Chorleywood Bread Process, also known as CBP, was developed at the laboratories of the Flour Milling & Baking Research Association (Chorleywood, Herefordshire, UK) as a means of cutting down baking time. The essential components of the system are that:

- (a) All the components are mixed together with a finite amount of energy at so high a rate that mixing is complete in 3–5 minutes.
- (b) Fast-acting oxidizing agents (potassium iodate or bromate, or more often ascorbic acid) are used.
- (c) The level of yeast added is 50–100% of the normal level; often, fast-acting yeasts especially developed for this purpose are employed.
- (d) No pre-fermentation time is allowed, and the time required to produce bread from flour is shortened from 6–7 hours to 1½–2 hours.

### 21.2.3 Role of Yeasts in Bread-making

*Methods of Leavening:* Leavening is the increase in the size of the dough induced by gases during bread-making. Leavening may be brought about in a number of ways.

- (a) Air or carbon dioxide may be forced into the dough; this method has not become popular.
- (b) Water vapor or steam which develops during baking has a leavening effect. This has not been used in baking; it is however the major leavening gas in crackers.
- (c) Oxygen has been used for leavening bread. Hydrogen peroxide was added to the dough and oxygen was then released with catalase.
- (d) It has been suggested that carbon dioxide can be released in the dough by the use of decarboxylases, enzymes which cleave off carbon dioxide from carboxylic acids. This has not been tried in practice.
- (e) The use of baking powder has been suggested. Baking powder consists of about 30% sodium bicarbonate mixed in the dry state with one of a number of leavening acids, including sodium acid pyrophosphate, monocalcium phosphate, sodium aluminum phosphate, monocalcium phosphate, and glucono-delta-lactone. CO<sub>2</sub> evolves on contact of the components with water: partly during dough making, but mostly during baking. Baking powder is suitable for cakes and other high-sugar leavened foods, whose osmotic pressure would be too high for yeasts. However, when using the same amounts, yeasts are vastly superior to baking powder for leavening.
- (f) Leavening by microorganisms may be done by any facultative organism releasing gas under anaerobic conditions such as heterofermentative lactic acid bacteria, including *Lactobacillus plantarum* or pseudolactics such as *Escherichia coli*. In practice however, yeasts are used. Even when it is desirable to produce bread quickly, such as for the military, for sportsmen, and for other emergency conditions, the use of yeasts is recommended over the use of baking powder.

*The Process of Leavening:* The events taking place in dough during primary fermentation, i.e. fermentation before the dough is introduced into the oven, may be summarized as follows. During bread making, yeasts ferment hexose sugars mainly into alcohol (0.48 g), carbon dioxide (0.48 g), smaller amounts of glycerol (0.002–0.003 g), and trace compounds (0.0005 g) of various other alcohols, esters aldehydes, and organic acids. The figures given in parenthesis indicate the amount of the respective compounds produced from 1 g of hexose sugars. The CO<sub>2</sub> dissolves continuously in the dough, until the latter becomes saturated. Subsequently, the excess CO<sub>2</sub> in the gaseous state begins to form bubbles in the dough. It is this formation of bubbles which causes the dough to rise or to leaven. Depending on the method of baking used, the total time it takes for the yeast to act upon the dough varies from 2–6 hours or longer.

#### 21.2.3.1 Factors which effect the leavening action of yeasts

(i) *The nature of the available sugar:* When no sugar is added to the dough, such as in the traditional method of bread-making, in sponge-dough, and some liquid ferments, the yeast utilizes the maltose in the flour. Such maltose is produced by the action of the amylases of the wheat. However, when glucose, fructose, or sucrose are added, these are utilized in preference to maltose. The formation of 'Malto-zymase' or the group of

enzymes responsible for maltose utilization is repressed by the presence of these sugars. Malto-zyamase is produced only at the exhaustion of the more easily utilizable sugars. Malto-zyamase is inducible and is produced readily in yeasts grown on grain containing maltose. Sucrose is inverted into glucose and fructose by the saccharase of the cell surface of baker's yeasts. While fructose and glucose are rather similarly fermented, glucose is the preferred substrate. Fermentation of the fructose moiety of sucrose is initiated after an induction period of about 1 hour. It is clear from the above that the most rapid leavening is achievable by the use of glucose.

(ii) *Osmotic pressure*: High osmotic pressures inhibit yeast action. Baker's yeast will produce CO<sub>2</sub> rapidly in dough up to a maximum of about 5% glucose, sucrose, or fructose or in solutions of about 10%. Beyond that, gas production drops off rapidly. Salt at levels beyond about 2% (based on flour weight) is inhibitory on yeasts. In dough, the amount used is 2.0–2.5% (based on flour weight) and this is inhibitory on yeasts. The level of salt addition is maintained as a compromise on account of its role in gluten formation. Salt is therefore added as late as possible in the dough formation process.

(iii) *Effect of nitrogen and other nutrients*: Short fermentations require no nutrients, but for longer fermentation, the addition of minerals and a nitrogen source increases gas production. Ammonium normally added as yeast food is rapidly utilized. Flour also supplies amino acids, peptides, and thiamine. Thiamine is required for the growth of yeasts. Therefore, when liquid pre-ferments containing no flour are prepared, thiamine is added.

(iv) *Effect on fungal inhibitors (anti-mycotic agents)*: Anti-mycotics added to bread are all inhibitory to yeast. In all cases therefore, a compromise must be worked between the maximum level permitted by government regulations, the minimum level inhibitory to yeasts, and the minimum level inhibitory to fungi. A compromise level for calcium propionate which is the most widely used anti-mycotic is 0.19% (based on flour weight).

(v) *Yeast concentration*: The weight of yeast for baking rarely exceeds 3% of the flour weight. A balance exists between the sugar concentration, the length of the fermentation, and the yeast concentration. Provided that enough sugar is available, the higher the yeast concentration the more rapid is the leavening. However, although the loaf may be bigger, the taste and in particular the texture may be adversely affected.

### 21.2.3.2 Flavor development

The aroma of fermented materials such as beer, wine, fruit wines, and dough exhibit some resemblance. However, the aroma of bread is distinct from those of the substances mentioned earlier because of the baking process. During baking, the lower boiling point materials escape with the oven gases. Furthermore, new compounds result from the chemical reactions taking place at the high temperature. The flavor compounds found in bread are organic acids, esters, alcohols, aldehydes, ketones, and other carbonyl compounds. The organic acids include formic, acetic, propionic, n-butyric, isobutyric, isocaproic, heptanoic, caprylic, pelargonic, capric, lactic, and pyruvic acids. The esters include the ethyl esters of most of these acids as would be expected in their reaction with ethanol. Beside ethanol, amyl alcohols and isobutanol are the most abundant alcohols. In oven vapor condensates, ethanol constitutes 11–12% while other alcohols collectively make up only about 0.04%. Besides the three earlier-mentioned alcohols, others are n-propanol, 2-3-butanediol, and β-phenyl ethyl alcohol. At least one study has found a correlation between the concentration of amyl

alcohols and the aroma of bread. Of the aldehydes and ketones, acetaldehyde appears to be the major component of pre-fermentation. Formaldehyde, acetone, propionaldehyde, isobutyraldehyde, methylethyl ketone, 2-methyl butanol, and isovaleraldehyde are others. A good proportion of many of these is lost during baking.

### 21.2.3.3 Baking

Bread is baked at a temperature of about 235°C for 45–60 minutes. As the baking progresses and temperature rises, gas production rises and various events mentioned below occur:

- At about 45°C, the undamaged starch granules begin to gelatinize and are attacked by alpha-amylase yielding fermentable sugars.
- Between 50 and 60°C, the yeast is killed.
- At about 65°C, the beta-amylase is thermally inactivated.
- At about 75°C, the fungal amylase is inactivated.
- At about 87°C, the cereal alpha-amylase is inactivated.
- Finally, the gluten is denatured and coagulates stabilizing the shape and size of the loaf.

## 21.3 FERMENTED FOODS MADE FROM MILK

### 21.3.1 Composition of Milk

Milk is the fluid from the mammary glands of animals which is meant for feeding the young of the mammals. It is a complex liquid consisting of several hundred components of which the most important are proteins, lactose, fat, minerals, enzymes, and vitamins in which emulsified fat globules and casein micelles are present (Table 21.1).

*Proteins:* Milk proteins are divided into two: caseins and whey proteins. Caseins consist of carbohydrate, phosphorus, and protein (glyco-phospho-protein) and make up 85% of the total milk proteins. Casein exists in milk as the calcium salt, i.e. as calcium caseinate

**Table 21.1** Chemical composition (%) of milk from various mammals

<i>Animal</i>	<i>Water</i>	<i>Fat</i>	<i>Protein</i>	<i>Lactose</i>	<i>Ash</i>
Donkey	89.0	2.5	2.0	6.0	0.5
Buffalo	82.1	8.0	4.2	4.9	0.8
Camel	87.1	4.2	3.7	4.1	0.9
Cow	87.6	3.8	3.3	4.7	0.6
Goat	87.0	4.5	3.3	4.6	0.6
Mare	89.0	1.5	2.6	6.2	0.7
Reindeer	63.3	22.5	10.3	2.5	1.4
Sheep	81.6	7.5	5.6	4.4	0.9

in globules (micelles) ranging from 40–300  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Casein exists in four types designated  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\kappa$ , and  $\gamma$ , depending on their electric charges. The proportion of the various types in milk depends on the breed of the cow producing the milk. The letter 's' after  $\alpha_s$ -caseins indicates its sensitivity to precipitation by calcium.

Whey proteins consist of different components which are normally acid-resistant, but very sensitive to heat.  $\beta$ -Lactoglobulin forms about 66% of the total whey proteins, followed by  $\alpha$ -Lactalbumin (22%). The immunoglobulins form about 10% of the total and contribute towards the immunity derived by the young from the consumption of colostrum.

*Lactose:* The main carbohydrate in milk is lactose which is found only in milk. It is a disaccharide of glucose and galactose and has a low sweetening ability as well as low solubility in water.

*Fat:* Fat consists of one molecule of glycerol and three fatty acids. Over 60 different acids are known in butter, many of them being of low molecular weight of about 10 carbon atoms or less, and include saturated and unsaturated fatty acids.

*Enzymes:* Enzymes found in milk include proteases, carbohydrases, esterases, and oxidases/reductases.

*Minerals:* Milk is a major source of calcium; other minerals in milk are phosphorus, magnesium, sodium, potassium as well as sulfate and chloride ions.

When fat is removed from milk, such as during butter making, the remnant is *skim milk*. On the other hand, when casein is removed, for example during cheese manufacture, the remnant is known as *whey*. Whey is high in lactose; it is used in the production of yeasts to be used as food or fodder.

### 21.3.2 Cheese

Cheese is a highly proteinaceous food made from the milk of some herbivores. Cheese is believed to have originated in the warm climates of the Middle East some thousands of years ago and is said to have evolved when milk in goat stomachs was found to have curdled. The scientific study and manipulation of milk for cheese manufacture is however just over a hundred years old. Most cheese in the temperate countries of the world such as Western Europe and the USA is made from cow's milk, the composition of which varies according to the breed of the cattle, the stage of lactation, the adequacy of its nutrition, the age of the cow, and the presence or absence of disease in the breasts (udders) known as mastitis. In some subtropical countries, milk from sheep, goats, the lama, yak, or ass is also used. Sheep milk is used specifically for the production of certain special cheese types in some parts of Europe (e.g. Roquefort in France and Brinsen in Hungary). Milk from the water buffalo may be used in India and other countries, while milk from the reindeer and the mare may be used in northern parts of Scandinavia and in Russia, respectively. Cheese made from the milk of goat and sheep has a much stronger flavor than that made from cow's milk. This is because the fats in goat and sheep milk contain much lower amounts of the lower fatty acids, caproic, capryllic, and capric acids. These acids confer a sharp taste (similar to that of Roquefort cheese) to cheese made from these mammals.

About a thousand types of cheese have been described depending on the properties and treatment of the milk, the method of production, conditions such as temperature, the properties of the coagulum, and the local preferences.

### 21.3.2.1 Stages in the manufacture of cheese

The manufacture of all the types of cheeses include all or some of the following processes:

#### (a) *Standardization of milk*

The quality of the milk has a decided effect on the nature of cheese. Cheese made from skim milk is hard and leathery; the more fat a cheese contains, the smoother its feel to the palate. The fat/protein ratio is often adjusted through fat addition in order to yield a cheese of consistent quality. In the US, pasteurization (High Temperature Short Time or Long Temperature Short Time) must be applied to milk used in certain types of cheeses, such as cottage or cream cheese. For others, the milk does not need to be pasteurized but must be stored at for at least 60 days at 2°C. If however the 'starter' is slow acting or souring is delayed, food-poisoning staphylococci could develop and produce toxins in the cheese. Sub-pasteurization temperatures are often the legal compromise. Pasteurization gives a better control over the processes of cheese production. However, the organisms present in raw milk are important during the ripening processes.

The milk may also be homogenized by forcing it at high speed through small orifices to reduce the milk fat globules for use in producing soft cheeses.

#### (b) *Inoculation of pure cultures of lactic acid bacteria as starter cultures*

In the past, lactic acid was produced by naturally occurring bacteria. Nowadays, they are inoculated artificially by specially selected bacteria termed starters. Indeed, lactic acid formation is necessary in all kinds of cheese. The propagation and distribution of lactic acid bacteria for use in cheese manufacture is an industry in its own right in the United States. For cheese prepared at temperatures less than 40°C, strains of *Lactococcus lactis* are used. For those prepared at higher temperatures, the more thermophilic *Streptococcus thermophilus*, *Lactobacillus bulgaricus*, and *L. helveticus* are used.

Lactic acid has the following effects:

- (i) It causes the coagulation of casein at pH 4.6, the isoelectric point of that protein, which is used in the manufacture of some cheeses, e.g. cottage cheese.
- (ii) It provides a favorably low pH for the action of rennin, the enzyme which forms the curd from casein in other types of cheeses.
- (iii) The low pH eliminates proteolytic and other undesirable bacteria.
- (iv) It causes the curd to shrink and thus promotes the drainage of whey.
- (v) Metabolic products from the lactic acid bacteria such as ketones, esters, and aldehydes contribute to the flavor of the cheese.

Problems of lactic acid bacteria in cheese-making

- (i) *Attack by bacteriophages*: Bacteriophages sometimes attack the lactic acid starters, and besides choosing strains that are resistant to phages, rotations (i.e. using different lactic mixtures every three or four days) help eliminate them.
- (ii) *Inhibition by penicillin and other antibiotics*: Being Gram-positive, lactic acid bacteria are particularly susceptible to penicillin used to treat diseased udders in mastitis, if the antibiotic finds its way into the milk. Other antibiotics also have an inhibitory effect on them.

- (iii) *Undesirable strains*: Some strains of lactic acid bacteria are undesirable in cheese making because they produce too much gas, undesirable flavors, or produce antibiotics against other lactic acid bacteria. They arise by mutation.
- (iv) *Sterilant and detergent residues*: Sterilant and detergent residues may inhibit the growth of starter bacteria. The minimum concentration required for inhibition varies with the different antimicrobial agents and between different strains of starter bacteria. Residues gain entry to milk (a) at the farm, (b) during transportation to the factory, and (c) the factory due to careless use of sterilants or detergents and incomplete draining or inadequate rinsing of equipment. The inhibitory effects of sterilant and detergent residues are prevented by the correct and ethical use of these materials. Proper use includes the use of the chemical at the correct concentration and adequate rinsing and draining. Their presence is mitigated by dilution with uncontaminated milk.

(c) *Adding of rennet for coagulum formation*

The classical material used in the formation of the coagulum is 'rennet' which is derived from the fourth stomach, abomasum, or velle of freshly slaughtered milk-fed calves. Besides those of calves, the abomasum of kids (young goats), lamb, or other young mammals have been used. Rennet is produced by soaking and/or shredding air-dried vells under acidic conditions with 12–20% salt. Extracts from young calves contain 94% rennin and 6% pepsin and from older cows, 40% rennin and 60% pepsin. Rennin (chymosin) is the enzyme responsible for the coagulation of the milk. Pepsin is proteolytic, and too high an amount of pepsin can result in the hydrolysis of the coagulum resulting in a low yield of cheese. A bitter taste may result from the amino acids. Due to the high cost of animal rennet, other sources, mostly of microbial origins, have been found. Examples for commercial microbial rennets are Hannilase, Rennilase, and Fromase using *Mucor miehi* as a source, Emporase and Meito from *Mucor pusillus*, Suparen and Sure-Curd from *Endothia parasitica*, and Mikrozyme from *Bacillus subtilis*.

The major effect of the milk-clotting enzymes is the conversion of casein from a colloidal to a fibrous form. First, the pH of the milk is brought down from pH 6.8–7 to pH 5.5 by the action of lactic acid bacteria which produce lactic acid from lactose in the milk. On addition of rennet, the active component, rennin, catalyzes the hydrolysis of k-casein to release para-k-casein and k-casein macropeptide. The latter goes into whey, while the para-k-casein remains part of casein micelles, which now bind together to form the curd following the removal of k-casein macropeptide and the exposure of the binding surfaces. The events during the coagulation are aided by lowered pH and by increasing temperatures up to 45°C. Most of the bacteria, fat, and other particulate matter are entrapped in the curd. When casein is removed, the remaining liquid containing proteins, lactalbumin, globulin, and yellow-green riboflavin (vitamin B<sub>2</sub>) is whey. The whey proteins may be precipitated by heat, but not acid or rennin, and are used in making whey cheese. The enzymes used in cheese making are now obtained from microorganisms, mainly fungi.

(d) *Shrinkage of the curd*

The removal of whey and further shrinkage of the curd is greatly facilitated by heating it, cutting it into smaller pieces, applying some pressure on it, and lowering the pH. In many types of cheeses, such as Parmesan, Emmenthal, and Gruyere, there is a stage known

as 'scalding' in which the temperature can be as high as 56°C in the preparation. Acid produced by the lactic starters introduce elasticity in the curd, a property desirable in the final qualities of cheese.

(e) *Salting of the curd and pressing into shape*

Salt is added to most cheese varieties at some stage in their manufacture. Salt is important not only for the taste, but it also contributes to moisture and acidity control. Most importantly however, it helps limit the growth of proteolytic bacteria which are undesirable. The curd is pressed into shape before being allowed to mature.

(f) *Cheese ripening*

The ripening or maturing of cheese is a slow joint microbiological and biochemical process which converts the brittle white curd or raw cheese to the final full-flavored cheese. The agents responsible for the final change are enzymes in the milk, in the rennet, and those from the added starter microorganisms as well as other microorganisms which confer the special character of the cheese to it. Among the cheeses whose peculiar characteristics are dependent on particular microorganisms are the blue-veined cheese Roquefort, Gorgonzola, and Stilton, conferred by *Penicillium roqueforti*, and Swiss cheese with its characteristic flavor and holes produced by the fermentation products and gases from *Propionibacterium* spp. Yeasts, micrococci, and *Brevibacterium linens* impart the characteristic flavor of Limburger cheese. In soft cheese, such as Camembert, the protein is completely broken down to almost amino acids, whereas in the hard cheese, the protein remains intact.

### 21.3.3 Yogurt (Yoghurt) and Fermented Milk Foods

Many types of fermented milks are produced and consumed around the world (Table 21.2). Yogurt is fermented milk traditionally believed to be an invention of the Turks of Central Asia, in whose language the word yogurt means to blend, a reference to how the milk product is made. Although accidentally invented thousands of years ago, yogurt has only recently gained popularity in the United States. While yogurt has been present for many years, it only recently (within the last 30–40 years) has become popular. This is due to many factors including the introduction of fruit and other flavorings into yogurt, the convenience of it as a ready-made breakfast food, and the image of yogurt as a low-fat, healthy food.

In the manufacture of yogurt, two kinds of lactic acid bacteria, *Lactococcus* spp. and *Lactobacillus* spp., are generally used with usually unpasteurized milk. Most commonly used are *Lactococcus salivarius* and *thermophilus*, and *Lactobacillus* spp., such as *Lb. acidophilus*, *bulgaricus*, and *bifidus*.

The bacteria produce lactic acid from lactose in the milk causing the pH to drop to about 4–5 from about 7.0. This drop in pH causes the milk to coagulate. The lactic acid gives yogurt its sour taste and limits the growth of spoilage bacteria. Yogurt is flavored usually with fruits.

## 21.4 FERMENTED FOODS FROM CORN

Corn is a mostly tropical crop but can grow in the summer in areas with temperate climates, which have at least 90 frost-free days. It is known as maize in some parts of the world. Scientifically known as *Zea mays* L., it is used to make important fermented foods in West Africa and is sometimes mixed with sorghum, *Sorghum bicolor* Linn, for this purpose.

**Table 21.2** Fermented milks and their presumed countries of origin

Name	Presumed country of origin	Description	Cultures
Yogurt	Asia, Balkans	Acidic, set, or stirred, characteristic aroma	<i>S. thermophilus</i> , <i>Lb. bulgaricus</i> (and <i>Lb. acidophilus</i> , <i>Bifidobacterium</i> spp.)*
Acidophilus milk	USA	Set, stirred or liquid, mild flavor	<i>Lb. acidophilus</i>
Kafir	Caucasus	Stirred beverage, creamy consistency, characteristic taste and aroma (CO <sub>2</sub> )	<i>Lc. lactis</i> , <i>Lc. cremoris</i> , <i>Lb. kefir</i> , <i>Lb. casei</i> , <i>Lb.</i>
Kumiss	Mongolia	Frothy beverage, acid, refreshing taste	<i>Lb. bulgaricus</i> , <i>Lb. acidophilus</i> , yeasts
Lassi	India	Sour milk drink diluted with water, consumed salted, spicy or sweet	<i>Lactococcus</i> spp., <i>Lactobacillus</i> spp., <i>Leuconostoc</i>
Dahi	India	Set, stirred, or liquid beverage pleasant	<i>S. thermophilus</i> , <i>Lb. bulgaricus</i> , <i>Lc. diacetyllactis</i>
Leben	Middle East	Set or stirred product, pleasant taste and aroma	<i>S. thermophilus</i> , <i>Lb. bulgaricus</i> , <i>Lb. acidophilus</i>
Filmjilk	Sweden	Viscous stirred beverage, clean acid taste	<i>Lc. lactis</i> , <i>Lc. cremoris</i> , <i>Lc. diacetyllactis</i> , <i>Ln.</i>
Villi	Finland	Viscous stirred product, mildly sour	<i>Lc. lactis</i> , <i>Lc. cremoris</i> , <i>Lc. diacetyllactis</i> , <i>Lc.</i>

\* Depending on the country

### 21.4.1 Ogi, Koko, Mahewu

*Ogi*, also known as *akamu*, is a Nigerian sour gruel made from maize. In Ghana, the equivalent foods are known as *koko*. For *ogi* preparation, corn is soaked in water for about two days. Thereafter, the cereal is wet-milled and sieved to remove the fibrous portions of the maize. The starchy sediment is allowed to settle and to ferment for another two days. The water is decanted off, and the starchy sediment is *ogi*. It is prepared by boiling it to form a thick gruel which can be consumed sweetened with sugar or eaten with foods made from beans.

Studies of the microbiology of *ogi* production show that in the early stages of fermentation, fungi such as *Fusarium* and *Cephalosporium*, which are acquired from the field and form the bulk of the organisms in the first 24 hours, soon disappear to be replaced with lactic acid bacteria (especially *Lactobacillus plantarum* and *L. mesenteroides*) and yeasts (*Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, *Rhodotorula* spp., and *Candida mycoderma*) which become the dominant organisms at the time of the milling.

The flavor of *ogi* has been shown to be due to the activities of lactic acid bacteria and occasionally to yeasts and acetic acid bacteria. The following acids were identified in quantitative order by gas chromatography: acetic, butyric, pentanoic, isohexanoic, and isobutyric.

**Mahewu**, also known as *mogou*, is a South African sour food. Although the main organism found in locally-made mahewu is *Streptococcus lactis*, mahewu is made on an industrial scale by inoculating *Lactobacillus delbruckii* into autoclaved 8–10% maize slurry, fermenting the mixture for about 12 hours and spray-drying the slurry. It is an acid food of about pH 3.5, and in order to ensure that the proper level of lactic acid is produced to attain this pH level, buffering salts such as  $\text{CaHPO}_4$  are sometimes added. It is a convenient food consumed by miners, and the dry powder needs only to be reconstituted in cold water to get the food ready for consumption. The food is sometimes enriched with vitamin and protein rich additives such as yeast extract.

## 21.5 FERMENTED FOODS FROM CASSAVA: GARRI, FOO-FOO, CHIKWUANGE, KOKONTE, BIKEDI, AND CINGUADA

Cassava is an important source of food all over the tropical world in South America, Africa, India, and the Far East. Botanically, it is a member of the family *Euphorbiaceae* and is classified as *Manihot esculenta* Crantz (formerly *Manihot utilissima* Pohl). It has a number of synonyms around the world: *manioc* (Madagascar and French-speaking Africa), *tapioca* (India, Malaysia), *ubi scetlela* (Indonesia), and *manioca* or *yucca* (Latin America). The plant tolerates low soil fertility and drought better than most crops and needs little maintenance once planted. Under favorable conditions, it will yield above 90 ton/hectare.

A major shortcoming of cassava roots is that they are very low in protein. In addition, many varieties contain the cyanogenic glucosides, linamarin and (to a lesser extent) lotaustralin. These glucosides can result in fatalities, if cassava roots are consumed unprocessed. Cassava may be processed by boiling, roasting, drying, leaching with cold water, or by fermentation. In producing fermented cassava products, the roots can either be grated before fermentation or the whole root can be cut into large pieces and fermented in water (retted).

### 21.5.1 Garri

Garri is a popular food for about 100 million people in West Africa. In Cote d'Ivoire, *atieke*, a food very similar to garri is produced from cassava but not fried like garri. A similar food known as *farinha de manioc* or *farinha de mega* is consumed in parts of Brazil.

**Preparation of Garri:** Garri is currently prepared mostly on small, household scales. The first stage is the peeling to remove the brownish thin outer covering to reveal the white fleshy inner portion which is shredded on a hand-held grater or crushed in a grating machine. The central pith and primary xylem provide some fibers in the grated material, some of which is removed by sieving.

The mash resulting from the grating is placed in cloth bags for between 18 and 48 hours and fermented. During the period of fermentation, the mash is dewatered by placing heavy objects on the cloth bags. At the end of the fermentation period, the mash is sieved through a coarse sieve and heated, sometimes with a little palm oil, in a flat iron pot with stirring.

**Microbiology of the fermentation of Garri:** In 1959, Collard and Levi published their study on the two-stage fermentation of cassava pulp. In the first stage which lasted for the first 48 hours, a yellow-pigmented bacterium, *Corynebacterium manihot*, proliferated. This organism eventually broke down starch to organic acids including lactic acid. The resulting drop in pH led to the spontaneous breakdown of the linamarin and the proliferation of

the fungus *Geotrichum candidum* which produced the flavoring aldehydes, ketones, and other compounds. In 1977, Okafor re-examined fermenting pulp and discovered some *Corynebacterium*. The bulk of the organisms were lactic acid bacteria, especially *Lactobacillus*, *Leuconostoc*, and yeasts. He suggested, the absence of lactic acid bacteria in the work of Collard and Levi was probably because they used nutrient agar, a medium lacking sugars in which lactic acid bacteria grow better. Furthermore, linamarin is fairly stable and the glucoside is probably broken down more by the indigenous linamarase of the enlarged roots, which is released when the roots are crushed than by a change of pH. Other studies have since confirmed the importance of lactic acid bacteria and yeasts in the fermentation of cassava during garri production.

The current thinking on the microbiological processes of cassava fermentation for garri production is that, when cassava roots are grated to produce the mash which is bagged and fried to produce garri, the indigenous linamarase present in the roots is released and makes contact with the cyanogenic glucosides in the roots. The glucosides, mostly linamarin and some lotaustralin (about 5% of the total glucosides), are then broken down into glucose and HCN (Fig. 21.2). The HCN release is characteristically evidenced by the pungent smell whenever cassava is being grated. As the amount of the linamarase is insufficient to hydrolyze all the cyanogenic glucosides or because the particles are not fine enough to ensure complete contact between the enzyme and the substrate, there is always residual glucoside which enters the garri as cyanide. Many of the organisms encountered in fermenting cassava mash are lactic acid bacteria and yeasts. *Lactobacillus*, *Leuconostoc*,

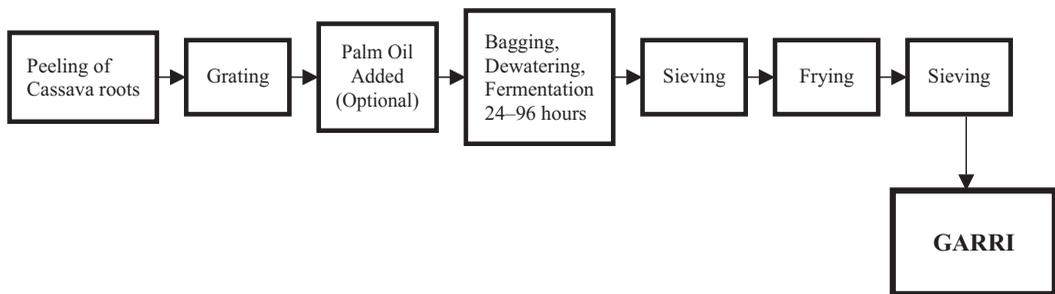


Fig. 21.1 Flow Chart of Garri Production

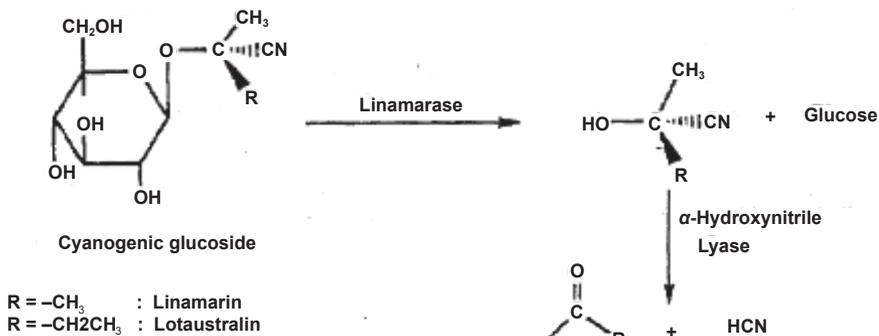


Fig. 21.2 Breakdown of Cassava Cyanogenic Glucosides

the yeast *Candida*, and various other yeasts are encountered in fermenting cassava mash, and many strains of these have been found to produce linamarase. By inoculating one of such linamarase producing organisms into fermenting cassava mash, the group was able to almost totally remove the residual cyanide in garri.

### 21.5.2 Foo-Foo, Chikwuangue, Lafun, Kokonte, Bikedì, and Cinguada

The preparation of these foods, although eaten in different parts of Africa, is similar. Foo-foo is eaten in parts of Eastern Nigeria, while Lafun is eaten in Western Nigeria. Chikwuangue is eaten in the Democratic Republic of Congo, and Bikedì in Congo (Brazzaville). Kokonte and Cinguada are eaten in Ghana and East Africa, respectively. In the preparation of these foods, cassava roots are cut into large pieces and immersed in still water in pots or in running stream water and allowed to ret for one to five days; for Foo-foo or Chikwuangue fermentation retting takes between three and six days so that the starch can be extracted from the retted roots by macerating with the hands. For Kokonte and Cinguada, retting is only partial and hardly lasts more than two days; the material is then sun-dried and pounded into flour known as Lafun in Nigeria. For Foo-foo and Bikedì, the retted roots are macerated to extract the starch. The retting is a result of the breakdown of the pectin in the cell walls of the cassava root brought about by pectinases produced by bacteria of the genus *Bacillus* spp., while the lactic acid bacteria are responsible for the flavor of these foods.

## 21.6 FERMENTED VEGETABLES

Like the fermentation of other foods, vegetables have been preserved by fermentation from time immemorial by lactic bacteria activity. A wide range of vegetables and fruits including cabbages, olives, cucumber, onions, peppers, green tomatoes, carrots, okra, celery, and cauliflower have been preserved. Only sauerkraut and cucumbers will be discussed, as the same general principles apply to the fermentation of all vegetables and fruits. In general, they are fermented in brine, which eliminates other organisms and encourages the lactic acid bacteria.

### 21.6.1 Sauerkraut

Sauerkraut is produced by the fermentation of cabbages, *Brassica oleracea*, and has been known for a long time. Specially selected varieties which are mild-flavored are used. The cabbage is sliced into thin pieces known as slaw and preserved in salt water or brine containing about 2.5% salt. The slaw must be completely immersed in brine to prevent it from darkening. Kraut fermentation is initiated by *Leuconostoc mesenteroides*, a heterofermentative lactic acid bacterium (i.e. it produces lactic acid as well as acetic acid and CO<sub>2</sub>). It grows over a wide range of pH and temperature conditions. CO<sub>2</sub> creates anaerobic conditions and eliminates organisms which might produce enzymes which can cause the softening of the slaw. CO<sub>2</sub> also encourages the growth of other lactic acid bacteria. Gram-negative coliforms and pseudomonads soon disappear and give way to a rapid proliferation of other lactic acid bacteria, including the heterofermentative *L. brevis* and the homofermentative *L. plantarum*; sometimes, *Pediococcus cerevisiae* also occurs. Compounds which contribute to the flavor of sauerkraut begin to appear with the increasing growth of the lactics. These compounds include lactic and acetic acids, ethanol, and volatile

compounds such as diacetyl, acetaldehyde, isoamyl alcohol, n-hexanol, ethyl lactate, ethyl butyrate, and isoamyl acetate. Besides the 2.5% salt, it is important that a temperature of about 15°C is used. Higher temperatures cause a deterioration of the kraut.

### 21.6.2 Cucumbers (pickling)

Cucumber (*Cucumis sativus*) is eaten raw as well as after fermentation or pickling. Cucumbers for pickling are best harvested before they are mature. Mature cucumbers are too large, ripen easily, and are full of mature seeds. Cucumbers may be pickled by *dry salting* or by *brine salting*.

*Dry salting* is also generally used for cauliflower, peppers, okra, and carrots. It consists of adding 10 to 12% salt to the water before the cucumbers are placed in the tank. This prevents bruising or other damage to the vegetables.

*Brine salting* is more widely used. A lower amount of salt is added, between 5 and 8% salt being used. Higher amounts were previously used to prevent spoilage. It has been found that at this salt concentration, the succession of bacteria is similar to that in kraut. However, *Leuconostoc* spp. never dominate. During the primary fermentation lasting two or three days, most of the unwanted bacteria disappear allowing the lactic acid bacteria and yeasts to proliferate. In the final stages, after 10 to 14 days, *Lactobacillus plantarum* and *L. brevis*, followed by *Pediococcus*, are the major organisms.

## 21.7 FERMENTATIONS FOR THE PRODUCTION OF THE STIMULANT BEVERAGES: COFFEE AND COCOA

Coffee and cocoa are produced mainly in the rainforest zones of the Indian sub-continent, in South America, and West Africa, respectively. The beverages are stimulating on account of their content of either one or the other of two chemically similar stimulants, caffeine and theobromine. Cocoa and coffee are produced by some form of fermentation. The production of tea is mainly a chemical reaction. Nonetheless, microbial activity occurs in dark tea production.

### 21.7.1 Coffee Fermentation

Coffee (*Coffea arabica* and *C. robusta*) originated from Ethiopia. The main producers of coffee today are Colombia, Brazil, Angola, and Indonesia. It takes from three to five years of growth before the coffee tree is ready to bear fruit. The fruits grow slowly, taking from 8 to 12 months to reach maturity (when they are bright red in color). Each coffee fruit or berry contains two seeds covered by pulp.

There are two methods of processing coffee: the wet method and the dry method. In the wet method, the fruits are passed through a pulping machine which removes the pulp leaving mucilage which is removed by pectinolytic enzymes of microbiological origin. The coffee may also be dried by exposure to sunlight. When dry, the fruits are de-hulled to remove the dry outer portions. The studies carried on the microbiology of the coffee fermentation showed that many of the organisms were pectinolytic organisms, including spore-forming and non-spore forming ones. Other studies found lactic acid bacteria (*Leuconostoc* spp. and *Lactobacillus* spp.) and yeasts (*Saccharomyces* spp. and *Schizosaccharomyces* spp.), and it would appear that these developed from the release of the pectinolytic organisms.

### 21.7.2 Cocoa Fermentation

Cocoa (*Theobroma cacao*) is a native of South America, but today, the major producers are Ghana, Nigeria, Ivory Coast, Cameroon, and Malaysia. The tree produces pods which contain from 40 to 60 seeds. The pods are opened, and the seeds heaped and allowed to ferment, often in baskets which permit liquid to drain out. During fermentation, the mucilaginous outer covering of the seeds is broken down by microbial action, while the seeds themselves change from pinkish to black. It is believed that the lactic acid bacteria play important roles in the development of the aroma of cocoa.

## 21.8 FERMENTED FOODS DERIVED FROM LEGUMES AND OIL SEEDS

Legumes are members of the *Leguminosae*. Their seeds are rich in proteins, and they are fermented in various parts of the world for flavoring condiments or as major meals.

### 21.8.1 Fermented Foods from Soybeans

Fermented soybean products have been made and consumed in large amounts in Asia for thousands of years. The different types of fermented products of soybeans are usually mainly consumed in the countries of their origin: soy sauce and Natto in China and Japan, Miso in China, Japan, and the Philippines, fermented soy sauce in Japan, Sufu in China and Taiwan, and Tempeh in Indonesia. The use of some of them has spread to other parts of the world including the US and parts of Europe.

The soybean plant itself, *Glycine max*, is a legume believed to have originated from Eastern Asia. It is now grown around the world.

The soybean seed has an unusual composition. It is rich in protein and oil and comparatively low in carbohydrates. Its average composition is 42% protein, 17% carbohydrate, 18% oil, and 4.6% ash. Sucrose, raffinose, stachyose, and pentosans are among the carbohydrates. The beans are rich in phospholipids, nucleic acids, and vitamins especially thiamin, riboflavin, and niacin. The amino acid composition of its protein is also unusual among plant proteins in that it contains high amounts of methionine which is more characteristic of animal than plant proteins.

Soybean is a very nutritious food. However, it has shortcomings which are ameliorated by fermentation. Soybeans contain compounds which make the legume unattractive until they are removed by the various stages involved in their processing by fermentation. First, they contain carbohydrates, which are not absorbed until they reach the colon, where the gases produced when they are broken down by microorganisms give rise to flatulence. These carbohydrates include the oligosaccharides raffinose and stachyose and the polysaccharide arabinogalactan. Second, soybeans have a bitter and 'beany' taste when crushed. This is because the lipoxigenase enzyme contributing to this taste and the substrate (oil) are held in separate compartments in the tissues of the seeds until the latter are broken or crushed.

Third, soybeans contain anti-nutritional factors such as trypsin inhibitor, hemagglutinins, and saponins. Finally even after cooking, about 1/3 of the protein of soy beans cannot be digested.

The soaking of the soybean preceding cooking leaches out a large proportion of the flatulence producing carbohydrates. The 'beany' flavor is due to the presence of several

carbonyl compounds such as hexanol and pentanol. These are removed by the action of microorganisms. Fermentation also reduces the carbohydrates of rice and proteins of the bean to lower molecular weights, hence rendering them more digestible. Finally, the anti-nutritional factors are destroyed by boiling. In addition to all this, fermentation by *R. oligosporus* produces an anti-oxidative compound (4<sup>l</sup>, 6<sup>l</sup>, 7 trihydroxy-bisoflavane) which is absent from raw soybean, and which helps preserve the fermented foods.

### 21.8.1.1 Soy sauce

Soy sauce known as shoyu in Japan is a salty, pleasantly tasting liquid with a distinct aroma produced by fermenting soybeans, wheat, and salt with a mixture of molds, yeasts, and bacteria. Koikuchi-shoyu is the most produced, forming 85% of the total produced. Koikuchi-shoyu is deep red-brown in color and is an all-purpose seasoning, with a strong aroma and myriad flavor.

*Soy sauce manufacture:* The manufacture of Koikuchi-shoyu can be divided into four sections: (i) the preparation of the ingredients; (ii) koji preparation; (iii) brine fermentation; and (iv) refining process.

*Preparation of the ingredients:* Whole wheat is roasted and then coarsely ground. Roasting adds color and flavor to the resulting sauce and kills surface organisms as well as facilitates enzymatic hydrolysis of the grain. Soybeans, usually defatted, are cooked under high pressure and temperature for a short time after a previous soaking in water.

*Koji preparation:* Whole wheat and soy prepared as described above are used for the preparation of koji. A koji starter, or seed mold or inoculum, is first prepared from the spores of several different strains of *Aspergillus oryzae* or *A. soyae* by inoculating the spores of the fungi on to a mixture of boiled rice and wood ash or mineral salts and spreading the mixture thinly at 30°C for up to five days. The koji starter (also known as *tane koji*) is used to inoculate equal amounts of the wheat and soy prepared as above. The mixture is put into large vats and aerated by forced aeration. The important requirements of koji are high protease and amylase activities. As these are dependent on temperature and humidity, the latter are strictly controlled. After two to three days, koji is harvested as a greenish-yellow material due to the spores of *Aspergillus*.

*Brine Fermentation:* Koji is introduced into deep fermentation tanks to which an equal volume of salt solution 20–23% is added. The resulting mixture, known as moromi is allowed to ferment for 6–8 months. It is frequently mixed to distribute the material and to eliminate undesirable anaerobic organisms.

During the period, koji enzymes hydrolyze proteins to amino acids and low molecular weight peptides. Much of the starch is converted to simple sugars which are then fermented to lactic acid, alcohol, and CO<sub>2</sub>. The pH drops from around 6.5–7.0 to 4.7–4.8. The effective salt concentration is about 18% (because of the dilution with added koji); it is never allowed to fall below 16%, otherwise putrefactive organisms might develop.

There are three stages in the fermentation of moromi, which is brought about by osmophilic strains of microorganisms after the release of simpler substances by the fungi of the koji. In the first stage, *Pediococcus halophilus* produces lactic acid causing a drop of the pH. In the second stage, *Saccharomyces rouxii* develops and produces alcohol. In the last stage, *Torulopsis* yeasts develop. These produce phenolic compounds which are important components of koichuki-shoyu flavor. The organisms are selected by the conditions of

the fermentation, but pure cultures are used more and more nowadays to ensure a more consistent flavor.

*Refining:* The final state consists of pressing the fermented moromi to release the soy sauce. The raw soy sauce is heated to 70–80°C to pasteurize it, to develop color and flavor, and to inactivate the enzymes. After clarification by sedimentation, the sauce is bottled under aseptic conditions, sometimes with the addition of preservatives as well.

In China, 'tamari-shoyu' which forms less than 3% of Japanese sauce is the main type of shoyu. The two differ in that tamari has a higher proportion of soybeans (90% instead of 50%). Furthermore, tamari sauce is not pasteurized. Due to the low quantity of rice, little alcoholic fermentation occurs in tamari because of the paucity of sugars.

### 21.8.1.2 Miso

Miso, a fermented paste of soybean, wheat, and salt is the most important of the soy fermented products in Japan. Most miso in Japan has a consistency like peanut butter, the color varying from a creamy yellowish white to very dark brown. The darker the color in general, the stronger is the flavor. It is distinctively salty and has a pleasant aroma.

*Manufacture of Miso:* Miso production is basically similar to that of shoyu or soy sauce. There are however two basic differences in the production of the two foods. First, the koji or shoyu is made by using a mixture of soybeans and wheat. In koji-making for miso, only the carbohydrate material (rice or barley) is used. Soybeans are not used for making koji miso except in the case of soybean miso. Second, no pressing is done after miso fermentation, since the material is a paste. The absence of pressing affects the cost of miso. The organisms involved in the fermentation are the same, but *Streptococcus faecalis* is also included. After fermentation, the resulting koji is mixed with salt, cooked soybean, pure cultured yeasts, and lactic acid bacteria and then fermented for a second time. It is then aged and packaged as miso; sometimes, it may be freeze-dried before packaging.

### 21.8.1.3 Natto (Fermented whole soybean)

There are two types of natto: itohiki-natto and hamma-natto. Hama-natto is produced by the action of *Aspergillus*. It is produced only in limited quantities. Natto therefore usually refers to the second and more common type itohiki-natto. This second type is fermented by *Bacillus natto*. The shape of cooked whole soybean grains is kept, but the surface of each grain is covered with a viscous material consisting of glutamic acid polymers produced by *B. natto*.

Cooked soybean grains are inoculated with the *Bacillus* and put into a small tray, covered, and incubated at 40°C. After 14–18 hours, the packed tray cooled to 2–7°C and then shipped to the market. Natto is a cheap and nutritious food.

### 21.8.1.4 Tempeh

Tempeh is a popular Indonesian food made by fermenting soybean with strains of *Rhizopus*. Especially in the Indonesian Island of Java, tempeh is a key protein source and 30–120 g is consumed daily per person. It therefore replaces meat in the grain-centered local meal.

In traditional tempeh preparation, air-dried soybeans are soaked in water and the seed coats are removed. The de-hulled beans are boiled in water, drained, cooled, and

inoculated with one of the traditional mold inocula. The beans are then packed in small parcels and incubated at room temperature of about 25°C for approximately 40 hours. Fermentation is regarded as complete when the beans have become bound tightly by the mold mycelium into compact white cakes, which are usually consumed within a day or two. After fermentation, it can be deep-fried for 3–4 minutes or boiled for 10 minutes.

Although several species of *Rhizopus* may be used, *Rhizopus oligosporus* Saito has been shown to be the species producing tempeh. The fungus is strongly proteolytic but has only weak amylase activity, desirable qualities since soybean is high in proteins, but relatively low in carbohydrate content. The proteolytic enzyme of *Rhizopus oligosporus* is not inhibited by inhibitory factors in soy bean.

### 21.8.2 Fermented Foods from Beans: Idli

Idli is a popular fermented breakfast and hospital food in South India. It is prepared from rice grains and the seeds of the leguminous mung grain, *Phaeseolus mungo*, or from black beans, *Vigna mungo*, which are also known as dahl. When the material contains Bengal grain, *Circer orientium*, the product is known as khaman. It has a spongy texture and a pleasant sour taste due to the lactic acid in the food. It is often embellished with flavoring ingredients such as cashew nuts, pepper, and ginger.

#### *Production of Idli*

The seeds of the dahl (black gram) are soaked in water for 1–3 hours to soften them and to facilitate decortication, after which the seeds are mixed and pounded with rice in a proportion of three parts of the beans and one of rice. The mixture is allowed to ferment overnight (20–22 hours). In the traditional system, the fermentation is spontaneous and the mixture is leavened up to approximately 2 or 3 times. The organisms involved in the acidification have been identified as *Streptococcus faecalis* and *Pediococcus* spp. The leavening is brought about by *Leuconostoc mesenteroides*, although the yeasts *Torulopsis candida* and *Trichosporon pulluloma* have also been found in traditional Idli. Idli is highly nutritious, being rich in nicotinic acid, thiamine, riboflavin, and methionine.

### 21.8.3 Fermented Foods from Protein-rich Oil-seeds

Stew condiments made from oil-rich seeds are eaten in parts of West Africa, while condiments from fish and fish products appear to be common in parts of Asia.

Stew condiments eaten in parts of Nigeria include *dawadawa*, which is produced from the seeds of *Parkia biglobos* and *Okpeyi* made from the seeds of *Prosopis africana*. Another major soup condiment is *ogili* made from the seeds of castor-oil seeds (*Ricinus communis*) or egusi (*Citrullus lanatus* subspecies *colocynthoides*). Egusi, pumpkins, and squashes are members of the family *Cucurbitaceae* or cucurbits, and their seeds contain about 50% oil and 35% protein after de-hulling.

A fermented delicacy and meat substitute, *ugba* or *ukpaka*, is made from the seeds of the African locust bean, *Pentaclethra macrophylla* Benth. *Bacillus* spp. have been implicated in the fermentation of the various oilseeds discussed above.

### 21.8.4 Food Condiments Made from Fish

**Fish sauce** is eaten in many parts of Asia including Japan, Thailand, Vietnam, the Philippines, Indonesia, Malaysia, and some parts of Northern Europe, including France.

The fish is fermented in a solution of salt. Sometimes, the fish is fermented whole, or sometimes, only the viscera are fermented. Sometimes, carbohydrate sources such as malted rice may be added, as in Japan.

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Define fermented foods and list factors that influence nature of fermented foods.
2. List the advantages of fermented foods.
3. Describe the ideal properties of yeasts used in modern baking.
4. Discuss the role of the ingredients calcium sulfate, ammonium chloride, sodium chloride, potassium bromate, and starch in the industrial production of bread.
5. Discuss the timing of addition of salt and its role in the manufacture of bread.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Amund, O.O., Ogunsina, O.A. 1987. Extracellular Amylase Production by Cassava-fermenting Bacteria. *Journal of Industrial Microbiology*. 2, 123–127.
- Bamforth, C.W. 2005. *Food, Fermentation and Microorganisms*. Blackwell Oxford, UK.
- Banigo, E.O.I., de Man, J.M., Duitschaever, C.L. 1974. Utilization of High-lysine Corn for the Manufacture of Ogi, using a New Improved Processing System. *Cereal Chemistry*. 51, 559–573.
- Bankole, M.O., Okagbue, R.N. 1992. Properties of “Nono”, a Nigerian Fermented Milk Food. *Ecology of Food and Nutrition*. 27, 145–149.
- Batock, M., Azam-Ali, S. 1998. Fermented Frutis and Vegetables. A Global Perspective. FAO. *Agricultural Services Bulletin No. 134*. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome, Italy.
- Enujiugha, V.N., Akanbi, C.T. 2005. Compositional Changes in African Oil Bean (*Pentaclethra macrophylla* Benth) *Pakistan Journal of Nutrition*. 4, 27–31.
- Ikediobi, C.O., Onyike, E. 1982. The Use of Linamarase in Garri Production. *Process Biochemistry*. 17, 2–5.
- Kobawila, S.C., Louembe, D., Keleke, S., Hounhouigan, J., Gamba, C. 2005. Reduction of the Cyanide Content during Fermentation of Cassava Roots and Leaves to produce Bikedid and Ntoba Mbodi, two Food Products from Congo. *African Journal of Biotechnology*. 4, 689–696.
- Lei, V., Amoa-Awua, W.K.A., Brimer, L. 1999. Degradation of Cyanogenic Glycosides by *Lactobacillus plantarum* Strains from Spontaneous Cassava Fermentation and other Microorganisms. *International Journal of Food Microbiology*. 53, 169–184.
- Nwachukwu, S.U., Edwards, A.W.A. 1987. Microorganisms Associated with Cassava Fermentation for Lafun Production. *Journal of Food and Agriculture*. 1, 39–42.
- Okafor, N. 1977. Microorganisms Associated Cassava Fermentation for Garri Production. *J. Appl. Bact.* 42, 279–284.
- Okafor, N., Oyolu, C., Ijioma, B.C. 1984. Microbiology and Biochemistry of Foo-foo Production. *J. Appl. Microbiol.* 55, 1–13.
- Okafor, N., Ejiofor, M.A.N. 1985a. Microbial Breakdown of Linamarin in Fermenting Cassava Pulp. *MIRCEN Journal of Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology*. 2, 269–276.
- Okafor, N., Ejiofor, M.A.N. 1985b. The Linamarase of *Leuconostoc mesenteroides*: Production, Isolation and Some Properties. *J. Sci. Food Agric.* 36, 668–678.
- Okafor, N., Uzuegbu, J. 1987. Studies on the Contributions of Microorganisms on the Organo-leptic Properties of Garri, a Fermented Food Derived from Cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz). *J. Food Agric.* 2, 99–105.
- Okafor, N., Ejiofor, A.O. 1990. Rapid Detoxification of Cassava Mash Fermenting for Garri Production following Inoculation with a Yeast Simultaneously producing Linamarase and Amylase Process. *Biochemistry International*. 25, 82–86.

- Okafor, N., Uzuegbu, J.O. 1993. Studies on the Contributions of Factors other than micro-organisms to the Flavour of Garri. *Journal of Agricultural Technology*. 1, 36–38.
- Okafor, N., Umeh, C., Ibenegbu, C. 1998a. Carriers for Starter Cultures for the Production of Garri, A Fermented Food Derived from Cassava. *World Journal of Microbiology and Biotechnology*. 15, 231–234.
- Okafor, N., Umeh, C., Ibenegbu, C. 1998b. Amelioration of Garri, a Fermented Food Derived from Cassava, *Manihot Esculenta* Crantz, by the Inoculation into Cassava Mash, of Micro-organisms Simultaneously Producing Amylase, Linamarase, and Lysine. *World Journal of Microbiology and Biotechnology*. 14, 835–838.
- Okafor, N., Umeh, C., Ibenegbu, C., Obizoba, I.C., Nnam, P. 1998c. Improvement in Garri Quality by the Inoculation of Micro-organisms into Cassava Mash. *International Journal of Food Microbiology*. 40, 43–49.
- Okafor, N., Okeke, B., Umeh, C., Ibenegbu, C. 1999. Secretion of Lysine by Lactic Bacteria and Yeasts Associated with Garri Production Using a Synthetic Gene. *Letters in Applied Microbiology*. 28, 419–422.
- Omofuvbe, B.O. Abiose, S.H., Shonukan, O.O. 2002. Fermentation of Soybean (*Glycine max*) for Soy-daddawa Production by Starter Cultures of *Bacillus*. *Food Microbiology*. 19, 187–190.
- Oteng-Gyang, K., Anuonye, C.C. 1987. Biochemical Studies on the Fermentation of *Cassava* (*Manihot utilissima* Pohl). *Acta Biotechnologica*. 7, 289–292.
- Oyewole, O.B., Odunfas, S.A. 1990. Characterization and Distribution of Lactic Acid Bacteria in *Cassava Fermentation* during Fufu Production. *Journal of Applied Bacteriology*. 68, 145–152.
- Oyewole, O.B. 2001. Characteristics and Significance of Yeasts' Involvement in *Cassava Fermentation* for 'Fufu' Production. *International Journal of Food Microbiology*. 65, 213–218.
- Popoola, T.O.S., Akueshi, C.O. 1986. Nutritional Value of Dawadawa, a Local Spice made from Soybean (*Glycine max*). *MIRCEN Journal*. 2, 405–409.
- Sanni, A.I., Onilude, A.A., Fadahunsi, S.T., Ogunbanwo, S.T., Afolabi, R.O. 2002. Selection of Starter Cultures for the Production of ugba, a Fermented Soup Condiment. *European Food Research and Technology*. 215, 176–180.
- Tamime, A.Y., Robinson, R.K. 1999. *Yoghurt Science and Technology*. CRC Press.
- Wood, B.J.R. (ed.) 1985. *Microbiology of Fermented Foods*, Vol. 1 Elsevier Applied Science Publishers. London and New York.
- Wood, B.J.R. (ed.) 1985. *Microbiology of Fermented Foods*, Vol. 2 Elsevier Applied Science. Publishers. London and New York.



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

**Section F**

Alcohol-Based Fermentation  
Industries



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

---

## Production of Beer

### Raw Materials and Brewing Processes

---

#### **22.1 BARLEY BEERS**

The word beer derives from the Latin word *bibere* meaning to drink. The process of producing beer is known as brewing. Beer brewing from barley was practiced by the ancient Egyptians as far back as 4,000 years ago, but investigations suggest Egyptians learnt the art from the peoples of the Tigris and Euphrates where man's civilization is said to have originated. However, the use of hops is much more recent and can be traced back to a few hundred years ago.

##### **22.1.1 Types of Barley Beers**

Barley beers can be divided into two broad groups: top-fermented beers and bottom-fermented beers. This distinction is based on whether the yeast remains at the top of brew (top-fermented beers) or sediments to the bottom (bottom-fermented beers) at the end of the fermentation.

###### **22.1.1.1 Bottom-fermented beers**

Bottom-fermented beers are also known as lager beers because they were stored or 'lagered' (from German *lagern* = to store) in cold cellars after fermentation for clarification and maturation. Yeasts used in bottom-fermented beers are strains of *Saccharomyces uvarum* (formerly *Saccharomyces carlsbergiensis*). Several types of lager beers are known. They are named after the cities they originated from: Pilsener from Pilsen (former Czechoslovakia), Dortmunder from Dortmund, and Münchner from Munich (Germany). Most of the lager beers in the world (70%–80%) are of the Pilsener type.

Bottom-fermentation was a closely guarded secret in the Bavarian region of Germany, of which Munich is the capital. Legend has it that in 1842 a monk passed the technique and the yeasts to Pilsen. Three years later, they found their way to Copenhagen, Denmark. Shortly after, German immigrants introduced bottom-brewing to the US.

- (i) *Pilsener beer*: This is a pale beer with a medium hop taste. Its alcohol content is 3.0–3.8% by weight. Classically, it is lagered for two to three months, but modern breweries have substantially reduced the lagering time which has been cut down to about two weeks in many breweries around the world. The water for Pilsener brew is soft, containing comparatively little calcium and magnesium ions.
- (ii) *Dortmunder beer*: This is a pale beer, but it contains less hops (and therefore is less bitter) than Pilsener. However, it has more body (i.e. it is thicker) and aroma. The alcohol content is also 3.0–3.8% and is classically lagered for slightly longer: 3–4 months. The brewing water is hard, containing large amounts of carbonates, sulfates, and chlorides.
- (iii) *Münchener*: This is a dark, aromatic, and full-bodied beer with a slightly sweet taste, because it is only slightly hopped. The alcohol content could be quite high varying from 2 to 5% alcohol. The brewing water is high in carbonates but low in other ions.
- (iv) *Weiss (Weizen)*: Weiss beer of Germany made from wheat and *steam* beer of California, USA, are both bottom fermented beers which are characterized by being highly effervescent.

### 22.1.1.2 Top-fermented beers

Top-fermented beers are brewed with strains of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*.

- (i) *Ale*: Whereas lager beer can be said to be of German or continental European origin, ale (Pale ale) is England's own beer. Unless the term 'lager' was specifically used, beer always used to refer to ale in England. Lager is now becoming known in the UK, especially since the UK joined European Economic Community. English ale is a pale, highly hopped beer with an alcohol content of 4.0 to 5.0% (w/v), sometimes as high as 8.0%. Hops are added during and sometimes after fermentation. It is therefore very bitter and has a sharp acid taste and an aroma of wine due to its high ester content. *Mild ale* is sweeter because it is less strongly hopped than the standard Pale ale. In Burton-on-Trent, where the best ales are made, the water is rich in gypsum (calcium sulfate). When ale is produced in places with less suitable water, such water may be 'burtonized' by the addition of calcium sulfate.
- (ii) *Porter*: This is a dark-brown, heavy bodied, strongly foaming beer produced from dark malts. It contains less hops than ale and consequently is sweeter. It has an alcohol content of about 5.0%.
- (iii) *Stout*: Stout is a very dark heavily bodied and highly hopped beer with a strong malt aroma. It is produced from dark or caramelized malt; sometimes caramel may be added. It has a comparatively high alcohol content, 5.0–6.5% (w/v) and is classically stored for up to six months, fermentation sometimes proceeding in the bottle. Some stouts are sweet being less hopped than usual.

## 22.1.2 Raw Materials for Brewing

The raw materials used in brewing are: barley, malt, adjuncts, yeasts, hops, and water.

### 22.1.2.1 Barley malt

As a brewing cereal, barley has the following advantages. Its husks are thick, difficult to crush, and adhere to the kernel. This makes malting as well as filtration after mashing much easier than with other cereals such as wheat. The second advantage is that the thick husk is a protection against fungal attack during storage. Thirdly, the gelatinization temperature (i.e. the temperature at which the starch is converted into a water soluble gel) is 52–59°C, much lower than the optimum temperature of alpha-amylase (70°C) as well as of beta-amylase (65°C) of barley malt. The effect of this is that it is possible to bring the starch into solution and to hydrolyze it in one operation. Finally even before malting, the barley grain contains very high amounts of beta-amylase unlike wheat, rice, and sorghum (Alpha-amylase is produced only in the germinated seed).

Two distinct barley types are known: one with six rows of fertile kernel (*Hordeum vulgare*) and the other with two rows of fertile kernels (*Hordeum distichon*). These differ in many other properties and as a result, there are thousands of varieties. The six-row variety is used extensively in the United States, whereas the two-row variety is used in Europe as well as in parts of the US. The six-row varieties are richer in protein and enzyme content than the two-row varieties. This high enzymatic content is one of the reasons for the extensive use of adjuncts in breweries in the United States. Adjuncts dilute out the proteins, therefore increasing the carbohydrate/protein ratio. If an all-malt beer were brewed from malts as rich in protein as the six-row varieties, this protein would find its way into the beer and give rise to hazes.

### 22.1.2.2 Adjuncts

Adjuncts are starchy materials which were originally introduced because the six-row barley varieties grown in the United States produced a malt with a higher diastatic power (i.e. amylases) than was required to hydrolyze the starch in the malt. The term now includes materials other than those hydrolyzed by amylase. For example, the term now includes sugars (e.g. sucrose) added to increase the alcoholic content of the beer. Starchy adjuncts, which usually contain little protein, contribute after their hydrolysis to fermentable sugars which in turn increase the alcoholic content of the beverage.

Adjuncts thus help bring down the cost of brewing because they are much cheaper than malt. Starch sources such as sorghum, maize, rice, unmalted barley, cassava, and/or potatoes have been used depending on the price. Corn grits (defatted and ground), corn syrup, and rice are most widely used in the United States.

When corn is used as an adjunct, it is so milled as to remove as much as possible of the germ and the husk which contain most of the oil of maize which could form 7% of the maize grain. The oil may become rancid in the beer, thus adversely affecting the flavor of the beverage. The de-fatted ground maize is known as corn grits. Corn syrups produced by enzymatic or acid hydrolysis are also used in brewing. Since adjuncts contain little nitrogen, all the needs for the growth of the yeast must come from the malt. The malt/

adjunct ratio rarely exceeds 60/40. Soy bean powder (preferably defatted) may be added to brews to help nourish the yeast, because it is rich nitrogen and in B vitamins.

### 22.1.2.3 Hops

Hops are the dried cone-shaped female flower of hop-plant *Humulus lupulus* (varieties include: *H. lupuloides*, *H. neomexicanus*, *H. cordifolius*). It is a temperate climate crop and grows wild in northern parts of Europe, Asia, and North America.

Nowadays, hop extracts are becoming favored in place of the dried hops. The importance of hops in brewing lies in its resins which provide the precursors of the bitter principles in beer and the essential (volatile) oils which provide the hop aroma. Both, the resin and the essential oils are lodged in lupulin glands borne on the flower.

In the original Pilsener beer, the amount of hops added is about 4 g/liter, but smaller amounts varying 0.4–4.0 g/liter are used elsewhere. The addition of hops has several effects:

- (a) Originally, it was to replace the flat taste of unhopped beer with the characteristic bitterness and pleasant aroma of hops.
- (b) Hops have some anti-microbial effects, especially against beer sarcina (*Pediococcus damnosus*) and other beer spoiling bacteria.
- (c) Due to the colloidal nature of the bitter substances, they contribute to the body, colloidal stability, and foam head retention of beer.
- (d) The tannins in the hops help precipitate proteins during the boiling of the wort; if not removed, these proteins cause a haze (chill haze) in the beer at low temperature.

### 22.1.2.4 Water

The mineral and ionic content and the pH of the water have profound effects on the type of beer produced. Some ions are undesirable in brewing water: nitrates slow down fermentation while iron destroys the colloidal stability of the beer. In general, calcium ions lead to a better flavor than magnesium and sodium ions. The pH of the water and that of malt extract produced with it control the various enzyme systems in malt, the degree of extraction of soluble materials from the malt, the solution of tannins and other coloring components, isomerization rate of hop humulone, and the stability of the beer itself and its foam head. Calcium and bicarbonate ions are most important because of their effect on pH. Water is so important that the natural water available in great brewing centers of the world gave special character to beers peculiar to these centers. Water with a large calcium and bicarbonate ions content as is the case with Munich, Copenhagen, Dublin, and Burton-on-Trent are suited to the production of the darker, sweeter beers. Carbonates in particular tend to increase the pH, a condition which appears to enhance the extraction of dark colored components of the malt. Water low in minerals such as that of Pilsen (Table 22.1) is suitable for the production of a pale, light colored beer.

If the production is for pale beer without too heavy taste of hops, and the water is rich in carbonates, then it is treated in one of the following ways:

- (a) The water may be 'burtonized' by the addition of calcium sulfate (gypsum). Addition of gypsum neutralizes the alkalinity of the carbonates.

**Table 22.1** Mineral content of water in some cities with breweries

Place	Mineral content in ppm						
	Total Solids	Ca <sup>2+</sup>	Mg <sup>2+</sup>	SO <sub>4</sub> <sup>2-</sup>	NO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	Cl <sup>-</sup>	HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>
Milwaukee	148	34	11	20	0.8	6.6	
New York	28	6	1	8	0.5	0.5	11
St. Louis	201	22	12	77	4	10	65
Pilsen	63	9	3	3		5	37
Munich	270	71	19	18		2	283
Dublin	3	100	4	45		16	266
Copenhagen	480	114	16	62		60	347
Burton-on-Trent	1,206	268	62	638	31	36	287

- (b) An acid may be added: lactic acid, phosphoric, sulfuric, or hydrochloric. CO<sub>2</sub> is released, but there is an undesirable chance that the resulting salt may remain. The CO<sub>2</sub> released is removed by gas stripping.
- (c) The water may be decarbonated by boiling or by the addition of lime calcium hydroxide.
- (d) The water may be improved by ion exchange, which may remove all the ions, if desired.

One or more of the above methods may be used simultaneously.

### 22.1.2.5 Brewer's yeasts

In general, yeasts will produce alcohol from sugars under anaerobic conditions, but not all yeasts are necessarily suitable for brewing. Besides producing alcohol, brewing yeasts are able to produce a balanced proportion of esters, acids, higher alcohols, and ketones from wort sugars and proteins. These compounds contribute to the peculiar flavor of beer. A number of characteristics distinguish the two types of brewers' yeasts (i.e. the top and the bottom-fermenting yeasts).

- (a) *S. uvarum* (formerly *S. carlsbergensis*) usually occurs singly or in pairs. *S. cerevisiae* usually forms chains and occasionally cross-chains as well.
- (b) *S. cerevisiae* sporulates more readily than does *S. uvarum*.
- (c) *S. uvarum* is able to ferment the tri-saccharide, raffinose, made up of galactose, glucose, and fructose. *S. cerevisiae* is capable of fermenting only the fructose moiety; in other words, it lacks the enzyme system needed to ferment melibiose which is formed from galactose and glucose.
- (d) *S. cerevisiae* strains have a stronger respiratory system than *S. uvarum*, and this is reflected in the different cytochrome spectra of the two groups.
- (e) Bottom-fermenters are able to flocculate and sink to the bottom of the brew, a characteristic lacking in most strains of *S. cerevisiae*. Bottom fermenters are classified into

rapid-settling or slow-settling (powdery). Settling characteristics affect the rate of production, some secondary yeast metabolites, and hence beer quality.

Yeasts are reused after fermentation for a number of times which depend on the practice of the particular brewery. Mutation and contamination are two hazards in this practice.

### **22.1.3 Brewery Processes**

The processes involved in the conversion of barley malt to beer may be divided into the following:

1. Malting
2. Cleaning and milling of the malt
3. Mashing
4. Mash operation
5. Wort boiling treatment
6. Fermentation
7. Storage or lagering
8. Packaging

Of the above processes, malting is specialized and is not carried out in the brew house. Rather, breweries purchase their malt from specialized maltsters (or malt producers). The description to be given will in general relate to lager beers, and where the processes differ from those of ales, this will be pointed out.

#### **22.1.3.1 Malting**

The purpose of malting is to develop amylases and proteases in the grain. These enzymes are produced by the germinated barley to enable it to break down the carbohydrates and proteins in the grain to nourish the germinated seedling before its photosynthetic systems are developed enough to support the plant. However, as soon as the enzymes are formed and before the young seedling has had any appreciable impact on the nutrient reserve of the grain, the development of the seedling is halted by drying, but at temperatures which will not completely inactivate the enzymes in the grain. These enzymes are reactivated during mashing and used to hydrolyze starch and proteins and release nutrients for the nourishment of the yeasts.

Not all barley strains are suitable for brewing. During malting, barley grains are cleaned; broken barley grains as well as foreign seeds, sand, bits of metal, etc. are removed. The grains are then steeped in water at 10–15°C. The grain absorbs water and increases in volume ultimately by about 4%. Respiration of the embryo commences as soon as water is absorbed. Microorganisms grow in the steep water, and to allow grain deterioration, the steep water is changed approximately at 12-hourly intervals until the moisture content of the grain is about 45%. Steeping takes two to three days.

The grains are then drained of the moisture and may be transferred to a malting floor or a revolving drum to germinate. The heat generated by the sprouts further hastens germination. Sometimes, moist warm air is blown through beds of germinating seedlings about 30 cm deep. Water may also be sprinkled on them. The plant hormone gibberellic acid is sometimes added to the grains to shorten germination time. The grain itself synthesizes gibberellic acid which then triggers the synthesis of various hydrolytic enzymes by the

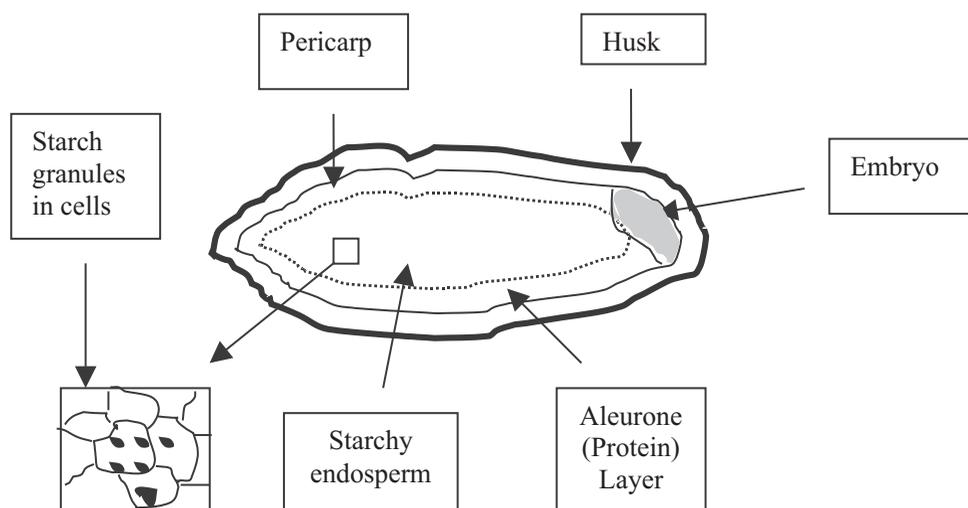


Fig. 22.1 Structure of the Barley Grain

aleurone layer situated on the periphery of the grain. The enzymes so formed diffuse into the center of the grain where the endosperm is located.

In the endosperm, the starch granules are harbored within cells. These cell walls are made up of hemicellulose, which is broken down by hemicellulases before amylases can attack the starch. Alpha-amylase is also synthesized by the grain. Beta-amylase is already present and is not synthesized but is bound to proteins and is released by proteolytic enzymes 'Modification' or production of enzymes is complete in four to five days of the growth of the seedling, the extent being tested roughly by the sweet taste developed in the grain and by the length of the young plumule. The various enzymes break down small quantities of their respective substrates, but the major breakdown takes place during mashing.

Further reactions in the grain are halted by kilning which consists of heating the 'green' malt in an oven starting with a relatively mild temperature, until the moisture content is reduced from about 40% to about 6%. Subsequently, the temperature of heating depends on the type of beer to be produced. For beer of the Pilsener type, the malt is pale and has no pronounced aroma, and kilning takes 20–24 hours at 80–90°C. For the darker Munich beers with a strong aroma, drying takes up to 48 hours at 100–110°C. For the caramelized malts used for stout and other very dark beers, kilning temperature can be as high as 120°C. Such malts contain little enzymatic activity.

At the end of malting, some changes occur in the gross composition of the barley grain. The rootlets are removed and used as cattle feed.

Weight loss known as malting loss occurs at each stage of malting and the accumulated loss may be high; up to 15%. The barley malt with its rich enzyme content resembles swollen grains of unthreshed rice and can be stored for considerable periods before being used.

### 22.1.3.2 Cleaning and milling of malt

The barley is transported to the top of the brewing tower. Subsequent processes in the brewery process occur at progressively lower floors. Lagering and bottling are usually

done on the ground level floor. In this way, gravity is used to transport the materials and the expense of pumping is eliminated. At the top of the brewing tower, the barley malt is cleaned of dirt and passed over a magnet to remove pieces of metals, particularly iron, and then milled to expose particles of the malt to the hydrolytic effects of malt enzymes during the mashing process.

The finer the particles, therefore the greater the extract from the malt will be. However, very fine particles hinder filtration and prolong it unduly. The brewer has therefore to find a compromise particle size which will give maximum extraction, yet permit reasonably rapid filtration rate. Regardless of the particle size, the crushing is performed preserving the husks which contribute to filtration while reducing the endosperm to fine grits.

### 22.1.3.3 Mashing

Mashing determines the nature of the wort, hence the nature of the nutrients available to the yeasts and therefore the type of beer produced. The purpose of mashing is to extract the soluble portion of the malt as much as possible and to enzymatically hydrolyze insoluble portions of the malt and adjuncts. In essence, mashing consists of mixing the ground malt and adjuncts at temperatures optimal for amylases and proteases derived from the malt. The aqueous solution resulting from mashing is known as wort.

The two largest components in terms of dry weight of the grain are starch (55%) and protein (10–12%). The controlled breakdown of these two components has tremendous influence on beer character.

#### 22.1.3.3.1 Starch breakdown during mashing

Starch forms about 55% of the dry weight of barley malt. Of the malt starch, 20–25% is made up of amylose. The key enzymes in the breakdown of malt starch are the alpha- and beta-amylases. The temperature of optimal activity and destruction of these enzymes as well as their optimum pH are given in [Table 22.2](#).

#### 22.1.3.3.2 Protein breakdown during mashing

The breakdown of the malt proteins, albumins, globulins, hordeins, and gluteins starts during malting and continues during mashing by proteases which breakdown proteins through peptones to polypeptides and polypeptidases which breakdown the polypeptides to amino acids. Protein breakdown has no pronounced optimum temperature, but during mashing, it occurs evenly up to 60°C, beyond which temperature proteases and polypeptidases are greatly retarded. Proteolytic activity in wort is however dependent on pH, and for this reason, wort pH is maintained at 5.2–5.5 with lactic acid, mineral acids, or calcium sulfate.

**Table 22.2** Temperature optima of alpha- and beta-amylases

<i>Enzyme</i>	<i>Optimum temperature</i>	<i>Temperature of destruction</i>	<i>Optimal pH</i>
Alpha-amylase	70°C	80°C	5.8
Beta-amylase	60–65°C	75°C	5.4

### 22.1.3.3.3 General environmental conditions affecting mashing

The progress of mashing is affected by a combination of temperature, pH, time, and concentration of the wort. When the temperature is held at 60–65°C for long periods, a wort rich in maltose occurs because beta amylase activity is at its optimum, and this enzyme yields mainly maltose. On the other hand, when a higher temperature around 70°C is employed, dextrins predominate. Dextrins contribute to the body of the beer but are not utilized by yeast. Mash exposed to too high a temperature will therefore be low in alcohol due to insufficient maltose production.

The optimum pH for beta-amylase activity is about the same as that of proteolysis and as can be seen in [Table 22.2](#).

The concentration of the mash is important: the thinner the mash, the higher the extract (i.e. the materials dissolved from the malt) and the maltose content.

### 22.1.3.3.4 Mashing methods

There are three major mashing methods:

- (a) Decoction methods, where part of the mash is transferred from the mash tun to the mash kettle where it is boiled.
- (b) Infusion methods, where the mash is never boiled, but the temperature is gradually raised.
- (c) The double mash method in which the starchy adjuncts are boiled and added to the malt.

(i) **Decoction methods:** In these methods, the mash is mixed at an initial temperature of 35–37°C, and the temperature is raised in steps to about 75°C. About one-third of the initial mash is withdrawn, transferred to the mash kettle, heated slowly to boil, and returned to the mash tun, the temperature of the mash increasing in the process. The enzymes in the heated portion become destroyed, but the starch grains are cooked, gelatinized, and exposed. Another portion may be removed, boiled, and returned. This way, the process may be a one, two or three-mash process. In a three-mash process ([Fig. 22.2](#)), the initial temperature of 35–40°C favors proteolysis; the mash is held for about 30 minutes at 50°C for full proteolysis, for about one hour at 60–65°C for saccharification and production of maltose, and at 70–75°C for two or three hours for dextrin production. The three-mash method is the oldest and best known, and it originated in Bavaria, Germany. The decoction method is used in continental Europe.

(ii) **Infusion method:** The infusion method is the one used in Britain and is typically used to produce top-fermenting beers. It is carried out in a mash tun which resembles a lauter tub of lager beer, but it is deeper. The method involves grinding malt and a smaller amount of unmalted cereal which sometimes is precooked. The ground material, or grist, is mixed thoroughly with hot water (2:1 by weight) to produce a thick porridge-like mash and the temperature is carefully raised to about 65°C. It is then held at this temperature for a period varying from 30 minutes to several hours. On average, the holding period lasts for 1–2 hours. The enzyme acts principally on the starch and its degradation products in both the malted and unmalted cereal; only a little protein breakdown occurs. Further, hot water at 75–78°C is sprayed on the mash to obtain as much extract as possible and to halt the enzyme action. No part of the mash is boiled from mashing-in to mashing-off. Malt in

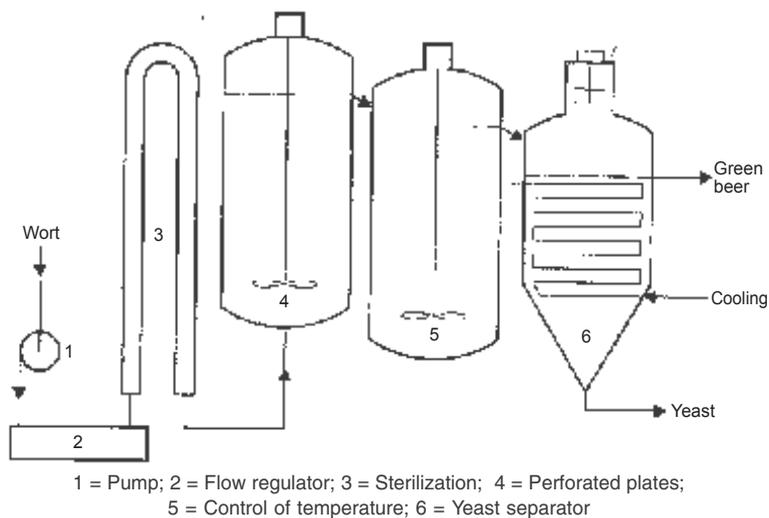


Fig. 22.2 The Open System of Continuous Brewing

which the proteins are already well degraded must be used since the high temperature of mashing rapidly destroys the proteolytic enzymes.

(iii) **The double-mash** (also called the cooker method): This method was developed in the US because of its use of adjuncts. It has features in common with the infusion and the decoction method. Indeed, some authors have described it as the downward infusion method while describing the infusion method mentioned above as an upward infusion method. In a typical US double mash method, ground malt is mashed with water at a temperature of 35°C. It is then held for an hour during the 'protein rest' for proteolysis. Adjuncts are cooked in an adjunct cooker for 60–90 minutes. Sometimes, about 10% malt is added during the cooking. Hot cooked adjunct is then added to the mash of ground malt to raise the temperature to 65–68°C for starch hydrolysis and maintained at this level for about half hour. The temperature is then increased to 75°C–80°C inducing the termination of the mashing process. During starch hydrolysis, completion of the process is tested with the iodine test.

Various combinations of the above methods may be used, depending on the type of beer, the type of malt, and the nature of the adjunct.

#### 22.1.3.3.5 Mash separation

At the end of mashing, husks and other insoluble materials are removed from the wort in two steps. First, the wort is separated from the solids. Second, the solids themselves are freed of any further extractable material by washing or sparging with hot water.

The conventional method of separating the husks and other solids from the mash is to strain the mash in a lauter (German for clarifying) tub which is a vessel with a perforated false-bottom about 10 mm above the real bottom on which the husks themselves form a bed through which the filtration takes place. In recent times, in large breweries, especially in the United States, the Nooter strain master has come into use. Like the Lauter tub, filtration is through a bed formed by the husks but instead of a false bottom, straining

is through a series of triangular perforated pipes placed at different heights of the bed. The strain master itself is rectangular with a conical bottom whereas the Lauter tub is cylindrical. Its advantage among others is that it can handle larger quantities than the Lauter tub. Besides the Lauter tub and the strainmaster, cloth filters located in plate filters and screening centrifuges are also used.

The sparging (or washing with hot water) of the mash solids is done with water at about 80°C and is continued, until the extraction is complete. The material which is left after sparging is known as spent grain and is used as animal feed. Sometimes, liquid is extracted from the spent grain by centrifuging, the extract being used to cook the adjuncts.

#### 22.1.3.3.6 Wort boiling

The wort is boiled for 1–1½ hours in a brew kettle (or copper) which used to be made of copper (hence the name). In many modern breweries, the kettle is now made of stainless steel. When corn syrup or sucrose is used as an adjunct, it is added at the beginning of the boiling. Hops are also added, some before and some at the end of the boiling. The purpose of boiling is as follows:

- (a) To *concentrate* the wort: 5–8% of the volume are lost by evaporation during the boiling.
- (b) To *sterilize* the wort to reduce its microbial load before its introduction into the fermenter.
- (c) To *inactivate* any enzymes so that no change occurs in the composition of the wort.
- (d) To *extract* soluble materials from the hops which not only aid in protein removal, but also in introducing the bitterness of hops.
- (e) To *precipitate* proteins which form large flocks because of heat denaturation and complexing with tannins extracted from the hops and malt husks. Unprecipitated proteins form hazes in the beer, but too little protein leads to poor foam head formation.
- (f) To *develop color* in the beer: some of the color in beer comes from malting, but the bulk develops during wort boiling. Color is formed by several chemical reactions including caramelization of sugars, oxidation of phenolic compounds, and reactions between amino acids and reducing sugars.
- (g) To *remove volatile compounds*: volatile compounds such as fatty acids which could lead to rancidity in the beer are removed.

During the boiling, agitation and circulation of the wort help increase the amount of precipitation and flock formation.

**Pre-fermentation treatment of wort:** The hot wort is not sent directly to the fermentation tanks. If dried hops are used, then they are usually removed in a hop strainer. During boiling, proteins and tannins are precipitated while the liquid is still warm. Some more precipitation takes place when the wort has cooled to about 50°C. The warm precipitate is known as “trub” and consists of 50–60% protein, 16–20% hop resins, 20–30% polyphenols, and about 3% ash. Trub is removed either with a centrifuge or the now more commonly used whirlpool separator. In this equipment, the wort which is fed into a flat centrifuge is pushed to the side of the equipment and finds its way out through an outlet on the periphery. The heavier particles (the trub) are thrown to the center and withdrawn through a centrally located outlet. The separated wort is cooled in a heat exchanger. When the

temperature has fallen to about 50°C, further sludge known as 'cold break' begins to settle, but it cannot be separated in a centrifuge because it is too fine. In many breweries, the wort is filtered at this stage with kieselguhr, a white diatomaceous earth.

The cooled wort is now ready for fermentation. It contains no enzymes, but it is a rich medium for fermentation. It has therefore to be protected from contamination. During the transfer to the fermenter, the wort is oxygenated at about 8 mg/liter of wort in order to provide the yeasts with the necessary oxygen for initial growth.

#### **22.1.3.4 Fermentation**

The cooled wort is pumped or allowed to flow by gravity into fermentation tanks and yeast which is usually collected from a previous brew is inoculated or 'pitched in' at a rate of 7–15 × 10<sup>6</sup> yeast cells/ml.

##### **22.1.3.4.1 Top fermentation**

This is used in the UK for the production of stout and ale using strains of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Wort is introduced by a fish tail spray, so that it becomes aerated to the tune of 5–10 mg/liter of oxygen for the initial growth of the yeasts. Yeast is pitched in at the rate of 0.15 to 0.30 kg/hl at a temperature of 15–16°C. The temperature is allowed to rise gradually to 20°C over a period of about three days. At this point, it is cooled to a constant temperature. The entire primary fermentation takes about six days. Yeasts float to the top during this time, they are scooped off and used for future pitching. In the last three days of fermentation, the yeasts turn to a hard leathery layer which is also skimmed off. Sometimes, the wort is transferred to another vessel in the so-called dropping system after the first 24–36 hours. The transfer helps aerate the system and also enables the discarding of the cold-break sediments. Aeration can also be achieved by circulation with paddles and by the means of pumps. Nowadays, cylindrical vertical closed tanks are replacing the traditional open tanks.

##### **22.1.3.4.2 Bottom fermentation**

Wort is inoculated to the tune of 7–15 × 10<sup>6</sup> yeast cells per ml of wort. The yeasts then increase four to five times in number over three to four days. Yeast is pitched in at 6–10°C and is allowed to rise to 10–12°C, which takes about three to four days. It is cooled to about 5°C at the end of the fermentation. CO<sub>2</sub> is released, and this creates a head called Krausen which begins to collapse after four to five days as the yeasts begin to settle. The total fermentation period may last from 7–12 days.

##### **22.1.3.4.3 Formation of some beer components**

During wort fermentation in both top and bottom fermentation, anaerobic conditions predominate; the initial oxygen is only required for cell growth. Fermentable sugars are converted to alcohol, CO<sub>2</sub> and heat which must be removed by cooling. Dextrins and maltotetraoses are not fermented. Higher alcohols (sometimes known as fusel oils) including propanol and isobutanol are generated from amino acids. Organic acids such as acetic, lactic, pyruvic, citric, and malic are also derived from carbohydrates via the tricarboxylic acid cycle.

#### 22.1.3.4.4 Monitoring following fermentation progress

The progress of fermentation is followed by wort specific gravity. During fermentation, the gravity of the wort gradually decreases because yeasts are using up the extract. However, alcohol is also being formed. As alcohol has a lower gravity than wort, the reading of the special hydrometer (known as a saccharometer) is even lower. The saccharometer reading does not therefore reflect the real extract, but an apparent extract which is always lower than the real extract because of the presence of alcohol. In the UK and some other countries, the extract is measured as the direct specific gravity as  $60^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $15.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ )  $\times 1000$ . Hence, with wort with sp. Gr. of 1.053, the extract would be  $1053^{\circ}$ . Outside the UK, extract is measured in  $^{\circ}\text{Balling}$  or  $^{\circ}\text{Plato}$ . Both systems measure the percentage of sucrose required to give solutions of the same specific gravity. The original tables were designed by Von Balling. Improvements and greater accuracy were made on Von Balling's tables first by Brix and later by Plato, but the figures were not changed drastically. For this reason,  $^{\circ}\text{Balling}$ ,  $^{\circ}\text{Brix}$ , and  $^{\circ}\text{Plato}$  are the same except for the fifth and sixth decimal places (Table 22.3).  $^{\circ}\text{Brix}$  is used in the sugar industry, whereas Balling (United States) and  $^{\circ}\text{Plato}$  (continental Europe) are used in the brewing industry.

The apparent extract, real extract, and alcohol content are related to each other as well as to the original extract, i.e. the solids in the original worts, and may be read from tables. The degree of attenuation is the amount of extract fermented, measured as a percentage of the original or total extract, hence an apparent and a real degree of attenuation both exist.

**Table 22.3** Comparison between original gravity and percent extract

<i>Original gravity</i>	$^{\circ}\text{B}$	$^{\circ}\text{P}$
1.01968	4.925	5.00
1.02370	5.931	6.00
1.02774	6.920	7.00
1.03180	7.913	8.00
1.03591	8.917	9.00
1.04003	9.925	10.00
1.04419	10.921	11.00
1.04837	11.920	12.00
1.05260	12.928	13.00
1.05684	13.943	14.00

#### 22.1.3.5 Lagering (bottom-fermented beers) and treatment (top-fermented beers)

(a) **Lagering**: At the end of the primary fermentation above, the beer, known as 'green' beer, is harsh and bitter. It has a yeasty taste, probably due to higher alcohols and aldehydes. The green beer is stored in closed vats at a low temperature (around  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), for periods which used to be as long as six months in some cases to mature.

**Table 22.4** Some properties of lager beer

<i>Property</i>	<i>Pilsener</i>	<i>United States lager beer</i>	<i>Danish Pilsener</i>	<i>English ale</i>	<i>English stout</i>	<i>Munich Loewenbrau</i>	<i>Dortmund</i>
Original extract content °pc	12.1	11.5–12.0	10.6	15.0	21.1	13.3	13.6
Real extract content °pc	5.3	5.5	3.1	5.0	8.7	6.4	5.5
Alcoholic content, wt %	3.5	3.4–3.8	3.9	5.2	6.7	3.6	4.2
Protein content, wt %	0.28–0.35	0.3	0.6	0.6	0.5	0.8	
CO <sub>2</sub> content %		0.53	0.5	0.4	0.41		0.42
Color, EBC	10	2.7	5			40	8
Air in bottle, mL		1.5	2	8	10		6
pH		4.2–4.50	4				
Real degree of attenuation, %		60–75	69	66	59	48	60

During lagering, secondary fermentation occurs. Yeasts are sometimes added to induce this secondary fermentation, utilizing some sugars in the green beer. The secondary fermentation saturates the beer with CO<sub>2</sub>, indeed, the progress of secondary fermentation is followed by the rate of CO<sub>2</sub> escape from a safety valve. Sometimes, actively fermenting wort or Krausen may be added. At other times, CO<sub>2</sub> may be added artificially into the lagering beer. Materials which might undesirably affect flavor and which are present in green beer, e.g. diacetyl, hydrogen sulfide, mercaptans, and acetaldehyde are decreased by evaporation during secondary fermentation. An increase occurs in the desirable components of the beer such as esters. Any tannins, proteins, and hop resins still left are precipitated during the lagering period.

Lagering used to take up to nine months in some cases. The time is now considerably shorter, the turnover time from brewing, lagering, and consumption could be as short as three weeks. This reduction has been achieved by artificial carbonation and by the manipulation of the beer due to greater understanding of the lagering processes. Thus, in one method used to reduce lagering time, beer is stored at high temperature (14°C) to drive off volatile compounds, e.g. H<sub>2</sub>S, and acetaldehyde. The beer is then chilled at –2°C to remove chill haze materials, and thereafter it is carbonated. In this way, lagering could be reduced from 2 months to 10 days.

Lagering gives the beer its final desirable organoleptic qualities, but it is hazy due to protein-tannin complexes and yeast cells. The beer is filtered through kieselguhr or through membrane filters to remove these.

**(b) Beer treatment (for top-fermented beers):** Top-fermented beers do not undergo the extensive lagering of bottom-fermented beers. They are treated in casks or bottles in various ways. In some processes, the beer is transferred to casks at the end of fermentation with a

load of 0.2–4.00 million yeast cells/ml. It is 'primed' to improve its taste and appearance by the addition of a small amount of sugar mixed with caramel. The yeasts grow in the sugar and carbonate the beer. Hops are also sometimes added at this stage. It is stored for seven days or less at about 15°C. After 'priming', the beer is 'fined' by the addition of isinglass. Isinglass, a gelatinous material from the swim bladder of fish, precipitates yeast cells, tannins, and protein-tannin complexes. The beer is thereafter filtered or pasteurized and distributed.

### 22.1.3.6 Packaging

The beer is transferred to pressure tanks before being distributed to cans, bottles, and other containers. During the transfer, the beer is not allowed to come in contact with oxygen; it is also not allowed to lose CO<sub>2</sub> or to become contaminated with micro-organisms. To achieve these objectives, the beer is added to the tanks under a CO<sub>2</sub> atmosphere, bottled under a counter-pressure of CO<sub>2</sub>, and all the equipment is cleaned and disinfected regularly.

Bottles are thoroughly washed with hot water and sodium hydroxide before being filled. The filled and crowned bottles are passed through a pasteurizer which heats the bottles at 60°C for half hour. The bottles take about half hour to attain the pasteurizing temperature, remain in the pasteurizer for half hour, and take another half hour to cool down. This method of pasteurization sometimes causes hazes leading some of the larger breweries to nowadays carry out bulk pasteurization and fill containers aseptically.

### 22.1.4 Beer Defects

The most common beer defect is the presence of haze or turbidity, which can be of biological or physico-chemical origin.

#### 22.1.4.1 Biological turbidities

Biological turbidities are caused by spoilage organisms and arise because of poor brewery hygiene (i.e. poorly washed pipes) and poor pasteurization. Spoilage organisms in beer must be able to survive the following stringent conditions found in beer: low pH, the antiseptic substances in hops, pasteurization of beer, and anaerobic conditions. Yeasts and certain bacteria can withstand these environmental challenges and are responsible for biological spoilage of the beer. Wild or unwanted yeasts which have been identified in beer spoilage span many genera including *Kloeckera*, *Hansenula*, and *Brettanomyces*, but *Saccharomyces* spp. appear to be most common, particularly in top-fermented beers. These include *S. cerevisiae* var. *turbidans* and *S. diastaticus*. The latter is important because of its ability to grow on dextrans in beer, thereby causing hazes and off flavors.

Among the bacteria, *Acetobacter* and the lactic acid bacteria *Lactobacillus* and *Streptococcus* are the most important. The latter are tolerant of low pH and hop antiseptics and are micro-aerophilic, hence they grow well in beer. *Acetobacter* is an acetic acid bacterium and produces acetic acid from alcohol, thereby giving rise to sourness in beer. *Lactobacillus pastorianus* is the typical beer spoiling lactobacilli in top-fermented beers, where it produces sourness and a silky type of turbidity. *Streptococcus damnosus* (*Pediococcus damnosus*, *Pediococcus cerevisiae*) is known as 'beer sarcina' and gives rise to 'sarcina sickness' or beer which is characterized by a honey-like odor.

### 22.1.4.2 Physico-chemical turbidities

Non-biological hazes in beer may be due to one or more of the following:

- (i) Hazes induced by metals.
- (ii) Protein-tannin hazes.
- (iii) Polysaccharide sediments.
- (iv) Oxalate hazes and sediments.

(i) **Hazes induced by metals:** Tin, iron, and copper have all been identified as causing hazes in beer. An amount of only 0.1 ppm of tin will immediately produce haze in beer. Unlike other metals, it does not act as an oxidation catalyst but precipitates haze precursors directly. It may occur in some canned beers.

Copper and iron act as catalysts in the oxidation of the polyphenolic moiety of the protein-haze precursors of beer. They appear to be derived from both malt and hop (from copper insecticides) and also from the brewing plant. It has been suggested that EDTA (ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid) can be used to form chelates with copper and iron and thereby prevent their deleterious action.

(ii) **Protein-tannin hazes:** The polyphenols of beer have often been incorrectly referred to as tannins. Tannins proper are used to convert hides to leather but beer polyphenols cannot be used for that purpose. Polyphenols are widely distributed in plants. Beer tannins or polyphenols are derived from hops and barley husks. They react with proteins to form complex molecules which become insoluble in the form of haze. Hazes contain polypeptides, polyphenols, carbohydrates, and a small amount of minerals. Protein-tannin beer hazes are divided into two: *Chill hazes* (0.1–2 nm diameter particles) form at 0°C and re-dissolve at 20°C. *Permanent hazes* (1.0–10 nm) remain above 20°C. Protein-tannin hazes may be removed by:

- (a) addition of papain which hydrolyzes the polypeptides to low molecular weight components which cannot form hazes;
- (b) adsorption of the polypeptides by silica gel and bentonite;
- (c) precipitation of polypeptides by tannic acid;
- (d) adsorption of the polyphenols by polyamide resins, e.g. Nylon 66.

(iii) **Polysaccharide sediments:** Freezing and thawing of beer may cause an unpredictable haze which can appear in the form of flakes. This haze differs from chill haze in being distinctly carbohydrate in nature. They were found in lager chilled to –10°C and consisted mainly of beta-glucans derived from malt.

(iv) **Oxalate sediments:** Oxalate sediments may appear after several weeks' storage in beers rich in oxalate as a result of a low calcium content.

(v) **Other beer defects:** Wild or gushing beer is a defect observed as a violent over-foaming when a bottle of beer is opened. The taste is unaffected. Gushing is due to the formation of micro-bubbles. Excess pressure may force the micro-bubbles back into solution. Gushing beers have been identified with malt made from old barley, and experimental brews have shown them to be associated with the presence of mycelia of *Fusarium* during the steeping.

The *off-flavor* developed when beer is exposed to sunlight is due to the formation of mercaptans by photochemical reaction in the blue-green region (420–520 nm) of visible light.

## 22.1.5 Developments in Beer Brewing

Some developments have taken place, both in the manner of the production of beer as well as in the type of beer produced.

### 22.1.5.1 Continuous brewing

Continuous brewing is gaining gradual acceptance in many countries. In the current commercial continuous brewing systems, it is mainly fermentation that is continuous, secondary fermentation and lagering are usually batch.

**(i) The open system of continuous fermentation:** In the open system, wort is fed continuously into the fermenter, while beer flows out at the same rate. The yeast is allowed to attain its natural concentration or steady state. In the system described here, wort is collected batch wise from the brew house and may be stored for up to 14 days at 2°C before use. The wort is sterilized in a heat-exchanger prior to oxygenation. It is then passed through the bottom into the first tank which is continuously stirred and where aerobic growth occurs. It is later passed into a second tank where conditions are anaerobic; alcohol and CO<sub>2</sub>, are formed in this tank. From there, the beer with its suspended yeasts overflows into a third vessel for sedimentation. Finished beer is removed from the top and yeast cells from the bottom. The amount of yeast in the beer is just adequate for secondary fermentation. CO<sub>2</sub> is collected from the top. A special yeast needs to be employed: apart from imparting the right flavor, it must be able to remain in active fermenting condition in suspension in the anaerobic vessel and yet be able to flocculate rapidly once in the cooled sedimentation tank. It is possible theoretically to use one or more than two tanks for sedimentation (Fig. 22.2).

**(ii) Partially closed system of continuous fermentation:** In the closed system, yeast is held at a given concentration instead of allowing it to grow at its own steady state as in the open system. The open system itself may indeed be modified to achieve a higher yeast concentration by recycling yeasts from the sedimentation tank into the first tank. The disadvantage of the modification is the possibility of contamination. Secondly, the returned yeasts are in a different physiological state of growth from those actively involved in fermentation, hence the wort and the beer quality may suffer.

In the closed system typified by the tower fermenter, sterilized wort is pumped into the base of the cylindrical tower with aeration, if necessary, and the beer is drawn off at the top at the same rate.

Yeasts attain a very high density in excess of 350 g/liter and wort becomes almost ready beer. The upper regions have a lower yeast concentration and serve partly as a final fermentation stage, but especially as a means of separating the yeasts. Baffles enable the diversion of the rising CO<sub>2</sub> and beer from the beer outlet. Its principal advantage is that beer can be produced in four hours if the lower regions have the optimum yeast concentration of 350–400 g/liter. Special yeasts able to maintain the high mass at the lower region and yet able to pass out of the fermenter if adequate amount must be used.

Although continuous brewing has not been generally adopted, its emergence forced brewers to make batch brewing more efficient and to find 'batch' answers to the advantages offered by continuous brewing.

### 22.1.5.2 Use of enzymes

A number of firms now market enzymes isolated from bacteria and fungi which can carry out the functions of malt. The advantage of the use of these enzymes is the reduction of costs since malting process can be eliminated entirely. Despite the great potentials offered by this method, brewers are yet unwilling to accept it. The consequences of eliminating or reducing the need for malt from the barley farmer and the malting industry, two long-standing establishments, would pose great difficulties in adopting this method. For enzymes to become generally used, it must be ensured that not only the major enzymes, amylases, and proteases, are included but that others such as beta-glucanases which hydrolyze the gums of barley are also present in the enzyme mixture. It must also be certain that toxic microbial products are eliminated from the enzyme preparations.

## 22.2 SORGHUM BEERS

### 22.2.1 Kaffir and Other Traditional Sorghum Beers

Barley is a temperate crop. In many parts of tropical Africa, beer has been brewed for generations with locally available cereals. The most common cereal used is *Sorghum bicolor* (= *Sorghum vulgare*) known in the United States as milo, in South Africa as kaffir corn, and in some parts of West Africa as Guinea corn. The cereal which is indigenous to Africa is highly resistant to drought. Sorghum is often mixed with maize (*Zea mays*) or millets (*Pennisetum* spp.). In some cases such as in Central Africa, e.g. Zimbabwe, maize may form the major cereal. Outside Africa, sorghum is not used normally for brewing, except in the United States, where it is occasionally used as an adjunct.

Their characteristics as well as the methods of producing these sorghum beers on the African continent are remarkably similar. They are

- (i) pinkish in color, sour in taste, and of fairly heavy consistency imposed partly by starch particles;
- (ii) consumed without the removal of the organisms;
- (iii) not aged, or clarified; and
- (iv) include a lactic fermentation.

The tropical beers are known by different names in different parts of the world: 'burukutu', 'otika', and 'pito' in Nigeria, 'maujek' among the Nandi's in Kenya, 'mowa' in Malawi, 'kaffir beer' in South Africa, 'merisa' in Sudan, 'bouza' in Ethiopia, and 'pombe' in many parts of East Africa.

Only in South Africa, production is performed in large breweries. Elsewhere, this is done by small holders to satisfy small local clientele. In South Africa, three or four times more kaffir beer is produced and drunk than is the case with barley beers. The processes of producing the beer include malting, mashing, and fermentation.

### 22.2.1.1 Malting

For malting, sorghum grains are steeped in water for periods varying from 16–46 hours. They are then drained and allowed to germinate for five to seven days, water being sprinkled on the spread-out grains. At the end of this period, the grains are usually dried, often in the sun or in the South African system at 50°–60°C in driers. However, kilning is not done. In some parts, the dried malt may be stored and used over several months.

Sorghum malt is rich in amylases, particularly  $\alpha$ -amylase, although the ungerminated grain does not contain  $\beta$ -amylase like barley. Sorghum has not received much attention as a brewing material, except occasionally as an adjunct in the United States. However in recent times, interest has grown in West Africa in its use for malting, and it may be that strains which perform in malting as well as barley may be found.

It has been suggested that the saccharification of sorghum starch is brought about partly by the fungi which grow on the grains during their germination as well as by the germinated sprout. The implicated fungi are *Rhizopus oryzae*, *Botryodiplodia theobromae*, *Aspergillus flavus*, *Penicillium funiculosum*, and *P. citrinum*.

### 22.2.1.2 Mashing

The malt is ground coarsely and mixed in a rough 6:1 (v/v) proportion with water and boiled for about 2 hours. During the boiling, starchy adjunct in the form of dried powder of plantains, cassava ('gari'), or unmalted cereal may be added so that an approximate 1:2:6 proportion of the adjunct malt and water is attained. It is filtered and then ready for fermentation. In South African kaffir beer breweries, the adjunct consisting of boiled sorghum or maize grits is added after the initial souring of the mash.

### 22.2.1.3 Fermentation

Two fermentations take place during sorghum beer production: a lactic acid fermentation and an alcoholic fermentation. In traditional fermentation, the dregs of a previous fermentation are inoculated into the boiled, filtered, and cooled wort. This inoculum consists of a mixture of yeasts, lactic acid and acetic acid bacteria. The first phase of the fermentation is brought about by lactic bacteria mainly *Lactobacillus mesenteroides* and *Lactobacillus plantarum*.

In the sorghum beer breweries in South Africa, the temperature of the mash is held initially at 48–50°C to encourage the growth of thermophilic lactic acid bacteria which occur naturally on the grain for 16–24 hours. The pH then drops to about 3–4. The sour malt is added to the previously cooked adjunct of unmalted sorghum or maize, and sometimes some more malt may be added. It is then cooled to 38°C and pitched with the top fermenting yeasts.

In the traditional method, yeasts and lactic acid bacteria are present in the dregs. The yeasts which have been identified in Nigerian sorghum beer fermentation are *Candida* spp., *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, and *S. chevalieri*. Fermentation is for about 48 hours during which lactic acid bacteria proliferate. Thereafter, it is ready for distribution and consumption. No secondary fermentation of the kind seen in lager beer, lagering, or clarification is done. The live yeasts and the lactic acid bacteria are consumed in much the same ways as they are done in palm wine. In some localities, the fermentation lasts a little longer, and the flavor

is influenced by a slight vinegary taste introduced by the release of acetic acid by acetic acid bacteria.

Sorghum beers usually contain large amounts of solids mainly starch apart from the microorganisms. Some authors have regarded them as much as a food just as much as an alcoholic beverage.

## **END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS**

1. Why is barley the preferred grain for beer production?
2. List other raw materials used for beer production.
3. List the functions of hops in brewing.
4. Describe malting and itemize enzymes developed during malting.
5. Why is gelatinization of starch important in starch conversion to sugar?
6. What is the gelatinization temperature of barley starch?
7. Briefly state why water quality is important in brewing.
8. Outline the processes involved in beer production.
9. Why do you boil wort?
10. What defects can occur in beer?
11. Give two causes of haze in beer.
12. Recommend a plant enzyme for controlling protein haze in beer.
13. List five organisms that can cause beer spoilage.

## **SUGGESTED READINGS**

- Amerine, M.A., Berg, H.W., Cruess, W.V. 1972. *The Technology of Wine Making*. 3rd ed. Avi Publications. West Port, USA. pp. 357–644.
- Aniche, G.N. 1982. *Brewing of Lager Beer from Sorghum*. Ph.D Thesis, University of Nigeria, Nsukka, Nigeria.
- Ault, R.G., Newton, R. 1971. *In: Modern Brewing Technology*. W.P.K. Findlay (ed.) Macmillan, London, UK. pp. 164–197.
- Battcock, M., Azam-Ali, S. 2001. *Fermented Fruits and Vegetables: A Global Perspective*. FAO Agric. Services Bull. 134, Rome, Italy, pp. 96.
- Doyle, M.P., Beuchat, L.R., Montville, T.J. 2004. *Food Microbiology: Fundamentals and Frontiers*. 2nd ed. ASM Press, Washington DC, USA.
- Flickinger, M.C., Drew, S.W. (eds.) 1999. *Encyclopedia of Bioprocess Technology—Fermentation, Biocatalysis, and Bioseparation*. Vol. 1–5. John Wiley, New York, USA.
- Gastineau, C.F., Darby, W.J., Turner, T.B. 1979. *Fermented Food Beverages in Nutrition*. Academic Press; New York, USA. pp. 133–186.
- Gutcho, M.H. 1976. *Alcoholic Beverages Processes*. Noyes Data Corporation New Jersey and London. pp. 10–106.
- Hammond, J.R.M., Bamforth, C.W. 1993. *Progress in the Development of New Barley, Hop, and Yeast Variants for Malting and Brewing*. *Biotechnology and Genetic Engineering Reviews*. 11, 147–169.
- Hanum, H., Blumberg, S. 1976. *Brandies and Liqueurs of the World*. Doubleday Inc. New York USA.
- Hough, J.S., Briggs, D.E., Stevens, R. 1971. *Malting and Brewing Science*. Chapman and Hall, London, UK.
- Hough, J.S. 1985. *The Biotechnology of Malting and Brewing*. Cambridge University Press; Cambridge, UK. pp. 15–188.

- Hoyrup, H.E. 1978. Beer Kirk-Othmer's Encyclopaedia of Chemical Technology. Wiley, New York, USA. Microbiology. 24, 173–200.
- Okafor, N. 1972. Palm-wine Yeasts of Nigeria. Journal of the Science of Food and Agriculture. 23, 1399–1407.
- Okafor, N. 1978. Microbiology and Biochemistry of Oil Palm Wine. Advances in Applied.
- Okafor, N., Aniche, G.N. 1980. Lager beer from Nigerian Sorghum. Brewing and Distilling International. 10, 32–35.
- Okafor, N. 1987. Industrial Microbiology. University of Ife Press Ile-Ife: Nigeria. pp. 201–210.
- Okafor, N. 1990. Traditional Alcoholic Beverages of Tropical Africa: Strategies for Scale-up. Process Biochemistry International. 25, 213–220.
- Packowski, G.W. 1978. Distilled Alcoholic Beverages, Encyclopadeia of Chemical Technology. 3rd ed. Wiley, New York, USA. pp. 824–863.
- Singleton, V.L., Butzke, C.E. 1998. Wine. Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Article Online Posting Date: December 4, 2000.
- Soares, C. 2002. Process Engineering Equipment Handbook Publisher. McGraw-Hill.
- Taylor, J.R.N., Dewar, J. 2001. Developments in Sorghum Food Technologies. Advances in Food and Nutrition Research. 43, 217–264.
- Vogel, H.C., Tadaro, C.L. 1997. Fermentation and Biochemical Engineering Handbook—Principles, Process Design, and Equipment. 2nd ed. Noyes.
- Zeng, A. 1999. Continuous Culture. *In*: Manual of Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology. A.L. Demain, J.E. Davies (eds.) 2nd ed. ASM Press. Washington, DC, USA. pp. 151–164.

## CHAPTER 23

---

# Production of Wines and Spirits

---

### 23.1 GRAPE WINES

Wine is commonly defined as a product of “normal alcoholic fermentation of the juice of sound ripe grapes”. Nevertheless, any fruit with a good proportion of sugar may be used for wine production. Thus, citrus fruits, bananas, apples, pineapples, strawberries, etc. may all be used to produce wine. Such wines are always qualified as fruit wines. If no other fruit is specifically identified, then the wine is regarded as being derived from grapes, *Vitis vinifera*. The production of wine is simpler than that of beer as no need exists for malting due to the presence of sugars in the fruit juice being used. However, this exposes wine making to greater contamination hazards.

Wine is today principally produced in countries or regions with mild winters, cool summers, and an even distribution of rainfall throughout the year. In North America, the United States is the leading producer with most of the wine coming from the State of California. In Europe, the principal producers are Italy, Spain, and France. In South America, Argentina, Chile, and Brazil are the major producers while in Africa, the major producers are Algeria, Morocco, and South Africa. Other producers are Turkey, Syria, Iran, and Australia.

#### 23.1.1 Processes in Wine Making

##### 23.1.1.1 Crushing of grapes

Selected ripe grapes of 21° to 23° Balling are crushed to release the juice which is known as ‘must’, after the stalks which support the fruits have been removed. These stalks contain tannin which would give the wine a harsh taste if left in the must. The skin contains most of the materials which gives wine its aroma and color. For the production of red wines, the skins of black grapes are included to impart the color. Grapes for sweet wines must have a sugar content of 24° to 28° Balling to maintain a residual sugar content after fermentation. The chief sugars in grapes are glucose and fructose; in ripe fruits, they occur in about the same proportion. Grape juice has an acidity of 0.60–0.65% and a pH of 3.0–4.0 mainly due to malic and tartaric acids with a little citric acid. During ripening, both the levulose and

the tartaric acid contents rise. Nitrogen is present in the form of amino acids, peptides, purines, small amounts of ammonium compounds, and nitrates.

### 23.1.2 Fermentation

(i) **Yeast used:** The grapes themselves harbor a natural flora of microorganisms (the bloom) which in previous times brought about the fermentation and contributed to the special characters of various wines. Nowadays, the must is partially 'sterilized' by the use of sulfur dioxide, a bisulfate, or a metabisulfite which eliminates most micro-organisms in the must leaving wine yeasts. Yeasts are then inoculated into the must. The yeast which is used is *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* var. *ellipsoideus* (synonyms: *S. cerevisiae*, *S. ellipsoideus*, *S. vini*). Other yeasts which have been used for special wines are *S. fermentati*, *S. oviformis*, and *S. bayanus*.

Wine yeasts have the following characteristics: (a) growth at the relatively high acidity (i.e. low pH) of grape juice; (b) resistance to high alcohol content (higher than 10%); (c) resistance to sulfite.

#### (ii) Control of fermentation

- (a) **Temperature:** Heat is released during the fermentation. It has been calculated that on the basis of 24 Cal per 180 g of sugar, the temperature of a must containing 22% sugar would rise 52° F (11°C) if all the heat were stopped from escaping. If the initial temperature were 60° F (16°C), the temperature would be 100° F (38°C) and fermentation would halt with an alcohol accumulation of only 5%. For this reason, the fermentation is cooled and the temperature is maintained at around 24°C with cooling coils mounted in the fermenter.
- (b) **Yeast Nutrition:** Usually, yeasts ferment preferentially glucose, although some yeasts, e.g. *S. elegans*, prefer fructose. To produce sweet wine, glucose-fermenting wine yeasts are used leaving the fructose which is much sweeter than glucose. Most nutrients including macro- and micro-nutrients are usually abundant in must. However occasionally, nitrogenous compounds are limiting. They are then increased with small amounts of  $(\text{NH}_4)_2 \text{SO}_4$  or  $(\text{NH}_4)_2 \text{HPO}_4$ .
- (c) **Oxygen:** As with beer, oxygen is required in the earlier stage of fermentation when yeast multiplication is occurring. In the second stage, when alcohol is produced, the growth is anaerobic and this forces the yeasts to utilize such intermediate products as acetaldehydes as hydrogen acceptors and hence encourage alcohol production.

(iii) **Flavor development:** Although some flavor materials come from the grape, most of it come from yeast action. The flavor of wine has been elucidated with gas chromatography and has been shown to be due to alcohols, esters, fatty acids, and carbonyl compounds, the esters being the most important. Diacetyl, acetoin, fusel oils, volatile esters, and hydrogen sulfide have received special attention. Autolysates from yeasts also have a special influence on flavor.

### 23.1.3 Ageing and Storage

The fermentation is usually over in three to five days. At this time, 'pomace' formed from grape skins (in red wines) will have risen to the top of the brew. As has been indicated earlier for white wine, the skin is not allowed in the fermentation. At the end of this fermentation, the wine is allowed to flow through a perforated bottom, if pomace had been

allowed to form. When the pomace has been separated from wine and the fermentation is complete or stopped, the next stage is 'racking'. The wine is allowed to stand until a major portion of the yeast cells and other fine suspended materials have collected at the bottom of the container as sediment or 'lees'. It is then 'racked', a process, in which the clear wine is carefully pumped or siphoned off without disturbing the lees.

The wine is then transferred to wooden casks (100–1,000 gallons), barrels (about 50 gallons), or tanks (several thousand gallons). The wood allows the wine only slow access to oxygen. Water and ethanol evaporate slowly leading to air pockets which permit the growth of aerobic wine spoilers, e.g. acetic acid bacteria and some yeasts. The casks are therefore regularly topped off to prevent the pockets. In modern tanks made of stainless steel, the problem of air pockets is tackled by filling the airspace with an inert gas such as carbon dioxide or nitrogen.

During ageing, desirable changes occur in the wine. These changes are due to a number of factors:

- Slow oxidation, since oxygen can only diffuse slowly through the wood. Small amounts of oxygen also enter during the filling up. Alcohols react with acids to form esters; tannins are oxidized.
- Wood extractives also affect ageing by affecting the flavor.
- In some wines, microbial malo-lactic fermentation occurs. In this fermentation, malic acid is first converted to pyruvic acid and then to lactic acid (Fig. 23.1).

The reaction is responsible for the rich flavor developed during the ageing of some wines, e.g. Bordeaux. Cultures which have been implicated in this fermentation are *Lactobacillus* sp. and *Leuconostoc* sp. A temperature of 11–16°C is best for ageing wines. High temperature probably functions in accelerating oxidation.

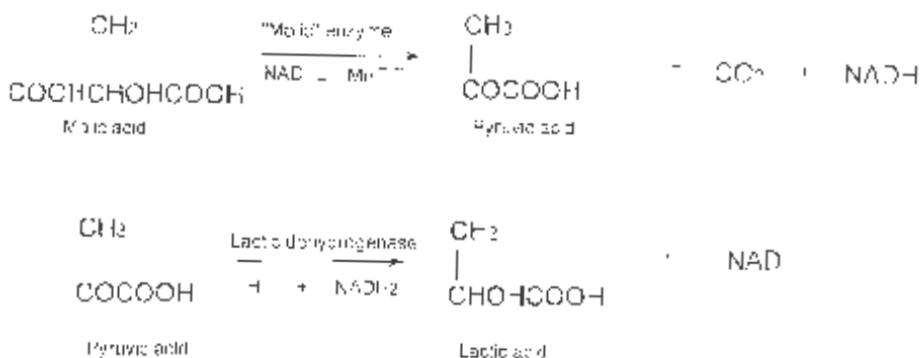


Fig. 23.1 Chemical Reactions Involved in Flavor Development in Grape Wines

### 23.1.4 Clarification

The wine is allowed to age in a period ranging from two years to five years depending on the type of wine. At the end of the period, some will have cleared naturally.

For others, artificial clarification may be necessary. The addition of a fining agent is often practiced to help clarification. Fining agents react with the tannin, acid, protein, or with

some added substance to give heavy quick-settling coagulums. In the process of settling, various suspended materials are adsorbed. The usual fining agents for wine are gelatin, casein, tannin, isinglass, egg albumin, and bentonite. In some countries, the removal of metal ions is accomplished with potassium ferrocyanide known as 'blue fining'; it removes excess ions of copper, iron, manganese, and zinc from wines.

### 23.1.5 Packaging

Before packing in bottles, the wine from various sources is sometimes blended and then pasteurized. In some wineries, the wine is not pasteurized but sterilized by filtration. In many countries, the wine is packaged and distributed in casks.

### 23.1.6 Wine Defects

The most important cause of wine spoilage is microbial; less important defects are acidity and cloudiness. Factors which influence spoilage by bacteria and yeasts include the following (a) wine composition, specifically the sugar, alcohol, and sulfur dioxide content; (b) storage conditions, e.g. high temperature and the amount of air space in the container; (c) the extent of the initial contamination by microorganism during the bottling process.

When proper hygiene is practiced, bacterial spoilage is rare. When it does occur, the microorganisms concerned are acetic acid bacteria which cause sourness in the wine. Lactic acid bacteria especially *Leuconostoc*, and sometimes *Lactobacillus* also spoil wines. Various spoilage yeasts may also grow in wine. The most prevalent is *Brettanomyces*, slow growing yeasts which grow in wine causing turbidities and off-flavors. Other wine spoilage yeasts are *Saccharomyces oviformis* which may use up residual sugars in a sweet wine and *Saccharomyces bayanus* which may cause turbidity and sedimentation in dry wines with some residual sugar. *Pichia membranifaciens* is an aerobic yeast which grows especially in young wines with sufficient oxygen.

Other defects of wine include cloudiness and acidity.

### 23.1.7 Wine Preservation

Wine is preserved either by chemicals or by some physical means. The chemicals which have been used include bisulfites, diethyl pyrocarbonate, and sorbic acid. Physical means include pasteurization and sterile filtration. When possible, pasteurization is avoided due to its deleterious effect on wine flavor.

### 23.1.8 Classification of Wines

Grape wines may be classified in several ways. Some of the criteria include place of origin, color, alcohol content, and sweetness. The one being adopted here is primarily used in the United States and is shown in [Table 23.1](#). This system classifies wine into two groups: natural wines and fortified wines.

#### 23.1.8.1 The natural wines

These result from complete natural fermentation. Further fermentation is prevented because the sugar is to a large extent exhausted. Spoilage organisms such as acetic acid

**Table 23.1** Broad classification of grape wines

---

A.	<i>Natural wines</i> : 9–14% alcohol; nature and keeping quality mostly dependent on ‘complete’ yeast fermentation and protection from air
1.	<i>Still wines</i> (known as ‘Table’ wines intended as part of meal); no carbon dioxide added.
(a)	<i>Dry table wines</i> : (no noticeable sweetness) (i) White; (ii) Rose (pink); (iii) Red
(b)	<i>Sweet table wines</i>
	(i) White (ii) Rose
Further naming of above depends on grape type or region of origin.	
2.	<i>Sparkling wines</i> (appreciable CO <sub>2</sub> under pressure)
(a)	White (Champagne);
(b)	Rose (Pink Champagne);
(c)	Red (Sparkling burgundy; cold duck)
B.	<i>Fortified (Dessert and appetizer) wines</i> : Contain 15 to 21% alcohol; nature and keeping quality depends heavily on addition of alcohol distilled from grape wine.
1.	<i>Sweet wines</i>
(a)	White (Muscatel, White port, angelica)
(b)	Pink (California Tokay, Tawny Port)
(c)	Red (Port, Black Muscat)
2.	<i>Sherries</i> : (White sweet or dry wines with oxidized flavors)
(a)	Aged types
(b)	Flor types
(c)	Baked types
3.	<i>Flavored specialty wines</i> (usually white Port base)
(a)	Vermouth (pale dry, French; Italian sweet types)
(b)	Proprietary brands

---

bacteria do not grow if air is excluded. Owing to the natural limit of sugar in grapes, the alcohol content does not usually exceed 12%. They are subdivided into still (without added CO<sub>2</sub>) and sparkling (with added CO<sub>2</sub>) wines. Color and sweetness also subdivide the wines. The color pink, or red is derived from the color of the grape; white wine comes from a grape whose skin is light-green, but whose juice is clear. White wine can also result from black (or deep-red) grapes if the skin is removed immediately after pressing before fermentation. Red wine results when the skin of black grapes are allowed in the fermenting must. Pink wine results when the skin is left just long enough for some material to extract from skin coloring.

**Table wines:** In general, the natural wines are intended to be part of a meal. They are usually served in generous amounts, partly because they contain less alcohol than the desserts and appetizers and partly because they do not have a high keeping quality once opened compared with appetizers and dessert wines.

**Dessert and appetizer wines:** The second broad group of wines contains dessert or appetizer wines. They are served at the beginning (appetizers) or at the end (dessert) of meals. They

contain extra alcohol from distilled wines, partly to make them more potent, but also to preserve them from yeast spoilage. These are divided into three categories: (a) Sweet, e.g. port; (b) Sherries-sweet or dry, which originated from Portugal and are characterized by flavors induced by various degrees of oxidation; (c) Flavored wines, e.g. vermouth, which are flavored with herbs and other components which are secrets of the producing firms (Table 23.1).

Sparkling wines (especially champagne), sherry, and flavored wines will be discussed briefly.

**Sparkling Wines:** Sparkling wines contain  $\text{CO}_2$  under pressure, before they are opened. They are called sparkling because the gentle release of carbon dioxide from the wine after the bottle is opened gives the wine a sparkle. The best known of the sparkling wines is produced in Champagne region in northern France which has given its name to the wine. Champagne is produced either in a bottle or in bulk.

- (a) **Bottle Champagne:** Champagne is usually a clear sparkling wine made from white wine. Pink or red champagne made from wines of the same color are preferred by some. Champagne is produced by a second fermentation in the bottle of an already good wine. Not only does its production take a long time, it also requires a complicated method which is difficult to automate and hence must be handled manually. For these reasons, the drink is expensive. *The method Champenoise* to be described is the one used for making the best sparkling wines. After the must is fully fermented, the wines to be used for champagne are racked, clarified, stabilized, and fined. A blend is then made from several different wines to give the desired aroma. The blend is known as *cuvée*. The *cuvée* should have an alcohol content of 9.5 to 11.5%, adequate acidity (0.7 to 0.9% titrable as tartaric acid) and light straw or light yellow color. The  $\text{SO}_2$  content should be low, otherwise  $\text{SO}_2$  odor would emerge when the wine is poured, or worse still, the yeasts might convert  $\text{SO}_2$  to forms of hydrogen sulfide which causes a rotten egg odor.

The *cuvée* is placed into thick walled bottles able to withstand the high pressure of  $\text{CO}_2$  to be built up later in the bottle. For the secondary fermentation in the bottle, more yeast, more fermentable sugar, usually sucrose, and nowadays sometimes a small amount (0.05 to 0.1%) of ammonium phosphate is added. The yeast usually used is *Saccharomyces bayanus*. It is selected because it meets the following requirements encountered in secondary fermentation for champagne production: it must grow at a fairly high alcohol content (10–12%), at high pressures (see below), and relatively low temperatures; the yeast must die or become inactive within a short time in order to prevent further fermentation after sugar (known as the *dosage*) is added once again before the final corking. Finally, the yeast must be able to form a compact granulated sediment after fermentation.

The amount of sugar added depends on the expected  $\text{CO}_2$  pressure of the sparkling wine. Sparkling wines have a pressure of about six atmospheres, but no less than four. As a general rule, 4 g of sugar per liter will produce one atmosphere of  $\text{CO}_2$  pressure. Therefore, the sugar added is about 24 g/liter. Account is taken of any sugar present in the wine. Although the bottles are thick, if the fermentation is too rapid, temperature too high, or sugar too high, the bottle may burst. Champagne bottles are therefore not reused since a scratched bottle may burst.

The bottle with its mixture of wine, sugar, and yeast is placed horizontally and allowed to ferment at a temperature of about 15–16°C. This secondary fermentation

takes two to three months. After the secondary fermentation, the wine is known as *triage* which is then stored still horizontally at a temperature of 10°C and remains undisturbed in that position for at least a year, sometimes up to five years. Much of the aroma of well-aged champagne appears to come from the reactions involving materials released from yeast autolysis.

The next stage is getting the sediment from the side to the neck of the bottle. Several methods are used by individual handlers. This transfer or *remuage* is achieved by first placing the bottle neck downwards at an angle in a rack with varying degrees of jolting. The bottles are next rotated clockwise and anti-clockwise on alternate days during which the bottle is gradually straightened to the perpendicular. The process may take anything from two or six weeks at the end of which the sediment finds its way to the neck of the bottle. To remove the sediment of yeast cells, the neck of the bottle is frozen to 1°C to 15°C; an ice plug which includes the sediment forms therein. The bottle is turned to an angle of about 45° and opened. The pressure in the bottle forces out the ice plug. During this process of *disgorging*, some CO<sub>2</sub> is lost but sufficient is left to give the usual pop which launches a bride, a ship, or a graduating student into the future. The lost wine is replaced from another bottle and the *dosage* is added. The *dosage* is a syrup consisting of about 60 g of sugar in 100 ml of well-aged wine. All champagnes, even those labeled dry contain dosage; otherwise, it would taste sour. Sweet champagne contains up to 10% sugar.

- (b) **Bulk production of Champagne:** Champagne is sometimes produced in bulk in a large tank rather than in individual bottles. Bulk production is known as the Charmat process named after its inventor and is usually declared on the label to save the more labor-intensive bottle-made versions from unfair competition. The tank which has a lining of an inert material such as glass holds 500 to 25,000 gallons and is built to withstand 10–20 atmospheres as a safety measure. Valves control the pressure and cooling coils the temperature. Since the tanks are aerated, a rapid turnover is possible and 6–12 fermentations per year are made. Another reason for the rapid turnover is that a heavy yeast growth occurs which could lead to the production of off-flavors, especially H<sub>2</sub>S if allowed prolonged contact with the wine.

Tank fermented champagne is usually given a cold-stabilizing treatment to remove excess tartarates. It is filtered still cold and under pressure to remove yeast cells. The wine is then filled into bottles with *dosage* of the right kind. It is usual to introduce some sulfur dioxide into it, just in case some yeasts were not removed by filtration. Sulfur dioxide also helps to prevent darkening oxidation which may occur as the wine takes up oxygen during the transfer process. The sulfur dioxide odor is usually noticeable when Charmat-prepared champagne bottles are opened. Furthermore, they lack the aroma conferred on well-aged bottle brands by the autolysis of yeast. Bulk champagnes are amenable to bulk production because they are more difficult to ferment owing to their higher tannin contents; they may also require higher fermentation temperatures.

### 23.1.8.2 Fortified wines

The fortified wines can be divided into three main groups which derive their names from the warmer more southern portion of the Iberian (Spain-Portugal) peninsula in Europe, and an island off that peninsula, where they were originally produced: Sherry (Jerez de

la Frontera area in Spain); Port (Douro Valley in Portugal); and Madeira (the Island of Madeira).

In other wines, contact with oxygen regardless of the amount is undesirable. The fortified wines are however produced by the deliberate but controlled oxidation of wine. The oxidation is achieved by prolonged ageing in the presence of air, by the growth of anaerobic yeast, or by heating. The consequence of this oxidation is a product which has a dark, reddish-brown color with a characteristic flavor, whether the starting wine is white or red. For sherry therefore, a white wine is used but for port or Madeira a red or a white wine may be used.

All the three fortified wines have a high alcohol content ranging from 15–20% (v/v), derived from added alcohol, hence their name. They are usually separated into two groups: (a) Vermouth (b) Other flavor wines (Special natural wines).

Vermouth may be of Italian (sweet) or French (dry) type. Vermouth comes from the German 'Wermut' (wormwood, *Artemisia absinthium* a common herb), a frequent component of vermouth. The other flavored fortified wines, such as 'Campari', 'Dubonnet', 'Byrrh', like vermouth, contain 15–21% alcohol. In both cases, the aromatic components of the herbs are extracted by immersing the herbs in wine or alcohol or by distilling them.

### 23.1.8.3 Fruit wines: cider and perry

Often, fruits do not contain enough sugar to make a potent alcoholic beverage. Under such conditions, extra sugar in the form of sucrose is added to encourage fermentation. Fruit wines are popular in some countries where grapes cannot thrive.

Cider is derived from apples (*Malus pumila*) and perry from pears or a mixture of pears and apples. They differ from other fruit wines in their low alcohol content (4–5% with a maximum of 7–8% v/v), because sugar is usually not added. The basic processes are similar to those of grape wine: pressing out the juice, fermenting, maturing, and bottling. Fruit wines have been made from cashew, pineapples, and other fruits.

## 23.2 PALM WINE

Palm wine is a general name for alcoholic beverages produced from the saps of palm trees. It is consumed all over the tropical world in Africa, Asia, and South America.

Palm wine is usually a whitish and effervescent liquid, both properties being derived from the fact that the fermenting organisms are numerous and alive when the beverage is consumed. More information exists on wine derived from the oil palm, *Elaeis guineensis* than on any other palm tree.

The sap of the palm is obtained from a variety of positions: the stem of the standing tree, the tip or trunk of the felled tree, and the base of the immature male inflorescence. Which method is favored depends on the country concerned, but most studies have centered on inflorescence wine. The sap produced by this method in *Elaeis guineensis* contains about 12% sucrose, about 1% each of fructose, glucose, and raffinose, and small quantities of protein and some vitamins, and is a clear, sweet, syrupy liquid.

To produce palm wine, the efforts of a succession of microorganisms are employed: Gram-negative bacteria, lactic acid bacteria, yeasts, and finally, acetic acid bacteria. Yeasts in palm wine have been identified as coming from various genera (Table 23.2).

The organisms are not artificially inoculated and find their way into the wine from a variety of sources including the air, the tapping utensils including previous brews, and

**Table 23.2** Yeasts identified in palm wines

Yeast	Type of Wine
<i>Saccharomyces pastorianus</i>	Oil palm
<i>Saccharomyces ellipsoides</i>	Oil palm
<i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i>	Arenga palm
<i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i>	Oil palm
<i>Saccharomyces chevalieri</i>	Oil palm
<i>Pichia</i> sp.	Oil palm
<i>Schizosaccharomyces pombe</i>	Oil palm
<i>Saccharomyces vafer</i>	Oil palm
	Palmyra palm
<i>Endomycopsis</i> sp.	Oil palm
<i>Saccharomyces markii</i>	Oil palm
<i>Kloeckera apiculata</i>	Oil palm
<i>Saccharomyces chevalieri</i>	Palmyra palm
<i>Saccharomyces rosei</i>	Raphia
<i>Candida</i> spp.	Oil palm
<i>Saccharomyces ludwigii</i>	Oil palm
	Palmyra palm

the tree. The wine contains about 3% (v/v) alcohol, and since the bacteria and yeasts are consumed live, it is a source of (single cell) protein and various vitamins.

The great problem with palm wine is that its shelf life is extremely short. It is best consumed within about 48 hours, but certainly not beyond about five days after tapping. For this reason, various methods have been devised to preserve it. Pasteurization has met with some success, but methods which lower the microbial load of the wine by centrifugation or filtration permit the use of milder pasteurization temperatures and lower quantities of chemicals. Of the experimental chemicals, sorbate and sulfite were found best. Fully fermented palm wine has 5% to 8% alcohol and is distilled for *kai-kai*, a gin with a distinct fruity flavor.

### Other African alcoholic beverages

(i) **Bouza** is an alcoholic beverage produced in Egypt since the time of the Pharaohs. Egyptian Bouza is prepared either from wheat or maize but the most popular form is produced from wheat. To prepare bouza, coarsely ground wheat (about 20% of total) is placed in a large wooden basin and kneaded with water to form a dough which is cut into thick loaves and lightly baked. The rest of the wheat (about 80% of the total) is germinated for three to five days, sun dried, and coarsely ground. The malted wheat and the crumbled bread are mixed in water in a wooden barrel. Bouza from a previous fermentation is added and the whole mixture is fermented for 24 hours at room temperature. The mash is sieved to remove large particles and the beverage is ready for drinking. The beverage has a pH of about 3.6 and an alcohol content of about 4%, but the pH drops while alcohol increases with further fermentation.

(ii) *Talla (tella)* is an Ethiopian beer with a smoky flavor derived from inverting the fermentation containers and talla collection pots over smoldering olive wood. Talla also acquires some smoke flavor from the toasted, milled, and boiled cereal grains. During the toasting, the grains are roasted until they begin to smoke slightly. In the production of talla, of which various types exist, powdered hop leaves and water are put in a fermentation vessel and allowed to stand for about three days. Ground barley or wheat malt and pieces of flat bread baked to burning on the outside are added. On the fifth day, hop stems are added in addition to cereal flour made by milling sorghum which is first boiled and then toasted. Water is added and the fermentation allowed for two days (i.e. to the seventh day). It is filtered and is ready to drink.

(iii) *Busaa* is an acidic alcoholic beverage drunk among the Luo, Abuluhya, and Maragoli ethnic groups of Kenya. It is porridge-like and light-brown in color and is warmed to 35–40°C before being consumed. A stiff dough made from maize flour and water is incubated at room temperature for three to four days. The fermented dough is pounded and then heated on a metal plate till it turns brown. Malt is made from millet, allowed to germinate for three to four days, sun dried, and ground to powder. A slurry is made in water of the millet malt powder and roasted maize flour dough and left to ferment for two to four days. It is filtered through cloth. The filtrate is busaa.

The organisms responsible for fermenting the uncooked maize dough include *Candida krusei*, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, *Lactobacillus helveticus*, *L. salivarius*, *L. brevis*, *L. viridescens*, *L. plantarum*, and *Pediococcus damnosus*. The final product is the result of alcohol produced mainly by *S. cerevisiae*, the lactic acid in the beverage is produced by several lactobacilli.

(iv) *Merissa* is a sour Sudanese alcoholic (up to 6%) beverage made from sorghum. It has a pH of about four, and a lactic acid content of about 2.5%. Sorghum grains are malted, dried, and ground into a coarse powder. Unmalted sorghum is milled into a fine powder. One third of this powder is mixed with a little water and allowed to ferment at room temperature for 24–36 hours. The resulting fermented sour dough is heated without further water addition until the product caramelizes to give rise to *soorji*. The cooled *soorji* is allowed to ferment for four in five hours in a mixture of malt, to which previous merissa is added as inoculum. The two are mixed together and portions of these are allowed to cool resulting in a product called 'futura'. Futura is mixed from with malt flour (about 5%) and added to the bedoba from time to time. Fermentation lasts from 8 to 10 hours after which it is filtered to give rise to the drink, merissa.

(v) *Tej* is a mead (i.e. a wine made by fermenting honey) of Ethiopian origin. It is yellow, sweet, effervescent, and cloudy due to its yeast content. The wine may be flavored with spices or hops and also by passing smoke into the fermentation pot before it is used. To prepare Tej, the honey is diluted with water in a ratio of 1:2 to 1:5 to a liquid of between 13 and 27% sugar, since honey contains about 80% sugar. Yeasts of the genus *Saccharomyces* spontaneously ferment the brew in about five days to give a yellow wine of 7–14% alcohol (v/v).

(vi) *Agadagidi* wines are made from bananas and plantains and have the opaque, effervescent sweet-sour nature typical of African traditional alcoholic beverages. The ripe fruits are peeled and soaked in water, where the sugars dissolving from the preparation permit the development of yeasts and lactic acid and give rise to a typical opaque effervescent wine. The alcohol content is about 1%.

(vii) *Mbege* is consumed in Tanzania mainly by those living near Mount Kilimanjaro. It is produced from a mixture of malted millet and fermented banana juice. The juice is produced by boiling the ripe banana followed by decantation. The banana infusion is mixed with cooked and cooled millet malt and allowed to ferment for four to five days.

### 23.3 THE DISTILLED ALCOHOLIC (OR SPIRIT) BEVERAGES

The distilled alcoholic or spirit beverages are those potable products whose alcohol contents are increased by distillation. In the process of distillation, volatile materials emanating directly from the fermented substrate or after microbial (especially yeast) metabolism introduce materials which have a great influence on the nature of beverage. The character of the beverage is also influenced by such post-distillation processes as ageing, blending, etc. The components of spirit beverages which confer specific aromas on them are known as congeners.

#### 23.3.1 Measurement of the Alcoholic Strength of Distilled Beverages

(i) **Proof:** In English-speaking countries, such as the United States, Canada, the United Kingdom, and Australia, the alcoholic content of spirit beverages (and also of non-potable alcohol) is given by the term 'proof'. Before the advent of the use of the hydrometer in alcoholic measurements, an estimate of the alcoholic content of a spirit beverage was obtained by mixing it with gunpowder. If the gunpowder still ignited, then it was satisfactory because it contained more than 50% (v/v) alcohol. If it did not ignite, it was 'under proof' because it contained less than 50% alcohol. Proof has nowadays become more clearly defined, although slight differences occur among countries. In the United States, proof spirit (i.e. 100 degrees proof, written 100°) shall be held to be that alcoholic liquor which contains one half its volume of alcohol of a specific gravity of 0.7939 at 15.6°C. In other words, the proof is always exactly twice the alcoholic content by volume. Thus, 100 proof spirit contains 50% alcohol. In the British system, proof spirit contains 57.1% by volume and 49.28% by weight of alcohol at 15.6°C.

A conversion factor of 1.142

$$\frac{\text{Volume of alcohol of British Proof at 15.6°C}}{\text{Volume of alcohol of United States Proof at 15.6°C}} = \frac{57.1}{50} = 1.14$$

is applied to convert United States proof to a British proof.

It is customary to quantify large amounts of distilled alcoholic beverages or alcohol in *proof gallons* for tax and other purposes. This term simply specifies the amount of alcohol in a gallon of spirits. Thus, a United States proof gallon contains 50% ethyl alcohol by volume; a gallon of liquor at 120° proof is 1.2 proof gallon, and a gallon at 75° proof is 0.75 proof gallon. However, the ordinary United States gallon is 3.785 liters, whereas the British (imperial) gallon is larger at 4.546 liters. The British proof gallon is multiplied by 1.37 to convert it to a United States gallon:

$$\frac{\text{Volume of British Gallon}}{\text{Volume of US Gallon} \times \text{Conversion Factor}} = \frac{4.546 \times 1.142}{3.785} = 1.375$$

The proof is read off a special hydrometer.

(ii) **Percentage by weight:** This is used in Germany for the ethanol content of a beverage or other liquid. The hydrometers are graduated at 15°C and the reference is with table of density. This results in a scale independent of the ambient temperature.

(iii) **Percentage by volume:** Many countries, especially in Europe, use the percentage by volume system. For most of them, the hydrometer is calibrated at 15°C. France, Belgium, Spain, Sweden, Norway, Finland, Switzerland (which also used weight %), Brazil, Egypt, and Russia use 20°C, Denmark and Italy 15.6°C, whereas many South American countries use 12.5°C. In many of these countries, the specific gravity of alcohol used as reference differs slightly.

### 23.3.2 General Principles in the Production of Spirit Beverages

In general, the following steps are involved in the preparation of the above beverages.

- (i) **Preparation of the medium:** In the grain beverages (whisky, vodka, gin), the grain starch is hydrolyzed to sugars with microbial enzymes or with the enzymes of barley malt. In all others, no hydrolysis is necessary as sugars are present in the fermenting substrate as in brandy (grape sugar) and rum (cane sugar).
- (ii) **Propagation of yeast inoculum:** Large distilleries produce hundreds of liters of spirits daily for which fermentation broths many more times in volume are required. These broths are inoculated with up to 5% (v/v) of thick yeast broth. Although yeast is re-used, there is still a need for regular inocula. In general, the inocula are made of selected alcohol-tolerant yeast strains usually *S. cerevisiae* grown aerobically with agitation and in a molasses base. Progressively larger volumes of culture may be developed before the desired volume is attained.
- (iii) **Fermentation:** When the nitrogen content of the medium is insufficient, nitrogen is added usually in the form of an ammonium salt. As in all alcohol fermentations, the heat released must be reduced by cooling and temperatures are generally not permitted to exceed 35–37°C. The pH is usually in the range of 4.5–4.7, when the buffering capacity of the medium is high. Higher pH values tend to lead to higher glycerol formation. When the buffering capacity is lower, the initial pH is 5.5, but this usually falls to about 3.5. During the fermentation, contaminations can have serious effects on the process: sugars are used up leading to reduced yields; metabolic products from the contaminants may not only alter the flavor of the finished product, but metabolites such as acids affect the function of the yeast. The most important contaminants in distilling industries are lactic acid which affect the flavor of the product.
- (iv) **Distillation:** Distillation is the separation of more volatile materials from less volatile ones by a process of vaporization and condensation. Three systems used in spirit distillation will be discussed.
  - (a) **Rectifying stills:** If the condensate is repeatedly distilled, the successive distillates will contain components which are more and more volatile. The process of repeated distillation is known as *rectification*. Rectification is done in columns, towers, or stills containing a series of plates at which contact occurs, i.e. returned to the system. The alcohol-water mixture flows downwards and is stripped of alcohol by steam which is introduced from the bottom and flows upwards. Alcohol-rich distillate is withdrawn at the top of the column. Fusel oils, higher

alcohols, separate out just above the point of entry of the mixture and are drawn off to another column. Volatile fractions are composed of esters and aldehydes. Whisky and brandy may be distilled successfully in a two-column still but for high-strength distillates, at least three columns and possibly four or five may be required. The above description is of the modern still a modification of which is also used for producing industrial alcohol.

- (b) **Pot still:** These are traditional stills, usually made of copper. They are spherical at the lower-portion which is connected to a cooling coil. They are operated batchwise. The first portion, or 'heads', and the latter portion, 'tails', of the 'low wines' are usually discarded and only the middle portion is collected. Malt whisky, rum, and brandy are made in the pot still. Its advantage is that most of the lesser aroma conferring compounds are collected in the beverage thereby conferring a rich aroma to it.
- (c) **Coffey (patent) still:** The Coffey still was patented in 1830 and the various modifications since then have not added much to the original design of the still. Its main feature is that it has a rectifying column besides the wash column in which the beer is first distilled.
- (v) **Maturation:** Some of the distilled alcoholic beverages are aged for some years, often prescribed by legislation.
- (vi) **Blending:** Before packaging, samples of various batches of different types of a given beverage are blended together to develop a particular aroma.

### 23.3.3 The Spirit Beverages

The beverages to be discussed here are whisky, brandy, rum, vodka, schnapps, *kai-kai* (or *akpeteshi*), and cordials.

#### 23.3.3.1 Whisky

Whisky is the alcoholic beverage derived from the distillation of fermented cereal. Various types of whiskies are produced; they differ principally in the cereal used. The countries most associated with whisky are first and foremost, Scotland followed by Ireland, the USA, and Canada.

In all whisky-producing countries, the alcoholic content, the materials, and the method of preparation are controlled by government regulations. Whiskies from various countries differ. In Scottish Malt Whisky, the barley is malted just as in beer making, but during the kilning, smoke from peat is allowed to permeate the green (fresh) malt causing the whisky made from the malt to have a strong aroma of peat smoke derived mainly from phenol. In the United States, the principal types of whisky are rye and bourbon whiskies. Rye whisky is prepared from rye and rye malt, or rye, barley, and barley malt. Bourbon whisky is prepared from preferably yellow maize, barley malt, or wheat malt. A typical mash will contain 51% corn and may have a composition of this type: 70% corn, 15% rye, and 15% barley malt.

The unmalted rye or corn is cooked to gelatinize it and hence to facilitate saccharification (or conversion to sugar) by the enzymes in the malt. The solids are not removed from the mash and the inoculating yeast sometimes contains *Lactobacillus*, whose lactic acid is said

to improve the flavor of the whisky. Fermentation is usually in a two-column coffee-type still.

All whisky is matured in wooden casks for a number of years, usually three or more. They may then be blended with various types (usually controlled by law) before bottling.

### 23.3.3.2 Brandy

Brandy is a distillate of fermented fruit juice. Thus, brandy can be produced from any fruit—strawberries, paw-paw, or cashew. However, when it is unqualified, the word brandy refers to the distillate from fermented grape juice. It is subject to a distillation limitation of 170° proof (85%). The fermented liquor is double distilled in pot stills without previous storage. A minimum of two years maturation in oak casks is required for maturation.

Some of the best brandies come from the cognac region of France. Brandies produced in other parts of France are merely *eau de vie* (water of life) and are not called brandy. Certain parts of Europe (e.g. Spain, where brandy is distilled from Jerez sherry) and South America as well as the USA produce special brandies.

### 23.3.3.3 Rum

Rum is produced from cane or sugar by products especially molasses or cane juice. Rum production is associated with the Caribbean, especially Jamaica, Cuba, and Puerto Rico. Rum with a heavy body is produced from molasses; while light rum is produced from cane syrup using continuous distillation.

During the fermentation, the molasses is clarified to remove colloidal material which could block the still by the addition of sulfuric acid. The pH is adjusted to about 5.5 and a nitrogen source ammonium sulfate or urea may be added. For the heavier rums, *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* is used while *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* is used for the lighter types. For maturation, rum is stored in oak casks for two to fifteen years.

### 23.3.3.4 Gin, Vodka, and Schnapps

These beverages differ from whisky, rum, and brandy in the following ways:

- (a) Brandy, rum, and whisky are pale-yellow colored straw to deep brown by extractives from wooden casks in which they are aged and which have sometimes been used to store molasses or sherry. To obtain consistent color, caramel is sometimes added. Gin, vodka, and schnapps are water clear.
- (b) The flavor of brandy and whisky is due to congeners present in the fermented mash or must. For gin, vodka, and schnapps, the congeners derived from fermentation are removed and flavoring is provided (except in vodka) with plant parts.
- (c) The raw materials for their production are usually cereals, but potatoes or molasses may be used. For gin, maize is used, while for vodka, rye is used. The cereals are gelatinized by cooking and mashed with malted barley. In recent times, amylases produced by fungi or bacilli have been used since the flavor of malt is not necessary in the beverage. Congeners are removed by continuous distillation in multi-column stills.

In gin production, the grain-spirits (i.e. without the congeners) are distilled over juniper berries, *Juniperus communis*, dried angelica roots, *Angelica officinalis*, and others including

citrus peels, cinnamon, nutmeg, etc. Russian *vodka* is produced from rye spirit which is passed over specially activated wood charcoal. In other countries, it is sometimes produced from potatoes or molasses. *Schnapps* are gin flavored with herbs.

### 23.3.3.5 Cordials (Liqueurs)

Cordials are the American name for what are known as liqueurs in Europe. They are obtained by soaking herbs and other plants in grain spirits, brandy, or gin, or by distilling these beverages over the plant parts mentioned above. They are usually very sweet, being required to contain 10% sugar. Some well-known brand names of cordials are Drambui, Crème de menthe, Triple Sac, Benedictine, and Anisete.

### 23.3.3.6 Kai-kai, Akpeteshi, or Ogogoro

*Kai-kai* is an alcoholic beverage widely consumed in West Africa. It is produced by distilling fermented palm-wine. It is the base for preparing some of the better known brands such as schnapps.

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Wine or beer, which one has greater contamination problem? Give reason(s) for your answer.
2. What is the proportion of glucose and fructose in ripe grapes?
3. Describe the characteristics of wine yeasts.
4. How would you make a sweet wine by employing yeast selection without adding sugar or other sweetening agents at the end of fermentation?
5. A wine maker informed you that his must is deficient in nitrogen and does not support efficient fermentation of sugars. What advice would you give to a wine maker whose grape variety is deficient in nitrogen sources?
6. How does oxygen influence yeast growth and fermentation during wine production?
7. Explain flavor development during wine ageing and storage. Name the microorganisms involved in malo-lactic fermentation.
8. List three fining agents for wine clarification.
9. Briefly describe methods employed to preserve wine. What is principal demerit of wine pasteurization?
10. Briefly discuss microbial spoilage of wine.
11. A local grape farmer produces wine for some bars in your community. The farmer has a serious problem with maintaining the quality of his wine. He is losing customers because his wine has always a different taste. The wine making process was evaluated for contamination, but that was not the cause. Genetic analysis of his yeast over time revealed significant variation. As an industrial microbiologist, give a brief description of your advice to this wine producer.

**SUGGESTED READINGS**

- Amerine, M.A., Berg, H.W., Cruess, W.V. 1972. *The Technology of Wine Making*. 3rd ed. Avi Publications. West Port, USA. pp. 357–644.
- Battcock, M., Azam-Ali, S. 2001. *Fermented Fruits and Vegetables: A Global Perspective*. FAO Agric. Services Bull. 134, Rome, Italy. pp. 96.
- Doyle, M.P., Beuchat, L.R., Montville, T.J. 2004. *Food Microbiology: Fundamentals and Frontiers*. 2nd ed. ASM Press, Washington DC, USA.
- Flickinger, M.C., Drew, S.W. (eds.) 1999. *Encyclopedia of Bioprocess Technology—Fermentation, Biocatalysis, and Bioseparation*. Vol. 1–5. John Wiley, New York, USA.
- Gastineau, C.F., Darby, W.J., Turner, T.B. 1979. *Fermented Food Beverages in Nutrition*. Academic Press; New York, USA. pp. 133–186.
- Gutcho, M.H. 1976. *Alcoholic Beverages Processes*. Noyes Data Corporation, New Jersey and London. pp. 10–106.
- Hammond, J.R.M., Bamforth, C.W. 1993. Progress in the Development of New Barley, Hop, and Yeast Variants for Malting and Brewing. *Biotechnology and Genetic Engineering Reviews*. 11, 147–169.
- Hanum, H., Blumberg, S. 1976. *Brandies and Liqueurs of the World*. Doubleday Inc. New York, USA.
- Hough, J.S. 1985. *The Biotechnology of Malting and Brewing*. Cambridge University Press; Cambridge, UK. pp. 15–188.
- Okafor, N. 1972. Palm-wine Yeasts of Nigeria. *Journal of the Science of Food and Agriculture*. 23, 1399–1407.
- Okafor, N. 1978. Microbiology and Biochemistry of Oil Palm Wine. *Advances in Applied Microbiology*. 24: 173–200.
- Okafor, N., Aniche, G.N. 1980. Lager beer from Nigerian Sorghum. *Brewing and Distilling International*. 10, 32–35.
- Okafor, N. 1987. *Industrial Microbiology*. University of Ife Press; Ile-Ife Nigeria. pp. 201–210.
- Okafor, N. 1990. Traditional Alcoholic Beverages of Tropical Africa: Strategies for Scale-up. *Process Biochemistry International*. 25, 213–220.
- Packowski, G.W. 1978. Distilled Alcoholic Beverages, *Encyclopadeia of Chemical Technology*. 3rd ed. Wiley, New York, USA. pp. 824–863.
- Singleton, V.L., Butzke, C.E. 1998. Wine. *Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Article Online Posting Date: December 4, 2000.
- Soares, C. 2002. *Process Engineering Equipment Handbook* Publisher. McGraw-Hill.
- Taylor, J.R.N., Dewar, J. 2001. Developments in Sorghum Food Technologies. *Advances in Food and Nutrition Research*. 43, 217–264.
- Vogel, H.C., Tadaro, C.L. 1997. *Fermentation and Biochemical Engineering Handbook—Principles, Process Design, and Equipment*. 2nd ed. Noyes.
- Zeng, A. 1999. Continuous Culture. *In: Manual of Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology*. A.L. Demain, J.E. Davies (eds.) 2nd ed. ASM Press. Washington, DC, USA. pp. 151–164.

---

## Production of Vinegar

---

Vinegar is a product resulting from the conversion of alcohol to acetic acid by acetic acid bacteria, *Acetobacter* spp. The name is derived from French word *Vin* = wine; *Aigre-sour* or sharp. With the ubiquity of acetic acid bacteria and the consequent ease with which wine is spoilt, vinegar must have been known to man for thousands of years since he apparently learnt to produce alcoholic beverages some 10,000 years ago. Vinegar may be regarded as wine spoilt by acetic acid bacteria for which other uses have been found.

Although acetic acid is the major component of vinegar, the material cannot be produced simply by dissolving acetic acid in water. When alcoholic fermentation occurs and later during acidifications, many other compounds are produced mostly depending on the nature of the material fermented, and some of these find their way into vinegar. Furthermore, reactions also occur between these fermentation products. Ethyl acetate, for example, is formed from the reaction between acetic acid and ethanol. It is these other compounds which give the various vinegars their bouquets or organoleptic properties. The other compounds include non-volatile organic acids such as malic, citric, succinic, and lactic acids, unfermented and unfermentable sugars, oxidized alcohol and acetaldehyde, acetoin, phosphate, chloride, and other ions.

### 24.1 USES

- (i) **Ancient uses:** The wide variety of ancient uses of vinegar can be seen from various records describing the use of vinegar as a food condiment, treatment of wounds and a wide range of illnesses such as plague, ringworms, burns, lameness, and varicose veins. It was also used as a general cleansing agent. Finally, it was used as a cosmetic aid.
- (ii) **Modern uses:** Today, vinegar is used mainly in the food industry (a) as a food condiment, sprinkled on certain foods such as fish at the table, (b) for pickling and preserving meats and vegetables (Vinegar is particularly useful in this respect as it can reduce the pH of food below that which even spore-formers may not survive.), (c) as an important component of sauces, and (d) nearly 70% of the vinegar produced today is supplied to various arms of the food industry where it finds use in the manufacture of sauces, salad dressings, mayonnaise, tomato productions, cheese dressings, mustard, and soft drinks. Most of the vinegar used in industry is either of the distilled or concentrated type.

## 24.2 MEASUREMENT OF ACETIC ACID IN VINEGAR

The acetic acid content is usually measured in 'grain'. Originally, the strength of acetic acid was expressed in terms of the grains of sodium bicarbonate neutralized by one fluid ounce measure of vinegar, and this was measured by the  $\text{CO}_2$  evolved during the reaction of the two substances. The 'grain strength' is now measured differently, and one-grain vinegar is now defined as that containing 0.1 g of acetic acid in 100 ml at 20°C. Grain is derived by multiplying the acetic acid content (w/v) of a sample of vinegar by 10 or by moving the decimal point one place to the right. Thus, vinegar containing 8% acetic acid is 80 grain. Sometimes, the percentage (w/v) is used.

## 24.3 TYPES OF VINEGAR

Vinegar is normally a product of two fermentations: alcoholic fermentation with a yeast and the production of acetic acid from the alcohol by acetic acid bacteria. There is no distillation between the two fermentations, except in the production of spirit vinegar. The vinegar may or may not be flavored. The substrate for the alcoholic fermentation for vinegar productions varies between different locations. Thus, while wine vinegar made from grapes is common in continental Europe and other vine growing countries, malt vinegar is common in the United Kingdom; the United States on account of its great variety of climatic regions uses both malt and wine vinegars. Rice vinegar is common in the far Eastern countries of Japan and China, and pineapple vinegar is used in Malaysia. In some tropical countries, vinegar has been manufactured from palm wine derived from oil or raffia palm.

The composition and specifications of various types of vinegars are defined by regulations set up by the governments of different countries. In the United States, for example, vinegar should not contain less than 4.0% (w/v) acetic acid and not more than 0.5% ethanol (v/v). Various major vinegars are defined briefly:

- (i) *Cider vinegar, apple vinegar*: Produced from fermented apple juice (US) and fruits other than grapes.
- (ii) *Wine vinegar, grape vinegar*: Fermented grape juice malt.
- (iii) *Malt vinegar*: Produced from a fermented infusion of barley malt with or without adjuncts.
- (iv) *Sugar, glucose, dried fruits*: In the US, vinegar from sugar syrup or molasses should be labeled sugar vinegar, while that from glucose (which should be dextrose-rotatory) and dried fruits should be labeled with 'glucose' or the particular dried fruit involved.
- (v) *Spirit vinegar*: Vinegar made from distilled alcohol. In the US, synonyms for spirit vinegar are 'white distilled vinegar' and 'grain vinegar'. The alcohol used in the distillation is denatured for tax reasons with ethyl acetate. One gallon of ethyl acetate is usually added to 100 gallons of 95% alcohol. The ethyl acetate is not deleterious and in any case is present in vinegar by the alcohol acetic acid reaction. It should be noted that in the United States the term 'distilled' refers to the ethanol used, while in the United Kingdom, 'distilled' vinegar refers to a distillate of malt vinegar.
- (vi) *Specialty vinegars*: Specialty vinegars make up a category of vinegar products that are formulated or flavored to provide a special or unusual taste when added to foods.

Specialty vinegars are favorites in the gourmet market:

- (a) *Herbal vinegars*: Wine or white distilled vinegars are sometimes flavored with the addition of herbs, spices, or other seasonings. Popular flavorings are garlic, basil, and tarragon, but cinnamon, clove, and nutmeg flavored vinegars can be a tasty and aromatic addition to dressings.
- (b) *Fruit vinegars*: Fruit or fruit juice can also be infused with wine or white vinegar. Raspberry flavored vinegars, for example, create a sweetened vinegar with a sweet-sour taste.
- (c) *Balsamic vinegar*: Traditional balsamic vinegar is made from white and sugary Trebbiano grapes grown on the hills around Modena, Italy. The grapes are harvested as late as possible to take advantage of the warmth of the weather. The traditional vinegar is made from the cooked grape 'must' (juice) matured by a long and slow process of natural fermentation followed by progressive concentration by aging in a series of casks made from different types of wood and without the addition of any other spices or flavorings. The color is dark brown and the fragrance is distinct. Production of traditional balsamic vinegar is governed by the stringent standards imposed by the quasi-governmental Consortium of Producers of the Traditional Balsamic Vinegar of Modena.
- (d) *Raspberry red wine vinegar*: Natural raspberry flavor is added to red wine vinegar which is the aged and filtered product obtained from the acetous fermentation of select red wine. Raspberry red wine vinegar has a characteristic dark red color and a piquant, yet delicate raspberry flavor.
- (e) *Other specialty vinegars*: Coconut and cane vinegars are common in India, the Philippines, and Indonesia and date vinegar is popular in the Middle East. International definitions and standards are set by the joint efforts of the Food and Agriculture (FAO) as well as the World Health Organization (WHO) of the United Nations.

#### 24.4 ORGANISMS INVOLVED

Although vinegar had been known to man from time immemorial, like many other fermentative processes, the identity of the organisms concerned is recent.

The bacteria converting alcohol to acetic acid under natural conditions are film-forming organisms on the surface of wine and beer. This film was known as 'mother of vinegar' before its bacteriological nature became known. The bacteria were first described as *Mycoderma* (viscous film) in 1822. Later, other scientists classified them in *M. vini* (forming film on wine) and *M. acetic* (forming film on beer). Pasteur confirmed that acetic acid is produced only in the presence of the bacteria, but he did not identify them. The genus name *Acetobacter* was put forward by Beijerinck in 1900. Although *Acetobacter* spp. are responsible for vinegar production, pure cultures are hardly used, except in submerged fermentation, because of the difficulty of isolating and maintaining the organisms. The only member of the genus not useful in vinegar production is *Acetobacter xylinum* which tends to produce slime. Recently, a new species, *Acetobacter europaeus*, with distinguishing features such as strong tolerance of acetic acid of 4 to 8% in A-E agar and its absolute requirement of acetic acid for growth was described.

Strains of acetic acid bacteria to be used in industrial production should (a) tolerate high concentrations of acetic acid, (b) require small amounts of nutrient, (c) not over-oxidize the acetic acid formed, and (d) be high yielding in terms of the acetic acid produced.

Theoretically, 1 g of alcohol should yield 1.304 g of acetic acid but this is hardly achieved and only in unusual cases is a yield of 1.1 g attained. From the reactions, one mole of ethanol will yield one mole of acetic acid and one mole of water. It can be calculated that 1 gallon of 12% alcohol will yield 1 gallon of 12.4% acetic acid.

Over-oxidation can occur and is undesirable. In over-oxidation, acetic acid is converted to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . It occurs when there is a lack or low level of alcohol. It occurs more frequently in submerged fermentations than in the trickle processes.

## 24.5 MANUFACTURE OF VINEGAR

The three methods used for the production of vinegar are the Orleans Method (also known as the slow method), the Trickle (or quick) Method, and Submerged Fermentation. The last two are the most widely used in modern times.

### 24.5.1 The Orleans (or Slow) Method

The oldest method of vinegar production is the 'leave alone' method in which wine left in open vats becomes converted to vinegar by acetic acid bacteria entering it from the atmosphere. The wine is then put in casks and left in the open field in the 'fielding process'. A small amount of vinegar is introduced into a cask of wine to help initiate fermentation. The introduced vinegar not only lowers the pH to the disadvantage of many other organisms but also introduces an inoculum of acetic acid bacteria.

The casks were wooden and of approximately 200 liter capacity. They are never filled beyond about two-thirds of their capacity so that there is always a large amount of air available above the wine. A thick film of acetic acid bacteria forms on the wine and converts it in to vinegar in about five weeks. About 10–20% of the vinegar is drawn off at weekly intervals and replaced with new wine. The withdrawal and replenishment are done from the bottom of the cask so that the film is not disturbed. Often, a series of casks is present and the transfer is done from one cask to another.

Often, due to its thickness and consequent weight and sometimes due to disturbance, the film sinks. When this happens, the whole process has to be restarted, since acetic acid bacteria are aerobic. Following Pasteur's (1868) suggestion, the film of bacteria often developed in wooden rafts is placed in the cask for this purpose. The casks used to be stored mainly in the Orleans district of France, in a heated building or in an underground cellar to speed up the process. The process now derives its name from the district. The process has a number of disadvantages:

- (a) It is slow, sometimes taking up to five weeks as opposed to only days using later methods, hence it is also known as the slow method.
- (b) It is inefficient yielding 75–85% of the theoretical amount.
- (c) The 'mother of vinegar' usually gradually fills the cask effectively killing the process.

Despite these disadvantages, the product is of good quality. The Orleans Method continued to be used in many European countries long after the introduction of the Quick Process. Modern vinegar production uses mainly the Trickle (quick) and submerged methods. Today, there are less and less of the Orleans equipment in use.

### 24.5.2 The Trickling Generators (Quick) Method

Credit for devising the forerunner of the modern trickling generator is usually given to the Dutch Boerhaave who in 1732 devised the first trickling generator in which he used branches of vines and grape stems as packing. Improvements were made by a number of other people from time to time. Later, ventilation holes were drilled at the bottom of the generator and provided a mechanical means for the repeated distribution of the alcohol acetic acid mixture over the packing. The heat generated by the exothermic reaction in the generator caused a draft which provided oxygen for the aerobic conversion of alcohol to acetic acid. This later model of the quick method (sometimes called the German method) enabled the production of vinegar in days instead of weeks. It remained *en vogue* unmodified for just over a century when several modifications were introduced in the Frings method including: (a) forced aeration, (b) temperature control, and (c) semi-continuous operation.

The modern vinegar generator consists of a tank constructed usually of wood preferably of cypress and occasionally of stainless steel. A false bottom supports the coils of birch wood shavings and separates them from the collection chamber which occupies about one fifth of the total capacity of the generator (Fig. 24.1). A pump circulates the alcohol-acetic acid mixture from the reservoir through a heat exchanger to the top of the generator where a spray mechanism distributes it over the packing in much the same way as a trickling filter functions in wastewater treatment. Air is forced through the false bottom up through the set-up. The cooling water in the heat exchanger is used to regulate the temperature in the generator so that it is between 29°C and 35°C. The temperature is monitored with thermometers placed at different levels of the generator.

The top of the generator is covered, but provision exists for the release of exhaust air. Meters measure three parameters: (a) the circulation of the mash, (b) the flow of cooling

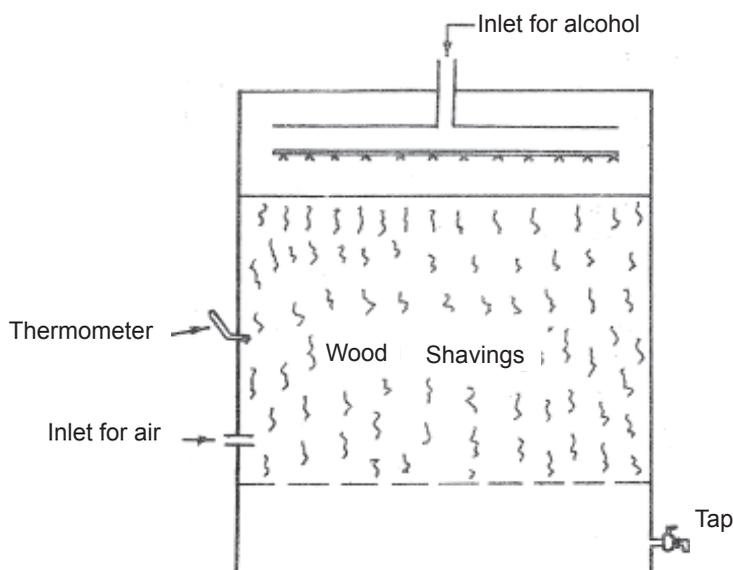


Fig. 24.1 Tricking Generator for Vinegar Manufacture

water through the heat exchange, and (c) the amount of air delivered through the system. If the air flow rate is too high, alcohol and vinegar are lost in effluent air.

**Operation of the generator:** The trickling or circulating Frings generator is reasonably efficient achieving an efficiency rate of 91–92% under optimal operation, and it is capable of producing 500–1000 gallons of 100-grain (i.e. 10%) vinegar every 24 hours. Although the wood shavings soften with age, well-maintained generators can proceed without much attention for twenty to thirty years. They are easy to maintain once airflow and recirculation rates as well as temperatures are maintained at the required level.

The level of ethyl alcohol must be maintained so that it does not fall below 0.3–0.5% at any time. Complete exhaustion of the alcohol will lead to the death of the bacteria.

When wine and cider vinegar are made, no nutrients need to be added to the charge (i.e. the alcohol-containing material). However, when white vinegar (produced from synthetic alcohol) is used, nutrients, e.g. simple low concentration sugar-mineral salts solution sometimes containing a little yeast extraction, may be added. Growth of the slime-forming *Acetobacter xylinum* is seen less with white vinegar (from pure alcohol) than with wine and cider vinegar. Generators for producing white vinegar therefore become blocked by slime much less quickly than those used for wine and cider vinegar and can last in excess of 20 to 30 years before the wood shavings are changed.

The finished acidity of the vinegar is about 12%. When it is higher, production drops off. When drawing off vinegar, the amount of alcohol in the replacement should be such that the total amount of alcohol is less than 5% in order not to exceed this level of acidity.

### 24.5.3 Submerged Generators

With increasing knowledge of submerged fermentation gained from the antibiotics and yeast industry, vinegar was soon produced by this method. The common feature in all submerged vinegar production is that the aeration must be very vigorous as shortage of oxygen due to the highly acidic conditions of submerged production would result in the death of the bacteria within 30 seconds. Furthermore, due to the extensive release of heat (over 30,000 calories are released per gallon of ethanol), an efficient cooling system must be provided. Vinegar produced in submerged fermentation is turbid because of the high bacterial content and has to be filtered.

#### 24.5.3.1 Frings acetator

First publicized in 1949, most of the world's vinegar today is produced with this fermenter. It consists of a stainless steel tank fitted with internal cooling coils and a high-speed agitator fitted through the bottom. Air is sucked in through an air-meter located at the top and finely dispersed by the agitator and distributed throughout the liquid. Temperature is maintained at 30°C, although some strains can grow at a higher temperature. Foaming is interrupted with an automatic foam breaker. Essentially it is shaped like the typical aerated stirred tank fermenter.

It is operated batchwise and the cycle time for producing 12% vinegar is about 35 hours. It is self-aspirating, no compressed air being needed. The hollow rotor is installed on the shaft of a motor mounted under the fermenter, connected to an air suction pipe, and surrounded by a stator. It pumps liquid that enters the rotor from above outward through

the channels of the stator that are formed by the wedges, thereby sucking air through the openings of the rotor and creating an air-liquid emulsion that is ejected outward at a given speed. This speed must be chosen adequately so that the turbulence of the stream causes a uniform distribution of the air over the whole cross section of the fermenter.

The Frings alkograph automatically monitors the alcohol content and signals the end of the batch when the alcohol content falls to 0.2% (v/v). At this stage, about one third of the product is pumped out and fresh feed pumped to the original level. The aeration must continue throughout the period of the unloading and loading. The Frings Alkograph is an automatic instrument for measuring the amount of ethanol in the fermenting liquid. Small amounts of liquid flow through the analyzer continuously, at first through a heating vessel and then through three boiling vessels. The boiling temperature of the incoming liquid is measured in the first boiling vessel. While alcohol is distilled off automatically. As the flow through the vessels takes some time, there is a delay of about 15 minutes between the beginning of the inflow of a sample and the appearance of the correct value on the recorder. However, because alcohol concentration is decreasing slowly during fermentation, this delay has no disadvantage on fermentation control. In more modern alkographs, there is no time gap. The more recent Frings acetators can be run on a semi-continuous basis. To carry out the single-stage semi-continuous process at a defined alcohol content, a contact in the Alkograph activates the vinegar discharge pump. As soon as a preset level has been reached, the mash pump starts adding fresh mash. This pump is controlled by the fermentation temperature in order to refill under constant temperature. The pump is stopped when the desired level is reached, and an automatic cooling system is activated. A fermentation cycle takes 24 to 48 hours. Since first described, improvements and modifications have been made on the Frings acetator.

#### *Advantages*

- (a) The efficiency of the acetator is much higher than that of the trickling generator; the production rate of the acetator may be 10-fold higher than a trickling unit. Values of 94% and 85% of the theoretical yield have been recorded for both the acetator and the trickling filter, respectively.
- (b) The quality is more uniform and the inexplicable variability in quality noted for the trickling generator is absent.
- (c) A much smaller space is occupied (about one-sixth) in comparison with the trickling generator.
- (d) It is easy and cheap to change from one type of vinegar to another.
- (e) Continuous production and automation can take place more easily with Frings acetator than with trickling generator.

#### *Disadvantages*

- (a) A risk exists of complete stoppage following death of bacteria from power failure even for a short time. Automatic stand-by generators have helped to solve this problem.
- (b) It has a high rate of power consumption. Some authors have however argued that in fact, in terms of power consumed per gallon of acetic acid produced, the acetator is less power consuming.

### 24.5.3.2 The cavitators

The cavitator was originally designed to treat sewage: it was then modified for vinegar production. In many ways, it resembled the acetator. However, the agitator was fixed to the top, and finely dispersed air bubbles were introduced into the liquid. It operated on a continuous basis and was quite successful in producing cider and other vinegars as long as the grain strength was low. It was not successful with high grain vinegar and the manufacture of the 'cavitator' was discontinued in 1969.

### 24.5.3.3 The tower fermenter

The tubular (tower) fermenter developed in the UK has been used on a commercial scale for the production of beer, vinegar, and citric acid. The fermenter is two feet in diameter, about 20 feet tall in the tubular section with an expansion chamber of about four feet in diameter and six feet high. It has a working volume of 3,000 liters, and aeration is achieved by a stainless steel perforated plate covering the cross section of the tower and holding up the liquid. The charging wort is fed at the bottom. The vinegar overflows in a quiet Y-shaped area free of rising gas. The unit can produce up to 1 million gallons (*US gallon = 3.785 liters, UK (imperial) gallon = 4.546 liters*) of 5% acetic acid *per annum*. The *Acetobacter* sp. requires a month to adapt to the new system. The system can be batch, semi or fully-continuous without noticeable differences in the quality of the product.

## 24.6 PROCESSING OF VINEGAR

(a) *Clarification and bottling*: Irrespective of the method of manufacture, vinegar for retailing is clarified by careful filtration using a filter aid such as diatomaceous earth. Vinegar from trickling generators are however less turbid than those from submerged fermentations because a high proportion of the bacterial population responsible for the acidification is held back on the shavings. After clarification, it is pasteurized at 60–65°C for 30 minutes.

(b) *Concentration of vinegar*: Vinegar can be concentrated by freezing; thereafter the resulting slurry is centrifuged to separate the ice and produce the concentrate. With this method, 200° grain (i.e. 20% w/v) acetic acid can be produced. Concentration is necessitated by two considerations: one is the consequent reduction in transportation costs, while the other is the need to prevent loss of activity of the vinegar when cucumbers are pickled in it after first being soaked in brine.

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Discuss the biochemistry of vinegar production.
2. List microorganisms that can be employed for vinegar production.
3. List methods employed for vinegar production, and discuss one method of vinegar production in detail.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Asai, T. 1968. Acetic Acid Bacteria. University of Tokyo Press/University Park Press, Baltimore.
- Ebner, H., Sellmer-Wilsberg, S. 1997. Vinegar, Acetic Acid Production. Kirk Othmer's Encyclopedia of Science and Technology. John Wiley, New York, USA.
- Flickinger, M.C., Drew, S.W. (eds.) 1999. Encyclopedia of Bioprocess Technology—Fermentation, Biocatalysis, and Bioseparation. Vol. 1–5. John Wiley, New York, USA.
- Greenshilds, R.N. 1978. *In*: Primary Products of Metabolism. A.H. Rose (ed.) Academic Press New York, USA. pp. 121–186.
- Wagner, F.S. 2002. Acetic Acid. Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Article Online Posting Date: July 19, 2002.
- Webb, A.D. 1997. Vinegar. Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. All rights reserved. Article Online Posting Date: December 4, 2000.

## **Section** G

# Production of Commodities of Medical Importance



# Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

---

## Production of Antibiotics and Anti-Tumor Agents

---

As currently defined, antibiotics are chemicals produced by microorganisms and which in low concentrations are capable of inhibiting the growth of or killing other microorganisms. Although produced by microorganisms, bacteriocins are also not included in this definition, because they are not only larger in molecular size than the usual antibiotics, but they are mainly protein in nature. Furthermore, they affect mainly organisms related to the producing organism. In comparison with bacteriocins, conventional antibiotics are far more diverse in their chemical nature and attack organisms distantly related to themselves. Most importantly, while the information specifying the formation of 'regular' antibiotics is carried on several genes, the genetic data needed for bacteriocins being single proteins is located on a single gene. In the last few years, this definition has been somewhat broadened by some authors to include materials produced by all living things (plants, animals, or microorganisms) which inhibit any cell activity.

Antibiotics may be wholly produced by fermentation. Nowadays however, they are increasingly produced by semi-synthetic processes, in which a product obtained by fermentation is modified by the chemical introduction of side chains. Some antibiotics, e.g. chloramphenicol, were originally produced by fermentation, but are now more cheaply produced by chemical means.

Thousands of antibiotics are known, and every year dozens more are discovered. However, only a small proportion of known antibiotics is used clinically, because the rest are too toxic.

### 25.1 CLASSIFICATION AND NOMENCLATURE OF ANTIBIOTICS

Several methods of antibiotic classification have been adopted by various authors. The mode of action has been used, e.g. whether they act on the cell wall, are protein inhibitors, etc. Several mechanisms of action may operate simultaneously making such a method of classification difficult to sustain. In some cases, they have been classified on the basis of the producing organisms, but the same organism may produce several antibiotics, e.g. the production of penicillin N and cephalosporin by a *Streptomyces* sp. The same antibiotics may also be produced by different organisms. Antibiotics have been classified by routes of biosynthesis; however, several different biosynthetic routes often have large

**Table 25.1** Grouping of antibiotics based on their chemical structures

<i>Chemical Group</i>	<i>Example</i>
Aminoglycosides	Streptomycin
Ansamacrolides	Rifamycin
Beta-lactams	Penicillin
Chloramphenicol and analogues	Chloramphenicol
Linocosaminides	Lincomycin
Macrolides	Erythromycin
Nucleosides	Puromycin
Puromycin	Curamycin
Peptides	Neomycin
Phenazines	Myxin
Polyenes	Amphotericin B
Polyethers	Nigericin
Tetracyclines	Tetracycline

areas of similarity. The spectra of organisms attacked have also been used, e.g. those affecting bacteria, fungi, protozoa, etc. Some antibiotics belonging to a well-known group, e.g. aminoglycosides, may have a different spectrum from the others. Therefore, the classification to be adopted here is based on the chemical structure of the antibiotics and classifies antibiotics into 13 groups. This enables the accommodation of new groups as they are discovered (Table 25.1).

The nomenclature of antibiotics is also highly confusing, as the same antibiotic may have as many as 13 different trade names depending on the manufacturers. Antibiotics are therefore identified by at least three names: the chemical name, which is long and is rarely used except in scientific or medical literature; the second is the group, generic, or common name, usually a shorter form of the chemical name or the one given by the discoverer; the third is the trade or brand name given by the manufacturer to distinguish it from the product of other companies.

The production of antibiotics is a very wide subject and because of space limitations, only beta-lactam antibiotics will be discussed.

## 25.2 BETA-LACTAM ANTIBIOTICS

The Beta-lactam antibiotics are so-called because they have in their structure the four-membered lactam ring. Figure 25.1 shows the structures of the various Beta-lactam antibiotics.

The Beta-lactam structure is not very common in nature and besides the antibiotic groups to be discussed, it is only found in some alkaloids and some anti-metabolite toxins including pachystermines from the higher plant *Pachystradra terminalis*, wild-fire toxin from *Pseudomonas tabaci*, and the anti-tumor antibiotics, phleomycins and bleomycins from *Streptomyces verticillus*.

The Beta-lactam antibiotics include the well-established and clinically important penicillins and cephalosporins as well as some relatively newer members: cephamycins, nocardicins, thienamycins, and clavulanic acid. Except in the case of nocardicins, these antibiotics are

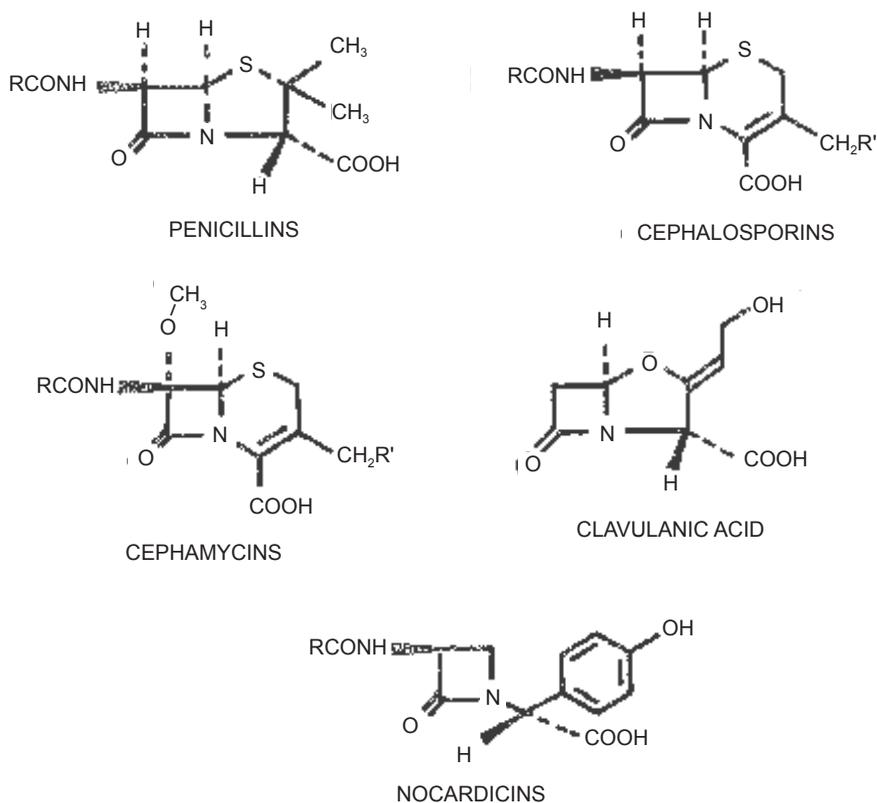


Fig. 25.1 The Beta-lactam Antibiotics

derivatives of bicyclic ring systems in which the lactam ring is fused through a nitrogen atom and a carbon atom to ring compound. This ring compound is five-membered in penicillins (thiazolidine), thienamycins (pyrroline) and clavulanic acid (oxazolidine); it is six-membered (dihydrothiazolidine) in cephalosporins and cephamycins (Fig. 25.1).

The Beta-lactam antibiotics inhibit the formation of the structure-conferring peptidoglycan of the bacterial cell wall. As this component is absent in mammalian cells, Beta-lactam antibiotics have very low toxicity towards mammals.

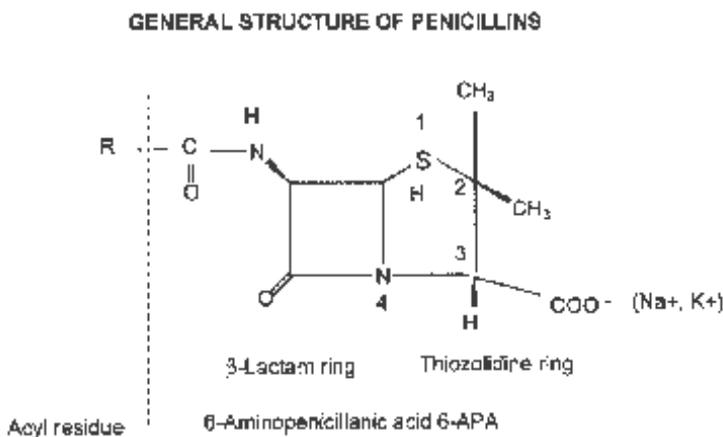
## 25.2.1 Penicillins

### 25.2.1.1 Strain of organism used in penicillin fermentation

In the early days of penicillin production, when the surface culture method was used, a variant of the original culture of *Penicillium notatum* discovered by Sir Alexander Fleming was employed. When however the production shifted to submerged cultivation, a strain of *Penicillium chrysogenum* designated NRRL 1951 (after Northern Regional Research Laboratory of the United States Department of Agriculture) discovered in 1943 was introduced. In submerged culture, it gave a penicillin yield of up to 250 Oxford Units (1 Oxford Unit = 0.5988 of sodium benzyl penicillin) which was two to three times more than given by *Penicillium notatum*. A 'super strain' was produced from a variant of NRRL

1951 and designated X 1612. By ultraviolet irradiation of X-1612, a strain resulted and was named WISQ 176 after the University of Wisconsin where much of the strain development work was done. On further ultra violet irradiation of WISQ 176, BL3-D10 was produced, which produced only 75% as much penicillin as WISQ 176, but whose product lacked the yellow pigment the removal of which had been difficult. Present-day penicillin-producing *P. chrysogenum* strains are far more highly productive than their parents. They were produced through natural selection and mutation using ultra violet irradiation, X-ray irradiation, or nitrogen mustard treatment. It was soon recognized that there were several naturally occurring penicillins: Penicillins G, X, F, and K (Fig. 25.2).

Penicillin G (benzyl penicillin) was selected because it was markedly more effective against pyogenic cocci. Furthermore, higher yields were achieved by supplementing the medium with phenylacetic acid, analogues (phenylalanine and phenethylamine) of which are present in corn steep liquor used to grow penicillin in the United States. Present day penicillin-producing strains are highly unstable, as with most industrial organisms, and



NATURAL PENICILLIN		SEMI SYNTHETIC PENICILLINS	
Designation	N-Acyl residue, R	Designation	N-Acyl residue, R
Benzyl penicillin Penicillin G	<chem>c1ccccc1</chem> - CH <sub>2</sub> - CO -	Ampicillin	<chem>c1ccccc1</chem> - CH(NH <sub>2</sub> ) - CO -
<b>BIOSYNTHETIC PENICILLINS</b>		Methicillin	<chem>COC1=CC=C(C(=O)O)C=C1OC</chem> -
Phenoxy methyl penicillin Penicillin V	<chem>c1ccc(O)cc1</chem> - CH <sub>2</sub> - CO -	Oxacillin	<chem>COC1=CC=C(C(=O)O)C=C1OC</chem> -
Allyl mercaptomethyl penicillin Penicillin O	H <sub>2</sub> C=CH-CH <sub>2</sub> -S-CH <sub>2</sub> -CO-		

Fig. 25.2 Natural and Biosynthetic Penicillins

tend to revert to low-yielding strains especially on repeated agar cultivation. They are therefore commonly stored in liquid nitrogen at  $-196^{\circ}\text{C}$  or the spores may be lyophilized.

Penicillin has since been shown to be produced by a wide range of organisms including the fungi *Aspergillus*, *Malbranchea*, *Cephalosporium*, *Emericellopsis*, *Paecilomyces*, *Trichophyton*, *Anixiopsis*, *Epidermophyton*, *Scopulariopsis*, *Spiroidium* and the actinomycete *Streptomyces*. The only type of penicillin produced by actinomycetes however is Penicillin N usually accompanied by cephamycins and/or deacetyl-3-0-carbamoylcephalosporin C.

### 25.2.1.2 Fermentation for penicillin production

The inoculum is usually built up from lyophilized spores or a frozen culture and developed through vessels of increasing size to a final 5–10% of the fermentation tank. As the antibiotic concentration in the fermentation beer is usually dilute, the tanks are generally large for penicillin and most other antibiotic production. The fermenters vary from 38,000 to 380,000 liters in capacity and in modern establishments are maintained by computerized automation, which monitor various parameters including oxygen content, Beta-lactam content, pH, etc.

The medium for penicillin production now usually has as carbohydrate source glucose, beet molasses, or lactose. The nitrogen is supplied by corn steep liquor. Cotton seed, peanut, linseed, or soybean meals have been used as alternate nitrogen sources. The nitrogen source is sometimes exhausted towards the end of the fermentation and must therefore be replenished. Calcium carbonate or phosphates may be added as a buffer. Sulfur compounds are sometimes added for additional yields since penicillin contains sulfur. The practice nowadays is to add the carbohydrate source intermittently, i.e. using fed-batch fermentation. Lactose is more slowly utilized and does not need to be added intermittently. Glucose suppresses secondary metabolism and excess of it therefore limits penicillin production. The pH is maintained at between 6.8 and 7.4 by the automatic addition of  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  or NaOH as necessary.

Precursors of the appropriate side-chain are added to the fermentation. Thus, if benzyl penicillin is desired, phenyl acetic acid is added. Phenyl acetic acid is nowadays added continuously as too high an amount inhibits the development of the fungus. High yielding strains of *P. chrysogenum* resistant to the precursors have therefore been developed.

Penicillin production is stimulated by the addition of surfactants in a yet unexplained mechanism. The temperature is maintained at about  $25^{\circ}\text{C}$ , but in recent times, it has been found that yields were higher if adjusted according to the growth phase. Thus,  $30\text{--}32^{\circ}\text{C}$  was found suitable for the trophophase and  $24^{\circ}\text{C}$  for the idiophase. Aeration and agitation are vigorous in order to keep the components of the medium in suspension and to maintain yield in the highly aerobic fungus.

Penicillin fermentation can be divided into three phases. The first phase (trophophase) during which rapid growth occurs, lasts for about 30 hours during which mycelia are produced. The second phase (idiophase) lasts for five to seven days; growth is reduced and penicillin is produced. In the third phase, carbon and nitrogen sources are depleted, antibiotic production ceases, the mycelia lyse releasing ammonia, and the pH rises.

### 25.2.1.3 Extraction of penicillin after fermentation

At the end of the fermentation, the broth is transferred to a settling tank. Penicillin is highly reactive and is easily destroyed by alkali conditions (pH 7.5–8.0) or by enzymes.

It is therefore cooled rapidly to 5–10°C. A reduction of the pH to 6 with mineral acids sometimes accompanied by cooling helps also to preserve the antibiotic. The fermentation broth contains a large number of other materials and the method used for the separation of penicillin from them is based on the solubility, adsorption, and ionic properties of penicillin. Since penicillins are monobasic carboxylic acids, they are easily separated by solvent extraction as described below.

The fermentation beer or broth is filtered with a rotary vacuum filter to remove mycelia and other solids, and the resulting broth is adjusted to about pH 2 using a mineral acid. It is then extracted with a smaller volume of an organic solvent such as amyl acetate or butyl acetate keeping it at this very low pH for as short a time as possible. The aqueous phase is separated from the organic solvent usually by centrifugation.

The organic solvent containing the penicillin is then typically passed through charcoal to remove impurities, after which it is back-extracted with a 2% phosphate buffer at pH 7.5. The buffer solution containing the penicillin is then acidified once again with mineral acid (phosphoric acid) and the penicillin is again extracted into an organic solvent (e.g. amyl acetate). The product is transferred into smaller and smaller volumes of the organic solvent with each successive extraction process, and this way, the penicillin becomes concentrated several times over, up to 80–100 times. When it is sufficiently concentrated, the penicillin may be converted to a stable salt form in one of several ways which employ the fact that penicillin is an acid: (a) it can be reacted with a calcium carbonate slurry to give the calcium salt which may be filtered, lyophilized, or spray dried, (b) it may be reacted with sodium or potassium buffers to give the salts of these metals which can also be freeze or spray dried, or (c) it may be precipitated with an organic base such as triethylamine.

When benzyl penicillin is administered intramuscularly, it is given either as the sodium (or potassium) salt or as procaine penicillin. The former gives high blood levels but it quickly excreted. Procaine penicillin gives lower blood levels, but it lasts longer in the body because it is only slowly removed from the blood. It is produced by dissolving sodium or penicillin in procaine hydrochloride.

#### 25.2.1.4 Production of semi-synthetic penicillin

In the late 1940s, it was shown by labeling experiments that phenylacetamide derivatives were directly incorporated into the benzyl penicillin molecule. The possibility was recognized of inducing the mold to produce new antibiotics by the introduction of various precursors. Phenoxymethyl penicillin (penicillin V) which had greater acid stability than penicillin G, allylthiomethyl penicillin (Penicillin O) which was less likely to induce allergic reactions, and butylthiomethyl penicillin (Penicillin S) were thus produced.

In 1959, 6-amino penicillanic acid (6-APA) was isolated from precursor-starved *P. chrysogenum* fermentations and this ushered in the era of semi-synthetic penicillins and indeed other semi-synthetic antibiotics. Today, the only 'natural' penicillins used are benzyl penicillin (Penicillin G) and phenoxymethyl penicillin (Penicillin V). All others are semi-synthetic.

In preparing semi-synthetic penicillins, 6-APA is prepared by cleaving from penicillin G or penicillin V the 6-acyl group by chemical means or with enzymes (acylases) produced by a wide range of microorganisms including bacteria, yeasts, molds, and even mammals (hog kidney acylase). The various acylases have different substrates. Actinomycete and mold acylases usually attack penicillins with aliphatic side-chains, e.g. penicillin V or

phenoxyethyl penicillin (Penicillin); penicillin G is attacked more slowly. On the other hand, bacterial acylases attack penicillin G rapidly. Immobilized enzymes and cells are being used in these processes.

The introduction of the acyl side chain is done by reacting 6-APA with a suitable derivative of a carboxylic acid, usually a chloride, in organic solvents under anhydrous or aqueous conditions. In the latter system it is done in acetone-water mixtures in the presence of sodium bicarbonate. The resulting penicillins can be extracted by solvent extraction as already described, followed by charcoal treatment.

Semi-synthetic penicillins were developed to meet some of the shortcomings of benzyl penicillin. Some of the desired properties were greater intrinsic activity against Gram-positive bacteria, increased antibacterial spectrum including Gram-negative organisms, gastric acid stability, oral absorbability, and resistance to beta-lactamases, i.e. enzymes which open the Beta-lactam ring. All penicillins bind to some extent to the serum albumin and therefore reduce the quantity of the antibiotic available to attack microorganisms. Therefore, the less binding penicillins of otherwise equal activity are, the more bactericidal. The final desirable property is the reduced ability to induce hypersensitivity, a phenomenon which occurs in 9–10% of the population.

## 25.2.2 Cephalosporins

Cephalosporins in general have a broader spectrum than penicillins and are less likely to induce allergic reactions among those who react to penicillins. The first cephalosporin was discovered in 1948 and was produced by *Cephalosporium acremonium*. It was later shown that the organism in fact produced five antibiotics. Five of these were steroids (and therefore hydrophobic) and were active only against Gram-positive bacteria. A hydrophilic component active against both Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria was also found and named Cephalosporin N. While purifying cephalosporin N, another compound, Cephalosporin C, was discovered. It was later found that cephalosporin C was stable to acid and to penicillinase; most importantly, it was active against Gram-negative bacteria although it had about one-tenth the activity of Cephalosporin N against Gram-positives. With further study, Cephalosporin N was found to be a penicillin and renamed Penicillin N. Cephalosporin is now known to be produced by as wide a range of microorganisms as produce penicillins and these include fungi and actinomycetes.

### 25.2.2.1 Production of cephalosporin

All cephalosporins in use are semi-synthetic. However, they have as their starting point Cephalosporin C which is produced by fermentation.

### 25.2.2.2 Strain of organism used

The original strain of *Cephalosporium acremonium* (C MI 49, 137—Common Wealth Mycological Institute, Kew Gardens, London) produced by violet mutagenesis *C. acremonium* 8650. This latter organism is the parent of most of the various commercially used *C. acremonium*. In passing, Cephamycins are produced by *Streptomyces lipmanni* and *S. clavuligenis*.

### 25.2.2.3 Fermentation

The medium used for cephalosporin fermentation is same as used for penicillin N. However, paraffins have been used to produce several cephalosporins. Methionine, arginine, ornithine, spermine, cadaverine, and lysine have been shown to increase cephalosporin production.

### 25.2.2.4 Extraction of cephalosporin after fermentation

While penicillins are carboxylic acids, cephalosporin C is amphoteric having both alkaline and acidic properties. For this reason, it cannot be extracted directly into organic solvents. Cephalosporin C is more commonly isolated by ion exchange and precipitation. The broth is acidified to a low pH after filter-aid filtration in a rotary vacuum filter. The broth usually contains penicillin N and deactylcephalosporin. The low pH destroys penicillin N and converts the deactylcephalosporin to cephalosporin G.

While 6-APA can be made during fermentation by starving *P. chrysogenum* of the side-chain precursor, 7-amino cephalosporanic acid (7-ACA) cannot be produced by fermentation even if precursors are not added; neither can it be produced by the enzymatic side-chain cleavage as with 6-APA. The production of 6-amino cephalosporanic acid is therefore by chemical means. 7-ACA is obtained by the chemical removal of the alpha-amino-adipic side chain of cephalosporin when preparing cephalosporins which have alpha-3 acetoxymethyl group or a derivative from it. However, cephalosporins with a 3-methyl substituent (deacetoxy-cephalosporanic acids) are derived from penicillins. The more complex nature of cephalosporins in comparison with penicillins offers greater opportunities for the production of semi synthetics and besides 6-ACA, 6-ADCA (6 amino decephalosporanic acid) is also used as a basis for the production of semi synthetic cephalosporins. The methods of their preparation are similar to those described for the semi-synthetic penicillins.

### 25.2.2.5 Use of cephalosporins

Among cephalosporins, cephalothin occupies the same position as benzyl-penicillin, which continues to be widely used despite some of its deficiencies and the presence of newer products. Cephalothin is broad-spectrum although ineffective against some Gram-negative organisms such as *Proteus* and *Pseudomonas*. It is administered preferably intravenously because it is poorly absorbed and because intramuscular pain is high in some individuals. New cephalosporins have been produced which are effective against Gram-negative organisms, e.g. cefazolin and cefenandole. Oral cephalosporins include cefatrizine and cefachlor.

## 25.2.3 Other Beta-Lactam Antibiotics

### 25.2.3.1 Cephamycins (7-Methoxycephalosporins)

Three cepham antibiotics produced by *Streptomyces* were discovered in 1971. A cepham with a methoxy group at position C-7 was produced by *Streptomyces lipmanni*, while *Streptomyces clavuligenis* produced cephalosporin (A-16886-A) and 7-methoxycephalosporin (A-16886-B) with carbamoyloxymethyl function at the C-3 position. Penicillin N was

produced simultaneously in both strains. Soon afterwards, several species of *Streptomyces* able to produce 7-methoxycephalosporins were found (Fig. 25.1).

As with other cephams and penicillin N, the production of cephamycins is stimulated by methionine. They are generally broad-spectrum though the extent to which they affect Gram-positive and Gram-negative organisms varies among different compounds in the group. Cephamycin C is for instance especially active against *Proteus* and *E. coli*. They are resistant to hydrolysis by cephalosporinases produced by cephalosporin-resistant bacteria. Currently, they appear most important as starting points for the synthesis of new semi-synthetic cephams.

### 25.2.3.2 Nocardicin

The nocardicins were first isolated in 1976 using a super sensitive mutant strain of *E. coli*, strain Es-11, whose minimum inhibitory concentrations on penicillin G, Cephalosporin and Nocardicin A were 0.8, 0.4, and 0.4 µg/ml, respectively. They are produced by *Nocardia uniformis* subspecies *suyamanensis*. This antibiotic is novel among the Beta-lactams (Fig. 25.1) in that it is monocyclic (i.e. no ring is fused to the Beta-lactam ring). In comparison with the cepham cephalazolin, it is highly effective against the Gram-negative *Proteus* and *Shigella* but has limited activity against *Pseudomonas*. An enhanced activity occurs however when *Pseudomonas* is treated *in vivo*. Against Gram-positive bacteria, yeasts, and molds, it is completely ineffective. Nocardicin A and B differ slightly in their structures and are non-toxic to mammals.

### 25.2.3.3 Clavulanic acid

This antibiotic was first described in 1976 using another novel method of isolation. In this method, agar plates containing 10 µg/ml of benzylpenicillin are seeded with Beta-lactamase producing *Klebsiella aerogenes*. Test samples which did not inhibit the organisms without the introduced penicillin give a zone of inhibition on the test plate, when a diffusible Beta-lactamase inhibitor was present. Clavulanic acid, cephalosporins, and penicillin N are produced by strains of *Streptomyces clavuligerus* using the above method. Clavulanic acid was not however discovered with the classical method. It is a weak antibiotic but has broad-spectrum activity against bacteria. Structurally, it resembles cephalosporins.

### 25.2.3.4 Thienamycins

Thienamycin was first described in 1976. Like the cephalosporins and the cephamycins, it was discovered as a fermentation product with broad spectrum activity and was produced by *Streptomyces cattleya*. Thienamycins are reported to be broad spectrum even at lower concentrations while being as non-toxic as the known natural and semi-synthetic Beta-lactams.

## 25.3 THE SEARCH FOR NEW ANTIBIOTICS

In the 1970s, the view was that the fight against communicable diseases was about to be won. The rates of bacterial disease were falling due to vaccinations and the effectiveness of the available antibiotics. Many pharmaceutical companies decided to focus attention away from

antimicrobial drug production as there seemed to be little need for new compounds. The situation has changed and now, there appears an urgent need for new antimicrobial drugs.

### **25.3.1 The Need for New Antibiotics**

#### **25.3.1.1 The problem of multiple resistances to existing antibiotics**

Microorganisms have developed multiple resistance to many of the antibiotics currently in common use. This is due to several factors, some inherent in the nature of microorganisms, others relating to use (or misuse) of antibiotics by humans. Some of the factors pertaining to the human use of antibiotics include the wide-spread and sometimes unnecessary use of antibiotics, the prophylactic use of antibiotics, and the use of low doses of antibiotics for encouraging the growth of farm animals. In the case of bacteria, their sheer numbers mean that there is a potentially large number of genotypes waiting to be selected and their short generation time fuels the rapidity of this selection. Finally, their ability to horizontally transfer genetic materials through plasmids, transposons, and by conjugation and transformation sets the stage for the (almost) inevitable development of resistance among microorganisms, especially bacteria.

#### **25.3.1.2 The development of previously non-pathogenic microorganisms into pathogens**

As clinical practice now uses more invasive methods and people live longer, more and more people now depend on adequate antimicrobial coverage. Especially in patients who are immunocompromised, microorganisms which were previously non-pathogenic or ordinary commensals have become pathogens due to the widespread use of antibiotics. Thus, *Proteus* sp., *Acinetobacter* sp., and yeasts have all gained new status as pathogens, especially in intensive care units.

#### **25.3.1.3 Need to develop antifungal antibiotics**

Currently, there are few satisfactory systemic antifungal and antiviral antibiotics. In the case of antifungal agents, currently few satisfactory systemic antifungal antibiotics outside Amphotericin B seem to exist; even Amphotericin B is not always efficacious. There is a similar lack in antivirals.

#### **25.3.1.4 Need to develop antibiotics specifically for agricultural purposes**

The growing needs for antibiotics used in agriculture for combating plant diseases, in animal feeds, and in veterinary practice dictate that antibiotics be found specially for food production, but not for human medicine because of the problem of resistance.

#### **25.3.1.5 Need for antitumor and anti-parasitic drugs**

Although microbial metabolites for combating tumors, helminthes, and parasites cannot be strictly described as antibiotics in the conventional sense, their production by the

fermentation of microorganisms may allow the loose use of the term antitumor antibiotics and anti-helminthes antibiotics. Antibiotics need to be produced from microorganisms for these purposes.

### 25.3.2 The Classical Method for Searching for Antibiotics: Random Search in the Soil

The classical method for the search for new antibiotics is by random search in the soil. This method will be described briefly below as a setting for more recent methods.

Although the first important commercially produced antibiotic was discovered by chance, most present day antibiotics were discovered by systematic search. The soil is a vast repository of microorganisms, and it is the soil that search addresses when antibiotics are being sought. The stages to be discussed below are not necessarily rigidly followed; they are merely meant to indicate in a general manner some of the activities involved in the development of antibiotics. The most important are:

(i) *The primary screening:* Several methods have been employed in primary screening.

- (a) **The crowded plate:** This method is used to isolate soil organisms able to produce antibiotics from other soil organisms. A heavy aqueous suspension (1:10; 1:100) of soil is plated on agar ensuring as much development of confluent growth as possible. Organisms showing clear zones around them are isolated for further study. Different groups of organisms could be encouraged to develop by altering the media used. This method has the disadvantage that slow-growing antibiotic-producing organisms such as actinomycetes are usually overgrown and are therefore rarely isolated. Furthermore, the test organisms used in this method are soil organisms. The susceptibility of soil organisms to the antibiotics produced in the test may therefore be unrelated to the susceptibility of clinically important organisms.
- (b) **The direct-soil-inoculation method:** This method is used when the aim is to isolate antibiotics against a known organism or organisms. Pour plates containing the test organisms are prepared. Soil crumbs or soil dilutions are then placed on the plates. Antibiotic producing organisms develop which then inhibit the growth of the organisms in the plate. They are recognized by the cleared zone which they produce around themselves and they may then be picked out.
- (c) **The cross-streak method:** This method is used for testing individual isolates, especially actinomycetes which may be obtained from soil without any previous knowledge of their antibiotic-producing potential. The organism may come from one of the two methods already indicated above.

The purified isolate is streaked across the upper third of plate containing a medium which supports its growth as well as that of the test organisms. A variety of media may be used for streaking the antibiotic producer. It is allowed to grow for up to seven days, in which time any antibiotic produced would have diffused a considerable distance from the streak. Test organisms are streaked at right angles to the original isolates and the extent of the inhibition of the various test organisms is observed.

- (d) **The agar plug method:** This method is particularly useful when the test organism grows poorly in the medium of the growth of the isolate such as fungi. Plugs about 0.5 cm in diameter are made with a sterile cork-borer at progressive distances from the fungus. These plugs are then placed on plates with pure cultures of different

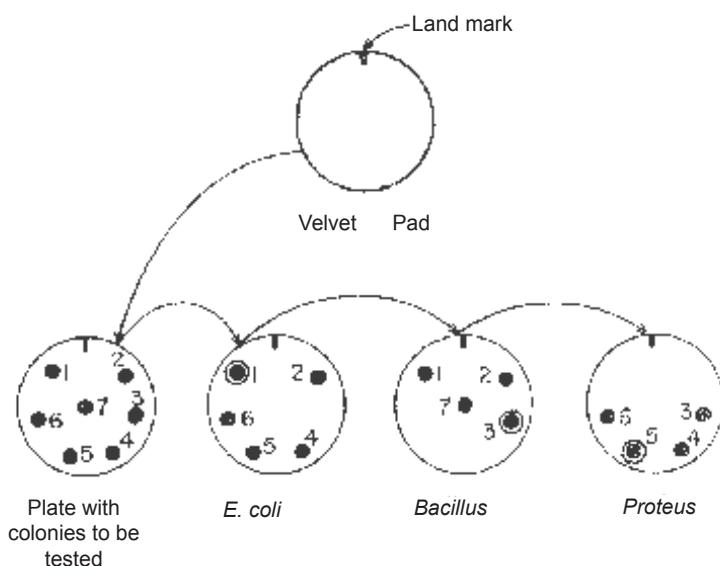
organisms. The diameters of zones of clearing are used as a measure of antibiotic production of the isolate. The method may be used with actinomycetes.

- (e) **The replica plating method:** If a large number of organisms are to undergo primary screening, one rapid method is the use of replica plating. The method consists of placing a sterile velvet pad on the colonies formed in the crowded plate or soil inoculation plate, or on series of discrete colonies to be tested for antibiotic properties. The pad is thereafter carefully touched on four or five plates seeded with the test organisms. As a landmark is placed on the pad as well as on the plates, it is possible to tell which colonies are causing the cleared zones on the tested plates (Fig. 25.3).

(ii) **Secondary screening:** Organisms showing suitably wide zones of clearing against selected target organisms are cultivated in broth culture in shake flasks using components of the solid medium in which the isolate grew best. Crude methods of isolating the active antibiotic are developed by extracting the broth using a wide range of extractive methods. With each extraction, the resultant material is assessed for activity against the target organisms at various dilutions. The extract is either spotted on filter paper discs placed on agar seeded with the test organism or introduced into wells dug out from the seeded agar with sterile cork-borers. In this manner, the most efficient extractive methods and the spectrum of activity of the organisms are determined.

Secondary screening is aimed at eliminating at an early stage any antibiotic which does not appear promising either by virtue of low activity, other undesirable properties, or because it has been discovered previously.

**Antibiotic spectrum:** The minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) is a means of determining the activity of the isolated antibiotic and comparing this activity with those of existing



Colonies 1 - 7 are transferred by a velvet pad to plates seeded with *E. coli*, *Bacillus* sp., and *Proteus* sp. respectively. Note that colonies 1,5,7 produce dear zones in *E. coli*, *Bacillus* sp., and *Proteus* sp. respectively.

**Fig. 25.3** Replica Plating Method of Testing Antibiotic Producing Colonies

antibiotics. Tests involving agar diffusion such as filter paper discs or agar wells described above are rapid and very useful for initial screening. However, they involve not only the intrinsic antimicrobial potency of the antibiotic produced but also its ability to diffuse through agar. The MIC has the advantage that it is performed in broth thereby eliminating the disadvantage of large-molecule slower-diffusing antibiotics.

**(iii) Other properties:** The other qualities of the antibiotic outside antimicrobial activity depend on its intended use. For antibiotics meant for clinical use, information on a number of the following may be sought at this stage:

- (a) Toxicity to mammals, determined by intra peritoneal injection into animals.
- (b) Hemolysis is tested by observing the effect on blood agar.
- (c) Serum binding is tested by adding serum to the broth before testing against susceptible organisms.
- (d) The inactivation of the antibiotic by several enzymes from various organs is tested by exposing the antibiotic to them.
- (e) Acid stability is tested if the antibiotic is meant for oral administration.
- (f) Teratogenicity tests which determine the effect on the unborn are carried out with laboratory animals.
- (g) For plant antibiotics, phytotoxicity as shown by damage to leaves in the laboratory and in the green house, is determined;
- (h) For feed antibiotics, low absorbability and low toxicity are desirable and therefore tested.

Several other tests designed to certify the safety of administering the antibiotic may be carried out at this stage or performed later.

As part of the secondary screening, initial studies on the chemical nature of the crude antibiotics are performed using paper chromatography, ultraviolet absorption, solubility in acid and alkali, optical rotation, infrared absorption, NMR, etc. The aim of this study is identify a potentially already known antibiotic. As has been shown previously, the same antibiotic is often produced by a large number of different organisms.

**(iv) Further laboratory evaluation:** If after all the above the antibiotic is promising, then further experimentation is done in shake flasks as a preparation for pilot production. The optimal conditions of growth are determined: the most suitable medium, optimal pH, temperature, length of fermentation, etc. are all determined.

**(v) Pilot plant production:** The results obtained in previous experimentation are fed into the pilot plant. The material produced is subjected to further safety tests and chemical analysis. Enough materials are made available for the structure to be determined.

Methods for the isolation are improved and perfected. Clinical tests on a limited scale may be carried out at this stage. *The Journal of Antibiotics* regularly carries several articles describing the procedures for the chemical analysis of many new antibiotics. Unless the organism is already known, it is also described and may be named. The mode of action, the route of biosynthesis, and strain improvement are undertaken, but the production of a good antibiotic does not await their successful completion.

**(vi) Plant production:** The production plant utilizes all the information obtained in the pilot experimentation.

(vii) *Certification*: A government agency must approve the antibiotic before it becomes available for general use. In the US, it is the Food and Drug Administration. In the UK and EU countries, it is the European Medicines Agency (EMA) which was established in 1993 and is based in London.

(viii) *Marketing and financing*: The marketing and financing of the business are of paramount importance since the aim of the producing firm is profit maximization.

## 25.4 COMBATING RESISTANCE AND EXPANDING THE EFFECTIVENESS OF EXISTING ANTIBIOTICS

Many ways have been devised to combat microbial resistance to existing antibiotics or expand the effectiveness and to discover new ones. These include modifying the procedures for the classical search in soil, searching for antibiotics in novel environments, and chemically manipulating the antibiotics directly or through using mutant microorganisms.

### 25.4.1 Refinements in the Procedures for the Random Search for New Antibiotics in the Soil

To increase the chances of finding new antibiotic-producing organisms, some refinements of the classical methods of searching for antibiotic producers were introduced as shown below.

#### 25.4.1.1 The use of supersensitive mutants

By using supersensitive strains of test organisms, organisms producing only small amounts of an antibiotic may be detected. Antibiotics so produced are useful because they may have a wider spectrum than those of the same class already in existence. Furthermore, they may provide better substrates for semi or muta-synthesis. This method has led to the discovery of novel Beta-lactam antibiotics, thienamycin, olivanic acid, nocardicins, clavulanic acid, etc. It is remarkable that several natural clavulanic acid type compounds (e.g. 2-hydroxymethylclavam) have significant antifungal properties. The use of supersensitive mutants has shown that Beta-lactam antibiotics are produced by a wider spectrum of organisms—ascmycetes, fungi imperfecti, and actinomycetes—than was previously thought.

#### 25.4.1.2 The application of criteria other than death or inhibition

Reactions such as irregular growth of the fungal mycelium, inhibition of sporulation, or some readily ascertainable deficiency rather than death may be used to follow the antibiotic effect. When anti-fungal antibiotics are sought, the clear zone principle is employed using yeasts or fungal spores in the test plate. With this method, the existing antifungal antibiotics, namely polyenes as well as cycloheximide and actimycins were found. If criteria less drastic than death, e.g. abnormal growth of hyphae or inhibition of zygospore formation are applied, a wide range of antibiotics may be found. Thus, some new antibiotics have been found in actinomycetes including boromycin, venturicidin, and nikkomycin with this method.

### **25.4.1.3 Search for antibiotics effective in conjunction with other antibiotics**

Some antibiotics while being effective are not permeable through the wall of the test organism or the pathogen. Such antibiotics should be sought in nature by using test-organisms with deficient cell walls, protoplasts, or by the incorporation of detergents or EDTA which enable the permeation of antibiotics into the organism. When they are discovered, they can be made permeable by using them in conjunction with wall-inhibiting antibiotics or compounds or coupling them to compounds which bacteria ingest by active transport.

### **25.4.1.4 Use of organisms of recent clinical importance as test organisms**

The classical search used routine organisms such as *E. coli* and *Bacillus*. As has been shown, this resulted in the discovery of fewer and fewer new antibiotics. In recent times, new organisms previously of little importance in clinical practice have emerged, due to the widespread use of antibiotics, as important medical organisms. These include anaerobes, Gram-negatives, e.g. *Proteus*, Beta-lactamase producing gonococci, facultatives, hemolysis, etc.

## **25.4.2 Newer Approaches to the Search for Antibiotics**

In spite of the above mentioned modifications and refinements in the classical methods for searching for new antibiotics, antibiotics with new structures were not discovered and cross-resistance among the available antibiotics continues to occur. In recent times, some newer approaches to discovering new antibiotics have been adopted.

### **25.4.2.1 Search in novel environments**

Systematic search for antibiotics is usually from soil. Other natural bodies exist which can provide novel organisms. Two of such habitats will be discussed in this section, namely the sea and white blood cells.

#### **25.4.2.1.1 The sea as a habitat for prospecting for microorganisms producing antibiotics (and other drugs)**

The seas and oceans occupy 70% of the earth surface. Until recently, they were not exploited as sources of antibiotic-producing organisms. They are not only twice the land area of the earth, they contain large amounts of salt and other mineral nutrients, have fairly constant temperature, and have a higher hydrostatic pressure and less sunlight in the deeper regions. The coastal area is constantly changing with tides and such areas should be expected to contain a wide variety of organisms peculiar to the littoral environment.

Although deep ocean exploration is still in its infancy, many scientists now believe that the deep sea harbors some of the most diverse ecosystems on Earth. This diversity holds tremendous potential for human benefit. More than 15,000 natural products have been discovered from marine microbes, algae, and invertebrates, and this number continues to

grow. The uses of marine-derived compounds vary, but the most exciting potential uses lie in the medical realm. More than 28 marine natural products are currently being tested in human clinical trials with many more in various stages of preclinical development. To date, most marketed marine products have come from shallow-water and often tropical marine organisms due mainly to the ease of collecting them. But increasing scientific interest is now being focused on the potential medical uses of organisms found in the deep sea much of which lies in international waters. These organisms have developed unique adaptations that enable them to survive in dark, cold, and highly pressurized environments. Their novel biology offers a wealth of opportunities for pharmaceutical and medical research and a growing body of scientific evidence suggests that deep sea biodiversity holds major promise. Nevertheless, the search for antibiotics in the sea has indeed led to the discovery of new and unique antibiotics. These include antibiotic SS-228R from *Chainia* sp. effective against Gram-positive bacteria and tumors, bromopyrrole from a marine *Pseudomonas*, and leptosphaenin from marine fungi.

#### 25.4.2.1.2 Antibiotic sources other than microorganisms: bactericidal/permeability increasing protein (BPI)

Antibiotics are produced also by higher organisms like plants and animals, and they also should be screened by the regular method of antibiotic screening. However because of established practice, antibiotics from such higher organisms have been usually screened for antitumor and antiviral activity. Nothing intrinsic in materials from higher organisms should stop them from acting against microorganisms in suitable cases. In this section, bactericidal/permeability increasing protein (BPI) will be discussed as an example of a novel antimicrobial agent derived from a living thing higher than microorganisms. BPI is a protein and has been studied for several decades. It is derived from the white blood cells, namely polymorphonuclear leukocytes, the primary phagocytic white blood cells responsible for part of the body's innate immune response. BPI has great affinity for the lipopolysaccharide layer (LPS) of Gram-negative bacteria. It immediately arrests the growth of Gram-negative bacteria, increases the permeability of the outer and inner membranes of the Gram-negative bacterial wall, and eventually kills the organism. It is attractive as a possible antibiotic for several reasons. First, it is highly potent and specific against Gram-negative bacteria, which include many important human pathogens. It is at least 10 times more potent than any known mammalian anti-microbial protein or peptide. Second, it is non-toxic to mammalian cells. Third, it maintains its anti-microbial activity in the complex environment of body fluids, unlike many mammalian anti-microbial agents. Finally, it is not only a potent antimicrobial agent, but it also reduces the effect of the inflammatory response known as 'septic shock' which the lipopolysaccharide of the Gram-negative cell wall induces in patients. None of the other proteins able to bind to the Gram-negative lipopolysaccharide is able to neutralize the effect of toxic shock. It is currently at the stage of clinical trials.

#### 25.4.3 Chemically Modifying Existing Antibiotic: The Production of Semi-synthetic Antibiotics

The production of a semi-synthetic antibiotic involves the use of a fermentation-derived antibiotic, which is then modified by the addition of side chain to give rise to an antibiotic

with new properties. A well-known example is the modification of penicillin G to 6-APA and the subsequent use of chemical reaction to produce semi-synthetic penicillin. Another example achieved in a different manner is the chemical alteration of specific sites in an antibiotic in order to render the antibiotic immune to an enzyme which destroys it, as is done with streptomycin.

#### 25.4.4 Modifying an Existing Antibiotic Through Synthesis by Mutant Organisms: Mutasynthesis

In this method, a mutant of an antibiotic producing organism is fed different precursors leading to the production of new antibiotics. Since the original production of hybridicins from the neomycin synthesizing *Streptomyces fradiae*, this method has been used in the production of paromomycin by *S. rimosus*, ribostamycin by *S. ribosidificus*, and butrosin by *Bacillus circulans*.

### 25.5 ANTITUMOR ANTIBIOTICS

#### 25.5.1 Nature of Tumors

Each cell in the animal (and human) body has a definite function which it carries out in cooperation with other cells. Thus, the brain, the skin, and the intestines are composed of specialized cells which cooperate to carry the functions of these organs. Sometimes however, a cell in any part of the body may no longer cooperate with others with which it normally functions in an organ. Such cells divide indiscriminately and independently of the others to form a structure called a *tumor* or a *neoplasm*. Sometimes, the body restricts the growth of tumors by forming a capsule round them. Under these conditions, they do not spread: they are known as *benign* tumors. However, other tumors grow rapidly and are not restricted by a capsule. Such tumors are *malignant*. The cells in malignant tumors often break off and are carried via blood vessels and lymphatic vessels to other parts of the body where they initiate new tumors. When such secondary growth occurs away from the primary tumor, the situation is known as metastasis. Tumors are further classified according to the type of tissue they attack. Some of these will be mentioned: a malignant tumor composed of epithelial cells is called a *cancer* or a *carcinoma*. *Adenocarcinomas* are tumors formed around the mucous membranes such as in the alimentary canals. *Sarcomas* are connective tissue tumors. The term 'hard' tumor is sometimes used to distinguish neoplasms formed in the solid parts of the body such as the gut, bones, brain, etc. from those of blood such as leukemia which is a neoplasm of the white blood cells. Neoplasms are treated by one or more of three methods: (1) by surgery to remove the cancer; (2) by radiation which aims at selectively destroying the cancer cells, and (3) by chemotherapy or the use of chemicals which affect the tumor cells without damaging the normal cells. When such chemicals are produced by microorganisms, they are called antitumor antibiotics. Chemotherapy is particularly useful when the disease has metastasized to several sites in the body so that it becomes practically impossible to achieve any success by surgery or by radiation. It is also used after treatment by surgery or radiation to attack those cancerous cells missed by the other two treatments. Many of the chemotherapeutic agents used in cancer treatment are secondary metabolites produced by microorganisms, especially of the genus *Streptomyces*. This chapter is concerned with these metabolites known as antitumor antibiotics.

### 25.5.2 Mode of Action of Antitumor Antibiotics

The antitumor antibiotics are heterogeneous in their chemical natures. Some of the best known groups used in clinical practice include anthracyclines, actinomycins, and bleomycins. In terms of their modes of action, their common characteristic seems to be interaction in some form with DNA. Daunomycin and adriamycin which are anthracyclines link up base pairs and thus inhibit RNA and DNA synthesis. Mithramycin and chromomycin A<sub>3</sub> which are actinomycins inhibit DNA-dependent RNA synthesis. On the other hand, bleomycins which are peptides react with DNA and cause it to break. Other antitumor antibiotics operate through alkylation, e.g. streptonigrin, mitomycin C, and profiromycin. Still others interfere with membrane functions or interact with the microtubules in the cell.

The basis of all chemotherapy whether with antibacterial or with antitumor drugs is the ability of the drugs to selectively attack the pathogen or the errant tumor cell. In the well-known case of penicillin for example, the absence of mucopeptides in animal cell wall is the key to the operation of the drug. Several mechanisms have been suggested which allow the selective attack of antitumor drugs on tumor cells. These include inability of the tumor cell to repair damage by the antitumor drug, higher distribution of the drug in tumor than in normal cells, greater ability to inactivate tumor cells. These are based on structural and biochemical differences between normal and tumor cells. Unfortunately, antitumor antibiotics as well as other antitumor drugs do not always discriminate successfully between tumor and normal cells. Varying degrees of toxicity therefore usually accompany the use of antitumor antibiotics. The most severe of these is damage to the bone marrow which is involved in synthesis of blood components, a damage that may be fatal. Toxicity is in many cases being successfully handled clinically by various means including reduced dosage, change of route of administration, etc. Less toxic antibiotics are also being produced by semi-synthesis or by the modification of the antibiotic molecule.

### 25.5.3 Search for New Antitumor Antibiotics

The search for antitumor antibiotics is more difficult than that of antibacterial or anti-fungal agents in terms of methodology and interpretation. In the search for the latter agents, it is usually possible to isolate the pathogen from the diseased animal and test the isolate against a wide range of possible antibiotics *in vitro* and *in vivo* in experimental animals. In general, an antibiotic successfully tested *in vivo* in experimental animals will be expected to be reasonably efficacious in treating human disease. In the case of antitumor agents, the relationship is not so straightforward.

#### 25.5.3.1 Screening of potential antibiotic producing organism

A wide variety of microorganisms is obtained from all over the world and their fermentation broth is evaluated for the presence of antitumor drugs. Cultures whose identities are established as well as those still to be established are obtained from culture collections and individual scientists around the world. Fresh isolations are also made from natural habitats including soil, aquatic, and other environments.

For the isolation (and often the maintenance) of the organisms, a wide variety of carbon sources is used. Especially in well-studied groups, such as actinomycetes, novel carbon sources are used in the hope that fermentation broth may contain some antitumor antibiotic as a result of the blockage of certain pathways or the enhancement of others.

Such carbon sources include monosaccharides, glycosides, substituted sugars, polyhydric alcohols, oligosaccharides, terpenes, and hydrocarbons.

Isolations of microorganisms are done by sprinkling soil on plates containing the above carbon sources. Perfusion technique in which soil is bathed constantly with a solution containing the chosen carbon source may also be used. Isolates are grown in shake flasks using the various carbon sources and a variety of environmental conditions including pH, minerals, temperature, nitrogen sources, and aeration.

#### 25.5.3.1.1 *In vitro* prescreening

Since large numbers of samples are generated, it would be extremely expensive to test them directly in tumor-bearing animals. Prescreens are therefore used. Such prescreens should ideally select the broths successfully containing potential *in vivo* active components, should be relatively inexpensive in terms of money and time, and should require only small quantities of the test broth. *In vitro* screens are also used to follow the course of fermentation. *In vitro* methods are particularly essential because the frequency of occurrence of active antitumor components in fermentation beers is low, and when present at all, the concentration especially initially is also low. Some of the *in vitro* screening methods which are currently in use are as follows:

(i) *Use of antimicrobial activity as prescreens:* As most antitumor agents will also inhibit microorganisms, the latter came to be used during the early stages of the search for these drugs. Indeed, a number of drugs possessing carcinostatic properties were first isolated as antimicrobial agents. These include actinobolin, cycloheximide, and actinomycin. Azaserine was the first antitumor drug isolated following activity against a bacterium, which in this case was *E. coli*. A wide range of microorganisms can be and indeed have been used in prescreens. However, many groups favor using a set containing a few microorganisms to facilitate the identification by 'fingerprinting' of already discovered antibiotics. A set of microorganisms which has been used include *Bacillus subtilis* ATCC 6633, *Sarcina lutea* ATCC 9341, *Torulopsis albida* NRRL Y1400, and *Escherichia coli* M 1262.

The beer to be tested is spotted on filter paper discs placed on freshly made pour plates of these organisms or in agar wells dug from such plates. The extent of the inhibition is determined by the diameter of the zone of clearing.

(ii) *Anti-metabolite activity:* The use of anti-metabolites as prescreens was based on the observation that some drugs or broths, which did not inhibit microorganisms in complex media such as nutrient agar, did so on synthetic minimal media. It was soon shown that by adding various compounds to the minimal medium, it was possible to determine the missing metabolite. Broth samples are incorporated into rich agar and minimal agar, respectively. Those broths which are more active against susceptible microorganisms in synthetic minimal medium are regarded as potential leads. This methods led to the discovery of 5-Azacytidine, and its principal advantage is that at an early stage, it gives an idea of the mode of action of the active component of the broth.

(iii) *Inhibition of tumor cells in culture:* The ability of the broth to inhibit animal tumor cells in tissue culture is tested. Among cells which have been used are L1240 (mouse leukemia cells), KB (human carcinoma cells of the nasopharynx), and p388 mouse leukemia cells. L1240 appears to be most widely used. The tumor cells are grown in liquid culture with and without the broth over a period of about three days. They are then counted in a coulter

counter. The potency of the same is given as  $ID_{50}$  or  $ID_{90}$  meaning the dilution that will cause 50% or 90% inhibition of growth as compared with control.

(iv) *Nuclear cytotoxicity*: Instead of using cell cultures, nuclei from tumor cells can be isolated and the broth tested against these. Isolation may be achieved using citric acid, detergents, organic solvents, and glycerol. The limitation of the system is that it can be used to detect only those agents which in some way affect nuclear synthesis. It however lends some insight into the mode of action of the agent.

### 25.5.3.2 Fingerprinting of antitumor antibiotics in culture

Broths with some activity identified by any of the prescreening methods described above are subjected to 'fingerprinting' or 'dereplication' in order to avoid the isolation of already known antibiotics. The data used include the following:

- (i) The antimicrobial spectrum of the active components of the broth is determined using a set of microorganisms. Besides bacteria and yeasts, some studies utilize protozoa and algae.
- (ii) The characteristics of the culture used in the fermentation.
- (iii) Chromatographic analyses of the broth using paper, thin layer, and high performance liquid chromatography.
- (iv) Ultraviolet absorption.

### 25.5.3.3 *In vivo* assessment

If the results of the fingerprinting indicate that the active components are new, then *in vitro* testing is done. The one common characteristic of tumors or neoplasms is the uncontrolled growth of cells. Outside this property, they are in fact biologically heterogeneous in terms of site of origin, cell type involved, the course of the disease, or response to curative procedures. Therefore, in assessing active components *in vivo*, this diversity is acknowledged by testing various types of artificially induced tumors usually in mice. These include mouse tumors of the colon, breast, lungs, and white blood cells (leukemia). Human cancer from the colon, breast, and lungs are also grafted on these regions of mice whose thymus glands have been removed to avoid rejection of the grafts.

Often, it is necessary to have an *in vivo* prescreen before subjecting the broth to the abovementioned tests. Some studies have found that mouse leukemia P388 is more sensitive as an *in vivo* prescreen than L1240.

The parameters for *in vivo* tests are increased lifespan of the animal or tumor growth inhibition as measured by tumor weight inhibition over the control.

The *in vivo* test is expensive in time and money. It takes three to four weeks to perform, whereas cell or microbial cultures take about three days or less.

### 25.5.3.4 Extraction and manipulation of the pure drug

Since the active component may often be present in very low concentrations, it is necessary to obtain the active component in the broth in a reasonably pure form. Subsequent to this, it is characterized chemically and then subjected to further animal tests before being

assessed clinically. Since many antitumor antibiotics have serious side effects, analogues of the drugs are produced and modifications to the molecule are then carried out. Other procedures, e.g. improvement in the environmental conditions of the broth, development of optimum isolation procedures, scale up, sales, etc. are carried out as for antimicrobial antibiotics.

### **25.5.3.5 Towards a new definition of 'antibiotic'**

The current definition of the term 'antibiotic' which restricts them to chemicals produced by microorganisms is credited to Waksman who had won the Nobel Prize for discovering streptomycin. However, when screenings have been done outside microorganisms, the higher organisms so screened have been shown to produce antimicrobial substances. Such substances are low molecular weight secondary metabolites in the same way as regular antibiotics are. Therefore, there is now a tendency to extend the term antibiotic to all secondary metabolites, irrespective of their origin, which are able to inhibit various growth processes at low concentration. In addition to that, even wholly synthetic antimicrobials such as ciprofloxacin are now legitimately termed antibiotics. The word antibiotic derives from two origins, anti (against) and bios (life). Nothing in the word itself restricts antibiotics either in origin or use to microbial life.

## **25.6 NEWER METHODS FOR THE SEARCH FOR ANTIBIOTIC AND ANTITUMOR DRUGS**

Recently, newer methods have been developed for searching for new antibiotics, anti-tumor agents, and other drugs. These methods include computer-aided drug designing, synthesis of new drugs by combinatorial chemistry, and genome-based methods.

### **END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS**

1. Discuss the difficulties concerning the classification of antibiotics.
2. Describe the mode of action of beta-lactam antibiotics and what make them selectively useful in treatment of human diseases.
3. What role do precursors play in the manufacture of penicillin by microbial fermentation?
4. Briefly describe the three phases of penicillin fermentation.
5. What are the advantages of semi-synthetic penicillin over natural penicillin?
6. Why are cephalosporins preferred over penicillin as antibiotics.
7. List factors that are responsible for antibiotic resistance in microorganisms.
8. Briefly describe methods of primary screening of soil microorganisms for antibiotic production.
9. In addition to antimicrobial activity list other desirable properties of substances exhibiting antimicrobial activity.
10. Discuss the benefit of using supersensitive test organisms for antibiotic discovery.
11. Outline modern approaches for new antibiotic discovery.

12. Discuss why the marine environment could be leveraged as a solution to antibiotic resistance.
13. Outline potential mechanisms to ensure increased selectivity of antitumor drugs.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Allsop, A., Illingworth, R. 2002. The Impact of Genomics and Related Technologies on the Search for New Antibiotics. *Journal of Applied Microbiology*. 92, 7–12.
- Anon. 1993. Congress of the United States, Office of Technology Assessment. *Pharmaceutical R&D: Costs, Risks and Rewards: 1993*; Washington, DC, USA. pp. 4–5.
- Anon. 1999. *From Test Tube to Patient: Improving Health Through Human Drugs*. Special Report, Center Drug Evaluation and Research. Food and Drug Administration. Rockville, MD, USA.
- Austin, C. 2004. The Impact of the Completed Human Genome Sequence on the Development of Novel Therapeutics for Human Disease. *Annual Review of Medicine*. 55, 1–13.
- Bansal, A.K. 2005. Bioinformatics in the Microbial Biotechnology—A Mini Review. *Microbial Cell Factories*. 4, 4–19.
- Beamer, L. 2002. Human BPI: One protein's Journey from Laboratory to Clinical Trials. *ASM News*. 68, 543–548.
- Behal, V. 2000. Bioactive Products from *Streptomyces*. *Advances in Applied Microbiology*. 47, 113–156.
- Bull, A.T., Ward, A.C., Goodfellow, M. 2000. Search and Discovery Strategies For Biotechnology. The Paradigm Shift. *Microbiology and Molecular Biology Reviews*. 64, 573–548.
- Dale, E., Wierenga, D.E., Eaton, C.R. 2001. Processes of Product Development. <http://www.allpcom/drug-dev.htm>. Accessed on September 28, 2005 at 12.05 pm GMT.
- Debouck, C., Metcalf, B. 2000. The Impact of Genomics on Drug Discovery. *Annual Review of Pharmacology and Toxicology*. 40, 193–208.
- Fan, F., McDevitt, D. 2002. Microbial Genomics for Antibiotic Target Discovery. *In: Methods in Microbiology*. Vol. 33, Academic Press. Amsterdam: The Netherlands. pp. 272–288.
- Feling, R.H., Buchanan, G.O., Mincer, T.J., Kauffman, C.A., Jensen, P.R., Fenical, W. 2003. Salinosporamide A: A Highly Cytotoxic Proteasome Inhibitor from a Novel Microbial Source, a Marine Bacterium of the New Genus *Salinospora*. *Angewandte Chemie International Edition*. 42, 355–357.
- Fraser, C.M., Rappuoli, R. 2005. Application of Microbial Genomic Science to Advanced Therapeutics. *Annual Review of Medicine*. 56, 459–74.
- Handelsman, J., Rondon, M.R., Brady, S.F., Clardy, J., Goodman, R.M. 1998. Molecular Biological Access to the Chemistry of unknown Soil Microbes: A New Frontier for Natural Products. *Chemistry and Biology*. 5, 245–249.
- Hill, D.C., Wrigley, S.K., Nisbet, L.J. 1998. Novel Screen Methodologies for Identification of New Microbial Metabolites with Pharmacological Activity. *Advances in Biochemical Engineering and Biotechnology*. 59, 75–124.
- Maxwell, S., Ehrlich, H., Speer, L., Chandler, W. 2005. *Medicines from the Deep Sea*. Washington, DC, USA.
- Rosamond, J., Allsop, A. 2000. Harnessing the Power of the Genome in the Search for New Antibiotics. *Science*. 287, 1972–1976.
- Wlodawer, A., Vondrasek, J. 1998. Inhibitors of HIV-1 Protease: A Major Success of Structure-assisted Drug Design. *Annual Review of Biophysics and Biomolecular Structures*. 27, 249–84.

---

## Production of Ergot Alkaloids

---

### 26.1 NATURE OF ERGOT ALKALOIDS

Alkaloids are levorotatory, basic, naturally occurring, heterocyclic, organic nitrogen containing compounds which are biosynthesized from amino acids by plants, microorganisms, and some animals. Many of them are pharmacologically active and are consequently used as drugs. The main precursors for alkaloid biosynthesis are ornithine, lysine, aspartic acid, phenylalanine, tyrosine, and tryptophan. For example, the alkaloid in tobacco, nicotine, is derived from ornithine, while phenylalanine and tyrosine give rise to simple alkaloids such as ephedrine or more complex ones such as morphine.

The name alkaloid (literally alkali like) derives from their basic nature because of which they readily form salts with acids present in the natural sources from which they are derived. Their chemical classification is based on the carbon-nitrogen skeletons. Ergot alkaloids, the subject of this chapter, are of the indole type and are derived from tryptophan.

The ergot alkaloids are so called because they were originally derived from ergot, a sclerotium (twisted mat of fungal hyphae) formed as a disease on the grain of rye (*Secale cereale* L.), a temperate cereal. The dried ergot is known among pharmacists as *secale cornutum*. The cause of the rye disease is a fungus, namely the ascomycete *Claviceps purpurea*. As will be seen later, ergot contains several (more than 40) highly potent alkaloids and the unwitting consumption of grain attacked by fungi producing ergot alkaloid has led to 'ergotism' (previously known as 'Holy fire' or 'St. Anthony's fire' when it was not understood), a disease characterized by convulsions among other symptoms. Ingestion of contaminated grain, most often after the grain has been made into bread, causes ergotism, also known as the 'Devil's curse', and has been a problem for centuries. It has been noted in writings from China as early as 1100 B.C. and in Assyria in 600 B.C.

Ergotism can cause convulsions, nausea, and diarrhea in mild forms, and there is some thought that an outbreak of ergotism may have been the cause of the 'bewitchings' which led to the Salem witch trials in the United States in 1691. Ergotism takes two forms, gangrenous ergotism, in which tingling effects were felt in fingers and toes followed in many cases by

dry gangrene of the limbs and finally loss of the limbs, and convulsive ergotism, in which the tingling was followed by hallucinations and delirium and epileptic-type seizures. In both cases, death was slow and painful. Ergotism has now been recognized as a result of infection by a mycotoxin, and the ergotism plagues have been eliminated.

About 50 ergot alkaloids are known today. While most of these alkaloids are derived from the *Claviceps sclerotium* formed on the rye grain, hundreds of other cereals and grasses can serve as hosts for the fungus. About 50 species of *Claviceps* itself are known. In addition, in recent times, the alkaloids have been produced by other fungi including *Aspergillus*, *Penicillium*, and *Rhizopus*. Some recent fungi shown to produce alkaloids are *Balansia epichloe*, *B. henningsiana*, *B. strangulans*, *Myriogenospore atrementose*, and *Epichloe typhine*. Furthermore, ergot alkaloids have recently been found in the seeds of some higher plants namely *Ipomea*, *Rivea*, and *Agyreis* belonging to *Convolvulaceae*, the family to which the flower morning glory belongs.

The life cycle of *Claviceps* is described as follows: The sclerotium forms in the size and shape of the grain which it replaces. These sclerotia fall to the ground at the end of the growing season and remain dormant until the beginning of the next growing season, when they germinate and form ascocarps (perithecia). The ascospores are distributed by wind to the newly formed flowers of grains. The germinated ascospores yield hyphae which produce masses of conidia supported in a sugary liquid which attracts insects. These insects further help distribute the conidia to other plants.

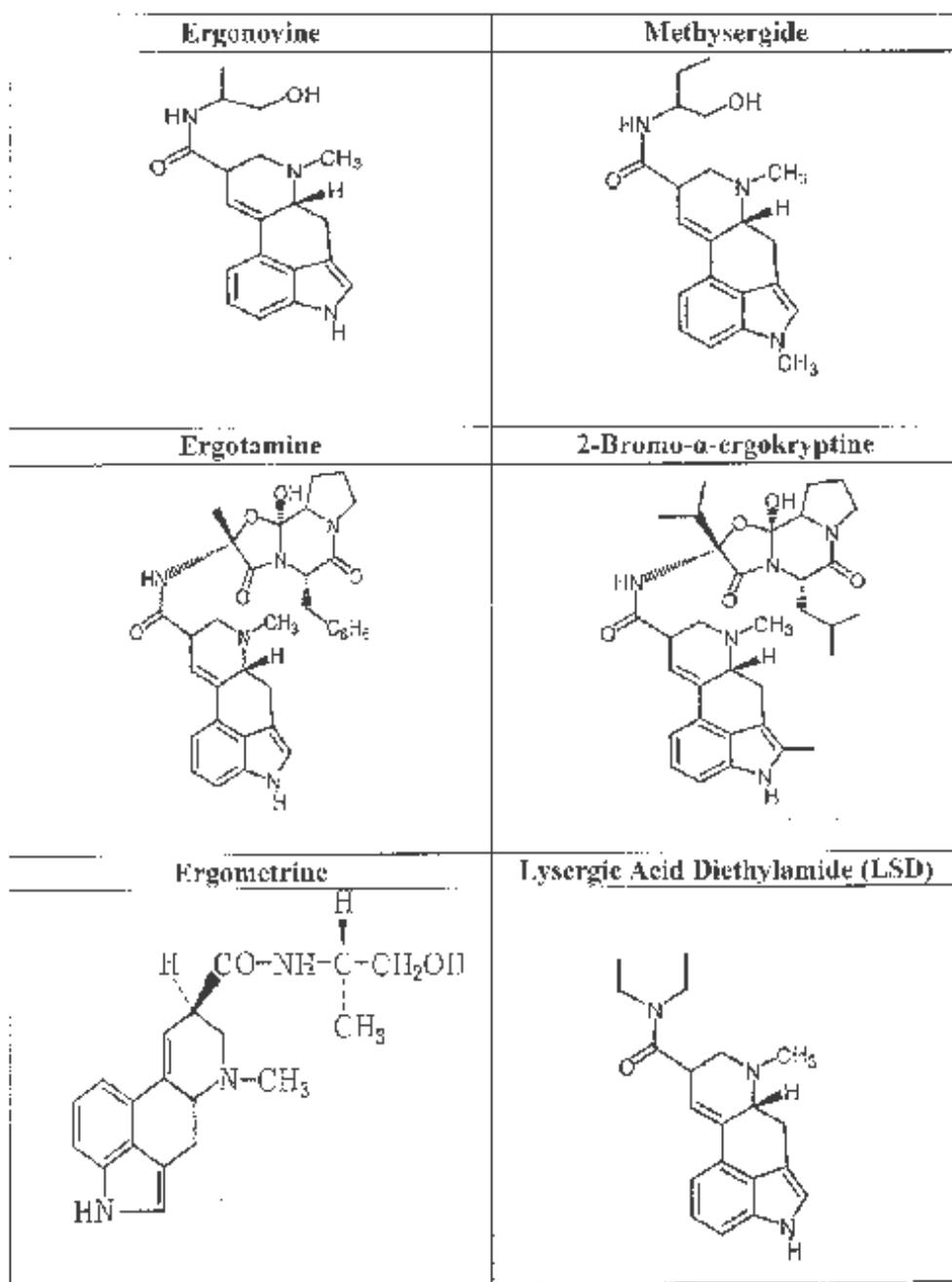
The ergot alkaloids are classified as indole alkaloids, which are derived from tryptophan. With one exception, chanoclavine, the ergot alkaloids possess the basic tetracyclic (four-ringed) structure known as ergoline (Fig. 26.1).

The naturally occurring ergot alkaloids can be divided into two groups. (a) lysergic acid derivatives (Fig. 26.1) and (b) clavine alkaloids. Although the clavine alkaloids were the first to be prepared in fermentation broths and were used for biosynthetic studies, they are much less known than the lysergic acid ones (Fig. 26.2) in terms of their fermentation and even in terms of pharmacological activity.

The lysergic acid derivatives can be further divided into two groups depending on the nature of the amide substituents. First are the simple amide substituents, and second are the peptide alkaloids in which a cyclic peptide is attached to lysergic acid. The greatest interest appears to focus on the peptide alkaloids. In this group, a modified tripeptide containing proline and an  $\alpha$ -hydroxy- $\alpha$ -amino acid which has undergone cyclic foundation with the carbonyl atom of proline substitutions at C-2 and C-5 of the cyclic peptide moiety creates variability as shown in Fig. 26.2. This group includes ergotamine.



Fig. 26.1 Structure of Ergoline and Lysergic Acid



**Ergonovine** (uterine contraction; treating post-partum hemorrhages). **Methysergide** (cranial vasodilator; treatment of migraine headaches). **Ergotamine** (treatment of severe migraine headaches). **2-Bromo- $\alpha$ -ergokryptine** (semi-synthetic, reduction of lactation in women). **Ergometrine** (used for treating post-partum hemorrhages). **Lysergic Acid Diethylamide (LSD)** (for treating psychiatric disorders).

**Fig. 26.2** Some Therapeutically Useful Ergot Alkaloids

## 26.2 USES OF ERGOT ALKALOIDS AND THEIR DERIVATIVES

Ergot alkaloids and their derivatives are powerful drugs and may be used as such or may be the basis of semi-synthetic preparations. Almost all of them have one important pharmacological effect or another, depending on the nature of the substituents and on the tissue of the body concerned. Thus, ergotamine will cause vessels to constrict while ergometrine has a minimal effect on blood vessels but will cause the uterus (womb) to constrict. LSD on the other hand will excite the brain cells in a manner not achieved by the other three. These various effects are exploited in using ergot alkaloids as drugs in the manner shown below:

- (i) Ergot alkaloids (e.g. ergometrine) have been used by midwives to induce labor for centuries.
- (ii) Ergonovine (the 2-aminopropanolamide derivative), is used to stop bleeding after birth due to its stimulatory effect on the sympathetic nervous system.
- (iii) Ergotamine blocks the sympathetic system and is used for treating strong headaches such as migraines.
- (iv) The diethylamide derivate of lysergic acid (known as LSD) is a powerful hallucinogenic drug and is often utilized illegally for this purpose in many countries as well as for experimental psychotherapy.
- (v) Most of the clavine alkaloids do not possess strong pharmacological properties. However, a few of the dihydro derivatives have found use as strong stimulants of oxytocic (milk secreting) activity or of uterine contractions.

In recent times, newer uses have been found for ergot alkaloids, especially semi-synthetic ones. These include:

- (vi) 'Nigericoline', a derivate of lysergic acid which is a receptor-blocking agent, is used for treating peripheral and cerebral circulation disorder.
- (vii) 'Lysenyl', a diethyl derivate of isolysergic acid, is used to treat hypertension and migraine, since it is a serotonin antagonist.
- (viii) In recent times, it has been found that some ergot alkaloids affect functions controlled by the hypothalamic pituitary system, particularly the release of prolactin (which deals with milk secretion) from the pituitary gland. Since the prolactin level seems to play a part in the growth and development of certain breast cancers, they are used for therapy.
- (ix) Some of newer ergot alkaloids have also been implicated as potential therapeutic agents in the treatment of diseases such as Parkinson's disease, lack of milk production after child birth, and cancer of the prostate.
- (x) The alkaloids have been used as models for the synthesis of several potent drugs.

## 26.3 PRODUCTION OF ERGOT ALKALOIDS

A large market based mainly in Europe derives from ergot drugs; this market seems to be expanding as more and more pharmacological properties are discovered in the ergot drugs. The methods for producing these drugs are the following:

- (a) Isolation from field-cultivated ergot,
- (b) Fermentation of the ergot fungus, and
- (c) Partial or total chemical synthesis.

Until now, the bulk of the production seems to be the extraction of field-inoculated ergot. However, fermentation is increasing, and as with the antibiotics, wholly new drugs are being produced by semi-synthesis with substrates derived from fermentation.

(a) *Isolation from field-cultivated ergot (or parasitic production)*: This method is widely used in Europe. Inoculation of the rye plants with conidiospores of *Claviceps* and other fungi takes place two to three weeks before flowering begins and may continue during flowering. Harvesting of ergotized ears of rye takes place about two months later. This method has numerous disadvantages. Firstly, only one crop a year can be obtained. Secondly, the yield of alkaloid in terms of quality (type) and quantity is highly unpredictable. Thirdly, the vicissitudes of the weather attendant on all field operations make the operation virtually impossible to standardize.

(b) *Fermentation production*: Due to the above problems, efforts have been increased over the years to devise fermentation methods. A good measure of success has been achieved, especially for the clavine alkaloids and simple lysergic acid derivatives. Ergot alkaloids can be produced in submerged fermentation by *Claviceps* or *Penicillium* species which are used for their industrial production. Initial work in Japan showed that submerged cultures did not produce the typical alkaloids associated with the sclerotium but instead produced a series of new non-peptide bases (clavines) which did not possess any significant pharmacological action. Attempts were made in many studies to influence alkaloid production by modification of the culture medium and the fungus strain. The first pure ergot alkaloid, ergotamine, was obtained by Stoll in 1920. Subsequently, others reported the discovery of the "water soluble uterotonic principle of ergot" which was subsequently determined to be ergonovine (also called ergometrine). As a result of further successful experiments, the commercial production of simple lysergic acid derivatives by fermentative growth of a strain of *Claviceps paspali* became feasible.

- (i) *Production of clavine alkaloids*: Different species of *Claviceps* parasitizing a variety of grasses have been isolated and grown in liquid medium and the different alkaloids assayed. Clavine alkaloids were obtained from *C. litoralis* and *C. microcephala*. One strain of *C. purpurea*, produced a clavine and the other a peptide alkaloid. The medium used contained mannitol (5%), ammonium citrate (0.7%),  $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$  (0.1%), and  $\text{MgSO}_4$  (0.03%). The pH was 5.2. The use of 10% sucrose instead of mannitol gave higher yields.

The fermentation lasted from 30 days to 40 days and by classical strain improvement methods, yields of up to 1.0–1.5 g/liter were obtained.

Improvements have since been obtained in other studies who found that a mixture of mannitol (6.5%) and glucose (1%) gave up to 1 g/liter yield in about 14 days. A high carbon to nitrogen ratio in the medium also increased yield.

- (ii) *Production of simple lysergic acid derivatives*: The production of simple lysergic acid derivatives was achieved in 1961 using *Claviceps paspali* isolated from an infected *Paspalum digitatum*.

Higher yields have since been attained by slight modifications of the original mannitol-succinic acid-mineral salts medium. Fumaric acid gave higher yields when

it was used in place of succinic acid. The fermentation lasted nine days. The addition of hydrophilic non-ionic surfactants had the greatest effects on yield. Aeration was vigorous.

- (iii) *Peptide alkaloids*: The physiology of ergotamine formation has been studied using *C. purpurea*, *C. litoralis*, and *Elymus mollis*. Improved ergotamine yields were obtained by the mutation and selection of a strain of *Claviceps purpurea*. This strain on a mannitol-ammonium-succinate medium produced up to 40 g/liter.

## 26.4 PHYSIOLOGY OF ALKALOID PRODUCTION

- (i) *Induction*: Tryptophan is the central precursor of all ergot alkaloids and therefore required in the medium. In addition to being a direct precursor of ergot alkaloids, tryptophan is also a factor in the induction and de-repression of enzymes necessary for alkaloid synthesis. If the amino acid is not added to the medium, the organism manufactures it. When it is added, the organism accumulates it in its hyphae.
- (ii) *Feedback regulation*: Feedback regulation studies have been hampered by the cell wall, as studies using protoplasts of *Claviceps* sp. have unambiguously demonstrated. It was shown that the addition of elymoclavine inhibited (not repressed) the first enzyme in the synthesis of the alkaloid, namely dimethylallyl tryptophan synthase (DMAT synthase). This was demonstrated by supplying basal culture medium or basal culture medium supplemented with elymoclavine to washed stationary phase cultures of the producing organism. Cultures with fresh medium synthesized the alkaloid at a slower rate than when supplemented. Both of them however reached the same final alkaloid concentration.
- (iii) *Phosphate repression*: Like many secondary metabolites, ergot alkaloid formation is inhibited by increasing the level of phosphate. In this case, the unfavorable limit was 1.1 g/liter. The addition of tryptophan helped to nullify the effect of phosphate showing that phosphate inhibition was mediated through tryptophan probably by preventing its accumulation from exceeding the amount required for alkaloid synthesis induction. In support of this explanation, it is noted that 5-methyl-tryptophan also overcomes the inhibition of alkaloid synthesis by tryptophan. Phosphate inhibited culture had very low levels of the first enzyme in the synthetic chain, namely DMAT synthase. Tryptophan caused a more than 10-fold increase in the activity of the enzyme.
- (iv) *Catabolite regulation*: High levels of glucose (5%) greatly inhibited enzyme production. The addition of a small amount of camp restored alkaloid synthesis to a little extent.
- (v) *Alkaloid formation and morphological structures*: It is interesting to note that alkaloids seem to form in one structure and accumulated in another. Thus, in the plant genus *Ipomea*, alkaloids are formed in the leaves and accumulated in the seeds, which do not produce alkaloids at all. In ergotamine alkaloid fermentation, alkaloids are not elaborated until specific morphological structures, namely pellets, are formed in the medium. The medium composition appears to influence the formation of these pellets. Sucrose appears to encourage their formation while they are poorly formed in malt. The peptide alkaloids are found in these structures, while clavines and simpler derivatives of lysergic acid are found in the medium.

- (vi) *Biosynthesis*: Work on biosynthesis of alkaloids has been greatly facilitated by the use of protoplasts. Being secondary products, alkaloids are produced by pathways different from those of general metabolism. Furthermore, synthesis initiates with carbon limitation. The ergot skeleton is derived from tryptophan, mevalonic acid, and methionine. The central precursor of the ergoline skeleton is tryptophan, which is initially de-alkylated. The five-carbon unit is obtained from mevalonic acid. Although a component of the ergoline unit, it is neither limiting nor does it participate in the regulation of alkaloid synthesis induction. Mevalonic acid may be formed from the malonyl COA pathway with biotin and decarboxylation.

Clavines are simpler in terms of biosynthesis than lysergic acid derivatives. Lysergic acid itself is a key substrate in ergot alkaloid synthesis and the simpler amide as well as the peptide derivatives come from it.

Surprisingly, not many enzymes appear to be involved in the synthesis of alkaloids. Two of them have so far been isolated: Dimethyl tryptophan synthase (DMTPS) and chanoclavine synthase. DMTPS catalyzes the first specific reaction of the formation of 8-ergoline and introduces the isoprene residue to the C<sub>4</sub> position of tryptophan. Analogues of tryptophan increase the activity of the enzyme. The compound produced, dimethyl tryptophan (4-isoprenyltryptophan), is 5–10 times more effective as a precursor of the clavines than tryptophan.

Chanoclavine cyclase catalyzes the cyclization of chanoclavine-1 to the four-ring 8-ergoline, i.e. to elymoclavine and agroclavine, both individually and simultaneously.

- (vii) *Extraction of the alkaloid*: Alkaloids are readily isolated at an alkaline pH by various organic solvents such as ether, chloroform, and ethyl acetate.

The earliest procedures used for extraction were designed to obtain alkaloids from sclerotia which generally would be dried, powdered, alkalinized, and extracted with tartaric acid. For further purification, the tartaric acid solution was made alkaline and extracted with chloroform. This chloroform layer would then contain all the alkaloids. This has led to the terms water-soluble alkaloids which include the simple amide lysergic acid derivatives and the clavines, whereas the water-insoluble alkaloids now include the peptide-type. Nowadays, the method adopted for both water-soluble and water-insoluble peptides is to extract the powdered ergot with chloroform to which a small amount of methanolic ammonia has been added. The chloroform extract is concentrated to a small volume, diluted with ether, and extracted with concentrated H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. On neutralization with ammonia, the water-soluble alkaloids can be extracted with water and the water-insoluble ones with carbon-tetrachloride.

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. What are ergot alkaloids?
2. Describe the principal uses of ergot alkaloids.
3. Outline the demerits of field cultivation method for alkaloids.
4. List factors for improved lysergic acid derivatives.
5. Describe the roles of tryptophan in alkaloid production.
6. Outline downstream processing (extraction and purification) methods for alkaloids.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Boichenko, L.V., Boichenko, D.M., Vinokurova, N.G., Reshetilova, T.A., Arinbasarov, M.U. 2001. Screening for Ergot Alkaloid Producers among Microscopic Fungi by Means of the Polymerase Chain Reaction. *Microbiology*. 70, 306–307.
- Dongen, van P.W.J., de Groot, A.N.J.A. 1995. History of Ergot Alkaloids from Ergotism to Ergometrine. *European Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology and Reproductive Biology*. 60, 109–116.
- Evans, W.C. 1996. *Pharmacognosy*. 14th ed., W B Saunders Company Ltd. London, UK.
- Groot, N.J.A., de Akosua, van Dongen, Pieter, W.J., Vree, Tom, B., Hekster, Yechiel A., van Roosmalen, Jos. 1998. Ergot Alkaloids—Current Status and Review of Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutic Use Compared with Other Oxytoxics in Obstetrics and Gynecology. *Drugs*. 56, 525–8.
- Hardman, J.G., Limbird, L.E. (eds.) 1996. *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 9th ed. McGraw-Hill.
- Kobel, H., Kobel, J. 1986. Ergot Alkaloids. *In: Biotechnology*. H.J. Rehm, G. Reed (eds.) Vol. 4. 2nd ed. VCH, Weinheim, Germany. pp. 569–609.
- Komarova, E.L., Tolkachev, O.N. 2001. The Chemistry of Peptide Ergot Alkaloids. *Pharmaceutical Chemistry Journal*. 35, 504–506.
- Lange, Klaus W. 1998. Clinical Pharmacology of Dopamine Agonists in Parkinson's Disease. *Drugs & Aging*. 13, 385–386.
- Langley, D. 1998. Exploiting the Fungi: Novel Leads to New Medicines. *Mycologist*. 11, 165–166.
- Menge, J.M.M. 2000. Progress and Prospects of Ergot Alkaloid Research. *Advances in Biochemical Engineering/Biotechnology*. 68, 1–20.
- Rehacek, Z., Sajdl, P. 1990. *Ergot Alkaloids: Chemistry, Biological Effects, Biotechnology*. Academia Praha: Czech Republic.
- Thompson, F., Muir, A., Stirton, J., Macphee, G., Hudson, S. 2001. Parkinson's Disease. *The Pharmaceutical Journal*. 267, 600–612.
- Votruba, V., Flieger, M. 2000. Separation of Ergot Alkaloids by Adsorption on Silicates. *Biotechnology Letters*. 22: 1281–1282.

---

## Microbial Transformation of Steroids and Sterols

---

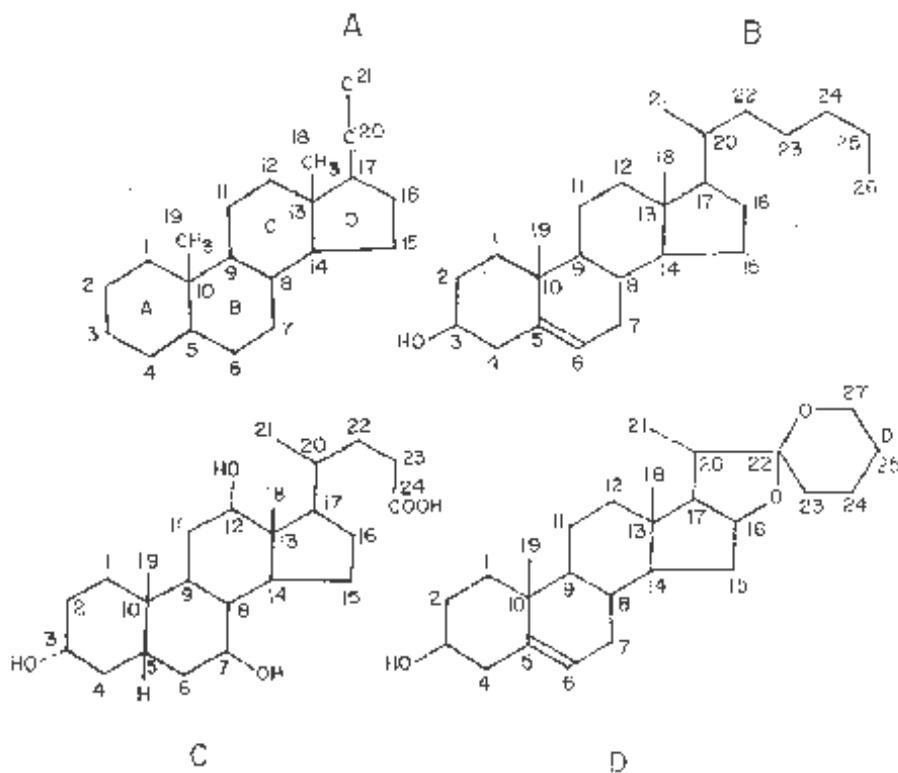
### 27.1 NATURE AND USE OF STEROIDS AND STEROLS

Steroids are a large group of organic compounds with the perhydro-1, 2-cyclopentano-phenanthrene nucleus, which consists of four fused rings (Fig. 27.1). Sterols are hydroxylated steroids meaning they are alcohols derived from steroids. The hydroxyl (OH) group of sterols is usually substituted at position C<sub>3</sub>. Unsaturation is usually at C<sub>5</sub> and often at C<sub>7</sub> and C<sub>22</sub>. The term sterol comes from the Greek *Steros* (= solid) because the earliest members studied were solid alcohols resulting from the unsaponifiable (i.e. could not be broken down by NaOH) fractions of fats of plants and animals. As the variety of known structures increased, the general term steroid came into use about 1935. In higher animals, the principal sterol is cholesterol but a wider variety exists in lower animals and in plants (Fig. 27.1).

Steroids and sterols are widely distributed in nature and are present in bile salts, adrenal-cortical and sex hormones, insect molting hormones, saponins, alkaloids, and some antibiotics.

Steroids and sterols differ from each other in two ways: (a) the number, type, and position of the substituents and (b) the number and position of the double bonds in the ring. Steroid molecules are usually flat. However, the substituents at each of the junctions of Rings A and B, Rings B and C, and Rings C and D may be either above or below the plane of the ring. When the substituent group lies above the plane of the molecule (denoted by a solid line), the substituent is denoted by  $\beta$ ; when it is below (denoted by a broken line), it is denoted by  $\alpha$ . When, as is the case in many steroid hormones, a double bond exists between C<sub>4</sub> and C<sub>5</sub>, the situation is denoted  $\Delta^4$ . The individual compounds are named systematically as derivatives of steroidal hydrocarbons like gonane, estrane, androstane, pregnane, cholane, and cholestane to name the most important ones. Thus, cortisone, a derivative of pregnane, is  $\Delta^4$ -pregnene-17 $\alpha$ , 24-diol-3, 11, 20-trione.

The steroid hormones of the mammalian body have profound effects on the body functions and even the behavior of the animal. Thus, the male hormones, androgens secreted by the testes, are responsible for the development of the male reproductive organs and the secondary sexual characters such as hairiness among several other functions.



- A = Basic skeleton of steroid and sterols. Rings A, B, C, D are fused to form the perhydro-1, 2, cyclopentano-phenanthrene nucleus.  
 ----- =  $\alpha$ -configuration  
 ..... =  $\beta$ -configuration
- B = Cholesterol (Cholest-5-en al). An animal sterol; note the -OH group in the 3 position, a characteristic of sterols
- C = Cholic acid ( $3\alpha, 7\alpha, 12\alpha$ -Trihydroxy -5  $\beta$ -cholanic acid)
- D = Diosgenin (Spirost -5-en-3  $\beta$ -ol). A substance used for microbial transformation of sterols.

Fig. 27.1 Structures of some Steroids and Sterols

The female sexual hormones include estrogens and progesterone. Estrogens are produced by the ovaries and stimulate the development of the female reproductive organs and secondary sexual characteristics such as enlarged breasts, etc.

Progesterone is produced by the *corpus luteum*, a body formed by the mature egg in the female ovary. In association with the estrogens, progesterone prepares the uterus for the implantation of the fertilized egg in the uterine wall. Corticosteroid hormones are produced by the cortex surrounding the adrenal glands located just above the kidneys. The main steroid hormones produced by the glands are corticosterone, cortisol, and aldosterone. Aldosterone is involved with mineral metabolism, mainly of sodium ions and hence indirectly affect the blood pressure. Cortisol and corticosterone help the body handle

physiological stress including extreme cold. It is important to emphasize the significance of hormones as a background towards appreciating the impetus for the transformation of steroids.

Among insects, steroid hormones are also very important in post-embryonic development: juvenile hormones control larval growth; ecdysone controls metamorphosis of larval-larval, larval-pupal, and pupal-adult molting processes; a third hormone affects the brain and controls the production and release of the molting hormone. These hormones and their laboratory-synthesized analogues (pheromones) are used for controlling insects. Bile salts, sterols, estrogens, progesterone, androgens cortisone, cortisol, and other steroids from animal and plants were isolated and studied starting in 1903.

## 27.2 USES OF STEROIDS AND STEROLS

The global sales of steroids (mainly in the form of systemic sex hormones and corticosteroids) are estimated to amount to billions of dollars.

### 27.2.1 Sex Hormones

Many steroids and sterols are manufactured through microbial action. The largest economic impact of synthetic estrogen and progestin production has been for use as contraceptive agents and for treatment and prevention of osteoporosis. Contraceptive steroid mixtures have also been used to treat a variety of related abnormal states including endometriosis, dysmenorrhea, hirsutism, polycystic ovarian disease, dysfunctional uterine bleeding, benign breast disease, and ovarian cyst suppression.

Estrogens are routinely prescribed to post-menopausal women to prevent the development and exacerbation of osteoporosis because it can increase bone density and reduce fractures.

Testosterone, alkylated testosterone, or testosterone esters are the primary anabolic-androgenic steroid drugs. Most of these synthetic testosterone derivatives were in failed attempts to separate the hormones' masculinizing (androgenic) and skeletal muscle-building (anabolic) effects. The medicinal uses for these drugs include treatment of certain types of anemias, hereditary angioedema, certain gynecological conditions, protein anabolism, certain allergic reactions, and use in replacement therapy in gonadal failure states.

Anabolic-androgenic steroids are best known for their nonmedical (and illegal) use to aid in body-building or to increase skeletal muscle size, strength, and endurance by athletes.

### 27.2.2 Corticosteroids

The greatest portion of steroid drug production is aimed at the synthesis of glucocorticoids which are highly effective agents for the treatment of chronic inflammation. Glucocorticoids exert their effects by binding to the cytoplasmic glucocorticoid receptor within the target cell and thus either increase or decrease transcription of a number of genes involved in the inflammatory process. Specifically, glucocorticoids down-regulate potential mediators of inflammation such as cytokines. Typical oral glucocorticoids used to treat rheumatoid arthritis are prednisone and 6- $\alpha$ -methylprednisolone. Corticosteroids are the most efficacious treatment available for the long-term treatment of asthma, and inhaled

corticosteroids are considered to be a first-line therapy for asthma. They are also used to treat rhinitis, nasal congestion, and inflammations of the skin.

### 27.2.3 Saponins

These are used for their hypocholesterolemic (cholesterol lowering) activity. Synthetic steroids that are structurally related to saponins have been shown to lower plasma cholesterol in a variety of different species.

### 27.2.4 Heterocyclic Steroids

Di-hydrogen testosterone (DHT) is a more potent androgen than testosterone. Elevated levels of DHT lead to enlarged prostate (benign hyperplasia), sometimes prostate cancer, and male baldness. The enzyme antagonistic to DHT, steroid 5-alpha-reductase, is being developed as treatment for these ailments.

## 27.3 MANUFACTURE OF STEROIDS

In 1937, the first microbial transformation of steroids was carried out. Testosterone was produced from dehydroepiandrosterone using *Corynebacterium* sp. Subsequently, cholesterol was produced from 4-dehydroeticholanic acid and 7-hydroxycholesterol using *Nocardia* spp. These developments were virtually unexploited until 1949, when the dramatic curative effect of cortisone on rheumatoid arthritis, a disease in which painful swellings occur at the joints of the body, was announced. The cortisone used in this work had been prepared by complex and tedious chemical synthesis beginning with deoxycholic acid, a bile acid. This method was so tedious that it took 32 chemical steps and two years to produce only 11 g of cortisone acetate. Additionally, it was difficult to find enough of the starting materials. To meet the demand for cortisone to treat the large number of people suffering from rheumatoid arthritis, a great burst of activity along the four following lines ensued:

- (i) The improvements of the original chemical method along lines suitable for commercial production;
- (ii) The development of methods of chemical synthesis using other more available and more abundant starting materials including steroids and steroid-containing compounds of plant origin. One of such compounds was diosgenin (a glycoside formed from a steroid and glucose) obtained from a species of yams, *Dioscorea composite*, and the South African 'elephant foot' *Testudinaria sylvoatica*. The other was a plant sterol, stigmasterol, obtained from soy bean, *Glycine max*.
- (iii) Total chemical synthesis of cortisone and cortisol from relatively simple materials;
- (iv) The use of biological agents to transform readily available steroids by introducing oxygen at carbon C<sub>11</sub>, a process which took 12 steps in chemical synthesis. The use of biological agents originally consisted of the use of ground or homogenized adrenal tissues and fungi.

The first of the two methods mentioned above had moderate successes and, for some time, provided steroids for clinical use. The third method remained an academic exercise. The fourth method however gave dramatic results of which microbial transformations eventually became more important. Two of the earliest such microbial transformations

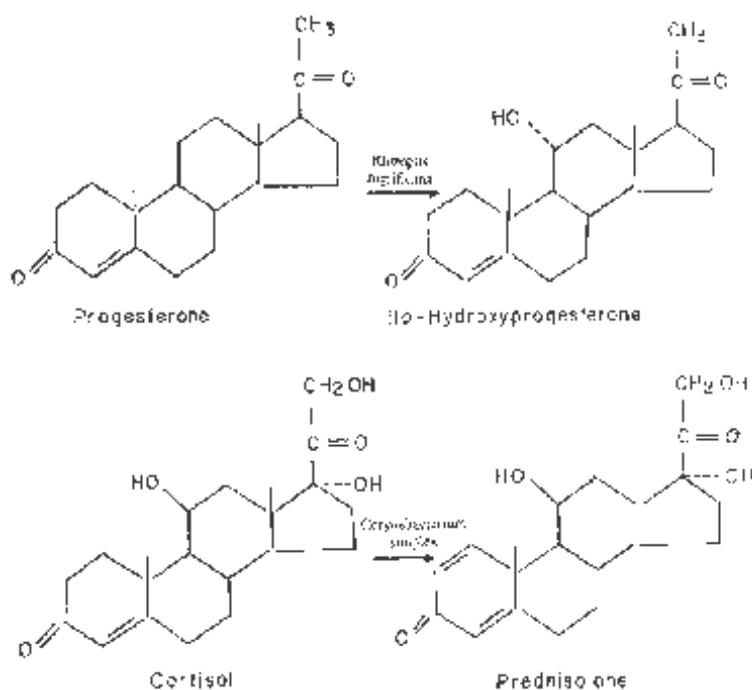


Fig. 27.2 Some Steroid Transformations Brought about by Microorganism

were the conversion of progesterone to 11- $\alpha$  hydroxy progesterone by the introduction of -OH at the position 11 using *Rhizopus nigricans* and the conversion of cortisol to prednisolone by *Corynebacterium simplex* (Fig. 27.2).

This latter transformation was notable because the new product was more active than the starting one. Since then, a large number of steroid analogues have been produced using a wide variety of microorganisms. Indeed, virtually every steroid is transformable in some way by some microorganism or the other.

From the beginning of 1960, intensive research interest shifted from rheumatoid steroids to the area of sex hormones, especially the progesterone-based drug principally used for birth control pills. This shift of interest was as a result of concern for rising world population. The disclosure about 1965 of the steroidal nature of insect hormones stimulated interest in them as a means of controlling insect pests of agriculture and food and vectors of disease.

A large number of steroids have since been produced and tested for a variety of purposes. Several of them have been found useful as anti-inflammatory, antitumor and anti-allergy drugs, as birth control pills, for treatment in heart disease, and a vast array of medical and veterinary uses.

The use of microorganisms to transform steroids revolutionized the steroid transformation industry. For example, the price of cortisone, a widely used anti-inflammatory drug, fell from \$200 per g in 1949 to less than \$1.0 per g in 1979 as a result of this development.

The microbial transformation of steroids differs from the 'traditional' fermentations such as that of penicillin:

- (i) In many cases, steroid transformations are one-step-processes which bring about relatively minor structural changes in the substrate, i.e. the steroid molecule. This

differs from the synthesis of penicillin and many other fermentation products in which the product is synthesized entirely from the substrate offered in the medium.

- (ii) Whereas in many industrial fermentations the process of production is completed in the fermentor, in the case of steroid transformations, readily available steroids are microbiologically transformed into important intermediates which are then converted chemically to the final product. Alternately, the chemical syntheses are first performed and the products transformed microbiologically later.

### 27.3.1 Types of Microbial Transformations in Steroids and Sterols

Transformations by microorganisms affecting various positions in a wide range of steroids and sterols have been carried out. Although steroid hormones have been most widely studied, the transformation of bile acids, plant and animal sterols, and steroid alkaloids have also occurred. The transformation reactions include: hydroxylation, dehydrogenation, reduction, side chain degradation, lactone formation, aromatization, isomerization, epoxidation, hydrolysis, esterification, halogenation, and cleavage of the steroid skeleton.

All of these have been carried out on steroid hormones, but only some of them have been done on the other natural steroids and sterols. Two examples of these reactions have already been described: Progesterone is converted to 11 $\alpha$ -hydroxyl progesterone by hydroxylation or the introduction of an OH group at position 11. Similarly, cortisol is converted to prednisolone by dehydrogenation at position 1. Some other examples are given in Fig. 27.2.

A major transformation in which interest has grown sharply in recent times is the cleavage of the C<sub>17</sub> side chain of sterols. An important source of steroids for the synthesis and production of pharmacologically active steroids used in contraceptives, corticosteroids, geriatric drugs, etc. is diosgenin (Fig. 27.1) from *Dioscorea* spp. Due to the shortage of diosgenin, interest has shifted to more abundant sterols from phytosterols (i.e. sterols from plants) and cholesterol from animals. The phytosterols include soy bean sterols, mainly  $\beta$ -sitosterol and stigmasterol, and tall oil sterols, mainly sitosterol and campesterol. For these to be used as starting materials for the production of progesterone and other drugs, the C<sub>17</sub> side chain must be cleaved, hence the interest.

The microbial removal of the side chain offers more promise than chemical means. Unfortunately, microorganisms which cleave off the side-chain will also attack the D ring to which the chain is attached. Three methods have therefore been developed to solve the problem of inhibiting ring degradation during cleavage of the chain.

- (i) The substrate may be modified structurally by chemical means to stabilize the ring while the side-chain is cleaved. Thus, while cholesterol rings are degraded when the side-chain is cleaved by *Nocardia* sp., 3-Acetoxy-9-hydroxy-5-cholestene is not. This later compound can be prepared from cholesterol by three chemical steps. The cleavage of the side-chain of cholesterol yields esterone which can then be used for further transformations.
- (ii) The enzymes which open the D ring may be selectively inhibited. The key stage in the opening of the ring is at the ninth position, and since the enzyme for this hydroxylation contains metals, the enzyme and its process may be inhibited by using chelating agents which remove metals from them.
- (iii) Finally, mutants have been developed which will degrade only the side chain. One of the best known is a mutant of *Mycobacterium* sp.

### 27.3.2 Fermentation Conditions Used in Steroid Transformation

The media used are highly variable, but most of them are not very complex. They are basically mineral salts media containing some carbon source such as glucose, dextrin, or glycerol. Nitrogen sources may be ammonium salts, corn steep liquor, soybean, or a protein digest. In some cases, yeast extract is added.

Steroid and sterols are lipids; they are not water soluble and therefore must be dissolved in a water-miscible lipid-solvent. Acetone, ethanol, propylene glycol, and methanol are suitable because they dissolve a reasonable amount of the steroid while being relatively non-inhibitory to the enzymes. Dimethylformamide dissolves a reasonable amount of the steroids but has only a minimum of toxicity. Sometimes, the steroid is added in small amounts at a time. In this way, any toxic effect of the solvent is minimized.

The level of steroid added is variable and depends both on the transforming ability of the organisms as well as its susceptibility to the toxic effects of the steroid. Normally 200–800 mg/liter are added but occasionally, much higher amounts are used. To solve the problem of the insolubility of steroids in water, non-ionic surface-acting agents which reduce surface tension, e.g. Tween 80, are often added to the medium. Some polysaccharides in the medium, e.g. yeast or cell wall mannan, bind to the steroids and cause them to be more available to the organism.

A wide range of microorganisms, mainly fungi and bacteria, are used in the transformation of steroids. Some of these include the fungi *Rhizopus nigricans*, *Curvularia lunata*, *Fusarium* spp., and *Cylindrocarpon radicolica* as well as the bacteria *Mycobacterium* spp., *Corynebacterium simplex*, and *Streptomyces* spp. As has been mentioned, there are organisms available to perform just about any conceivable transformation of the steroid molecule. The transformation may occur at different stages of the growth, and the steroid may be added to the growing cultures either simultaneously with the inoculation of the culture or the resting or stationary stage of the organism. Fungal spores may sometimes be inoculated as the steroid is introduced into the medium. In recent times, immobilized cells have been employed in the transformations of steroids.

Steroid transformations require vigorous aeration, and a temperature of about 28°C is usually employed. The fermentation is usually complete in four to five days.

## 27.4 SCREENING FOR MICROORGANISMS

The screening for microorganisms capable of transforming steroids to yield products of useful pharmacological properties is a continuing one. The processes which are followed in the screening are as follows:

- (i) The microorganism is isolated from soil or some suitable source and grown in a suitable medium for 24–28 hours.
- (ii) The steroid in a suitable carrier is added to the fermentation, and the growth continues for a further period which could be as long as one week.
- (iii) The transformation products are extracted with solvents such as methyl acetate and purified by chromatography, etc.
- (iv) The product is tested for pharmacological properties.
- (v) Finally, the structure is elucidated by classical methods of organic chemistry.

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Differentiate between steroids and sterols.
2. Outline the economic significance of steroids and sterols.
3. What are the main applications of corticosteroids?
4. Describe the measures to meet the rising demand for cortisone.
5. How does traditional fermentation such as employed in the manufacture of penicillin differ from steroid transformation?
6. Describe optimal fermentation conditions for steroid transformation.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Flickinger, Michael C., Drew, Stephen, W. 1999. Encyclopedia of Bioprocess Technology— Fermentation, Biocatalysis, and Bioseparation. Wiley. Electronic ISBN: 1-59124-457-9.
- Martin, C.K.A. 1984. Sterols. *In: Biotechnology*. Kiesich (ed.) Vol. 6A. Biotransformations Verlag Chemie. Weinheim, Germany. pp. 79–96.
- Morgan, B.P., Moynihan, M.S. 1997. Steroids. Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology. 2, 71–113.
- Smith, L.L. 1984. Steroids. *In: Biotechnology*. Kiesich (ed.) Vol. 6A. Biotransformations Verlag Chemie. Weinheim, Germany. pp. 31–78.

# CHAPTER 28

---

## Vaccines

---

### 28.1 NATURE AND IMPORTANCE OF VACCINES

Vaccines are materials which when introduced into the human body help protect the vaccinated person against specified communicable diseases. Communicable diseases are diseases caused by microorganisms, including viruses. Vaccines are preparations of dead or weakened pathogens or their products that, when introduced into the body, stimulate the production of protective antibodies or T-cells without causing the disease.

Vaccination is also called **active** immunization because the immune system of the body is stimulated to actively develop its own immunity against the pathogen. In contrast to that, **passive immunity** results from the injection of antibodies formed by another animal (e.g. horse, human) which provide immediate, but temporary, protection for the recipient.

The name 'vaccine' comes from the Latin *vacca* (for cow). This is because the earliest vaccination was done using the *cow* pox virus (which causes the disease in cows) as a vaccine against small pox in humans. The English physician Edward Jenner carried out the above vaccination in the late 18th century and published his paper in 1798.

Over the past 200 or so years, vaccinations have greatly contributed to reducing morbidity and mortality from communicable diseases. The greatest triumph of vaccination is the eradication of smallpox from Earth; no naturally-occurring cases have been reported since 1977. A program to try to eliminate poliomyelitis (polio for short), another viral disease, from the world has been going on for some time and the indications are that the number of cases has drastically dropped. Except for the few cases caused by oral polio vaccine (OPV) in which the live virus reverts, the disease has now been eliminated from the Western hemisphere. Outbreaks of polio still occur in Africa, the Indian subcontinent, and parts of the Near East. Due to the success of vaccination, nearly 100% reduction has been obtained in the cases of many diseases which were previously sources of great mortality and morbidity. These include diphtheria, measles, mumps, pertussis, rubella, and tetanus. [Table 28.1](#) gives a list of the most commonly used vaccines today.

### 28.2 BODY DEFENSES AGAINST COMMUNICABLE DISEASES

In order to better understand the nature of vaccines, their design, and production, the defenses of the human body against communicable diseases are discussed briefly. The

**Table 28.1** Vaccines most commonly used in the world

<i>Disease</i>	<i>Preparation</i>	<i>Notes</i>
Diphtheria	Toxoid	Often given to children in a single preparation (DTP; the 'triple vaccine') or the now-preferred DTaP using acellular pertussis.
Tetanus	Toxoid	
Pertussis	Killed bacteria ('P') or their purified components (acellular pertussis = 'aP')	Inactivated polio vaccine: IPV (Salk).
Polio	Inactivated virus previously grown on monkey or human diploid cells	
Hepatitis B	Attenuated virus	Oral polio vaccine; OPV (Sabin)
Diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis, polio, and hepatitis B	uses acellular pertussis and IPV (Salk)	Both vaccines trivalent (types 1, 2, and 3).
Measles	Protein (HBsAg) from the surface of the virus	Made by genetic engineering.
Mumps	uses acellular pertussis and IPV (Salk)	Pediarix®; combination vaccine given in 3 doses to infants.
Rubella	Attenuated virus	Often given as a mixture (MMR) Does <b>not</b> increase the risk of autism. (Nor do any vaccines containing thimerosal as a preservative.)
Chickenpox (Varicella)	1. Attenuated virus 2. Vaccine: Live in duck cells	
Influenza	Attenuated virus	Caused by the varicella-zoster virus (VZV).
Pneumococcal infections	Egg-grown virus, formalin inactivated, highly purified by zonal ultracentrifugation	Contains hemagglutinins from the type A and type B viruses recently in circulation.
Staphylococcal infections	Hemagglutinins	A mixture of the capsular polysaccharides of 23 common types. Works poorly in infants.
	Capsular polysaccharides	Mobilizes helper T cells; works well in infants.
	7 capsular polysaccharides conjugated to protein	To prevent infection by <i>Staph. aureus</i> in patients hospitalized and/or receiving dialysis.
	2 capsular polysaccharides conjugated to protein	

Contd.

Table 28.1 Contd.

<i>Disease</i>	<i>Preparation</i>	<i>Notes</i>
Meningococcal disease	Polysaccharides	Used chiefly to prevent outbreaks among the military.
Hemophilus influenzae, type b (Hib)	Capsular polysaccharide conjugated to protein	Prevents ear infections in children.
Hepatitis A	Inactivated virus	Available in single shot with HBsAg (Twinrix®).
Rabies	Inactivated virus <i>Active:</i> (1) $\beta$ -propiolactone-inactivated virus grown in duck egg embryos (2) phenol-inactivated virus grown in rabbit brain <i>Passive:</i> equine hyper-immune serum	Vaccine prepared from human diploid cell cultures (HDCV) has replaced the duck vaccine (DEV).
Smallpox	Attenuated live virus: attenuated by passing through calves	Despite the global eradication of smallpox, is used to protect against a possible bioterrorist attack.
Anthrax	Extract of attenuated bacteria	Primarily for veterinarians and military personnel.
Typhoid	Three available: 1. killed bacteria 2. live, attenuated bacteria (oral) 3. polysaccharide conjugated to protein	
Yellow fever	Live attenuated virus Prepared in chick embryo: Dakar strain or 17D strain	
Tuberculosis	Live attenuated mycobacterium BCG (Bacille calmette Guerin) strain (BCG)	Rarely used in the US.

human body is surrounded by microorganisms: in the air it breathes, the water it drinks, in the soil around it, and on the clothes he wears. Most of these are not normally pathogenic. But even the pathogenic ones do not always cause disease when they come in contact with the human body because the body has evolved ways of dealing with microorganisms and preventing them from causing disease, collectively known as the immune system.

The immune system is a complex network of cells and organs which work together to protect the body from communicable diseases. It has two components: the innate or non-specific immunity and the acquired or specific methods. While the innate immunity eliminates the organism no matter the type, acquired or specific immunity specifically recognizes and selectively eliminates the microorganism or foreign molecule.

### 28.2.1 Innate or Non-specific Immunity

The innate or non-specific defense mechanisms are the first line defense against invading microorganisms. They will act irrespective of the type of microorganism. Briefly, they consist of the following:

- (a) *Anatomic barriers*: these include mechanical barriers such as skin which physically keeps out microorganisms and mucous membranes of the alimentary canal, respiratory and urogenital tracts which entrap microorganisms. In addition, the mucous membranes harbor a normal set or flora of microorganisms which keep out foreign organisms.
- (b) *Physiologic barriers*: The physiology of the human body keeps out some pathogens. Thus, the high temperature of the human body, including the fever response keeps out some microorganisms as does the acidic nature of the stomach. Chemical mediators such as lysozymes found in tears break down bacterial cell walls.
- (c) *Phagocytosis and endocytosis*: white blood cells kill and digest whole micro-organisms, while specialized cells engulf and breakdown foreign particles.
- (d) *Inflammatory responses*: Tissue damage and infection induce leakage of vascular fluid serum protein with antibacterial fluid and influx of white blood cells leading to pus formation.

### 28.2.2 Acquired or Specific Immunity

Acquired or specific immunity has among others three important properties which are crucial in understanding vaccines and how they function.

- (i) **Antigenic specificity**: An antigen is a material usually a protein which binds specifically to an antibody or to T-cell receptor (see below). Great specificity occurs in the antigen-antibody or antigen-T-cell receptor relations. Often, a small difference of a single amino acid can decide whether or not binding to antibody or T-cell will take place.
- (ii) **Immunologic memory**: Once the acquired immune system has recognized and responded to an antigen, it exhibits immunologic memory: a second encounter with the same antigen induces an increased response.
- (iii) **Self/non-self recognition**: Specific immunity recognizes foreign bodies in contrast to those of the body and seeks to destroy the intruders. In rare cases, the system of recognition breaks down and the system fails to recognize body cells and proceeds to destroy them, giving rise to autoimmune diseases.

Specific immunity has two components, humoral and cell-mediated immunity which are mediated by white blood cells known as lymphocytes. Humoral immunity is mediated by B-Lymphocytes, while cell-mediated immunity is brought about by T-Lymphocytes. White blood cells including lymphocytes and red blood cells are produced from stem cells in the bone marrow. The B-lymphocytes remain in the bone marrow until mature, while T-lymphocytes mature in the thymus, a small organ located above the heart.

### 28.2.2.1 Specific immunity: humoral immunity

Humoral immunity is also known as antibody immunity. Antibodies are soluble proteins in the blood which bind to foreign agents and mark them for destruction or neutralize toxins produced by microorganisms. Also known as immunoglobulins, antibodies are glycoproteins by nature (i.e. proteins to which carbohydrates are conjugated). (see Fig. 28.1.)

When B-lymphocytes mature, each has one unique antigen-binding molecule, an antibody attached to its membrane. Up to 10 different antibody molecules may be carried on the B-lymphocytes. When such a mature B-lymphocyte, which has not yet encountered any antigen and therefore is known as a naïve lymphocyte, encounters an antigen for which its membrane-bound antibody is specific, it begins to divide rapidly and differentiates into two types of cells: **memory cells** and **plasma cells**. The memory cells have a longer life span and continue to express membrane-bound antibodies just like the original parent cell. On the other hand, the plasma cells live for four to five days and do not have cell-membrane bound antibodies. Instead, they produce antibodies in a form in which they can be secreted, often in huge amounts, sometimes reaching 2,000 molecules per second. The memory cells are the source of the long-term protection which vaccines confer.

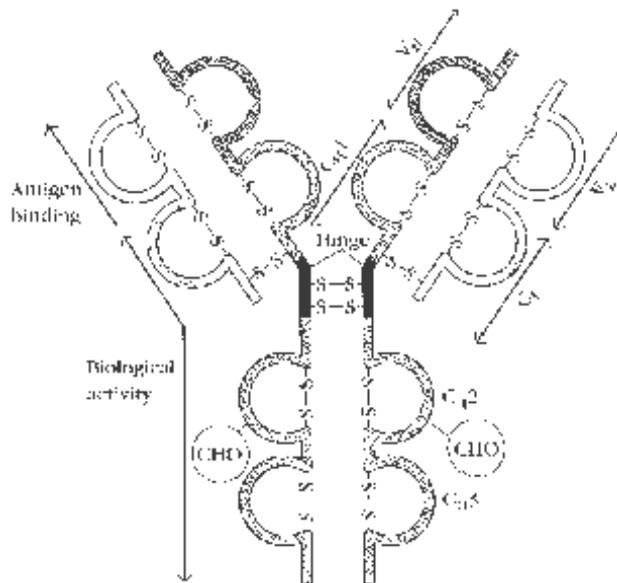
Antibodies (immunoglobulins) are Y-shaped and consist of two identical light chains and two identical heavy chains (Fig. 28.1). The upper end of the Y of the light and heavy chains of the antibody molecule is the variable region. The amino acids in this region vary greatly among different antibodies and this variability confers on antibodies the vast specificity for which they are known. The lower ends of the light and heavy chains are the 'constant' regions and do not show the variability found at the tips of the Y. The variability in protein composition in the 'constant' region of the heavy chains (Fig. 28.1) leads to antibodies being divided into five major classes, each with a different and distinct property: IgG, IgA, IgD, IgM, and IgE. IgG is the most abundant (80%) and the only one able to cross the placenta helping to confer maternal immunity on the newborn.

An antibody recognizes an antigen in a specific manner and the immune system acquires memory towards it. The first encounter with an antigen is known as the **primary response**. Re-encounter with the same antigen causes a **secondary response** that is more rapid and powerful. This is the basis on which vaccines function: they induce the memory lymphocytes to proliferate and the resulting plasma cells to produce soluble antibodies (Fig. 28.2).

### 28.2.2.2 Specific immunity: cell-mediated immunity

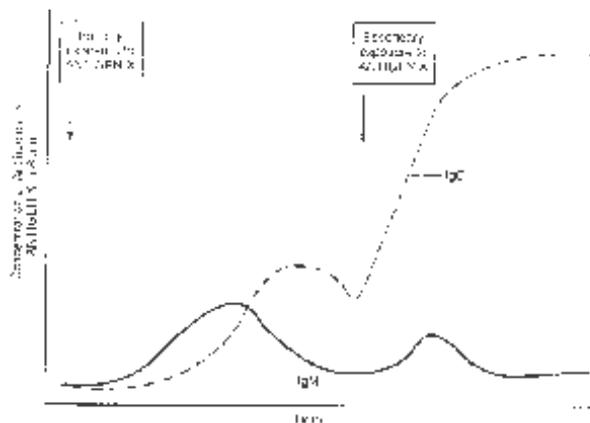
While B-lymphocytes mediate antibody or humoral immunity, T-lymphocytes are responsible for cell-mediated immunity. T-lymphocytes do not have cell membrane bound antibodies nor do they secrete antibodies. Instead, they have **T-cell receptors (TCRs)**. Unlike antibodies which can recognize antigens directly, T-cell receptors can recognize an antigen only if the antigen is associated with cell membrane proteins known as major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules of which two classes exist: MHC I and MHC II.

When a naïve T-cell encounters an antigen associated with an MHC on a cell, the T-cell proliferates and differentiates into **memory T-cells**, **T-helper cells (TH)**, and **T-cytotoxic**



-S-S-, Disulphide bonds; CHO, carbohydrate molecule attached to the constant region of the heavy chain; C<sub>H2</sub>, C<sub>H3</sub>, Constant regions of the heavy chain in the biological activity end of the antigen molecule; C<sub>L</sub>, Constant region of the light chain; V<sub>L</sub>, Variable region of the light chain; C<sub>H1</sub>, Constant region of the heavy chain in the constant part antigen binding end; V<sub>H</sub>, Variable region of the light chain (see text)

**Fig. 28.1** General Structure of an Antibody Molecule



Antibodies are proteins known as immunoglobulins (Ig). There are five different kinds of immunoglobulins IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM. The animal body produces antibodies when challenged with materials to which the body can react by producing antibodies (known as antigens). When the animal body is challenged with the same antigen a second time, the production of antibodies is not only produced in a shorter time, but the antibody production is more pronounced as shown in the figure above. In the figure above, IgM is produced in the first challenge and IgG in the second.

**Fig. 28.2** Antibody Response of the Animal Body to a Second Challenge of an Antigen

**cells (TC).**  $T_H$  and  $T_C$  cells carry on their membranes different glycoproteins.  $T_H$  cells carry glycoprotein **CD4**, while  $T_C$  cells carry **CD8**.

When a  $T_H$  cell interacts with an antigen linked to an MHC II compound, it is activated to produce cytokines which also activate B-cells to produce antibodies. Cytokines also activate  $T_C$  cells when they interact with an antigen linked to an MHC I compound to differentiate into cytotoxic T-lymphocytes (**CTLs**). CTLs do not secrete cytokines; instead, they monitor the body cells and eliminate any cells which are foreign or contain foreign bodies such as cancer cells or cells containing viruses. To ensure that are not attacked by CTLs, they attack only cells displaying foreign antigens attached to an MHC molecule on the surface of cells called antigen presenting cells (**APCs**). Antigen presenting cells adsorb foreign antigens such as viruses, digest them, and display the peptides from them on their surfaces. CTLs identify such cells and destroy them. APCs are specialized white blood cells. The cell-mediated immune response is important in cases where the pathogen is intracellular as in viruses.

## 28.3 TRADITIONAL AND MODERN METHODS OF VACCINE PRODUCTION

Antigens are macromolecules that elicit an immune response in the body. Antigens can be proteins, polysaccharides, or conjugates of lipids with proteins (lipoproteins) and polysaccharides (glycolipids). Antigens are generally very large and complex and the lymphocytes may not recognize all the sites of a particular antigen. Rather, both B- and T-lymphocytes recognize discrete sites on an antigen known as *epitopes* or *antigenic determinants*. The aim in vaccine production is to ensure that epitopes exist on the vaccine which will elicit humoral or cell-mediated response.

Traditionally, three types of vaccines have been used: attenuated live vaccines, killed vaccines, and bacterial toxoids. Recent advances in molecular biology and genomic science have spilled over into vaccine production.

### 28.3.1 Traditional Vaccines

#### 28.3.1.1 Live attenuated organisms

In live attenuated vaccines, the organism has been cultured so as to reduce its pathogenicity but still retains some of the antigens of the virulent form. They consist of the living pathogens whose virulence has been reduced (attenuated) by passaging them through hosts different from the usual. Alternatively, non-virulent strains of the pathogen may be used.

*Live agents* may be used for one or more of the following reasons:

- (i) When the protection-inducing substance is produced as a diffusible product of metabolizing organisms, e.g. *Bacillus anthracis*.
- (ii) When it is not feasible to produce sufficient amounts of nonviable agents and a small concentration of the living agent can propagate within the vaccinated subject to overcome the deficiency.
- (iii) When immunity is induced by the modification of parasitized cells.

Live vaccines in use include those against polio (Sabin oral polio vaccine—OPV), foot and mouth disease of farm animals, mumps, measles, rubella (German measles), tuberculosis, rabies, and yellow fever. For tuberculosis, the vaccine is derived from the Bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) strain of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, a weakened version of the bacterium that causes tuberculosis in cows. BCG is used as a vaccine against tuberculosis in many European countries; it is however not commonly used in the U.S.

The OPV has advantages and disadvantages when compared with the (inactivated) Salk polio vaccine (IPV). OPV can be given by mouth rather than by injection, and it can spread to the other members of the vaccinee's family thus immunizing them as well. Its disadvantage is that on rare occasions, the virus regains full virulence and causes the disease. On account of this, the Salk vaccine has gained prominence over the Sabin vaccine in some countries.

### 28.3.1.2 Killed vaccines

These consist of suspensions of fully virulent organisms (bacteria or viruses) killed as mildly as possible in order not to destroy the antigenic determinants on the organism. Killing can be achieved by heat (usually about 60°C for 1 hour), chemicals (phenol, alcohol, formalin,  $\beta$ -propiolactone), or ultraviolet irradiation. Killed vaccines do not provide as prolonged antigenic stimuli as living vaccines and two, three, or more sub-cutaneous injections are required to give adequate protection. Examples of killed vaccines include TAB vaccine against typhoid fever which consists of heat-killed phenol-preserved suspension of *Salmonella typhi* and *S. paratyphi* A & B, whooping cough, cholera, and the Salk IPV.

### 28.3.1.3 Bacterial toxoids

Toxoids are inactivated bacterial exotoxins. The toxins from *Clostridium botulinum*, *Clostridium tetani*, and *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* are inactivated by treatment in formalin. Toxoids induce antibody production when injected into the body, although they are themselves harmless. In some diseases, of which diphtheria and tetanus are good examples, the bacterial metabolite, a protein toxin which they liberate, is the cause of the disease and not the bacteria themselves. Exposing the toxin with formaldehyde denatures the protein. However, some epitopes on the protein molecule are retained and they elicit antibody production.

## 28.3.2 Newer Approaches in Vaccinology

The advent of genomics, proteomics, and biotechnology and the increased understanding of pathogenesis and immune responses to various pathogens have led to the development of safer, more effective, and cheaper vaccines.

### 28.3.2.1 Subunit or surface molecule vaccines

Subunit vaccines contain antigens or epitopes that induce protection rather than the whole organism. The materials usually come from the surface of the organism and therefore are also known as surface molecule vaccines. The potential advantages of using subunits as vaccines are the increased safety and less antigenic competition, since only a few components are

included in the vaccine. One of the disadvantages of subunit vaccines is that they generally require strong adjuvants and these adjuvants often induce tissue reactions. Adjuvants are compounds administered with vaccines so as to increase the immunogenicity of the vaccines. Second, the duration of immunity is generally shorter than with live vaccines. Sometimes, peptide epitopes may be used. Apart from requiring adjuvants, a pathogen can escape immune responses to a single epitope; hence, several peptides linked together are used to broaden the immune response to different epitopes. Subunit vaccines are currently available for typhoid fever and whooping cough. Several vaccines employ purified surface molecules. One of them, the influenza vaccine, contains purified hemagglutinins from the viruses currently in circulation around the world. Another example is the vaccine against the hepatitis B virus. The gene encoding a protein expressed on the surface of the virus, the B surface antigen or HBsAg, can now be expressed in *E. coli* cells and provides the material for an effective vaccine. Hepatitis B infection is strongly associated with the development of liver cancer. For the vaccine against *Streptococcus pneumoniae* which causes pneumonia in humans, about 80 different strains of the organism are used. They differ in the chemistry of their polysaccharide capsules which surround them and the current vaccine consists of purified capsular polysaccharides of the 23 most common strains.

### 28.3.2.2 Conjugate vaccines

These are similar to subunit vaccines in the sense that only a part of the organism is used in making the vaccine. Some bacteria which are encapsulated cause important childhood diseases such as septicemia, pneumonia, and meningitis. The bacteria are *Haemophilus influenzae* type B (HiB), *Neisseria meningitides*, and *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. The capsules of these bacteria are made of carbohydrates which the immune system of adults recognize as foreign, but that of infants does not and hence cannot make antibodies against them. To solve the problem, protein from diphtheria or tetanus toxoids is linked or conjugated to the carbohydrate to make a vaccine. This enables a baby's immune system to respond to the combined vaccine and produce antibodies, initiating an immune response against the disease-causing organism. The licensed conjugate vaccines against *Haemophilus influenzae* type b (Hib), previously the major cause of bacterial meningitis in babies and young children, have virtually eliminated the disease in the United States.

### 28.3.2.3 Other (Experimental) vaccines

#### (i) Polynucleotide (DNA) Vaccines

A recent development in vaccinology is immunization with polynucleotides. This has been referred to as genetic immunization or DNA immunization. The rationale for this is that cells can take up DNA and express the genes within the transfected cells. Thus, the animal body itself produces the vaccine. This makes the vaccine relatively inexpensive to produce. Some of the advantages of polynucleotide immunization are that it is extremely safe, induces a broad range of immune responses (cell-mediated and humoral responses), long-lived immunity, and most importantly, can induce immune responses in the presence of maternal antibodies. Most recently, it has also been used for immunizing animal fetuses. Thus, animals are born immune to the pathogens and at no time in the animal's life are they susceptible to these infectious agents. Although an attractive development, there is a great need to develop better delivery systems to improve the *in vivo* efficiency.

**(ii) Edible Vaccines**

Edible vaccines can safely and effectively trigger an immune response against the *Escherichia coli* bacterium and the Norwalk virus. Attempts are being made to genetically engineer potatoes, bananas, and tomatoes that will initiate an immune response against harmful intestinal bacteria and viruses.

**28.3.2.4 Reverse vaccinology**

The name 'reverse vaccinology' mimics the established term reverse genetics—meaning the process of identifying a protein or enzyme through its gene. Traditionally, the initial point in preparing a vaccine is to grow the pathogen, which could often be very fastidious and difficult to grow. Then, the antigens had to be identified one by one. Sometimes, many years might be spent just working on one antigen, and traditionally, only the most abundant and the easiest to purify and identify (and not necessarily the best) have been studied. To begin with however, not all pathogens will successfully grow *in vitro* as is required for conventional methodologies, with Hepatitis B and C viruses being prime examples of such organisms. With reverse vaccinology, the organism need not even be seen; the genomic constitution of the organism already in databases needs only to be accessed *in silico*. Reverse vaccinology utilizes the wealth of information provided by genome sequencing to identify and characterize a whole host of new vaccine targets.

The technology has two major facets, *in silico* and *in vitro/vivo*. The *in silico* aspect is the identification, annotation, and localization of ORFs and their products. Identified targets can then be used for laboratory study (*in vitro/in vivo*) where they are expressed, purified, and tested for immunogenicity. Genome-based vaccine discovery was applied for the first time to serogroup B meningococcus, a bacterium which is a major cause of sepsis and meningitis that had defied all traditional approaches to vaccine development.

The *in silico* sequence of the genome predicted 600 potential antigens. Of them, 350 were expressed in *Escherichia coli*, purified, and used to immunize mice. Twenty-nine were found to induce bactericidal antibodies which will lead to protection. A subgroup of the genome-derived antigens is now being tested in clinical trials. Reverse vaccinology is now a standard technology. Vaccines projects are not undertaken without knowledge of the sequence of the pathogen. Successful examples of genome-based vaccine discovery are pneumococcus, group B streptococcus, *Staphylococcus aureus*, and a variety of viruses.

**28.3.2.5 Some definitions of terms used in dealing with vaccines**

- (i) *Active natural immunity* is immunity arising from a natural disease. Smallpox, for example, is suffered once in a life-time because of the immunity conferred on the patient by the disease due to antibodies produced during the illness.
- (ii) *Active artificial immunity* is due to the use of vaccines, toxoids, etc. which stimulate the individual to produce his own antibodies.
- (iii) *Passive natural immunity* is most easily exemplified by maternal immunity in which newborn animals are immune from certain disease for a short period early in their lives due to the crossing of the placenta by certain antibodies (immunoglobulins). In some animals including man, maternal immunity is also acquired by the young's consumption of colostrum (thick cream-colored milk produced during the first few days after childbirth).

- (iv) *Passive artificial immunity* occurs when ready-made antibodies are introduced into the body. An example is the use of anti-tetanus serum in which serum from a horse which has been immunized against tetanus is used to protect an individual against tetanus.

## 28.4 PRODUCTION OF VACCINES

### 28.4.1 Production of Virus Vaccines

Viruses multiply only in living cells. Viruses to be used for vaccine production must therefore be grown in such cells. In practice, they are grown for vaccine purposes in tissue cultures.

#### 28.4.1.1 Tissue cultures and their cultivation

The growth of animal cells *in vitro* in monolayers is known as tissue or cell cultures. Tissue cultures will be discussed briefly here because they are used in an area of industrial microbiology which deals with the manufacture of biological materials used in pharmacy, human medicine, and veterinary practice. Such biological materials include vaccines, interferon, hormones, immunological reagents, and cellular biochemicals such as insulin, enzymes, plasminogen, and plasminogen activators.

(i) **Cells used:** The cells used in tissue cultures for the production of biological material are derived from three sources:

- (a) *Primary cells* are obtained by treating certain tissues derived from healthy animals with disaggregating enzymes such trypsin and transferred for the first time into an *in vitro* growth environment. Such tissues include avian embryo, kidneys from virus-free green monkeys widely used for many biologicals (including polio vaccines), rabbit kidney (for rubella and vaccinia), and calf kidney (for measles in Japan).

When embryo of chicks or ducks are used, the avian embryos are harvested from eggs, obtained from special isolated flocks, and then minced and treated with disaggregating enzymes such as trypsin, collagenase, hyaluronidase, and pronase. The fibroblast cells released by this process are attachment dependent requiring solid surfaces for growth. The successful commercial manufacture of viral vaccines in attachment-dependent cell systems relies on the establishment and maintenance of healthy cell monolayers. The appropriate growth and maintenance media must be carefully selected, and careful attention must be paid to nutrient depletion, waste accumulation, and changes in pH over time.

To produce measles and mumps vaccines, those viruses are grown and attenuated by passage through cultures of chicken embryo cells. For foot-and-mouth disease which affects farm animals, a wide range of primary cells are used: bovine kidney, goat heart and lung, skin and kidney of camels.

- (b) *Diploid cells* are obtained from well-defined human cell lines. Serially passaged diploid strains of cultured human cells were first described in the 1960s and at time, the concept of using human diploid cell lines for vaccine preparation was hotly debated for fear that cancer-causing DNA or human viral agents might be unknowingly co-administered with the vaccine. Extensive karyological (i.e. chromosomal)

characterization and thorough searches for viral contaminants were necessary to ensure that cultures were free of exogenous infectious agents before the first diploid cell product, poliomyelitis vaccine, was licensed in the United States. Such diploid cell lines must have shown a karyology or chromosome characteristics identical with the parent tissue and be free from bacterial, viral, or fungal contaminants. Human diploid cell lines (WI-38 or MRC-5) have since been used to produce a number of licensed vaccine products against poliovirus, adenovirus types 4 and 7, rubella (German measles) virus, rubeola (measles) virus, rabies, hepatitis A, and varicella virus (chickenpox).

- (c) *Established cell lines* include those which are capable of growth for an indefinite number of passages. They are used for veterinary rather than human vaccines. A good example is the baby hamster kidney cells. A distinguishing feature of the human diploid cells such as WI-38 or MRC-5 is that they have a finite life span, reaching senescence after 40 to 60 population doublings. In contrast, continuous cell lines exhibit no such constraints and divide indefinitely. An example of a nonhuman continuous cell line that has been used successfully for the manufacturing of vaccines such as polio, rabies, and influenza is Vero. Vero cells are a continuous monkey kidney cell line. Serially cultured or continuous cell lines are advantageous in that each new production batch is derived from a uniform master cell bank, characterized to be free of contaminating infectious agents, contaminating proteins, or nucleic acids. Proper maintenance of a master cell bank is critically important for the consistency of cell culture products.

(ii) **Medium for tissue culture:** Various media are available for the cultivation of cells. They consist essentially of inorganic salts, amino acids, vitamins, nucleotides, and low molecular growth factors such as hormones, steroids, and fatty acids. Another important component is serum and this is often used in conjunction with peptones, tryptic digests, and albumin hydrolysates. A mixture of antibiotics is also often added to remove contaminants.

(iii) **Cell culture fermentors:** Conventionally, animal cells grow on the surface of the glass containers in which they are cultured. Cylindrically shaped roller bottles have been used successfully to establish monolayers of chick fibroblasts on their inner surfaces, which can be monitored microscopically through the clear plastic. The cell sheets are continuously bathed in a growth medium contained within the bottle during slow axial rotation on special roller racks. After the cell sheets are established, they are infected by introduction of the specific virus. After incubation, the cells and virus may be harvested (e.g. varicella). In the case of rubella, viral fluids may be harvested at approximately two- to three-day intervals through 10 to 12 harvest cycles. Although millions of doses have been successfully manufactured using roller bottles, capacity is limited by the space that large numbers of roller bottles require and by the time-consuming and often labor intensive manipulations for harvesting and pooling the viral fluids from them. Multidisc reactors offer an alternative to roller bottles for attachment-dependent cell lines. They consist of 10-L stainless steel reaction vessels containing approximately 100 parallel titanium discs that slowly rotate through growth media and provide solid surfaces for cell attachment and monolayer formation. For the production of vaccines and other biological materials, many thousands of bottles are stacked together. The tendency in recent times is to develop large units of up to 1,000 liters in many small units.

In summary, because cells still require surfaces for growth even on such a large scale, various arrangements are used. In some fermenters, plates or discs made of plastics, glass,

or metal are supported with a central frame and bathed in a sterile tissue culture solution. The other consist of packed beds of plastic or glass materials over which the medium flows; cells adhere to the surfaces of the support material. In yet others, a bank of roller tubes through which medium is circulated support growth on the tubes' internal surfaces.

(iv) **Cell harvest:** Cells may be harvested by the use of trypsin (or other proteolytic enzymes such as papain or pronase), by the use of chelating agents, e.g. EDTA, by physical scraping off, or a combination of one or more of these methods.

### 28.4.1.2 Production of Salk polio vaccine

The production of Salk polio vaccine will be discussed as an example of the production of a virus vaccine. The cells of the kidneys of rhesus monkeys are caused to separate into individual members by treatment with trypsin. The suspension of cells is then distributed in shallow containers and covered with a suitable medium. The cells have a tendency to adhere to glass, and incubation of the cultures at 37°C for four to six days permits a confluent growth of a monolayer of cells. The culture fluid is removed and is replaced by maintenance medium, which contains no protein as subjects using the vaccine may react adversely to protein if this is present.

Live virus are inoculated into the tissue culture medium and incubated at 37°C for four days. The viruses lyse the kidney cells in a manner characteristic of the particular virus and which is described as the cytopathic effect. The viruses are harvested by centrifuging to remove cell debris. They are then inactivated by treatment with formalin. The success of inactivation is checked by injection into embryonated chick egg or in experimental animals. The inactivating agent is removed before the virus is stored at 4°C, sometimes with addition of glycerol.

### 28.4.2 Production of Bacterial Toxoids

Many clostridia (Gram-positive spore-forming anaerobic rods) cause disease in man and animals by the production of exotoxins. Some examples include:

<i>C. tetani</i>	-	tetanus
<i>C. botulinum</i>	-	botulism
<i>C. welchii</i>	-	gas gangrene

Aerobes may also cause disease by the production of exotoxins, e.g. *Corynebacterium*. It is possible to collect the toxins so produced in cell-free extracts from *in vitro* cultivation. The toxin can then be inactivated by treatment with formaldehyde. Such inactivated toxin known as a toxoid is antigenic and is able to cause the body to produce antibodies to the original toxin. Toxoids are non-toxic and are used to artificially induce active specific immunity.

In industrial practice, toxoids of clostridial toxins are prepared by inactivating toxins produced from the clostridia grown in large fermenters under anaerobic conditions.

The media used usually consist of hydrolysates of proteins from horse meat and are sterilized at 15 psi. Nowadays, synthetic media containing inorganic components are preferred as toxins therein are easier to isolate from such fermentations. Since the fermentation is anaerobic, satisfactory growth and toxin production are easily obtained in deep fermenters. The only agitation required is to provide uniform temperature. Nitrogen is also blown through to flush away oxygen from the system.

At the end of the incubation, the bulk of the bacterial cells is harvested by centrifuging. The supernatant is further filtered through bacterial filters, before the toxin present therein is converted to toxoid. This is done by incubating the filtrate at 37°C in contact with formalin. The inactivation is tested from time to time by injection into animals.

Protein from the medium is removed by precipitation with ammonium sulfate at 4°C. Excess  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$  is removed by dialysis; the product is filter-sterilized and diluted to final strength with buffered saline.

### 28.4.3 Production of Killed Bacterial Vaccines

A suspension of the organism (usually produced by scraping cultures on agar from the surface) is washed thoroughly with centrifugation. It is then killed, usually with heat. For non-spore-forming bacteria, treatment at 60°C for half hour is usually enough. The efficiency of the killing is tested by streaking the dead cells on agar. The density of cells needed to immunize laboratory animals is worked out in experimental animals and that needed for man is obtained by proportion by relating number to weight in both man and animals.

## 28.5 CONTROL OF VACCINES

(i) **Stringency of standards:** Vaccines produced for human use must conform to standards laid out by different countries, and manufacturers must conform to them. The controls are stringent and designed to ensure (a) that the material is potent, (b) it is safe, and (c) it will not give rise to unpleasant or undesirable side effects. The control of vaccines is stringent, time-consuming, and very expensive because of the expertise involved. Indeed, a good deal of the cost of the vaccine is due to the expenses incurred in the tests. No vaccine can be considered ready for use for the health of the general public until it has been extensively tested and conforms to the standards of the WHO.

For obvious reasons, live vaccines, whether of bacteria or viruses, are generally more stringently tested than killed vaccines or toxoids. Thus, while the killed vaccines/toxins for the bacterial diseases diphtheria, tetanus, cholera, typhoid fever, and pertussis are merely tested for sterility, toxicity, and potency, the live vaccines for tuberculosis, BCGs, are tested for contaminations, virulent organisms, identity, skin reactivity, viable counts, and stability.

One reason for the stringency of the testing of virus vaccines is that when polio virus was grown on monkey tissue kidney, it was soon found that these monkeys themselves harbored a large number of viruses. Laboratory-grown animals were therefore resorted to including ducks, chicken, rabbits, or dogs. Even though these contained fewer viruses, the tests still had to be performed because any viruses in the substrate could find its way into man.

(ii) **Potency and field potency testing:** These are based on the ability of the vaccine or toxoid to immunize animals against a lethal, paralytic, skin-test, or intra-cerebral (in the case of pertussis) challenge. In potency testing, a set of test animals are protected with the vaccine while the control is not. In a potent vaccine, the disease should appear only in the control when the animals are inoculated. A large effort in vaccine production is devoted to potency testing. *Field trials* must be carried out with the vaccine, but this is usually carried out by government regulatory agencies rather than the manufacturer, although he is usually consulted during the tests. The manufacturer usually recommends any adjuvants which

may be found necessary. Adjuvants are immunological enhancers and have the following qualities:

- (i) A smaller quantity of antigen can be used in single and combined vaccines.
- (ii) Owing to the reduced antigen quantity or its slower release, there are fewer local systemic reactions.
- (iii) A better immune response is obtained, an important situation in disease, where a high antibody level is required for protection.
- (iv) Many antigens may be included in a single vaccine.
- (v) A reduced number of inoculations may be given.

Common adjuvants used are aluminum compounds, groundnut oil, and calcium phosphate.

(iii) **Quantity of antigen used in vaccine:** This is to be determined by experimentation by titrating the quantity of antibodies produced against the antigen. In some cases, large quantities of vaccine may be necessary for immunization. It should be noted however that, in some cases, too high a dose of antigen may paralyze the immune system.

(iv) **The crowding-out effect:** Vaccines may be inactivated when multiple vaccines are administered.

(v) **Choice of test animal:** The test animal in evaluating a vaccine is of paramount importance. The vaccine must be able to induce antibody production in the animal being used.

(vi) **The route of administration:** This may be important in determining the efficiency of the response.

## 28.6 VACCINE PRODUCTION VERSUS OTHER ASPECTS OF INDUSTRIAL MICROBIOLOGY

It is important that some differences between vaccine production and routine industrial fermentations be discussed in order to emphasize its uniqueness.

- (i) The cells used in vaccine production are usually pathogenic and therefore complete sterility must be maintained. Furthermore, while contaminants may merely hinder production in other industrial fermentations, in vaccine production, contaminants may mean the introduction of an undesirable organism into the human body.
- (ii) The fermentation is usually small (25–1,000 liters) compared to antibiotic fermentation (500,000 liters). This is because the amount required per person is usually small.
- (iii) Potency cannot be determined during cultivation, hence reproducibility during production is viewed as less essential.

### END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. Discuss nature and significance of vaccines.
2. List four vaccines against bacteria and four vaccines against viruses and their methods of preparation.
3. List types of vaccines traditionally used for immunization.

4. Give reasons for use of live agents in vaccine production.
5. Discuss newer approaches to vaccine production.
6. Describe methods employed for production of viral vaccines.
7. Discuss the production of tetanus toxoid.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Anon. 1979. Microbial Processes: Promising Technologies for the Developing Countries. National Academy of Science, Washington, DC, USA.
- Dove, A. 2004. Making Prevention Pay Nature Biotechnology. 72, 387–391.
- Fraser, C.M., Rappuoli, R. 2005. Application of Microbial Genomic Science to Advanced Therapeutics. Annual Review of Medicine. 56, 459–474.
- Gurunathan, S., Klinman, D.M., Seder, R.A. 2000. DNA VACCINES: Immunology, Application, and Optimization. Annual Review of Immunology. 18, 927–974.
- Kuby, J. 1997. Immunology. 3rd ed. W H Freeman and Co. New York, USA.
- Meinginer, B., Mongeot, H., Favre, H. 1980. Development in Biological Standardization. 46, 249–256.
- Mora, M., Veggi, D., Santini, L., Pizza, M., Rappuoli, R. 2003. Reverse Vaccinology Drug Discovery. Today. 8, 459–464.
- Rappuoli, R. 2001. Reverse Vaccinology, a Genome-based Approach to Vaccine Development. Vaccine. 19, 2688–91.
- Robertson, B.H., Nicholson, J.K.A. 2005. New Microbiology Tools for Public Health and Their Implications. Annual Review of Public Health. 26, 281–302.
- Spier, R.E. 1980. Adv. Biochem. Eng. 14, 141–162.
- Stoughton, R.B. 2005. Applications of DNA-microarrays in Biology. Annual Reviews of Biochemistry. 74, 53–82.
- Telford, J.L., Pizza, M., Grandi, G., Rappuoli, R. 2002. Reverse Vaccinology: From Genome to Vaccine. In: Methods in Microbiology. Vol. 33, Academic Press. Amsterdam the Netherlands. pp. 258–269.
- Yewdell, J.W., Haeryfar, S.M.M. 2005. Understanding Presentation of Viral Antigens To Cd8+ T Cells *In Vivo*: The Key to Rational Vaccine Design. Annual Review of Immunology. 23, 651–82.
- Zinkernagel, R.M. 2003. On Natural and Artificial Vaccinations. Annual Review of Immunology. 21, 515–46.

# CHAPTER 29

---

## Drug Discovery in Microbial Metabolites

### The Search for Microbial Products with Bioactive Properties

---

Microorganisms produce a wide array of chemically diverse secondary metabolites which turned out to be very important to the pharmaceutical industry as well the agricultural industry.

Organized search for microbial metabolites of pharmaceutical and clinical importance began in the late 1960s, when methods were developed for the isolation of enzyme inhibitors of microbial origin. This led to the discovery of many drugs of clinical importance.

This section will discuss the conventional methods for assaying microbial metabolites as a means of discovering those with positive bioactive activities with the potential of resulting in new drugs.

Prior to the assay for possible drug activities, the microbial metabolite must be studied using various chemical methods including solvent extraction, precipitation, chromatography, and spectroscopic methods. The assays may be cell-based, receptor-binding, or enzyme assays. Many assays are available and the examples given are a small selection and designed to expose the student to the general procedure for drug discovery in microbial metabolites.

### **29.1 CONVENTIONAL PROCESSES OF DRUG DISCOVERY**

#### **29.1.1 Cell-based Assays**

Cell-based tests are used to screen for novel microbial metabolites which inhibit a cellular function, but where a specific molecular target has not been identified. The active compound(s) may interact with the cell at a number of points and the cell may even be killed. Compounds with activity at the cell level need to be further screened to identify the exact mechanism by which they affect the cell. A number of cell reactions are used to

determine whether or not microbial metabolites are bioactive and hence possess potential to become new drugs.

### 29.1.1.1 Inflammatory reactions

When a foreign protein such as a bacterium enters the body, the body reacts by developing a non-specific inflammatory reaction in which white blood cells rush to the site; it may also develop antibodies to the foreign protein. The ability to enhance, initiate, or suppress immunologic reaction is used to assess bioactivity in microbial metabolites. One test used is the mixed lymphocyte reaction (MLR) test. This test is an *in vitro* assay of T<sub>H</sub>-cell proliferation in a cell-mediated response. In an MLR test, cytotoxic lymphocytes (CTLs) are generated by co-culturing spleen cells from two different species, the rat and the mouse. The T-lymphocytes undergo extensive transformation and cell proliferation. The degree of cell proliferation is assessed by adding labeled [3H] thymidine to the culture medium and monitoring the uptake of the label into DNA during cell divisions. Both components proliferate unless one population is rendered unresponsive with an inhibitory antibiotic such as mitomycin C or has been killed by irradiation.

#### 29.1.1.1.1 Immunomodulation

Microbial metabolites with the ability to enhance immunologic reactions are those able to enhance the incorporation of [3H] thymidine into spleen cells and T-cells in the MLR test. Similarly, the ability of a microbial metabolite to restore antibody production to mice unable to produce antibodies is an indication of bioactivity. Kifunesine, a compound produced by the actinomycete *Kitasatosporia kifunense*, has been found to have immunomodulatory activity.

#### 29.1.1.1.2 Immunosuppression

The enhancement of the body's immune system to protect it from disease by foreign organisms such as bacteria is normally desirable. However under some conditions, it is necessary to suppress the body's immune system, for example, during tissue or organ transplantation. The immunologic apparatus of the recipient individual would normally reject the donated part because it is foreign. To avoid the rejection, immunosuppressive drugs are given to the recipient person. The presence of immunosuppressive metabolites is tested by a modification of the MLR test, known as the one-way MLR. In this test, one component of the mixture, the stimulator cells, is treated with mitomycin C to inactivate them. Within 24–48 hours, the untreated cells, the responder cells, begin to divide and incorporate [3H] thymidine as well as express antigens foreign to the responder T-cells. The presence of an immunosuppressive metabolite is indicated by its blockage of the expression of the foreign antigens in the responder cells. An example of an immunosuppressive microbial metabolite is an analogue of the antibiotic cyclosporin, identified as FR901459 which is produced by the fungus *Stachybotris chartarum*.

#### 29.1.1.1.3 Macrophage activation

Macrophages are white blood cells which migrate into tissues throughout the body (histocytes in connective tissue, alveolar macrophages in lung, microglial in the central

nervous system, mesangial in the kidney, Kupffer cells in the liver, and osteoclasts in bone). They engulf and digest foreign matter and are active in antigen processing and presentation and the phagocytic effectors of cell-mediated immunity and hypersensitivity. They not only destroy bacteria invading the body, but they also destroy cancer cells. Activation of macrophage cells is detected by the spreading of the macrophages as observed under the scanning electron microscope. TAN-999 is an alkaloid produced by a *Streptomyces* sp. and shown to activate macrophages.

### **29.1.1.2 Cardiovascular disease: Inhibition of platelet aggregation**

Some megakaryocytes give rise to red blood cells while others fragment to give platelets. Blood contains 150,000 to 350,000 platelets per ml. They are important in blood clotting. When the wall of a blood vessel is damaged by disease or by a trauma such as a cut, thrombin is formed and this acts on the soluble fibrinogen present in the blood to form insoluble fibrin strands. The fibrin strands trap platelets to form blood clots. Blood clots forming within the blood vessels are dangerous and, if large enough, could block blood vessels leading to the heart causing a heart attack or in blood vessels leading to the brain, a stroke. Platelet aggregation inhibitors are useful in preventing cardiovascular disorders through preventing clots. Platelet aggregation inhibition is measured against a control by a turbidometric assay of the platelets to which the metabolite and thrombin are mixed.

### **29.1.1.3 Cardiovascular disease: Angiogenesis inhibitors**

Angiogenesis is the process of new blood vessel formation and is essential for the formation of solid tumors. Metabolites are tested for anti-angiogenesis effects by placing pellets of the metabolites dried on small cores of sterile filter paper on a five-day chick embryo. Metabolites containing anti-angiogenesis compounds prevent blood vessel formation where the paper was placed.

## **29.1.2 Receptor Binding Assays**

Receptor binding assays have been important in drug discovery. Preparations from animal tissues have been used as membrane receptors in a wide variety of targets. The bound ligand is then separated by centrifugation or filtration and a percentage inhibition calculated on the basis of controls. Ligand receptor interactions are used to search for microbial metabolites which have potential in drug discovery for dealing with inflammatory (immunity) diseases, cancers, cardiovascular disease, and central nervous system diseases.

### **29.1.2.1 Receptor binding in inflammatory disease**

#### **29.1.2.1.1 Leukotriene B<sub>4</sub> (LTB<sub>4</sub>) binding inhibitors**

Leukotrienes are produced by a variety of white blood cells. Among them, LTB<sub>4</sub> is a powerful mediator of inflammatory reactions causing the loss of granules in granule-containing white blood cells leading to allergic reactions. LTB<sub>4</sub> antagonists may therefore be useful in treating inflammatory diseases. In the search for LTB<sub>4</sub> antagonists, labeled LTB<sub>4</sub> is incubated with a suspension of membrane from white blood cells and the test

microbial metabolite. After the incubation, the bound labeled LTB<sub>4</sub> is separated from the free ligand by filtration and centrifugation.

#### 29.1.2.1.2 CD4 binding inhibitors

CD4 is a glycoprotein present on the surface of mature helper/inducer T white blood cells. It binds to class II MHC (Major Histocompatibility Complex II) and this stabilizes the T-cell receptor and its attachment, the antigen-MHCII complex. Inhibition of this interaction can have important suppressive effects on immune responses. Additionally, the CD4 molecule is an important antiviral target because it is the cellular receptor for the HIV virus. An assay which has been used to search for anti-CD4 compounds was based on the interaction between soluble recombinant CD4 and a monoclonal antibody. The assay enabled the discovery of new anti-CD4 compounds of fungal origin.

### 29.1.3 Enzyme Assays

All activities of living things are mediated through enzymes. Therefore, enzymes are widely targeted in the search for pharmacologically active compounds.

#### 29.1.3.1 Inflammatory diseases

##### 29.1.3.1.1 Cell surface sugar metabolism inhibitors

Sugars conjugated with various compounds are important in mammalian cell surfaces. They are important in cell adhesion which plays a significant role in inflammatory disease as well as in cancer. Numerous enzymes are involved in the metabolism of sugars presented at cell surfaces. An enzyme which has been targeted is  $\alpha$ -D-mannosidase. Broth cultures of *Streptovercillium verticillus* var. *quantum* (*Streptomyces verticillus*?) were found to contain antagonists to the enzyme, designated mannostatins A and B.

##### 29.1.3.1.2 Human leukocyte elastase inhibitors

Human leukocyte elastase is one of the most destructive enzymes known. It hydrolyzes several compounds found in connective tissue including elastin, proteoglycan, and collagen. The enzyme is released by certain white blood cells and it may be involved with the destructive processes associated with chronic inflammatory diseases. A peptide metabolite of *Streptomyces resistomycificus* was found to antagonize the enzyme.

##### 29.1.3.1.3 Cardiovascular disease: Inhibition of cholesterol metabolism

Cholesterol is important in cardiovascular disease because it is deposited on the walls of blood vessels decreasing the blood vessel diameter leading to high blood pressure and, in some cases, to occlusion of the blood vessels. This may lead to heart attacks or strokes depending on whether the occlusions occur in a blood vessel leading to the heart or one leading to the brain. Acyl co-enzyme A cholesterol transferase (ACAT) plays an important part in atherogenesis and cholesterol adsorption from the intestine. ACAT inhibitors may therefore be useful in treating arteriosclerosis and hypercholesterolemia (high cholesterol).

Many new ACAT inhibitors have been identified in recent times, including some from Fungi.

## 29.2 NEWER METHODS OF DRUG DISCOVERY

### 29.2.1 Computer Aided Drug Design

The search for antimicrobial compounds and other drugs can nowadays start on the computer, i.e. *in silico*. New drugs can be created on the computer and their efficacy determined through assessing whether or not they will bind to proteins on 'pathogenic microorganisms' or 'diseased tissues'. Drug discovery and development is immensely expensive and time-consuming. The success rate of new chemical entities selected for clinical development is approximately 20% with most failures attributed to unacceptable pharmacokinetic properties. Undesirable properties, such as poor absorption, low and variable bioavailability, and drug interactions may be predicted from *in vitro* and *in silico* data, thus facilitating selection of the most appropriate lead compound. The *in silico* approach is not only rapid, but it is also cost-effective. The successful *in silico* antibiotic or drug must then be tested in the wet laboratory using *in vitro* and *in vivo* methods as required by regulatory agencies discussed later in this chapter. Perhaps the best example of *in silico* drug development is the development of inhibitors of HIV-1 protease by computer-aided drug design. HIV-1 genome encodes an aspartic protease (HIV-1 PR). Inactivation of HIV-1 PR by either mutation or chemical inhibition leads to the production of immature, noninfectious viral particles. Thus, the function of this enzyme was shown to be essential for proper virion assembly and maturation. Therefore, HIV-1 PR was identified over a decade ago as the prime target for structure- or computer-assisted (sometimes called 'rational') drug design. The structure-assisted drug design and discovery process utilizes structural biochemical methods, such as protein crystallography, nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR), and computational biochemistry to guide the synthesis of potential drugs. This information can in turn be used to help explain the basis of their activity and to improve the potency and specificity of new lead compounds.

To facilitate the drug discovery process, many researchers are turning to fragment-based approaches to find lead molecules more efficiently. One such method, tethering, allows for the identification of small-molecule fragments that bind to specific regions of a protein target. These fragments can then be elaborated, combined with other molecules, or combined with one another to provide high-affinity drug leads.

### 29.2.2 Combinatorial Chemistry

The essence of combinatorial chemistry or techniques involving 'molecular diversity' is to generate enormous populations of molecules and to exploit appropriate screening techniques to isolate active components contained in these libraries. Its developments go hand in hand with an exploding number of potential drug targets emerging from genomics and proteomics research.

Synthesis of molecules in a combinatorial fashion can quickly lead to large numbers of molecules. For example, a molecule with three points of diversity (R1, R2, and R3) can generate  $NR_1 \times NR_2 \times NR_3$  possible structures, where  $NR_1$ ,  $NR_2$ , and  $NR_3$  are the number of different substituents utilized.

Using this technique, a large number of structurally distinct molecules are synthesized at a time and submitted for pharmacological assay. The key of combinatorial chemistry is that a large range of analogues is synthesized using the same reaction conditions and the same reaction vessels. In this way, the chemist can synthesize many hundreds or thousands of compounds in one time instead of preparing only a few by simple methodology.

In the past, chemists have traditionally made one compound at a time. For example, compound A would have been reacted with compound B to give product AB, which would have been isolated after reaction work-up and purification through crystallization, distillation, or chromatography. In contrast to this approach, combinatorial chemistry offers the potential to make every combination of compound A<sub>1</sub> to A<sub>n</sub> with compound B<sub>1</sub> to B<sub>n</sub>. Combinatorial chemistry has been helped by developments in automation or robotics and miniaturization of processes. These enable many hundreds of compounds to be synthesized and screened. The starting points of the compounds to be 'amplified' by combinatorial chemistry could be from plants, animals, or microorganisms.

### 29.2.3 Genomic Methods in the Search for New Drugs, Including Antibiotics

The traditional approach to the development of novel antibiotics has relied on random screening (mainly of the soil) for new active molecules, using simple antibiotic activity. The result is that very few new antibiotics have been discovered over many years. Progress has been achieved only by modification of existing antibiotics. As a result, resistance cross-reaction across available antibiotic groups has become common.

The completion of the Human Genome Project and the availability of genome sequence data for many microorganisms including pathogenic ones have stimulated research on the identification of novel targets for antimicrobial compounds by providing a complete catalogue of genes which can be compared at various levels.

Recent genomic advances have enabled 'target-based' initiatives in the search for antimicrobials. Traditionally, screening has been done against whole cells such as microbial cells. Such an approach has a number of disadvantages. First, they are inherently insensitive and often lead to the isolation of toxic compounds. Second, the screens will only identify targets that are lethal to the bacteria under the conditions of growth in the laboratory. Thirdly, since the exact nature of the target inhibited by a new compound is unknown, rational modification of the molecule to enhance its activity and moderate toxicity is not possible. This approach has been replaced by attempts to identify effective drug targets and to design antagonists to disrupt the activity of the target.

Comparative analysis of microbial genome sequence data has revealed that: (i) the genome of each organism contains a large number of open reading frames, i.e. sequences which code for proteins, 20%–40% for which the proteins are unknown and about 10% of these unknown proteins are unique to the organisms; (ii) the microbial genome is a dynamic entity shaped by multiple forces including gene duplication and gene loss, genome rearrangements, and acquisition of new genes through lateral transfers; (iii) each of these mechanisms has been shown to play a major role in the evolution of pathogens and has important implications in epidemiologic studies and the spread of antibiotic resistance and pathogenicity; (iv) differences between the pathogen and non-pathogen are best explained not by the presence or absence of a gene but by subtle single nucleotide changes, and virulence genes have been shown to be inactivated by such single-nucleotide changes.

**Table 29.1** Comparison of the screening strategies for novel antimicrobial compounds

<i>Whole-cell screening</i>		<i>Target-based screening</i>	
(Looking directly for compounds which kill microorganisms)		(Looking for biochemical inhibitors)	
Advantages			
1	Selection for compounds which penetrate cells	1	More sensitive (can detect weak or poorly penetrating compounds suitable for chemical optimization)
2	Antimicrobial properties established	2	Easy screening
3	Highly reproducible and has been used successfully historically	3	Different approach can target new areas of biology facilities rational drug design
Disadvantages			
1	Insensitive	1	Need to turn an <i>in vitro</i> inhibitor into an antibacterial drug (complicated by penetration issues)
2	Most active compounds are toxic	2	Genetic validation of targets (by gene knockout or reduced expression) can be misleading
3	No rational basis for compound optimization (target unknown)		
4	Mixed mechanisms of action in recent years has failed to deliver		

The ideal antimicrobial genomic target should be (i) different from the existing targets; (ii) essential for the viability of the pathogen; (iii) absent or substantially different in the human host, a parameter much easier to assess now with the availability of the complete human genome; (iv) conserved across the appropriate range of organisms; (v) easy to assay, especially in high throughput processes; (vi) easy to identify the target's inhibitors, and (vii) suitable for rapid structural analysis.

Genomics has enabled the identification of targets through (a) large-scale identification of novel potential targets through *in silico* comparison of pathogenic and non-pathogenic strains; (b) examining existing metabolic information on the organisms present in databases; and (c) identifying genes necessary for bacterial growth and survival by experimental means, including transposon mutagenesis, targeted mutagenesis of conserved genes, and the expression of anti-sense RNA. These studies suggest that depending on the organism, the number of essential genes range from 150 to 500.

The potential new targets identified include aminoacyl tRNA synthetases, polypeptide deformylase, fatty acid biosynthesis, protein secretion, and cell signaling. The next step is to identify small molecular inhibitors of these proteins, often by exploiting the diversity of chemical compounds to be found in combinatorial libraries.

#### 29.2.4 Search for Drugs among Unculturable Microorganisms

Natural products, primarily of microbial origin, have accounted for one-third of the more than \$100 billion of sales in the US and in excess of \$250 billion worldwide in

the pharmaceutical market and are also an important source of specialty chemical, agrochemical, and food or industrial processing products. Although the pharmaceutical industry appears to be spending more money in the search for new drugs, the results do not match the increased expenditure.

About \$20 billion is spent currently on search for new drugs in the US, about 20 times the figure in the 1970s. Yet, only about 40 new drugs (new chemical entities, NCEs) were introduced in the mid-1990s compared to 60–70 in the 1970s. One reason for this is the diminishing returns from existing sources of search. Many of the sources of pharmaceuticals are bacteria. It is now known that culturable bacteria represented only about 5% of all bacteria. To combat the problem of diminishing returns from searching among culturable organisms, Oceanix Biosciences Corporation has developed and patented a biotechnology-based program for the production of new pharmaceutical from unculturable bacteria. A procedure of the company named Combinatorial Genomics™ consists essentially of isolating nonculturable microorganisms or their high molecular weight DNA directly from environmental samples followed by the integration and expression of that genetic material in well-characterized microbial host species. As to be expected, the results are unpredictable since it is based on a random and phenomenological genetic survey of unknown genetic materials.

The environmental DNA may be isolated either in a 'naked' form and subsequently encapsulated in liposomes prior to use or may be contained in non-culturable microbial cells which are converted into spheroplasts or protoplasts prior to use. Liposomes, spheroplasts, or protoplasts containing environmental DNA are then fused employing standard cell fusion techniques such as polyethylene glycol (PEG) mediated fusion or electrofusion with spheroplasts or protoplasts of well-characterized and easily cultured host microorganisms. Well-characterized host microbes can be employed as recipient organisms including Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria as well as certain fungal and archaeobacterial host species. Following a fusion event between a host microbe protoplast or spheroplast (auxotrophic) cell and a prepared environmental DNA sample containing liposomes, protoplasts, or spheroplasts, the viable, colony-forming cells will be those in which the delivered environmental DNA is expressed.

Protoplast and liposome fusion are a versatile and well-explored technique to induce genetic recombination in a variety of prokaryotic and eukaryotic microorganisms. In the presence of a fusogenic agent such as Polyethylene glycol (PEG) or by treatment in electrofusion chambers, protoplasts and liposomes are induced to fuse and form hybrid cells. During the hybrid state, the genomes re-assort and extensive genetic recombination can occur. The final, crucial step is the regeneration of viable cells from the fused protoplasts, without which no viable recombinants can be obtained.

Growth is on agar plates and the colonies selected are tested for (i) their further characterization in additional antibiotic tests employing a wider range of indicator microbial species, (ii) their anti-cancer activity in a battery of malignant cell lines, and (iii) their agonist or antagonist activity in a relevant central nervous system (CNS). Those bioactive agents which display promising activity as antibiotic agents, as anti-cancer agents, or as pharmacologically relevant materials are then purified and subjected to chemical structural analysis. Novel bioactive agents are examined for their safety and toxicology properties.

## 29.3 APPROVAL OF NEW ANTIBIOTIC AND OTHER DRUGS BY THE REGULATING AGENCY

Discovering and developing safe and effective new medicines is a long, difficult, and expensive process. In the US, the regulatory agency for certifying new medicines as safe and effective is the Food and Drug Administration (FDA).

In the US, it takes 12 years on average for an experimental drug to travel from the laboratory to the medicine chest. It is also an expensive process and takes on the average about \$360 million to get a new medicine from the laboratory to the medicine cupboard. A new, potentially lifesaving medicine for which few or no equivalent exists can be put on fast track and may be approved in six months.

Prior to submission for preclinical trial by the FDA, the firm itself would have carried out tests. Subsequently, the firm submits its product for testing by the FDA. Only five in 5,000 compounds that enter preclinical testing make it to human testing. One of these five tested in people is approved (see Table 29.2).

**Table 29.2** Table showing flow chart of approval for a new drug (including antibiotics) to travel from the laboratory to the patient in the US

	Lab studies/ Preclinical Testing	File IND at FDA	Clinical Trials			File NDA at FDA	FDA	12 Total	Clinical Trials
			Phase I	Phase II	Phase III				Phase IV
Years	3.5		1	2	3		2.5		
Test Population	Lab and animal studies		20 to 80 healthy volunteers	100 to 300 patient volunteers	1000 to 3000 patient volunteers				
Purpose	Assess safety and biological activity		Determine effectiveness, safety and dosage	Evaluate effectiveness, monitor look for side effects	Verify effectiveness, adverse reactions from long-term use		Review process/ Approval	Additional Post marketing testing required by FDA (sometimes)	
Success Rate	5,000 compounds evaluated		5 enter trials				1 approved		

### 29.3.1 Pre-Submission Work by the Pharmaceutical Firm

#### 29.3.1.1 Synthesis and extraction

*The process of identifying new molecules with the potential to produce a desired change in a biological system (e.g. to inhibit or stimulate an important enzyme, to alter a metabolic pathway, or to change cellular structure).*

The process may require: (1) research on the fundamental mechanisms of disease or biological processes; (2) research on the action of known therapeutic agents; or (3) random selection and broad biological screening. New molecules can be produced through artificial synthesis or extracted from natural sources (plant, mineral, or animal). The number of compounds that can be produced based on the same general chemical structure runs into the hundreds of millions.

### **29.3.1.2 Biological screening and pharmacological testing**

*Studies to explore the pharmacological activity and therapeutic potential of compounds.*

These tests involve the use of animals, isolated cell cultures and tissues, enzymes and cloned receptor sites as well as computer models. If the results of the tests suggest potential beneficial activity, related compounds, each a unique structural modification of the original, are tested to see which version of the molecule produces the highest level of pharmacological activity and demonstrates the most therapeutic promise with the smallest number of potentially harmful biological properties.

### **29.3.1.3 Pharmaceutical dosage formulation and stability testing**

*The process of turning an active compound into a form and strength suitable for human use.*

A pharmaceutical product can take any one of a number of dosage forms (e.g. liquid, tablets, capsules, ointments, sprays, and/or patches) and dosage strengths (e.g. 50, 100, 250, or 500 mg). The final formulation will include substances other than the active ingredient called excipients. Excipients are added to improve the taste of an oral product, to allow the active ingredient to be compounded into stable tablets, to delay the drug's absorption into the body, or to prevent bacterial growth in liquid or cream preparations. The impact of each on the human body must be tested.

### **29.3.1.4 Toxicology and safety testing**

*Tests to determine the potential risk a compound poses to man and the environment.*

These studies involve the use of animals, tissue cultures, and other test systems to examine the relationship between factors such as dose level, frequency of administration, and duration of exposure to both the short- and long-term survival of living organisms. Tests provide information on the dose-response pattern of the compound and its toxic effects. Most toxicology and safety testing is conducted on new molecular entities prior to their human introduction, but companies can choose to delay long-term toxicity testing until after the therapeutic potential of the product is established.

All the above tests can take up to three and half years. If the results are promising, the firm then submits the compound and all the tests and results obtained to the FDA as an investigational new drug (IND).

## **29.3.2 Submission of the New Drug to the FDA**

### **29.3.2.1 Regulatory review: Investigational new drug (IND) application**

*An application filed with the U.S. FDA prior to human testing.*

After completing its laboratory studies, the company files an IND with FDA to begin testing of the drug in people. The IND shows results of previous experiments, how, where, and by whom the new studies will be conducted, the chemical structure of the compound, how it is thought to work in the body, any toxic effects found in the animal studies, and how the compound is manufactured. In addition, the IND must be reviewed and approved by the Institutional Review Board where the studies will be conducted, and progress reports

on clinical trials must be submitted at least annually to FDA. The IND application is a compilation of all known information about the compound. It also includes a description of the clinical research plan for the product and the specific protocol for phase I study. Unless the FDA says no, the IND is automatically approved after 30 days and clinical tests can begin.

### 29.3.2.2 Clinical trials

#### 29.3.2.2.1 Phase I Clinical Evaluation

*The first testing of a new compound in human subjects, for the purpose of establishing the tolerance of healthy human subjects at different doses, defining its pharmacologic effects at anticipated therapeutic levels, and studying its absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion patterns in humans.*

About 20–80 healthy volunteers are used for this trail.

#### 29.3.2.2.2 Phase II clinical evaluation

*Controlled clinical trials of a compound's potential usefulness and short term risks.*

A relatively small number of patients, usually no more than several hundred subjects (100–300), enrolled in phase II studies.

#### 29.3.2.2.3 Phase III clinical evaluation

*Controlled and uncontrolled clinical trials of a drug's safety and effectiveness in hospital and outpatient settings.*

Phase III studies gather precise information on the drug's effectiveness for specific indications, determine whether the drug produces a broader range of adverse effects than those exhibited in the small study populations of phase I and II studies, and identify the best way of administering and using the drug for the purpose intended. If the drug is approved, this information forms the basis for deciding the content of the product label. Phase III studies can involve several hundred to several thousand subjects (1,000–3,000).

#### 29.3.2.2.4 Process development for manufacturing and quality control

*The firm's manufacturing capability is assessed.*

Engineering and manufacturing design activities to establish a company's capacity to produce a product in large volume and development of procedures to ensure chemical stability, batch-to-batch uniformity, and overall product quality.

#### 29.3.2.2.5 Bioavailability studies

*The use of healthy volunteers to document the rate of absorption and excretion from the body of a compound's active ingredients.*

Companies conduct bioavailability studies both at the beginning of human testing and just prior to marketing to show that the formulation used to demonstrate safety and efficacy

in clinical trials is equivalent to the product that will be distributed for sale. Companies also conduct bioavailability studies on marketed products whenever they change the method used to administer the drug (e.g. from injection or oral dose form), the composition of the drug, the concentration of the active ingredient, or the manufacturing process used to produce the drug.

### **29.3.2.3 Regulatory review: New drug application (NDA)**

*The firm puts in an application for a new drug, New Drug Application (NDA)*

An NDA is an application to the FDA for approval to market a new drug. All information about the drug gathered during the drug discovery and development process is assembled in the NDA. Following the completion of all three phases of clinical trials, the company analyzes all of the data and files an NDA with FDA if the data successfully demonstrate safety and effectiveness. The NDA must contain all of the scientific information that the company has gathered. NDAs typically run 100,000 pages or more. By law, FDA is allowed six months to review an NDA. In almost all cases, the period between the first submission of an NDA and final FDA approval exceeds that limit; the average NDA review time for new molecular entities approved in 1992 was 29.9 months.

### **29.3.3 Approval**

Once the FDA approves the NDA, the new medicine becomes available for physicians to prescribe. The company must continue to submit periodic reports to FDA, including any cases of adverse reactions and appropriate quality-control records. For some medicines, FDA requires additional studies (Phase IV) to evaluate long-term effects.

### **29.3.4 Post Approval Research**

*Experimental studies and surveillance activities undertaken after a drug is approved for marketing.*

Clinical trials conducted after a drug is marketed (referred to as phase IV studies in the United States) are an important source of information on as yet undetected adverse outcomes, especially in populations that may not have been involved the premarketing trials (e.g. children, the elderly, pregnant women), and the drug's long-term morbidity and mortality profile. Regulatory authorities can require companies to conduct Phase IV studies as a condition of market approval. Companies often conduct post-marketing studies even in the absence of a necessity to do so.

## **END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS**

1. Describe conventional processes for drug discovery.
2. Discuss newer methods of drug discovery.
3. Briefly describe genomic methods for new drugs.
4. Outline the steps involved in discovery and approval of new antibiotics and drugs.
5. What is required upon approval and launching of a new antibiotic?

**SUGGESTED READINGS**

- Allsop, A., Illingworth, R. 2002. The Impact of Genomics and Related Technologies on the Search for New Antibiotics. *Journal of Applied Microbiology*. 92, 7–12.
- Anon. 1993. Congress of the United States, Office of Technology Assessment. Pharmaceutical R&D: Costs, Risks and Rewards: 1993; Washington, DC, USA. pp. 4–5.
- Anon. 1999. From Test Tube to Patient: Improving Health Through Human Drugs Special Report, Center Drug Evaluation and Research. Food and Drug Administration. Rockville, MD, USA.
- Austin, C. 2004. The Impact of the Completed Human Genome Sequence on the Development of Novel Therapeutics for Human Disease. *Annual Review of Medicine*. 55, 1–13.
- Bansal, A.K. 2005. Bioinformatics in the Microbial Biotechnology—A Mini Review. *Microbial Cell Factories*. 4, 4–19.
- Beamer, L. 2002. Human BPI: One Protein's Journey from Laboratory to Clinical Trials. *ASM News*. 68, 543–548.
- Behal, V. 2000. Bioactive Products from *Streptomyces*. *Advances in Applied Microbiology*. 47, 113–156.
- Bull, A.T., Ward, A.C., Goodfellow, M. 2000. Search and Discovery Strategies For Biotechnology. The Paradigm Shift. *Microbiology and Molecular Biology Reviews*. 64, 573–548.
- Dale, E., Wierenga, D.E., Eaton, C.R. 2001. Processes of Product Development. <http://www.allpcom/drug-dev.htm>. Accessed on September 29, 2005 at 12.05 pm GMT.
- Debouck, C., Metcalf, B. 2000. The Impact of Genomics on Drug Discovery. *Annual Review of Pharmacology and Toxicology*. 40, 193–208.
- Erlanson, D.A., Wells, J.A., Braisted, A.C. 2004. Tethering: Fragment-Based Drug Discovery. *Annual Reviews of Biophysical and Biomolecular Structure*. 33, 199–223.
- Fan, F., McDevitt, D. 2002. Microbial Genomics for Antibiotic Target Discovery. *In: Methods in Microbiology*. Vol. 33, Academic Press. Amsterdam the Netherlands. pp. 272–298.
- Feling, R.H., Buchanan, G.O., Mincer, T.J., Kauffman, C.A., Jensen, P.R., Fenical, W. 2003. Salinosporamide A: a Highly Cytotoxic Proteasome Inhibitor from A Novel Microbial Source, A Marine Bacterium of the New Genus *Salinospora*. *Angewandte Chemie International Edition*. 42, 355–357.
- Manyak, D.M., Carlson, P.S. 1999. Combinatorial Genomics<sup>TM</sup>: New Tools to Access Microbial Chemical Diversity. *In: Microbial Biosystems: New Frontiers*. C.R. Bell, M. Brylinsky, P. Johnson Green (eds.) Proceedings of the 8th International Symposium on Microbial Ecology Atlantic Canada Society for Microbial Ecology, Halifax, Canada, 1999.



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# Section H

## Waste Disposal



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

# CHAPTER 30

---

## Treatment of Wastes in Industry

---

Wastes, unwanted materials, result inevitably from industrial activities in the same way as they also do in domestic ones. If allowed to accumulate on the ground or if dumped indiscriminately into rivers and other bodies of water, unacceptable environmental problems would result. Governments worldwide usually institute legislation which regulates the handling of wastes, including those resulting from industry. In the US, the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) is the regulating agency. The EPA works to develop and enforce regulations that implement environmental laws enacted by Congress. The EPA is responsible for researching and setting national standards for a variety of environmental programs and delegates to states the responsibility for issuing permits and for monitoring and enforcing compliance.

The activities of industrial microorganisms usually occur in large volumes of water; the resulting wastes are therefore transported in aqueous medium. The subject is of interest, not only concerning the intrinsic need to dispose of wastes in industry, but especially because the basis for ultimate waste disposal is microbial.

Waste carried in water, whether from industry or from domestic activity, is known as sewage. Wastewater disposal constitutes a peculiar branch of industrial microbiology. The methods to be discussed were originally developed to handle domestic sewage but have been extended for use in industries such as the food and fermentation industries which yield wastes degradable by microorganisms. Sewage emanating from some chemical industries especially those dealing with manmade chemicals is not only less degradable, but sometimes toxic to microorganisms and man.

### **30.1 METHODS FOR THE DETERMINATION OF ORGANIC MATTER CONTENT IN WASTEWATERS**

Wastewaters are sampled and analyzed in order to determine the efficiency of the treatment system in use. This is particularly important at the point of the discharge of the treated wastewater into rivers, streams, and other natural bodies of water. If wastewater discharged into natural water is rich in degradable organic matter, large numbers of aerobic microorganisms will develop to break down the organic matter. They will use up the available oxygen and as a consequence, fish and other aquatic life will die. Further-

more, anaerobic bacteria will develop following the exhaustion of oxygen whose activities will result in foul odors.

### 30.1.1 Dissolved Oxygen

Dissolved oxygen is one of the most important, though indirect means of determining the organic matter content of waters. The heavier the amount of degradable material present in water, the greater the growth of aerobic organisms and hence the less the oxygen content. The Winkler method is widely used for determining the oxygen in water. In this method, dissolved oxygen reacts with manganous oxide to form manganic oxide. On acidification in an iodide solution, iodine is released in an amount equivalent to the oxygen reacting to form the manganic oxide. The iodine may then be titrated using thiosulfate. Membrane electrodes are now available for the same purpose. In these electrodes, oxygen diffuses through the electrode and reacts with a metal to produce a current proportional to the amount of oxygen reacting with the metal.

### 30.1.2 The Biological or Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD) Tests

Due to the complexity of the organic materials introduced into water and the key role played by oxygen in supporting the aerobic bacteria which break down this organic matter, the method of the Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD) was developed. It is a measure of the oxygen required to stabilize or decompose the organic matter in a body of water over a five-day period at 20°C. In carrying out the test, two 250–300 ml bottles are filled with water whose BOD is to be determined. The oxygen content of one is determined immediately by the Winkler method and in the other at the end of five days incubation at 20°C. The difference between the two is the BOD.

Although it has been severely criticized, the BOD test is still widely used. Some of the criticisms are that it takes too long to obtain results and that it may in fact relate only loosely to the actual organic matter content of water since it represents the overall value of the respiration of the organisms present therein. Furthermore, many industrial wastes contain materials which are either difficult to degrade or which may even be toxic to the organisms. In such cases, an inoculum capable of degrading the materials must be developed by enrichment and introduced into the bottles.

### 30.1.3 Permanganate Value (PV) Test

The PV method determines the amount of oxygen used up by a sample in four hours from a solution of potassium permanganate in dilute  $H_2SO_4$  in a stoppered bottle at 27°C. It gives an idea of the oxidizable materials present in water, although the actual oxidation is only 30–50% of the theoretical value. The method records the oxidation of organic materials such as phenol and aniline as well as those of sulfide, thiosulfate, and thiocyanate and would be useful in some industries.

### 30.1.4 Chemical Oxygen Demand (COD)

The chemical oxygen demand is the total oxygen consumed by the chemical oxidation of that portion of organic materials in water which can be oxidized by a strong chemical

oxidant. The oxidant used is a mixture of potassium dichromate and sulfuric acid and is refluxed with the sample of water being studied. The excess dichromate is titrated with ferrous ammonium sulfate. The amount of oxidizable material measured in oxygen equivalent is proportional to the dichromate used up. It is a more rapid test than BOD and since the oxidizing agents are stronger than those used in the PV test, the method can be used for a wider variety of wastes. Furthermore, when materials toxic to bacteria are present, it is perhaps the best method available. Its major disadvantage is that bulky equipment and hot concentrated sulfuric acid are used.

### 30.1.5 Total Organic Carbon (TOC)

Total organic carbon provides a speedy and convenient way of determining the degree of organic contamination. A carbon analyzer using an infrared detection system is used to measure total organic carbon. Organic carbon is oxidized to carbon dioxide.

The  $\text{CO}_2$  produced is carried by a 'carrier gas' into an infrared analyzer that measures the absorption wavelength of  $\text{CO}_2$ . The instrument utilizes a microprocessor that will calculate the concentration of carbon based on the absorption of light in the  $\text{CO}_2$ . The amount of carbon will be expressed in mg/L. TOC provides a more direct expression of the organic chemical content of water than BOD or COD.

### 30.1.6 Total Suspended Solids (TSS)

The term 'total solids' refers to matter suspended or dissolved in water or wastewater and is related to both specific conductance and turbidity. 'Total solids' (also referred to as total residue) is the term used for material left in a container after evaporation and drying of a water sample. Total solids include both total suspended solids, the portion of total solids retained by a filter, and total dissolved solids, the portion that passes through a filter. Total solids can be measured by evaporating a water sample in a weighed dish and then drying the residue in an oven at 103 to 105°C. The increase in weight of the dish represents the total solids. Instead of total solids, laboratories often measure total suspended solids and/or total dissolved solids. To measure total suspended solids (TSS), the water sample is filtered through a pre-weighed filter. The residue retained on the filter is dried in an oven at 103 to 105°C until the weight of the filter no longer changes. The increase in weight of the filter represents the total suspended solids. TSS can also be measured by analyzing for total solids and subtracting total dissolved solids.

### 30.1.7 Volatile Suspended Solids (VSS)

Volatile suspended solids (VSS) are those solids (mg/liter) which can be oxidized to gas at 550°C. Most organic compounds are oxidized to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  at that temperature; inorganic compounds remain as ash.

## 30.2 WASTES FROM MAJOR INDUSTRIES

The composition of industrial wastes depends on the industry. Wastes from three key industries in the US are given in [Table 30.1](#) for illustration: the oil, the pulp and paper, and the food industries.

**Table 30.1** Typical wastes from three industries

<b>A</b>		
<b>Typical Components of an Oil Refinery Waste Water</b>		
Handling of oil crude	Oil, sludge oil emulsions, sulfur- and nitrogen corrosion inhibitors	
Crude oil distillation	Hydrocarbons, organic and inorganic acids, phenols and sulfur	
Thermal cracking, alkylation, polymerization, isomerization processes	Phenols, triphenols, cyanides, hydrogen sulfide acid sludge, spent acid, mineral acids (sulfuric, hydrochloric), catalyst support	
Refining	Hydrogen sulfide, ammonium sulfide, gums, catalyst support	
Purification and extraction	Phenols, glycols, amines, spent caustic	
Sweetening, stripping, filtration	Sulfur and nitrogen compounds, copper chloride, suspended matter	

<b>B</b>		
<b>Typical Effluent Loads from Pulp and Paper Manufacture</b>		
Effluent	Kg/1,000 kg of product	
	Suspended solids	5-day BOD
Pulps: unbleached sulfite	10–20	200–300
Pulps: bleached sulfite	12–30	220–400
Fine paper	25–30	7–20
Tissue paper	15–20	10–15

<b>C</b>		
<b>Typical Effluent Loads from Food Industries</b>		
Effluent	Kg/1,000 kg of product	
	Suspended solids	5-day BOD
Cannery wastes		
Apple canning	300–600	1680–5530
Cherries canning	200–600	700–2100
Mushrooms	50–240	76–850
Meat Packing Industry		
Slaughter house	3000–930	2200–650
Packing house	2000–230	3000–400
Processing plant	800–200	800–200
Poultry		
Plant waste	100–1500	150–2400

### 30.3 SYSTEMS FOR THE TREATMENT OF WASTES

The basic microbiological phenomenon in the treatment of wastes in aqueous environments is as follows:

- (i) The degradable organic compounds in the wastewater (carbohydrates, proteins, fats, etc.) are broken down by aerobic microorganisms, mainly bacteria and, to some extent, fungi. The result is an effluent with a drastically reduced organic matter content.
- (ii) The materials difficult to digest form a sludge which must be removed from time to time and is then treated separately.

#### 30.3.1 Aerobic Breakdown of Raw Wastewaters

The two methods which are usually employed include the activated sludge and the trickling filter.

##### 30.3.1.1 The activated sludge system

The activated sludge method is the most widely used method for treating wastewaters. Its main features are as follows:

- (a) It uses a complex population of microorganisms.
- (b) This community of microorganisms has to cope with an uncontrollably diverse range of organic and inorganic compounds some of which may be toxic to the organisms.
- (c) The microorganisms occur in discrete aggregates known as flocs which are maintained in suspension in the aeration tank by mechanical agitation or during aeration, or by the mixing action of bubbles from submerged aeration systems. Flocs consist of bacterial cells, extracellular polymeric substances, adsorbed organic matter, and inorganic matter. Flocs are highly variable in morphology, typically 40 to 400  $\mu\text{m}$  and not easy to break apart.
- (d) The flocs must have good settling properties so that separation of the biomass of microorganisms and liquid phases can occur efficiently and rapidly in the clarifier. Sometimes, proper separation is not achieved giving rise to problems of bulking and foaming.
- (e) Some of the settled biomass is recycled as 'returned activated sludge' or RAS to inoculate the incoming raw sewage because it contains a community of organisms adapted to the incoming sewage.
- (f) The solid undigested sludge may be further treated into economically valuable products.

The advantages of the activated sludge system over the other methods to be discussed are its efficiency, economy of space, and versatility.

### *Modifications of the Activated Sludge System*

(i) **The conventional activated sludge set-up:** The basic components of the conventional system are an aeration tank and a sedimentation tank. Before raw waste water enters the aeration tank, it is mixed with a portion of the sludge from the sedimentation tank. The contents of the raw water are therefore broken down by organisms already adapted to the environment of the aeration tank. The incoming organisms from the sludge exist in small flocs which are maintained in suspension by the vigor of mixing in the aeration tank. It is the introduction of already adapted flocs of organisms that gave rise to the name activated sludge. Usually, 25–50% of the flow through the plant is drawn off the sedimentation tank.

(ii) **Tapered aeration:** This system addresses heavier concentration of organic matter and hence of oxygen usage at the point where the mixture of raw sewage and the returned sludge enters the aeration tank. For this reason, the aeration is heaviest at the point of entry of wastewaters and diminishes towards the distal end. The diminishing aeration may take place directly in the main aeration tank (Fig. 30.1), or a series of tanks with diminishing aeration may be set up.

(iii) **Step aeration:** In step aeration, the feed is introduced at several equally spaced points along with length of the tank to create a more uniform demand in the tank. As with tapered aeration, the aeration may be done in a series of tanks.

(iv) **Contact stabilization:** This is used when the wastewater has a high proportion of colloidal material. The colloid-rich wastewater is allowed contact with sludge for a short period of 1–1½ hours in an aerated contact basin. After settlement in a sludge separation tank, part of the sludge is removed and part is recycled into an aeration tank from where it is mixed with the incoming wastewater.

(v) **The Pasveer ditch:** This consists of a stadium-shaped shallow ditch (about 3 ft deep) in which continuous flow and oxygenation are provided by mechanical devices. It is essentially the conventional activated sludge system in which materials are circulated in ditch rather than in pipes.

(vi) **The deep shaft process:** The deep shaft system for wastewater treatment was developed by Agricultural Division of Imperial Chemical Industries (ICI) in the UK from their air-lift fermenter used for the production single cell protein from methanol. It consists of an outer steel-lined concrete shaft measuring 300 ft or more installed into the ground. Wastewater and sludge recycle are injected down an inner steel tube. Compressed air is injected at a position along the center shaft deep enough to ensure that the hydrostatic weight of the water above the point of injection is high enough to force air bubbles downwards and prevent them coming upwards. The air dissolves lower down the shaft providing oxygen for the aerobic breakdown of the wastes. The water rises in the outer section of the shaft. The system has the advantage of great rapidity in reducing the BOD and about 50% reduction in the sludge.

(vii) **Enclosed tank systems and other compact systems:** Since the breakdown of waste in aerobic biological treatment is brought about by aerobic organisms, efficiency is sometimes increased by the use of oxygen or oxygen enriched air. Enclosed tanks, in which the wastewater is completely mixed with the help of agitators, are used for aeration of this type. Sludge from a sedimentation tank is returned to the enclosed tank along with raw water as in the case with other systems. The advantage of the system is the absence (or

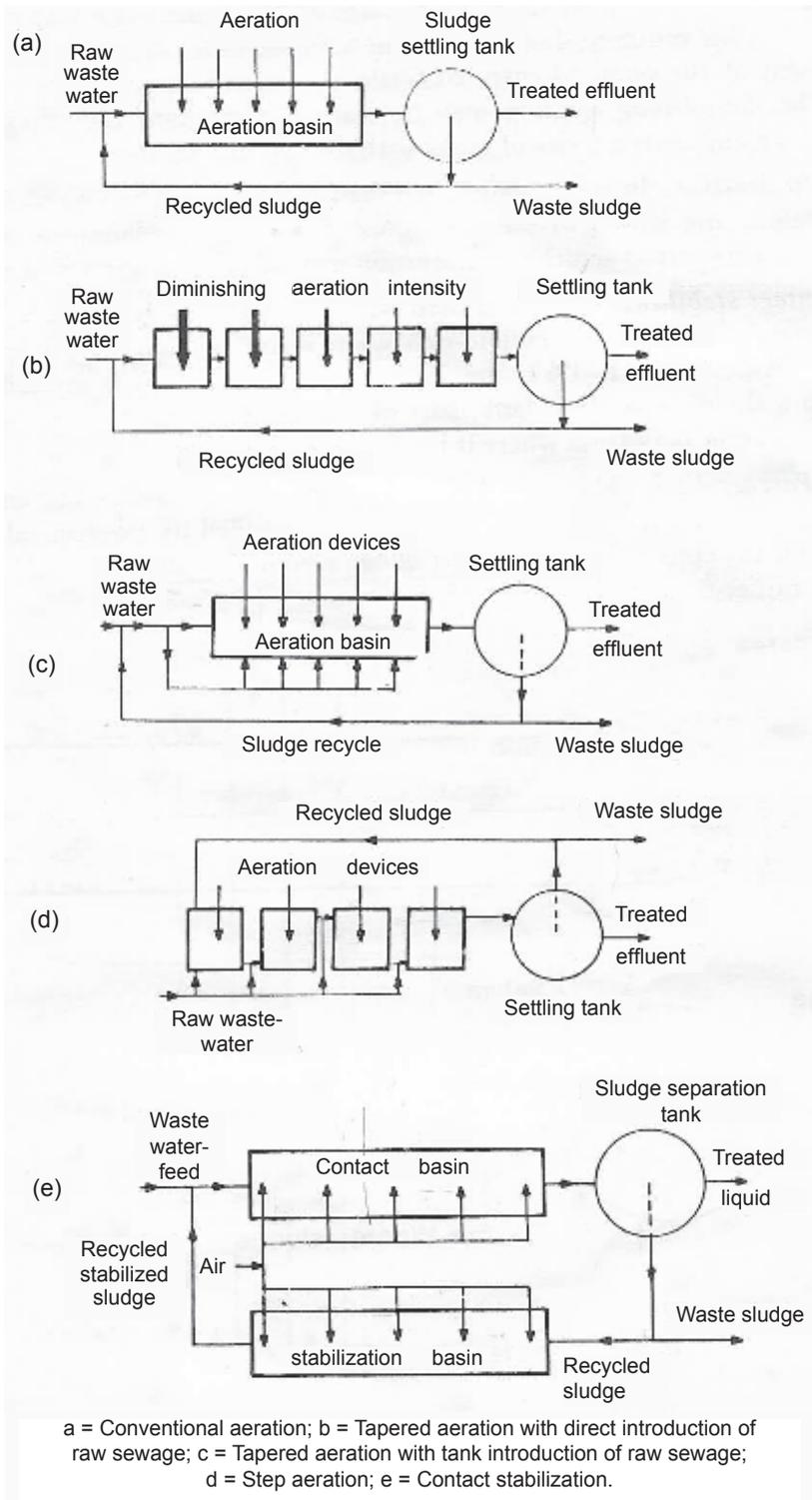


Fig. 30.1 Schematic Representation of Various Modifications of the Activated Sludge Set-up

significant reduction) of obnoxious smells from the exhaust gases and increased efficiency of waste stabilization. This system is widely used in industries worldwide.

Compact activated sludge systems do not have a separate sedimentation tank. Instead, sludge separation and aerobic breakdown occur in a single tank. The great advantage of such systems is the economy of space.

#### 30.3.1.1.1 Organisms involved in the activated sludge process

The organisms involved are bacteria and ciliates (protozoa). It was once thought that the formation of flocs which are essential for sludge formation was brought about by the slime-forming organism, *Zooglea ramigera*. It is now known that a wide range of bacteria are involved, including *Pseudomonas*, *Achromobacter*, and *Flavobacterium*, to name a few.

#### 30.3.1.1.2 Efficiency of activated sludge treatments

The efficiency of any system is usually determined by a reduction in the BOD of the wastewater before and after treatment. Efficiency depends on the amount of aeration and the contact time between the sludge and the raw wastewater. Thus, in conventional activated sludge plants, the contact time is about 10 hours, after which 90–95% of the BOD is removed. When the contact time is less (i.e. in the high-rate treatment), BOD removal is 60–70%, and more sludge is produced. With longer contact time, i.e. several days, BOD reduction is over 95% and the amount of sludge produced extremely low.

With systems where oxygen is introduced as in the closed tank system or where there is great oxygen solubility as in the deep shaft system, contact time could be as short as 1 hour with up to 90% BOD reduction along with substantially reduced sludge.

### 30.3.1.2 The trickling filter

In the trickling filter, no sludge is returned to the incoming wastewater. Rather, the wastewater is sprayed uniformly by a rotating distributor on a bed of rocks 6–10 ft deep. The rotation may be powered by an electric motor or a hydraulic impulse. The water percolates over the rocks within the bed which are 1–4 in diameter and is collected in an under-drain. The liquid is then collected from the under-drain and allowed in a sedimentation tank which is an integral component of the trickling filter. The sludge from the sedimentation tank is removed from time to time. Various modifications of this basic system exist. In one modification, the water may be pre-sedimented before introduction to the filter. Two filters may be placed in series and the effluent may be recycled (Figs. 30.2 and 30.3).

**Microbiology of the trickling filter:** A coating of microorganisms form on the stones as the wastewater trickles down the filter and these organisms break down the waste. Fungi, algae, protozoa, and bacteria form on the rocks. As the filter ages, the aerobic bacteria which are responsible for the breakdown of the organic matter become impeded, the system becomes inefficient, and flies and obnoxious smells may result (Fig. 30.2). The microbial coating sloughs off from time to time.

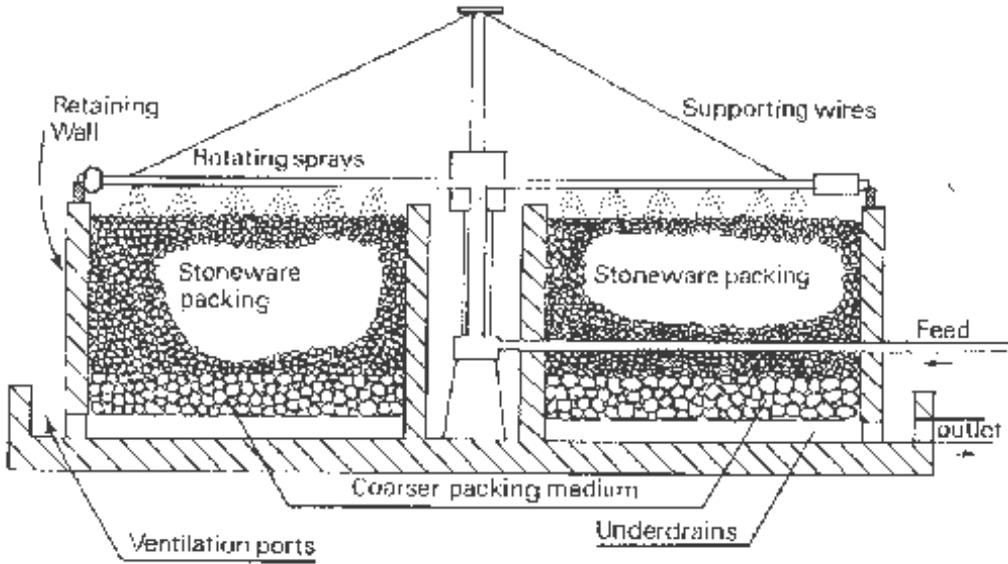


Fig. 30.2 Section through Trickling Filter Bed

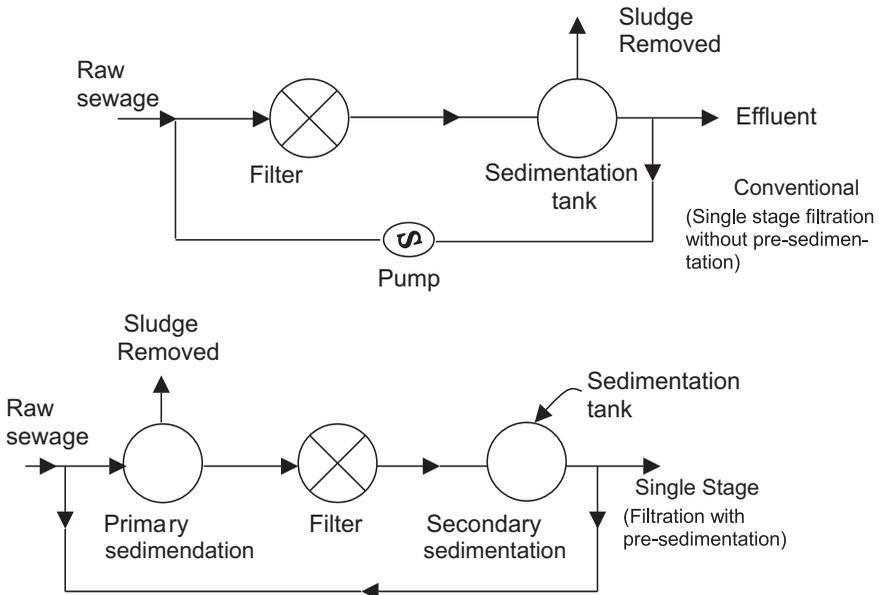
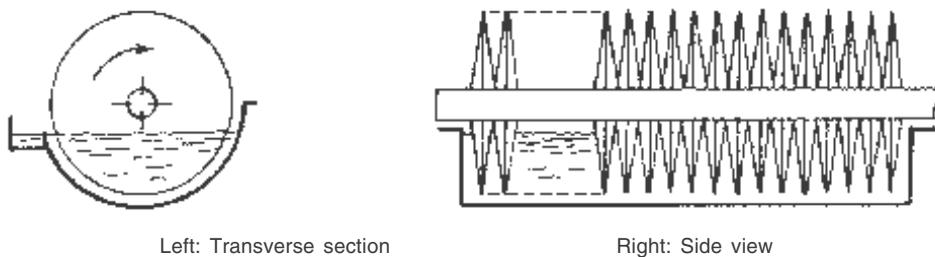


Fig. 30.3 Scheme Illustrating Two Arrangements of Trickling Filter: Conventional and Single Stage

### 30.3.1.3 Rotating discs

Also known as rotating biological contactors, these consist of closely packed discs about 10 ft in diameter and 1 inch apart. Discs made of plastic or metal may number up to 50 or



Left: Transverse section

Right: Side view

**Fig. 30.4** Structure of Rotating Discs (Rotating Biological Contactor)

more and are mounted on a horizontal shaft which rotates slowly at a rate of about 0.5–15 revolutions per minute. During the rotation, 40–50% of the area of the discs is immersed in liquid at a time. A slime of microorganisms which decompose the wastes in the water builds up on the discs. When the slime is too heavy, it sloughs off and is separated from the liquid in a clarifier. It has a short contact time and produces little sludge.

### 30.4 TREATMENT OF THE SLUDGE: ANAEROBIC BREAKDOWN OF SLUDGE

Sludge always accompanies the aerobic breakdown of wastes in water. Its disposal is a major problem of waste treatment. Sludge consists of micro-organisms and those materials which are not readily degradable, particularly cellulose. The solids in sludge form only a small percentage by weight and generally do not exceed 5%.

The goals of sludge treatment are to stabilize the sludge and reduce odors, remove some of the water and therefore reduce volume, decompose some of the organic matter and reduce volume, kill disease causing organisms, and disinfect the sludge. Untreated sludge is about 97% water. Settling the sludge and decanting off the separated liquid removes some of the water and reduces the sludge volume. Settling can result in sludge with about 96 to 92% water. More water can be removed from sludge by using sand drying beds, vacuum filters, filter presses, and centrifuges resulting in sludge containing 50 to 80% water. This dried sludge is called a sludge cake. Anaerobic digestion is used to decompose organic matter to reduce its volume. Digestion also stabilizes the sludge to reduce odors. Caustic chemicals can be added to sludge or it may be heat treated to kill disease-causing organisms. Following treatment, liquid and cake sludges are usually spread on fields, returning organic matter and nutrients to the soil.

The most common method of treating sludge however is by anaerobic digestion, which consists of allowing the sludge to decompose in digesters under controlled conditions for several weeks. Digesters themselves are closed tanks with provision for mild agitation, the introduction of sludge, and release of gases. About 50% of the organic matter is broken down to gas, mostly methane. Amino acids, sugars, and alcohols are also produced. The broken-down sludge may then be dehydrated and disposed of by any of the methods described above. Sludge so treated is less offensive and consequently easier to handle. Organisms responsible for sludge breakdown are sensitive to pH values outside 7–8, heavy metals, and detergents and these should not be introduced into digesters. Methane gas is also produced and this may sometimes be collected and used as a source of energy. [Figure 30.5](#) shows some anaerobic sludge digester designs.

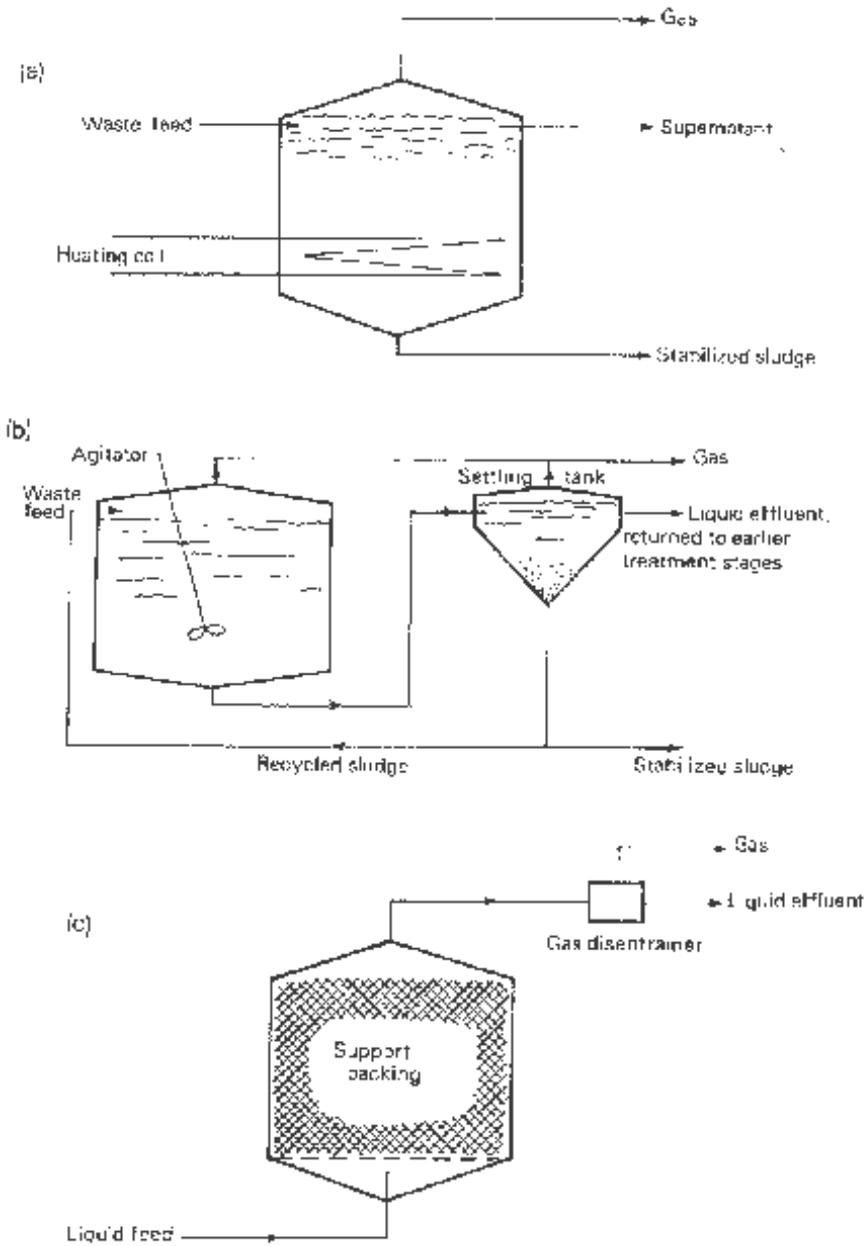


Fig. 30.5 Anaerobic Digestion Systems

### 30.5 WASTEWATER DISPOSAL IN THE PHARMACEUTICAL INDUSTRY

The treatment of wastes from a pharmaceutical industry is chosen to illustrate industrial waste treatment because the wastes are representative of a broad range of materials and include easily degradable organic materials as well as sometimes some inorganic and even

toxic compounds. Which of the various methods of disposal is used by a particular firm will depend on a number of factors foremost among which are: (a) the cost of the disposal method; (b) the location of the industry; (c) the nature of the industry and of its waste materials, and (d) the governmental regulations operating in the locality.

The cost of the disposal will be influenced not only by the nature and quantity of the waste and consequently the method adopted to handle it, but also what distance needs to be covered to have it disposed of. EPA regulations may for example dictate that the BOD of the wastes be reduced to a certain level before being discharged into a stream; any BOD reduction ultimately involves the expenditure of funds.

**Nature of Wastes:** The wastes from pharmaceutical firms may include easily degradable materials such as emulsion syrup, malt, and tablet preparations. These contain considerable amounts of carbohydrates and hence yield wastes with high BOD.

Acids including the organic acids, acetic, formic, and sulfanilic acids as well as the inorganic HCl and H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> may be added to wastes. They have to be neutralized before being allowed into the treatment system.

Dissolved salts added in their own right or resulting from neutralization may also enter the system. Many drugs, some toxic or inhibitory to bacteria, may also be added.

**Pre-treatment:** Before treatment, acid (or alkali) is neutralized, dissolved salts are removed usually by precipitation as calcium salts through lime addition which also neutralizes acidity. Chloride and sulfate may be removed by ion exchange or rendered innocuous by dilution with water. Volatile compounds are stripped by pre-aeration.

**Treatment:** Before a routine is used within a treatment method, laboratory experiments would have been carried out to determine how much of the wastes may be efficiently handled within a given period. It may often be necessary to segregate the wastes and to treat the more easily biodegradable organic forms separately from those wastes rich in inorganic materials. This is because the latter may require 'seeding' or the development of microorganisms specifically able to grow in and degrade them. Seeding is achieved by shaking a sample of the waste with a soil sample long enough for a special flora to develop.

## END OF CHAPTER QUESTIONS

1. What is the effect of wastewater rich in degradable organic matter on the aquatic environment?
2. List the methods for analyzing the organic matter content of wastewater.
3. Define BOD.
4. What is the significance of BOD?
5. What does the Total Organic Carbon (TOC) analyzer detect?
6. List the methods of aerobic breakdown of raw wastewaters.
7. Define the terms sludge and flocs.
8. What are the basic components (stages or processes) of the conventional activated sludge system?
9. List the various modifications of the conventional activated sludge process.
10. List the organisms involved in the activated sludge process.
11. How is the efficiency of activated sludge treatment determined?

12. What are the goals of sludge treatment?
13. What are the products of anaerobic digestion of organic matter?

### **SUGGESTED READINGS**

- Andrew, W. 1996. *Biotechnology for Waste and Wastewater Treatment*. Noyes Publications Westwood, N.J., USA.
- Eckenfelder, W.W. 2000. *Industrial Water Pollution Control*. McGraw-Hill Boston, USA.
- Kosric, N., Blaszczyk, R. 1992. *Industrial Effluent Processing*. *Encyclopedia of Microbiology*. Vol. 2, Academic Press. San Diego, USA. pp. 473–491.
- Lindera, K.C. 2002. *Activated Sludge—The Process*. *Encyclopedia of Environmental Microbiology*. Vol. 1 Wiley-Interscience Publication. New York, USA. pp. 74–81.
- Nielsen, P.H. 2002. *Activated Sludge—The Floc*. *Encyclopedia of Environmental Microbiology*. Vol. 1 Wiley-Interscience Publication. New York, USA. pp. 54–61.



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

---

# Glossary

---

**Anabolism:** The biochemical processes involved in the synthesis of cell constituents from simpler molecules usually requiring energy.

**Anaerobic respiration:** The final electron acceptor is an inorganic compound other than O<sub>2</sub>.

**Annotation:** The process by which useful information is added to a raw genomic DNA sequence, producing a frame work of understanding and enhancing its utility for downstream users.

**Anticodon:** A sequence of three bases in transfer RNA which base-pairs with a codon in the messenger RNA during protein synthesis.

**Antiparallel:** This refers to nucleic acids, where one strand runs 5' ~ 3', the other 3' ~ 5'.

**Antisense mRNA:** A mRNA transcript that is complementary to endogenous mRNA; it is a noncoding strand and complementary to the coding sequence of the endogenous mRNA. Introducing a transgene coding for antisense mRNA is a strategy used to block expression of a gene of interest.

**Antisense RNA:** This is produced from a gene sequence inserted in the opposite orientation, so that the transcript is complimentary to the normal mRNA and can therefore bind to it and prevent translation.

**Artificial chromosomes:** Cloning vectors which can carry very large inserts of foreign DNA and exist in the cell very much like a cellular chromosome. The most widely used are bacterial artificial chromosomes (BACs) and yeast artificial chromosomes (YACs).

**ATP:** Adenosine triphosphate, the major energy carrier of the cell.

**Autoradiography:** Detection of radioactivity in a sample labeled with a radioactive material by placing it in contact with a photographic film; the radioactive portions will imprint on the film.

**Autotroph:** An organism able to use CO<sub>2</sub> as a sole source of carbon, for example plants and blue-green algae (Cyanobacteria).

**Auxotroph:** An organism that has developed a nutritional requirement through mutation. Without the addition of the required material, it will not grow. The opposite is a *Prototroph* or wild type.

**B lymphocyte (B cell):** A lymphocyte that has immunoglobulin surface receptors, produces immunoglobulin, and may present antigens to T cells.

**Bergey's Manual:** A compendium of an approved list of bacteria, first published in 1923. The second edition is currently being published in 5 volumes beginning in 2001 and is expected to be completed in 2007. *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology* gets its name from Dr. David H Bergey, first Chairman of the Editorial Board of the Manual published by the then Society of American Bacteriologists (now called the American Society for Microbiology).

**Biodiesel:** A biofuel derived from plant oils and animal fats. Treating oils and fats with methanol and sodium hydroxide will result in fatty acid methyl esters (Fame) which is essentially biodiesel.

## 454 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

**Biofuels:** These are gaseous, liquid, or solid fuels produced from sustainable biological raw materials. One example is ethanol produced by fermentation utilizing renewable plant biomass as feedstock.

**Bioinformatics:** The revolution in computer technology and memory storage capability has made it possible to model grand challenge problems such as large scale sequencing of genomes and management of large integrated **databases** over the Internet. This vastly improved computational capability integrated with large-scale miniaturization of biochemical techniques such as PCR, BAC, gel electrophoresis, and microarray chips has delivered enormous amount of genomic and proteomic data. This integration of computation with biotechnology is Bioinformatics.

**cDNA:** (complementary DNA) is single-stranded DNA made in the laboratory from a messenger RNA template using the enzyme reverse transcriptase. This form of DNA is often used as a probe in the physical mapping of a chromosome; it is also used when it is desired to express a eukaryotic gene in a prokaryotic cell; for cloning into prokaryotic cell, the introns in a eukaryotic mRNA are spliced off and the intron-free mRNA converted to cDNA with reverse transcriptase.

**cDNA library:** A cDNA library is a collection of DNA sequences generated from mRNA sequences. This type of library contains only DNA that codes for proteins and does not include any non-coding DNA. The complete cDNA library of an organism gives an indication of the total amount of the proteins it can possibly express. The cDNA sequence also gives the genetic relationship between organisms through the similarity of their cDNA.

**Chemolithotroph:** An organism obtaining its energy from the oxidation of inorganic molecules.

**Chemoorganotroph:** An organism obtaining its energy from the oxidation of organic molecules.

**Cistron:** A sequence of bases in DNA that specifies one polypeptide.

**Clone:** A population of cells all descended from a single cell. Also, a number of copies of a DNA fragment obtained by allowing an inserted DNA fragment to be replicated by a phage or plasmid compounds.

**Feedstock:** The raw materials used for the manufacture of a product, specifically in industrial processes, for example in the synthesis of biofuels.

**Fermentor:** A vessel for controlled cultivation of organisms. **Fermenter** refers to either a fermentor or an organism that can ferment; whereas fermentor refers solely to the equipment.

**Genetic Code:** The triplet codons that determine the types of amino acids inserted into a polypeptide chain during translation. There are 61 codons for 20 amino acids and three stop codons.

**Genetic map:** The arrangement of genes on a chromosome.

**Genome:** All the genes present in an organism.

**Genomics:** The field of science that studies the entire DNA sequence of an organism's genome. The goal is to find all the genes within each genome and to use that information to develop improved medicines as well as answer scientific questions.

**Histone proteins:** These are present in eukaryotic chromosomes; histones and DNA give structure to chromosomes in eukaryotes.

**Introns:** Non-coding sequences within genes.

**Kilo basepair:** 1,000 basepairs, a unit of DNA length abbreviated KB.

**Knock out mice:** A transgenic mouse in which a gene function has been disrupted or knocked out. It is used to produce animal models for the study of human disease.

**Mass spectrometry** is an analytical technique used to measure the mass-to-charge ratio of ions. It is most generally used to find the composition of a physical sample by generating a mass spectrum representing the masses of sample components. The technique has several applications, including:

1. identifying unknown compounds by the mass of the compound and/or fragments thereof.
2. determining the isotopic composition of one or more elements in a compound.
3. determining the structure of compounds by observing the fragmentation of the compound.

4. quantitating the amount of a compound in a sample using carefully designed methods (mass spectrometry is not inherently quantitative).
5. studying the fundamentals of gas phase ion chemistry (the chemistry of ions and neutrals in vacuum).
6. determining other physical, chemical, or even biological properties of compounds with a variety of other approaches.

**Methanogenesis:** The biological production of methane.

**Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR)** is a physical phenomenon based upon the magnetic property of an atom's nucleus. NMR spectroscopy is one of the principal techniques used to obtain physical, chemical, electronic and structural information about a molecule. It is the only technique that can provide detailed information on the exact three-dimensional structure of biological molecules in solution. Also, nuclear magnetic resonance is one of the techniques that have been used to build elementary quantum computers.

**Operons:** Typically present in prokaryotes, these are clusters of genes controlled by a single operator; an operator itself is a region of an operon close to the promoter to which an activator or a repressor protein binds.

**Promoter:** A DNA sequence located upstream of the gene to which RNA polymerase binds.

**Proteome:** The totality of the proteins present in a cell.

**Proteomics:** The study of the structure, function and regulation of the proteins in an organism.

**Sense mRNA:** Endogenous mRNA molecules which encode functional proteins; it is a 5' to 3' mRNA molecule.

**Shine-Dalgarno sequence:** A conserved sequence in prokaryotic mRNAs that is complementary to a sequence near the 5' terminus of the 16S ribosomal RNA and is involved in the initiation of translation.

**Site-directed mutagenesis:** A technique for construction a mutation in a gene *in vitro* by altering a base or bases in the gene.

**TATA box:** Also called Hogness Box, an AT-rich region of the DNA with the sequence TATAT/AAT/A located before the initiation site.

**Transcription factor:** Transcription factor is a protein that binds DNA at a specific promoter or enhancer region or site, where it regulates transcription.

**Transfer RNA (tRNA):** A small RNA segment of 75–85 bases that carries the anticodon and the amino acid residue required for protein synthesis.



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

---

# Index

---

- Acetic acid bacteria 20, 69, 307, 339, 340, 344, 345, 349, 358-361
- Acetobacter 20, 69, 335, 358, 360, 363, 365
- Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans* 254, 255
- Acquired immunity 410
- Acridine 63, 103
- Actinobacteria 19-21
- Actinomycetes 23, 46, 48, 63, 66, 71, 72, 103, 105, 106, 117, 141, 142, 144, 152, 167, 168, 192, 264, 373, 375, 379, 380, 382, 386
- Activated sludge system 443, 444, 446, 450
- Adjuncts 204, 323, 328-331, 359
- Agrobacterium tumefaciens* 118
- Air lift fermenters 444
- Akamu 307
- Alcohol 20, 43, 47-51, 53, 58, 69, 70, 104, 107, 122, 128, 142, 143, 156, 160, 164, 165, 175, 179, 185, 189, 207, 209, 219-226, 232, 233, 261-265, 269-276, 289, 295, 296, 299-302, 311, 313, 319, 322, 325, 329, 332, 333, 335, 337, 343-347, 349-354, 358-364, 387, 399, 414, 448 properties 221
- Alcoholic beverages from Africa 350, 351
- Alkanes 69, 167, 260, 261, 265, 267
- American Type Culture Collection (ATCC) 138, 387
- Amino acids  
  manufacture 44  
  production by mutants 243  
  production by metabolically engineered organisms 244  
  uses 236
- Amino acids, metabolites from 244
- Aminoglycosides 370
- Amphotericin B 370, 378
- Amylases 54, 55, 57, 200, 201, 203-205, 207, 213, 220, 263, 299, 300, 323, 326-328, 338, 339, 355
- Amylopectin 53, 55, 56, 129, 131
- Amylose 53-56, 129, 131, 328
- Anabolism 61, 62, 401
- Anaerobic digestion 448, 451
- Ansamacrolides 37
- Antibiotics 23, 27, 63-66, 71, 72, 95, 104, 106-108, 113, 114, 117, 144, 166, 174, 175, 180, 182, 185, 190, 194, 215, 236, 242, 253, 291, 304, 305, 363, 369-371, 374-379, 381-389, 395, 399, 418, 428, 431, 434  
  classification and nomenclature 369  
  new definition 389  
  newer search methods 389  
  search for 27, 377, 379, 382-384, 386, 389, 428
- Anti-foams (antifoams) 48, 52, 155-157, 191, 231, 271
- Antigens 27, 93, 279, 411-414, 416, 421, 424
- Anti-tumor antibiotics  
  search for 386
- Ascomycetes 23, 24, 281, 382
- Asepsis 185, 193
- Auxotrophic mutants 86, 87, 104, 242-244, 248
- Axis of symmetry 109
- Bacillus thuringiensis* 6, 127, 278, 279, 281-285  
  delta-endotoxin 282  
  formulation 284
- Bacillus thuringiensis* var. *israelensis* 279, 283, 285
- Bacterial artificial chromosomes (BACs) 36, 37
- Bacterial phyla 19
- Bacteriocins 113, 369
- Bacteriophages 25, 103, 111, 142, 184, 192, 289, 304
- Baker's yeasts 260, 269, 270, 272, 274, 275, 301
- Barley grain 323, 326, 327  
  malt 57, 323, 326-328, 353, 354, 359

## 458 Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

- Basidiomycetes 23, 24, 281
- Bdellovibrio* 25, 184
- Beer brewing 52, 162, 204, 269, 275, 321, 337
  - bottom- and top-fermented 321, 333, 334
  - defects 335, 336
- Beer, types 321
- Bergey's Manuals 19
- Beta alba* 48
- Beta-lactams 65, 370, 377
- Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD) 158, 440-442, 444, 446, 450
- Bioenergy 219
- Biofuel 219-221, 226
  - First generation 219, 220
  - Second generation 219, 220
  - Third generation 219, 220
- Bioethanol 219, 220
- Biodiesel 131, 219, 220
- Biobutanol 219, 220
- Bioinformatics 27, 39-41
- Biobleaching 251, 252, 255
- Biological control 277-279, 281, 285
- Biotechnology 3, 5, 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 23, 27, 29, 31, 32, 35, 39-41, 72, 95, 99, 113, 121, 124, 125, 134, 135, 137, 430
- Blood meal 52, 240
- $\beta$ -Oxidation of fats 69
- $\beta$ -propiolactone 190, 192, 409, 414
- Brandy 353-356
- Bread 3, 8, 204, 233, 270, 294-302, 316, 350, 351, 391
  - systems of bread-making 298
- Brewer's yeasts 325
- Brewing 52, 122, 160, 162, 165, 204, 269, 270, 275, 276, 321-328, 330, 333, 334, 336-340
  
- Carbon decolorization 180
- Carl R. Woese 16
- Cassava 50-52, 54, 201, 220, 223, 248, 263-265, 294, 308-310, 323, 339
- Catabolism 8, 61, 62, 66, 69, 72, 79, 81, 90
- Catabolite regulation 77, 79, 89, 90, 396
- Cavitator 365
- CD binding inhibitors 426
- Cell disruption 175, 182
- Cell-mediated immunity 410, 411, 425
- Cellulose 15, 20, 43, 46, 49, 53, 57-59, 153, 165, 186, 206, 209-211, 220, 263-265, 284, 448
- Cell-wall 242
- Cephalosporins 371, 375-377, 389
- Champagne 346-348
- Cheese 8, 121, 165, 200, 203, 213, 217, 229, 238, 263, 275, 294, 303-306, 358
  - manufacture 200, 229, 263, 275, 303, 304
- Chemical insecticides 277, 285
  - mutagens 101
- Chemical Oxygen Demand (COD) 440, 441
- Chemostat 163, 164, 208
- Chemosterilants 189
- Chloramphenicol 18, 71, 90, 92, 113, 194, 217, 369, 370
  - and analogues 370
- Chromatography 172, 178-180, 182, 207, 232, 307, 343, 381, 388, 405, 423, 428
- Citric acid 20, 48, 49, 63, 70, 87, 104, 106, 151, 169, 179, 228-231, 235, 241, 242, 265, 388
- Claviceps* 24, 64, 72, 88, 89, 391, 392, 395, 396
- Clinical trials 384, 416, 431, 433, 434
- Cocoa 130, 311, 312
- Codons 30, 37, 102, 103
- Coffee 152, 264, 311
- Combinatorial chemistry 389, 427, 428
- Conjugation 63, 99, 106, 113, 114, 117, 281, 378
- Contaminants, basis of loss 184
- Contaminations 140, 162, 184, 185, 191, 260, 353, 420
- Continuous brewing fermentations 337
- Corn grits 323
  - steep liquor 46-48, 50, 93, 241, 248, 271, 275, 282, 283, 290, 372, 373, 405
- Corticosteroids 400-402, 404, 406
- Corynebacterium manihot* 308, 309
- Crystallization 48, 172, 180, 203, 228, 249, 428
- Culture collections 95, 137-139, 144, 386
  
- Dawa dawa 315
- Decoction method 329, 330
- Deep sea 383, 384
- Deuteromycetes 24
- Disruption of cells 172, 182
- Distillers soluble 47, 48
- DNA chimera 108, 111
  - chips 33
  - sequencing 27, 35, 39
  - vaccines 415
- Domains 16-18
- Drug discovery 35, 423, 427, 434
  - approval procedures for new drugs 431
  - cell-based 423
  - enzyme assays 423
  - newer methods 427
  - receptor-binding 425
- Drum driers 182, 273
- Dryers 181
- Dump leaching 252, 255
  
- Earth summit 3
- Edible vaccines 124, 125, 416

- Electromagnetic spectrum 188
- Embden-Meyerhof-Parnas (EMP Pathway) 66, 67
- Enrichment methods 96
- Entner-Duodoroff Pathway (ED) 66, 69
- Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) 439, 450
- Enzymes 3, 7, 20, 23, 27, 30, 44, 46, 50, 51, 54, 55, 57-63, 65, 66, 70, 74-79, 81-84, 86-90, 97-99, 104-107, 109, 110, 113, 118, 121-123, 128, 130, 131, 153, 165, 171, 175, 176, 179, 182, 199-213, 215-217, 229-231, 236, 239-241, 247, 249, 250, 271, 295-303, 305, 306, 310, 311, 313, 314, 326-332, 338, 340, 353, 354, 373-375, 381, 396, 397, 404, 405, 417, 419, 426, 432
- classification 200
- industrial uses 217
- manipulating organisms for higher yields 213
- production 205
- Ergot alkaloids 24, 64, 72, 89, 391-397
- production 391
- Ethylene oxide 156, 186, 189, 190
- Extraction 9, 39, 48, 98, 171, 172, 175-178, 182, 184, 207, 212, 217, 225, 231, 235, 239, 249, 252, 254, 255, 261, 268, 271, 283, 324, 328, 331, 363, 373-376, 380, 384, 395, 397, 423, 431, 442
- Feedback regulation 79-81, 83, 88, 90, 93, 216, 217, 248, 249, 396
- Fermentation 5, 8, 21, 24, 25, 44, 47, 48, 50, 51, 59, 60, 68-70, 83, 88, 90, 93, 98, 99, 108, 124, 125, 138, 147, 149-160, 162-169, 171-174, 178-182, 184, 185, 189, 190, 192-194, 204-208, 211, 212, 219, 220, 223, 225, 230-236, 240, 241, 248, 249, 250, 253, 259, 261-263, 267, 272-276, 281-283, 290, 291, 293-295, 297-302, 306-315, 319, 321, 322, 324, 326, 330-334, 337-339, 342-351, 353, 355, 356, 358-361, 363-365, 369-377, 379, 381, 384, 386-389, 392, 395, 396, 403-406, 419, 421, 439
- Fermented foods 8, 294, 302, 306, 312, 313, 315, 316
- advantages 294
- Fermenter 8, 19, 21, 25, 98, 118, 132-134, 149, 168, 171, 187, 188, 191, 193, 206, 212, 213, 225, 231, 234, 247, 248, 253, 272, 274, 282, 290, 291, 325, 331, 332, 337, 343, 363-365, 373, 418, 419, 444
- aerated stirred tank batch bioreactor 149
- aeration and agitation 151
- anaerobic 159
- construction materials 151
- solid substrate 33, 169, 217
- surface 8, 35, 88, 99, 124, 149, 151, 153-155, 158, 169, 174, 176, 178, 180, 181, 186, 187, 189, 194, 209, 210, 221, 231, 236, 238, 239, 252, 282-285, 287, 289, 290, 301, 305, 313, 314, 360, 371, 383, 405, 408, 413-415, 417-420, 426
- Fermentor 4, 98, 149-154, 157, 159-162, 164-170, 214, 261-263, 330, 404, 418
- Filtration 11, 172-175, 180, 185-187, 192, 204, 207, 214, 249, 272, 273, 283, 323, 328, 330, 345, 348, 350, 365, 376, 425, 426, 442
- Firmicutes 19-21
- Fish meal 52
- sauce 262, 313-315, 358
- Flocs 174, 443, 444, 446, 450
- Foam extraction (fractionation) 172
- Foaming 154-156, 168, 238, 271, 272, 322, 336, 363, 443
- Foams 154-157, 191
- Fodder yeasts 269
- Food yeasts 269, 273-275
- Foo-foo 308, 310
- Formaldehyde 186, 190, 232, 302, 414, 419
- Fossil energy 219
- Frings acetator 363, 364
- Fungi 16, 17, 23, 24, 46, 58, 59, 65, 66, 69, 71, 72, 103, 106, 107, 121, 127, 132, 138, 140, 142, 143, 152, 167-169, 189, 190, 192, 204-206, 238, 264, 265, 277, 278, 281-283, 285, 292, 298, 301, 305, 307, 313, 338, 339, 355, 370, 373, 375, 379, 382, 384, 391, 392, 395, 402, 405, 427, 443, 446
- G+C content 21
- Garri 294, 308-310
- Gaseous sterilization 189, 190
- Gasohol 5, 51, 222-224
- Gene identification 38
- Gene pool 137, 216
- Gene transfer into
- animals 117
- bacteria 117
- plants 117
- Genetic code 30
- engineering 3, 7, 32, 98, 99, 105, 108, 113, 114, 119, 121, 125-128, 130-132, 226, 249, 408
- macromolecules 27, 39
- Genomics 33, 36, 39, 40, 414, 427, 429, 430
- Geotrichum candidum* 309
- Grape wines 342, 344-346
- classification 345
- defects 345
- fortified 348
- yeasts used 343

- Grapes (*Vitis vinifera*) 342  
 Growth factors 24, 43, 44, 48, 50, 104, 105, 135, 234, 418
- Hemicelluloses 49, 53, 57, 58, 122  
 Heterokaryosis 99  
 Hops 270, 321-324, 331, 335, 336, 340, 351  
*Hordeum vulgare* 323  
 Hydrocarbons 18, 43, 66, 69, 164, 167, 242, 260-262, 264, 265, 267, 274, 387, 399, 442
- Idiophase 46, 64, 65, 88-90, 93, 166, 216, 373  
 Idli 315  
 Immobilized biocatalysts 207, 208  
   advantages 208  
   bioreactors for 213  
   cells 207  
   enzymes 207  
 Immune system 123, 124, 131, 407, 409-412, 415, 421, 424  
 Industrial alcohol 48, 185, 219, 221, 269, 275, 354  
   microbiology 3-6, 8-11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 23, 27, 32, 35, 39, 41, 50, 51, 53, 72, 98, 99, 101, 104, 113, 121, 135, 137, 138, 184, 192, 194, 195, 215, 254, 417, 421, 439  
 Industrial products  
   primary metabolites 62  
   secondary metabolites 62  
 Industrial vs. Medical Microbiology 4  
 Inflammatory reactions 424, 425  
 Inoculum preparation 168  
 Intellectual property (see also Patents) 5  
 Ion exchange 172, 178, 180, 201, 202, 210, 229, 231, 249, 325, 376, 450  
 Ionizing radiations 100, 188  
 Isolation *de novo* 95  
 Isoprene 72, 397  
 Itaconic acid 228
- Jerusalem artichoke 52
- Kilning 204, 327, 339, 354  
 Kokonte 308, 310
- Lactic acid 21-23, 47, 62, 63, 69, 70, 160, 166, 184, 232-235, 242, 270, 275, 294, 297, 298, 300, 304-315, 325, 328, 335, 339, 344, 345, 349, 351, 353, 354, 358  
   properties and uses 232, 233  
*Lactobacillus helveticus* 21, 351  
*Lactobacillus bulgaricus* 23, 304  
*Lactobacillus mesenteroides* 339  
*Lactobacillus plantarum* 233, 300, 307, 311, 339
- Lafun 310  
 Lagering 322, 326, 327, 333, 334, 337, 339  
*Leptospirillum ferrooxidans* 254  
 Ligase 7, 111, 201  
 Lignin 40, 49, 57, 58, 59, 220, 263  
 Linamarin 308, 309  
 Linocosaminides 370  
 Liquid extraction 175, 176, 178  
 Literature search 95  
 Lotaustralin 308, 309  
 Lymphocytes 410, 411, 413, 424  
 Lyophilization 141, 143
- Macrolides 96, 370  
 Mahewu 307, 308  
 Maize 47, 48, 51, 53, 54, 72, 201, 294, 306-308, 323, 338, 339, 350, 351, 354, 355  
 Malting 51, 323, 326, 327, 328, 331, 338-340, 342  
 Mashing 323, 326-330, 338, 339  
   methods 329  
 Metabolic engineering 99, 107, 108, 244, 247  
   pathways 61, 70, 72, 79, 86, 87, 93, 107, 229, 240, 243-245, 247, 431  
 Metabolism 8, 27, 61-66, 69, 70, 73, 75, 81-83, 88-90, 127, 137, 139, 142, 189, 192, 239, 242, 247, 262, 352, 373, 397, 400, 426, 433  
 Metagenomics 39  
 Methylbromide 190  
 Microarrays 33-35, 39  
 Microbial insecticides 277  
   metabolites 74, 93, 96-98, 378, 423-425  
   metabolites, testing 97  
 Milk, composition 302  
 Millets 51, 338  
 Mining microbiology 251  
 Miso 312, 314  
 Molasses 48, 49, 155, 165, 169, 213, 221, 224, 225, 231, 234, 242, 248, 260, 263, 265, 270-272, 274, 282, 285, 353, 355, 356, 359, 373  
 Mutagens practical isolation 103  
 Mutation 25, 76, 85-87, 99-104, 107, 138-140, 229, 245, 249, 305, 326, 372, 396, 427
- Naringin 204  
 Neomycin 89, 370, 385  
*Nephila clavipes* 133  
 Non-specific immunity 409, 410  
 Nucleic acid biotechnology 3  
 Nucleoside antibiotics 71  
 Nucleosides 71, 267, 370
- Ogi 294, 307  
 Open reading frame (ORF) 37, 38  
 Orsellinic acid 71

- Overproduction  
 derangement of regulatory mechanisms, primary metabolites 83  
 derangement of regulatory mechanisms, secondary metabolites 88  
 regulatory mechanisms 83
- Oxygen 8, 21, 25, 27, 70, 131, 140, 149-154, 156, 158-160, 166, 167, 184, 191, 206, 226, 248, 254, 255, 261, 262, 272, 290, 300, 332, 335, 343-345, 348, 349, 356, 362, 363, 375, 402, 419, 439-441, 444, 446
- Palindromes 109
- Palm wine 259, 339, 349, 350, 356, 359
- Pasteurization 187, 194, 304, 335, 345, 350, 356
- Patenting in microbiology and biotechnology 5
- Patents 5-8, 95, 261, 282
- Patents and trademarks office 6
- Pectinases 201, 203, 204, 217, 310
- Pediococcus damnosus* 324, 335, 351
- Pediococcus streptococcus damnosus* 184
- Penicillin 3, 8, 24, 45-47, 50, 64, 65, 88-91, 93, 99, 104, 106, 171, 173, 178, 180, 205, 213, 242, 304, 369-377, 385, 386, 389, 403, 404, 406  
 semi-synthetic penicillins 374
- Penicillium chrysogenum* 64, 65, 69, 89-91, 104, 106, 371
- Pentose Phosphate Pathway (PP) 66, 69, 71, 77
- Peptides 47, 127, 155, 295, 301, 313, 343, 370, 386, 397, 413, 415
- Permeability 82, 87, 88, 98, 176, 217, 242, 250, 384
- Permeabilization 117, 175, 176
- Pharmamedia 47, 282
- Phenazines 71, 370
- Phenyl acetic acid 373
- Phosphoketolase Pathway (PP) 66, 69
- Phycomycetes 23, 24, 281
- Pickled cucumbers 311, 365
- Pilot fermenter 8
- Plasmids 6, 18, 63, 105, 106, 111, 113, 114, 116, 118, 217, 281, 378
- Polyenes 370, 382
- Polyethers 156, 370
- Polyketide 71
- Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR) 27, 31, 40, 41
- Precursors 46, 65, 93, 324, 336, 373, 374, 376, 385, 389, 391
- Preservation of microorganisms  
 by dehydration 142  
 by lowering the growth temperature 140  
 by reduction of nutrients 144
- Primary and secondary metabolites 62, 66, 107
- Probes 157, 158, 191
- Prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells 25
- Production fermenter 8, 168, 272
- Production of vaccines 165, 417, 418
- Promoters 30, 40, 64, 95
- Protein denaturation 31
- Protein folding 31
- Protein synthesis 16, 17, 27, 29, 75-77, 81, 113, 117, 216  
 negative control of 75  
 positive control of 77
- Proteomics 40, 414, 427
- Protoplast fusion 99, 106, 107
- Purification 48, 171, 172, 179, 180, 182, 207, 212, 231, 249, 397, 428, 442
- Puromycin 89, 370
- Pyruvate 66, 68, 69, 81, 243
- Radiations 100, 188
- Raw materials 8, 21, 44-46, 50, 53, 59, 121, 165, 219, 238, 240, 248, 294, 321, 323, 340, 355
- Raw materials, criteria for use 45
- Restriction endonucleases 109-111, 115
- Reverse vaccinology 416
- Rhizobium 287-293  
 inoculants 289, 293
- Ribosome sub-units 29
- Ribosomes 16, 17, 28-30, 216
- Rice 50-54, 31, 135, 169, 205, 231, 263, 292, 313-316, 323, 327, 359
- Rifamycin 63, 370
- 16S RNA 16, 19
- 18S RNA 16
- Rotary vacuum filter 172, 173, 249, 272, 374, 376
- Rum 353-355
- Saccharification 53, 54, 57-59, 213, 329, 339, 354
- Saccharomyces cerevisiae* 144, 223, 225, 260, 269-271, 274, 276, 295, 307, 322, 332, 350, 351, 355
- Saccharomyces uvarum* 225, 321
- Saccharum officinarum* 48
- Sauerkraut 310
- Secondary metabolites 23, 46, 62-66, 70-72, 75, 88-90, 93, 95, 107, 108, 134, 166, 204, 385, 389, 396, 423  
 methods for deranging 215
- Secondary metabolites, physiology 65
- Shikimate-Chorismate 71
- Single Cell Protein (SCP) 51, 63, 69, 165, 166, 168, 259-268, 269, 274, 350, 444

- Single cell protein  
 production substrates 260  
 safety 266
- Site-directed mutation 99, 107
- Solvent extraction 172, 176-178, 235, 252, 261, 374, 375, 423
- Sorbitol 20, 156
- Sorghum 51, 52, 54, 201, 220, 259, 306, 323, 338-340, 351  
 beers 259, 338, 340
- Soy sauce 312-314
- Spirit beverages  
 measuring alcoholic strength 352  
 production 353
- Spirits 221, 269, 275, 342, 352, 353, 355, 356
- Starch 21, 43, 47, 51-53, 57, 59, 74, 89, 96, 121, 122, 129-131, 158, 165, 191, 201-206, 209, 213, 216, 220, 248, 263-265, 272, 282-284, 295-297, 299, 302, 308-310, 313, 316, 323, 326-330, 339, 340, 353
- Steam 11, 52, 58, 150, 151, 153, 186-188, 190, 191, 193, 221, 223, 224, 235, 272, 275, 291, 300, 322, 353
- Sterility 9, 151, 184, 185, 195, 238, 239, 253, 420, 421
- Sterility, methods for achieving 185
- Steroids 72, 375, 399, 401-406, 418
- Steroids and Sterols  
 microbial screening 405  
 microbial transformations 399, 404
- Sterols 399, 401, 404-406
- Stout 322, 327, 332, 334
- Strain improvement 98, 99, 105, 247, 248, 381, 395
- Strains 6, 22, 25, 63, 81, 85, 98, 99, 103-106, 109, 114, 117, 137, 138, 201-204, 206, 216, 217, 223, 225, 231, 241-245, 247-249, 254, 255, 260, 262, 264, 270, 271, 273, 274, 276, 279, 281, 283, 285, 287, 289, 290, 293, 295, 304, 305, 310, 313, 314, 321, 322, 325, 326, 330-332, 339, 353, 360, 363, 371-373, 375, 377, 381, 382, 395, 409, 413-415, 417, 429
- Streptococcus thermophilus* 304
- Streptomyces 23, 57, 64, 71, 89, 90, 93, 96, 101, 106-108, 184, 201, 217, 369-371, 373, 375-377, 385, 405, 425, 426
- Streptomycin 18, 48, 64, 71, 89, 90, 106, 171, 174, 179, 180, 184, 370, 385, 389
- Sufu 312
- Sulfur dioxide 47, 54, 58, 190, 254, 343, 345, 348
- Svedberg units 16, 29
- Sweet potatoes 51
- Terpenes and steroids 72
- Tetracyclines 71, 104, 370
- Thermochemical process 221
- Thiobacillus ferrooxidans* 254, 255
- Thiobacillus organosporus* 254
- Toxoids 413-416, 419, 420
- Traditional biotechnology 3
- Transcription 18, 28-30, 75, 78, 79, 100, 114, 127, 129, 401
- Transduction 99, 105, 119
- Transfer RNAs (tRNAs) 30
- Transformation 63, 88, 99, 106, 111, 116, 117, 213, 378, 399, 401-406, 424
- Translation 28-30, 37, 129, 168
- Tricarboxylic acid cycle 66, 69, 87, 230, 332
- Trickling filter 208, 362, 364, 443, 446, 447
- Triketide 71
- Trophophase 46, 64, 65, 88, 90, 93, 166, 373
- Turbidostat 163, 164
- Tyndallization 186, 192
- Ugba 315
- UK patent law 6
- Ultraviolet light 100, 104, 189, 278, 279, 285
- Ultraviolet 100, 104, 127, 189, 278, 279, 285, 372, 381, 388, 414
- Uncultured microorganisms 39
- Upstream/downstream processes 171, 249
- Vaccines 6, 27, 40, 118, 123-126, 133, 134, 153, 165, 185, 190, 192, 407, 408, 410-418, 420-422
- Vectors 7, 111, 114, 119, 120, 277, 278, 280, 285, 403
- Vegetables 22, 134, 310, 311, 358
- Vinegar 20, 63, 160, 162, 165, 208, 223, 298, 358-365  
 manufacture 361  
 processing 365  
 types 359  
 uses 358
- Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> 50, 276
- Volatile Suspended Solids (VSS) 441
- Wastes 11, 45, 53, 165, 166, 213, 219, 220, 263-265, 274, 439-444, 448-450
- Wheat 50-52, 54, 204, 205, 220, 239, 265, 266, 292, 295-297, 300, 313, 314, 322, 323, 350, 351, 354
- Whiskey 47
- Wine making processes 356
- Working stock 138

- Yams 51, 52, 402
- Yeast production 162, 263, 269, 271, 273, 274, 276
- Yeasts 3, 8, 24, 25, 44, 46, 48-50, 54, 61-63, 66, 74, 82, 86, 88, 99, 106, 124, 129, 138, 141, 142, 151, 155, 162, 164-168, 170-172, 174, 185, 190, 204, 223, 225, 226, 231, 259-264, 267-276, 285, 290, 294-303, 306-311, 313-316, 321-326, 328-330, 332-335, 337, 339, 343-345, 347-354, 356, 359, 363, 374, 377, 378, 382, 388, 405
- Yeasts, factory production 271
- Yogurt 3, 8, 144, 306, 307



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

---

## About the Authors

---

**Nduka Okafor** holds a bachelor's degree from the University of London, England and a PhD from the University of Cambridge, England. He has taught and/or researched in Australia, Austria, the Netherlands, England and the USA. In the USA he has been at the University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI; Cornell University, Ithaca, NY; Furman University, Greenville, SC; the University of Northern Iowa, Cedar Falls, IA and Clemson University, SC. He has acted as external examiner (graduate and undergraduate) at the University of Zimbabwe, the University of Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, the University of Poona, India and the University of New South Wales, Australia. His books include *Modern Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology* (Science Publishers, Enfield, NH, USA), and *Environmental Microbiology of Waste and Aquatic Systems* (Springer, Dordrecht, the Netherlands).

**Benedict Okeke** is a Professor in the Department of Biology, Auburn University at Montgomery (AUM); where he is also a Distinguished Research Professor, Ida Belle Young Endowed Professor, Alumni Professor and the founding Director of the Bioprocessing and Biofuel Research Lab (BBRL). At AUM he received superior performance evaluations in all areas: research, teaching and service. Prof. Okeke received MS and PhD degrees from the University of Strathclyde, Glasgow, Scotland. He currently teaches industrial microbiology, environmental microbiology, special topics in biotechnology, general microbiology, and directed research. He has been an external examiner for numerous PhD students internationally. Professor Okeke did postdoctoral work at the University of California, Riverside; Gifu University, Japan; and the International Center for Genetic Engineering and Biotechnology, Trieste, Italy. He has 60 technical research papers in peer reviewed journals, three US patents, numerous conference abstracts and research grants from different organizations. He served as an Associate Editor for *Journal of Environmental Quality* and in the editorial board of *Applied Biochemistry and Biotechnology*. Prof. Okeke is a member of the Society for Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology, American Society for Microbiology, Phi Kappa Phi, Sigma Xi and the Alabama Academy of Science.



**Taylor & Francis**

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>